



**GE Healthcare**

# **Technical Publication**

**Direction 5122546-100**

**Revision 3**

**GE Healthcare  
LOGIQ™ 3 Service Manual**

**Operating Documentation**

Copyright© 2005,2007 by General Electric Co.



---

This page was intentionally left blank.

---

# Important Precautions

---

## WARNING

- THIS SERVICE MANUAL IS AVAILABLE IN ENGLISH ONLY.
- IF A CUSTOMER'S SERVICE PROVIDER REQUIRES A LANGUAGE OTHER THAN ENGLISH, IT IS THE CUSTOMER'S RESPONSIBILITY TO PROVIDE TRANSLATION SERVICES.
- DO NOT ATTEMPT TO SERVICE THE EQUIPMENT UNLESS THIS SERVICE MANUAL HAS BEEN CONSULTED AND IS UNDERSTOOD.
- FAILURE TO HEED THIS WARNING MAY RESULT IN INJURY TO THE SERVICE PROVIDER, OPERATOR OR PATIENT FROM ELECTRIC SHOCK, MECHANICAL OR OTHER HAZARDS.

## AVERTISSEMENT

- CE MANUEL DE MAINTENANCE N'EST DISPONIBLE QU'EN ANGLAIS.
- SI LE TECHNICIEN DU CLIENT A BESOIN DE CE MANUEL DANS UNE AUTRE LANGUE QUE L'ANGLAIS, C'EST AU CLIENT QU'IL INCOMBE DE LE FAIRE TRADUIRE.
- NE PAS TENTER D'INTERVENTION SUR LES ÉQUIPEMENTS TANT QUE LE MANUEL SERVICE N'A PAS ÉTÉ CONSULTÉ ET COMPRIS.
- LE NON-RESPECT DE CET AVERTISSEMENT PEUT ENTRAÎNER CHEZ LE TECHNICIEN, L'OPÉRATEUR OU LE PATIENT DES BLESSURES DUES À DES DANGERS ÉLECTRIQUES, MÉCANIQUES OU AUTRES.

## WARNUNG

- DIESES KUNDENDIENST-HANDBUCH EXISTIERT NUR IN ENGLISCHER SPRACHE.
- FALLS EIN FREMDER KUNDENDIENST EINE ANDERE SPRACHE BENÖTIGT, IST ES AUFGABE DES KUNDEN FÜR EINE ENTSPRECHENDE ÜBERSETZUNG ZU SORGEN.
- VERSUCHEN SIE NICHT, DAS GERÄT ZU REPARIEREN, BEVOR DIESES KUNDENDIENST-HANDBUCH NICHT ZU RATE GEZOGEN UND VERSTANDEN WURDE.
- WIRD DIESE WARNUNG NICHT BEACHTET, SO KANN ES ZU VERLETZUNGEN DES KUNDENDIENSTTECHNIKERS, DES BEDIENERS ODER DES PATIENTEN DURCH ELEKTRISCHE SCHLÄGE, MECHANISCHE ODER SONSTIGE GEFAHREN KOMMEN.

**AVISO**

- ESTE MANUAL DE SERVICIO SÓLO EXISTE EN INGLÉS.
- SI ALGÚN PROVEEDOR DE SERVICIOS AJENO A GEMS SOLICITA UN IDIOMA QUE NO SEA EL INGLÉS, ES RESPONSABILIDAD DEL CLIENTE OFRECER UN SERVICIO DE TRADUCCIÓN.
- NO SE DEBERÁ DAR SERVICIO TÉCNICO AL EQUIPO, SIN HABER CONSULTADO Y COMPRENDIDO ESTE MANUAL DE SERVICIO.
- LA NO OBSERVANCIA DEL PRESENTE AVISO PUEDE DAR LUGAR A QUE EL PROVEEDOR DE SERVICIOS, EL OPERADOR O EL PACIENTE SUFRAN LESIONES PROVOCADAS POR CAUSAS ELÉCTRICAS, MECÁNICAS O DE OTRA NATURALEZA.

**ATENÇÃO**

- ESTE MANUAL DE ASSISTÊNCIA TÉCNICA SÓ SE ENCONTRA DISPONÍVEL EM INGLÊS.
- SE QUALQUER OUTRO SERVIÇO DE ASSISTÊNCIA TÉCNICA, QUE NÃO A GEMS, SOLICITAR ESTES MANUAIS NOUTRO IDIOMA, É DA RESPONSABILIDADE DO CLIENTE FORNECER OS SERVIÇOS DE TRADUÇÃO.
- NÃO TENHA TENTADO REPARAR O EQUIPAMENTO SEM TER CONSULTADO E COMPREENDIDO ESTE MANUAL DE ASSISTÊNCIA TÉCNICA.
- O NÃO CUMPRIMENTO DESTA AVISO PODE POR EM PERIGO A SEGURANÇA DO TÉCNICO, OPERADOR OU PACIENTE DEVIDO A CHOQUES ELÉTRICOS, MECÂNICOS OU OUTROS.

**AVVERTENZA**

- IL PRESENTE MANUALE DI MANUTENZIONE È DISPONIBILE SOLTANTO IN INGLESE.
- SE UN ADDETTO ALLA MANUTENZIONE ESTERNO ALLA GEMS RICHIEDE IL MANUALE IN UNA LINGUA DIVERSA, IL CLIENTE È TENUTO A PROVVEDERE DIRETTAMENTE ALLA TRADUZIONE.
- SI PROCEDA ALLA MANUTENZIONE DELL'APPARECCHIATURA SOLO DOPO AVER CONSULTATO IL PRESENTE MANUALE ED AVERNE COMPRESO IL CONTENUTO.
- NON TENERE CONTO DELLA PRESENTE AVVERTENZA POTREBBE FAR COMPIERE OPERAZIONI DA CUI DERIVINO LESIONI ALL'ADDETTO ALLA MANUTENZIONE, ALL'UTILIZZATORE ED AL PAZIENTE PER FOLGORAZIONE ELETTRICA, PER URTI MECCANICI OD ALTRI RISCHI.

このサービスマニュアルには英語版しかありません。

GEMS以外でサービスを担当される業者が英語以外の言語を要求される場合、翻訳作業はその業者の責任で行うものとさせていただきます。

**警告**

このサービスマニュアルを熟読し理解せずに、装置のサービスを行わないで下さい。

この警告に従わない場合、サービスを担当される方、操作員あるいは患者さんが、感電や機械的又はその他の危険により負傷する可能性があります。

**本维修手册仅存有英文本。**

**非 GEMS 公司的维修员要求非英文本的维修手册时，客户需自行负责翻译。**

**注意：**

**未详细阅读和完全了解本手册之前，不得进行维修。忽略本注意事项会对维修员，操作员或病人造成触电，机械伤害或其他伤害。**

## **DAMAGE IN TRANSPORTATION**

All packages should be closely examined at time of delivery. If damage is apparent write "Damage In Shipment" on ALL copies of the freight or express bill BEFORE delivery is accepted or "signed for" by a GE representative or hospital receiving agent. Whether noted or concealed, damage MUST be reported to the carrier immediately upon discovery, or in any event, within 14 days after receipt, and the contents and containers held for inspection by the carrier. A transportation company will not pay a claim for damage if an inspection is not requested within this 14 day period.

## **CERTIFIED ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR STATEMENT - FOR USA ONLY**

All electrical Installations that are preliminary to positioning of the equipment at the site prepared for the equipment shall be performed by licensed electrical contractors. Other connections between pieces of electrical equipment, calibrations and testing shall be performed by qualified GE Medical Systems personnel. In performing all electrical work on these products, GE will use its own specially trained field engineers. All of GE's electrical work on these products will comply with the requirements of the applicable electrical codes.

The purchaser of GE equipment shall only utilize qualified personnel (i.e., GE's field engineers, personnel of third-party service companies with equivalent training, or licensed electricians) to perform electrical servicing on the equipment.

## **OMISSIONS & ERRORS**

If there are any omissions, errors or suggestions for improving this documentation, please contact the GE Medical Systems Global Documentation Group with specific information listing the system type, manual title, part number, revision number, page number and suggestion details. Mail the information to : Service Documentation, 9900 Innovation Drive (RP-2123), Wauwatosa, WI 53226. , USA.

GE Medical Systems employees should use the iTrak System to report all documentation errors or omissions.

---

# **LEGAL NOTES**

---

The contents of this publication may not be copied or duplicated in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written permission of GE Medical Systems.

GE Medical Systems may revise this publication from time to time without written notice.

## **TRADEMARKS**

All products and their name brands are trademarks of their respective holders.

## **COPYRIGHTS**

All Material Copyright©2005, 2007 by General Electric Inc. All Rights Reserved

# Revision History

Revision	Date	Reason for change
1	June 30, 2005	Initial Release
2	20 OCT,2005	Updated Release
3	13 March, 2007	Typo error of the part numbers corrected on the manual, Service notes added to the manual,FRU part numbers updated.

# List of Effected Pages

Pages	Revision	Pages	Revision	Pages	Revision
Title Page	3	Chapter 3-Installation (pages 3-1 to 3-42)	3	Chapter 8 -Replacement Procedure (pages 8-1 to 8-126)	3
Important Precautions (pages i to vi)	3	Chapter 4 -Functional Checks (pages 4-1 to 4-30)	3	Chapter 9- Renewal Parts (pages 9-1 to 9-22)	3
Table of Contents (pages TOC-1 to TOC-22)	3	Chapter 5 - Components and Functions (pages 5-1 to 5-40)	3	Chapter 10 -Care and Maintenance (pages 10-1 to 10-30)	3
Chapter 1 - Introduction (pages 1-1 to 1-18)	3	Chapter 6 - Scan Adjustments (pages 6-1 to 6-12)	3	index index 1-index 2	3
Chapter 2 - Pre Installation (pages 2-1 to 2- 12)	3	Chapter 7 - Trouble Shooting/Diagnostics (pages 7-1 to 7-66)	3	Rear Cover	3



# Table Of Contents

## CHAPTER 1

Overview . . . . .	1 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 1 . . . . .	1 - 1
Chapter Contents . . . . .	1 - 1
Purpose of Service Manual . . . . .	1 - 1
Typical Users of the Basic Service Manual . . . . .	1 - 2
LOGIQ™ 3 Models Covered by this Manual . . . . .	1 - 2
Purpose of OperatorManual(s) . . . . .	1 - 2
Safety . . . . .	1 - 3
Warnings . . . . .	1 - 3
Important Conventions . . . . .	1 - 4
Conventions Used in Book . . . . .	1 - 4
Standard Hazard Icons . . . . .	1 - 5
Product Icons . . . . .	1 - 6
Safety Considerations . . . . .	1 - 9
Introduction . . . . .	1 - 9
Human Safety . . . . .	1 - 9
Mechanical Safety . . . . .	1 - 9
Electrical Safety . . . . .	1 - 10
Returning/Shipping Probes and Repair Parts . . . . .	1 - 10
Labels Locations . . . . .	1 - 11
Dangerous Procedure Warnings . . . . .	1 - 15
Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA / Europe Only) . . . . .	1 - 15
EMC, EMI, and ESD . . . . .	1 - 16
Electromagnetic Compatibility . . . . .	1 - 16
Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Prevention . . . . .	1 - 16
CE Compliance . . . . .	1 - 16
Customer Assistance . . . . .	1 - 17
Contact Information . . . . .	1 - 17
System Manufacturer . . . . .	1 - 18

## CHAPTER 2

Overview .....	2 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 2 .....	2 - 1
Chapter Contents .....	2 - 1
General Console Requirements .....	2 - 2
Console Environmental Requirements .....	2 - 2
Cooling .....	2 - 2
Lighting .....	2 - 2
Electrical Requirements .....	2 - 3
Power Requirements .....	2 - 3
Inrush Current .....	2 - 3
Site Circuit Breaker .....	2 - 3
Site Power Outlets .....	2 - 4
Unit Power Plug .....	2 - 4
Power Stability Requirements .....	2 - 4
EMI Limitations .....	2 - 5
Probes Environmental Requirements .....	2 - 6
Time and Manpower Requirements .....	2 - 6
Facility Needs .....	2 - 7
Purchaser Responsibilities .....	2 - 7
Required Features .....	2 - 7
Desirable Ultrasound Room Facilities .....	2 - 8
Minimal Floor Plan Suggestion .....	2 - 9
Networking Pre-installation Requirements .....	2 - 10
Purpose of DICOM Network Function .....	2 - 10
DICOM Option Pre-installation Requirements .....	2 - 10

## CHAPTER 3

Overview .....	3 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 3 .....	3 - 1
Chapter Contents .....	3 - 1
Average Installation Time .....	3 - 2
Installation Warnings .....	3 - 2
Receiving and Unpacking LOGIQ™ 3 .....	3 - 3
Safety Reminders .....	3 - 7
Moving into Position .....	3 - 8
Adjusting System Clock .....	3 - 8

---

Product Locator Installation Card . . . . .	3 - 8
Preparing for Installation. . . . .	3 - 9
Verify Customer Order . . . . .	3 - 9
Physical Inspection . . . . .	3 - 9
Systems Voltage Settings . . . . .	3 - 9
Video Formats . . . . .	3 - 9
EMI Protection . . . . .	3 - 9
Checking the Components . . . . .	3 - 9
Completing the Installation . . . . .	3 - 10
System Specifications . . . . .	3 - 10
Physical Dimensions . . . . .	3 - 10
Weight with Monitor and without Peripherals . . . . .	3 - 12
Acoustic Noise Output: . . . . .	3 - 12
Electrical Specifications . . . . .	3 - 12
Probe (Transducer) Connection . . . . .	3 - 12
Power On / Boot Up . . . . .	3 - 12
Scanner Power On . . . . .	3 - 12
Back-end Processor Boot Up . . . . .	3 - 14
Power Off/ Shutdown . . . . .	3 - 14
Back-end Processor Power Down . . . . .	3 - 14
Scanner Shutdown . . . . .	3 - 15
System Configuration . . . . .	3 - 16
System Configuration . . . . .	3 - 16
System Settings . . . . .	3 - 16
Storage And Operation Requirements . . . . .	3 - 18
Optional Peripherals . . . . .	3 - 19
Optional Peripherals/Peripheral Connection . . . . .	3 - 19
Approved peripherals . . . . .	3 - 19
Connecting Cables . . . . .	3 - 20
Power Consumption of Optional Peripherals . . . . .	3 - 21
Available Probes . . . . .	3 - 22
Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel . . . . .	3 - 22
Video Specification . . . . .	3 - 30
Software Option Configuration . . . . .	3 - 31
Connectivity Installation Worksheet . . . . .	3 - 32
Loading Base System Software . . . . .	3 - 33
Software Compatible Matrix . . . . .	3 - 33

---

---

Before You Load Software . . . . .	3 - 33
Managing Data, Presets and Images . . . . .	3 - 33
Base Software Load Procedure For BEP Ver 2 , 3, & 4 . . . . .	3 - 34
Loading Application Software . . . . .	3 - 37
Loading Applications Software . . . . .	3 - 37
System Setup . . . . .	3 - 39
Paperwork . . . . .	3 - 40
Product Locator Installation . . . . .	3 - 40
GE Cares Sticker . . . . .	3 - 41
User Manual(s) . . . . .	3 - 41

## **CHAPTER 4**

Overview . . . . .	4 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 4 . . . . .	4 - 1
Chapter Contents . . . . .	4 - 1
Required Equipment . . . . .	4 - 1
General Procedure. . . . .	4 - 2
Power On/Boot Up . . . . .	4 - 2
Scanner Power On . . . . .	4 - 2
Power Off . . . . .	4 - 4
Power Shutdown . . . . .	4 - 4
Using CD-RW Drive/MOD Drive (Optional) . . . . .	4 - 4
Using CD-RW . . . . .	4 - 4
Using MOD (Optional) . . . . .	4 - 5
Archiving and Loading Presets . . . . .	4 - 6
Formatting CD(R/W)/MO Disk . . . . .	4 - 6
Archiving Presets to an CD(R/W)/MO Disk . . . . .	4 - 7
Loading Presets from an CD(R/W)/MO disk . . . . .	4 - 8
Adjusting the Display Monitor . . . . .	4 - 9
Brightness and Contrast . . . . .	4 - 9
Manual Degauss . . . . .	4 - 9
Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA/Europe Only) . . . . .	4 - 9
Functional Checks . . . . .	4 - 10
Basic Controls . . . . .	4 - 10
Alpha Numeric Keyboard . . . . .	4 - 10
Keyboard Controls . . . . .	4 - 10
Top and Sub Menu . . . . .	4 - 10

B Mode Checks	4 - 11
Preparations	4 - 11
B Mode OP Panel Controls	4 - 12
B Mode Top and Sub menu Controls	4 - 13
M Mode Controls	4 - 14
Preparations	4 - 14
M Mode OP Panel Controls	4 - 15
M Mode Top and Sub menu Controls	4 - 16
Color Flow Mode Checks	4 - 17
Preparations	4 - 17
Color Flow Mode OP Panel Controls	4 - 18
Color Flow Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls	4 - 18
Doppler Mode Checks	4 - 19
Preparations	4 - 19
Doppler Mode OP Panel Controls	4 - 20
Doppler Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls	4 - 20
Measurement and Multi Image Checks	4 - 21
Performing B Mode Measurements Checks	4 - 21
Basic Measurements	4 - 22
Distance and Tissue Depth Measurements	4 - 22
Circumference/Area (Ellipse) Measurement	4 - 22
Worksheets	4 - 23
Report Pages	4 - 23
Probe/Connectors Usage	4 - 23
Connecting a probe	4 - 23
Activating the probe	4 - 23
Deactivating the probe	4 - 24
Disconnecting the probe	4 - 24
Using Cine	4 - 24
Activating CINE	4 - 24
Quickly Move to Start/End Frame	4 - 24
Start Frame/End Frame	4 - 24
Adjusting the CINE Loop Playback Speed	4 - 24
Moving through a CINE Loop Frame By Frame	4 - 24
Image Management (QG)	4 - 25
Back End Processor Checks	4 - 25
Software Configuration Checks	4 - 26
Peripheral Checks	4 - 27
Safety Issues	4 - 28
Probe/Connectors Check	4 - 28
Power Supply Adjustment	4 - 28
Site Log	4 - 29

## CHAPTER 5

Overview .....	5 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 5 .....	5 - 1
General Information .....	5 - 2
System Features .....	5 - 2
Types of Applications .....	5 - 2
Block Diagrams and Theory .....	5 - 4
Block Diagram .....	5 - 4
Front End .....	5 - 5
Mid Processors .....	5 - 6
CPU/Backend Processor .....	5 - 7
VIC Card .....	5 - 8
Patient I/O (Option) .....	5 - 9
Keyboard .....	5 - 9
Monitor .....	5 - 10
External I/O on the Rear Panel .....	5 - 10
Peripherals .....	5 - 10
Power Diagrams .....	5 - 11
Overview .....	5 - 11
AC Power .....	5 - 11
DC Power (Low Voltage) .....	5 - 12
TX Power/HV Power Supply .....	5 - 13
Overview .....	5 - 13
Specifications .....	5 - 13
Output Signal to FEC .....	5 - 13
Input Signal from FEC .....	5 - 13
Circuit Boards Descriptions .....	5 - 14
Front End .....	5 - 15
Connector Board .....	5 - 15
Transmit Board .....	5 - 17
CWD Board (Optional) .....	5 - 18
Receive Board .....	5 - 19
Digital Beam Former .....	5 - 20
Mid Processors .....	5 - 21
FEC .....	5 - 21
THI Board (integrated on FEC 2277093-9) .....	5 - 23
PC2IP Board .....	5 - 24
CPU/Back End Processor .....	5 - 25

PC BOX .....	5 - 25
Rear Panel .....	5 - 26
Mechanical Descriptions .....	5 - 26
Monitor .....	5 - 26
Air Flow Control .....	5 - 27
Air Flow Distribution .....	5 - 27
Filters .....	5 - 27
Fans .....	5 - 27
Common Service Platform .....	5 - 28
Introduction .....	5 - 28
Global Service User Interface (GSUI) .....	5 - 29
Internationalization .....	5 - 29
Service Login .....	5 - 29
Access / Security .....	5 - 29
Service Home Page .....	5 - 30
Error Logs Page .....	5 - 31
Logs .....	5 - 32
Utilities .....	5 - 33
Search .....	5 - 34
Exit .....	5 - 34
Diagnostics .....	5 - 36
Diagnostics Execution .....	5 - 36
Diagnostic Reports .....	5 - 36
Proactive Diagnostics .....	5 - 36
Image Quality .....	5 - 37
Calibration .....	5 - 37
Configuration .....	5 - 38
Utilities .....	5 - 39
Replacement .....	5 - 39
PM .....	5 - 40

## CHAPTER 6

Overview .....	6 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 6 .....	6 - 1
Regulatory .....	6 - 1
Power Supply Adjustments .....	6 - 1
Access to Adjustments for LV Power Supply .....	6 - 1
Location of the test points .....	6 - 4

---

Monitor Adjustment . . . . .	6 - 9
Re-calibration the Monitor. . . . .	6 - 10

## **CHAPTER 7**

Overview . . . . .	7 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 7 . . . . .	7 - 1
Diagnostic Procedure Summary . . . . .	7 - 1
Gathering Trouble Data . . . . .	7 - 2
Overview . . . . .	7 - 2
Collect Vital System Information . . . . .	7 - 2
Collect a Trouble Image with Logs . . . . .	7 - 3
Screen Captures . . . . .	7 - 4
Check and Record the P4 Key Function . . . . .	7 - 4
Setting the P4 Key to Screen Capture . . . . .	7 - 5
Capturing a Screen . . . . .	7 - 6
Reset the P4 Key to Customer's Functionality . . . . .	7 - 7
Diagnostics . . . . .	7 - 8
Serviceability . . . . .	7 - 8
Common Diagnostics. . . . .	7 - 11
Utilities . . . . .	7 - 11
PC Diagnostics (Non-Interactive Tests) . . . . .	7 - 11
CPU Tests . . . . .	7 - 11
Hard Drive Tests . . . . .	7 - 11
Memory Tests . . . . .	7 - 11
CD-ROM Drive Tests . . . . .	7 - 11
Video Test . . . . .	7 - 11
USB Test . . . . .	7 - 11
PCI Board Configuration Test . . . . .	7 - 11
Keyboard Test . . . . .	7 - 11
Audio Test . . . . .	7 - 11
Service Notes. . . . .	7 - 12
SN-70411:Daylight Saving Time (DST) - New Dates . . . . .	7 - 13
Sn 73092: Preventive Maintenance Of LOGIQ 3 Monitor . . . . .	7 - 15
Sn:73090 Location Of the Additional Label with Serial Number information . . . . .	7 - 21
Sn73084-Keyboards Knobs . . . . .	7 - 23
Sn 73082: Introduction of FMI 73068,FMI 73070, FMI 73071 . . . . .	7 - 24



Sn73081-Inclusion of Base and Application Software CDs inside the System	7 - 26
Sn73080-LOGIQ™ 3 - Introduction of Improved Keyboard Assembly . . . .	7 - 27
Sn73078- BIOS Settings . . . . .	7 - 28
Sn73077-PC2IP Driver installation on BEP 2 System with PC2IP II board	7 - 36
Sn73075-Introduction of New Receive Board . . . . .	7 - 41
Sn73074:Introduction of FMI 73066-Monitor MCU Replacement . . . . .	7 - 43
Sn73073-Introduction of FMI 73069 for CHINA . . . . .	7 - 46
Sn73064-CWD Option Kit Usage for LOGIQ™ 3 . . . . .	7 - 47
SN-73061:Replacement of LOGIQ™ 3 Hardware FRU . . . . .	7 - 48
SN-73058:Various Boards Used the LOGIQ™ 3 . . . . .	7 - 49
SN-73056:Back Plane Board and Continuous Wave Doppler Board FRUs	7 - 50
SN-73055:Intermittent Hang Issues Related to the FEC. . . . .	7 - 51
SN-73053:BACK UP AND RESTORE PROCESS IN LOGIQ™ 3 . . . . .	7 - 56
SN-73051:Monitor Signal Issues . . . . .	7 - 59
SN-73050:Maintenance Mode in LOGIQ™ 3 . . . . .	7 - 61
SN-73049:Hardware ID Generation on the ACI board. . . . .	7 - 62
SN-73048:Preset Restore . . . . .	7 - 65

## CHAPTER 8

Overview . . . . .	8 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 8 . . . . .	8 - 1
Returning/Shipping Probes and Repair Parts . . . . .	8 - 1
Monitor . . . . .	8 - 3
Monitor Assy (FRU No. 100) . . . . .	8 - 3
Tools . . . . .	8 - 3
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 3
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 3
Removal procedure . . . . .	8 - 3
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 3
Monitor Cover Left (FRU No. 101) . . . . .	8 - 4
Tools . . . . .	8 - 4
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 4
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 4
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 4
Monitor Cover Right (FRU No. 102) . . . . .	8 - 5
Tools . . . . .	8 - 5
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 5
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 5
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 5
Monitor Cover Top (FRU No. 103) . . . . .	8 - 6

---

Tools	8 - 6
Needed Manpower	8 - 6
Preparations	8 - 6
Removal Procedure	8 - 6
Monitor Cover Front (Bezel) (FRU No. 104)	8 - 7
Tools	8 - 7
Needed Manpower	8 - 7
Preparations	8 - 7
Removal Procedure	8 - 7
Monitor Switch (S/W) Assy (FRU No. 105)	8 - 8
Tools	8 - 8
Needed Manpower	8 - 8
Preparations	8 - 8
Removal Procedure	8 - 8
Mounting procedure	8 - 8
Task Lamp (FRU No. 106)	8 - 9
Tools	8 - 9
Needed Manpower	8 - 9
Preparations	8 - 9
Removal Procedure	8 - 9
Mounting procedure	8 - 9
Keyboard	8 - 10
KeyBoard Assy (FRU No. 200)	8 - 10
Tools	8 - 10
Needed Manpower	8 - 10
Preparations	8 - 10
Removal Procedure	8 - 10
Mounting procedure	8 - 10
Probe Holder (FRU No. 201)	8 - 12
Tools	8 - 12
Needed Manpower	8 - 12
Preparations	8 - 12
Removal Procedure	8 - 12
Mounting procedure	8 - 12
Speaker Pair	8 - 13
Tools	8 - 13
Needed Manpower	8 - 13
Preparations	8 - 13
Removal Procedure	8 - 13
Mounting procedure	8 - 13
Keyboard TGC Assy (FRU No. 202)	8 - 14
Tools	8 - 14
Needed Manpower	8 - 14
Preparations	8 - 14
Removal Procedure	8 - 14

---

Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 14
HUB PCB Assy (FRU No. 203) . . . . .	8 - 15
Tools . . . . .	8 - 15
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 15
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 15
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 15
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 15
A/N Keyboard Assy (FRU No. 204) . . . . .	8 - 16
Tools . . . . .	8 - 16
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 16
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 16
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 16
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 16
Keyboard Trackball Assy (FRU No. 205) . . . . .	8 - 17
Tools . . . . .	8 - 17
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 17
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 17
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 17
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 17
Keyboard - Freeze Key Assy (FRU No. 206) . . . . .	8 - 18
Tools . . . . .	8 - 18
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 18
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 18
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 18
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 18
Power switch and Encoder PCB Assy (FRU 207). . . . .	8 - 19
Tools . . . . .	8 - 19
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 19
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 19
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 19
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 19
Keyboard Power Cable (FRU 208). . . . .	8 - 21
Tools . . . . .	8 - 21
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 21
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 21
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 21
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 21
Mechanicals . . . . .	8 - 23
Right Cover (FRU No. 300) . . . . .	8 - 23
Tools . . . . .	8 - 23
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 23
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 23
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 23
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 23
Left Cover (FRU No. 301) . . . . .	8 - 25

Tools .....	8 - 25
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 25
Preparations .....	8 - 25
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 25
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 25
Rear Cover (FRU No. 302) .....	8 - 26
Tools .....	8 - 26
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 26
Preparations .....	8 - 26
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 26
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 26
Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White .....	8 - 27
Tools .....	8 - 27
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 27
Preparations .....	8 - 27
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 27
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 27
Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT .....	8 - 28
Tools .....	8 - 28
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 28
Preparations .....	8 - 28
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 28
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 28
Front Rubber Bumper Left (FRU No. 311) .....	8 - 29
Tools .....	8 - 29
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 29
Preparations .....	8 - 29
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 29
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 29
Front Rubber Bumper Right (FRU No. 312) .....	8 - 30
Tools .....	8 - 30
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 30
Preparations .....	8 - 30
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 30
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 30
Front Cover (FRU No. 304) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White .....	8 - 31
Tools .....	8 - 31
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 31
Preparations .....	8 - 31
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 31
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 31
Front Cover (FRU No. 304) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT .....	8 - 32
Tools .....	8 - 32
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 32
Preparations .....	8 - 32
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 32

Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 32
Top Cover (FRU No. 305) . . . . .	8 - 33
Tools . . . . .	8 - 33
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 33
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 33
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 33
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 33
KeyBoard Bottom Cover (FRU No. 306) . . . . .	8 - 34
Tools . . . . .	8 - 34
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 34
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 34
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 34
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 34
KeyBoard Bumper (FRU No. 307) . . . . .	8 - 35
Tools . . . . .	8 - 35
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 35
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 35
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 35
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 35
Keyboard Rear Cover (FRU No. 308) . . . . .	8 - 36
Tools . . . . .	8 - 36
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 36
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 36
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 36
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 36
Left EMI Cover . . . . .	8 - 37
Tools . . . . .	8 - 37
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 37
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 37
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 37
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 37
Right EMI Cover . . . . .	8 - 38
Tools . . . . .	8 - 38
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 38
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 38
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 38
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 38
Rear EMI Cover . . . . .	8 - 39
Tools . . . . .	8 - 39
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 39
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 39
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 39
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 39
Nest EMI Cover . . . . .	8 - 40
Tools . . . . .	8 - 40
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 40

---

Preparations . . . . .	8 - 40
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 40
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 40
Front EMI Cover for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White . . . . .	8 - 41
Tools . . . . .	8 - 41
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 41
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 41
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 41
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 41
Front EMI Cover for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT . . . . .	8 - 43
Tools . . . . .	8 - 43
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 43
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 43
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 43
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 43
VGP Tray . . . . .	8 - 44
Tools . . . . .	8 - 44
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 44
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 44
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 44
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 44
Handle Rod(FRU No. 400) . . . . .	8 - 45
Tools . . . . .	8 - 45
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 45
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 45
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 45
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 45
Front Castor (FRU No. 401) . . . . .	8 - 46
Tools . . . . .	8 - 46
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 46
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 46
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 46
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 46
Rear Castor (FRU No. 402) . . . . .	8 - 47
Tools . . . . .	8 - 47
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 47
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 47
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 47
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 47
Air Filter (FRU No. 403) . . . . .	8 - 48
Tools . . . . .	8 - 48
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 48
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 48
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 48
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 48
Card Cage Fan Assy (FRU No. 404) . . . . .	8 - 49

---

Tools .....	8 - 49
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 49
Preparations .....	8 - 49
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 49
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 49
I/O Interfaces .....	8 - 50
Rear Panel Assy (FRU No. 500) .....	8 - 50
Tools .....	8 - 50
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 50
Preparations .....	8 - 50
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 50
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 50
Rear Panel1 (RP1) Board (FRU No. 501) .....	8 - 52
Tools .....	8 - 52
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 52
Preparations .....	8 - 52
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 52
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 52
Rear Panel2 (RP2) Board (FRU No. 502) .....	8 - 53
Tools .....	8 - 53
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 53
Preparations .....	8 - 53
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 53
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 53
Rear Panel Interface (RPI) Board (FRU No. 503) .....	8 - 54
Tools .....	8 - 54
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 54
Preparations .....	8 - 54
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 54
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 54
Front Panel (FRU No. 504) .....	8 - 55
Tools .....	8 - 55
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 55
Preparations .....	8 - 55
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 55
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 55
Rear Panel Fuse (FRU No. 505) .....	8 - 56
Tools .....	8 - 56
Needed Manpower .....	8 - 56
Preparations .....	8 - 56
Removal Procedure .....	8 - 56
Mounting procedure .....	8 - 56
PCB .....	8 - 57
PCB Boards (FRU No. 601 ~ 605, 608, 609) .....	8 - 57

Tools	8 - 57
Needed Manpower	8 - 57
Preparations	8 - 57
Removal Procedure	8 - 57
Mounting procedure	8 - 57
Connector Board Assy (FRU No. 606) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White	8 - 59
Tools	8 - 59
Needed Manpower	8 - 59
Preparations	8 - 59
Removal Procedure	8 - 59
Mounting procedure	8 - 59
Connector Board Assy (FRU No. 606) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT	8 - 61
Tools	8 - 61
Needed Manpower	8 - 61
Preparations	8 - 61
Removal Procedure	8 - 61
Mounting procedure	8 - 61
Card Cage with Back Plane Board (FRU No. 607)	8 - 63
Tools	8 - 63
Needed Manpower	8 - 63
Preparations	8 - 63
Removal Procedure	8 - 63
Mounting procedure	8 - 63
BEP Assy (FRU No. 700)	8 - 64
Tools	8 - 64
Needed Manpower	8 - 64
Preparations	8 - 64
Removal Procedure	8 - 64
Mounting procedure	8 - 64
BEP Assy Cable Identification	8 - 65
Hard Disc Drive (FRU no. 701)	8 - 66
Tools	8 - 66
Needed Manpower	8 - 66
Preparations	8 - 66
Removal Procedure	8 - 66
Mounting Procedure	8 - 66
Compact Disc Read Write Drive (FRU no. 702)	8 - 68
Tools	8 - 68
Needed Manpower	8 - 68
Preparations	8 - 68
Removal Procedure	8 - 68
Mounting Procedure	8 - 68
BEP Power Supply (FRU no. 703)	8 - 70
Tools	8 - 70
Needed Manpower	8 - 70
Preparations	8 - 70



Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 70
Mounting Procedure . . . . .	8 - 70
PCVIC PCB (FRU no. 704) . . . . .	8 - 72
Tools . . . . .	8 - 72
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 72
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 72
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 72
Mounting Procedure . . . . .	8 - 72
PC2IP PCB (FRU no. 706) . . . . .	8 - 74
Tools . . . . .	8 - 74
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 74
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 74
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 74
Mounting Procedure . . . . .	8 - 74
Power Block . . . . .	8 - 76
Transformer Assy (FRU No. 800) . . . . .	8 - 76
Tools . . . . .	8 - 76
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 76
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 76
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 76
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 76
LVPS Disassy (FRU No. 801) . . . . .	8 - 78
Tools . . . . .	8 - 78
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 78
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 78
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 78
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 79
AC Interface Board (ACI) (FRU No. 802) . . . . .	8 - 80
Tools . . . . .	8 - 80
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 80
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 80
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 80
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 81
Fuse (FRU No. 803) . . . . .	8 - 82
Tools . . . . .	8 - 82
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 82
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 82
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 82
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 82
Circuit Breaker (FRU No. 804) . . . . .	8 - 83
Tools . . . . .	8 - 83
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 83
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 83
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 83
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 83

---

Noise Filter(FRU No. 805) . . . . .	8 - 84
Tools . . . . .	8 - 84
Needed Manpower . . . . .	8 - 84
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 84
Removal Procedure . . . . .	8 - 84
Mounting procedure . . . . .	8 - 84
Software Loading Procedure . . . . .	8 - 85
Installing Base System Software and Application Software . . . . .	8 - 85
General . . . . .	8 - 85
Saving the Data (Using Utility Function) . . . . .	8 - 86
Base Load Software Load . . . . .	8 - 89
Manpower . . . . .	8 - 89
Tools . . . . .	8 - 89
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 89
Base Load Software Load Procedure . . . . .	8 - 89
Optional Manual Drive Remapping . . . . .	8 - 91
Optional Manual Configurations . . . . .	8 - 91
Loading Applications Software . . . . .	8 - 91
Final System Setup . . . . .	8 - 91
serialno.txt File Creation . . . . .	8 - 92
Optional Check Devices . . . . .	8 - 93
Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters . . . . .	8 - 95
Loading Application Software After a Base Image Load . . . . .	8 - 100
Manpower . . . . .	8 - 100
Tools . . . . .	8 - 100
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 100
Image Management Guide . . . . .	8 - 100
Save As (Saving Images to CD-ROM to View on Any PC) . . . . .	8 - 100
Moving Images (Image Archive) . . . . .	8 - 102
Export/Import (Moving Data Between Ultrasound Systems) . . . . .	8 - 104
Importing Data . . . . .	8 - 106
Loading Applications Software . . . . .	8 - 107
Functional Checks for Service Platform (Diagnostic Program) . . . . .	8 - 109
Restoring the Data . . . . .	8 - 112
Functional Checks for Probe Recognition . . . . .	8 - 114
Installing Option Software . . . . .	8 - 115
Preparations . . . . .	8 - 115
Procedures . . . . .	8 - 115
Loading Base and Application Software . . . . .	8 - 117
Making BIOS changes . . . . .	8 - 118
Base Software Load Procedure For BEP Ver 2 , 3, and 4 . . . . .	8 - 122
Loading Applications Software . . . . .	8 - 125

---

## CHAPTER 9

Overview . . . . .	9 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 9 . . . . .	9 - 1
List of Abbreviations . . . . .	9 - 2
Operator Console Assy . . . . .	9 - 3
MONITOR. . . . .	9 - 5
Keyboard . . . . .	9 - 6
External Covers . . . . .	9 - 8
Mechanical Assembly's . . . . .	9 - 10
I/O Interfaces . . . . .	9 - 11
PCB Boards . . . . .	9 - 12
BEP . . . . .	9 - 14
Power Block . . . . .	9 - 16
Power Cord. . . . .	9 - 17
Probes . . . . .	9 - 17
Peripherals . . . . .	9 - 18
Cables Set . . . . .	9 - 18
Option Parts . . . . .	9 - 19
New FRUs for LOGIQ™3 Expert . . . . .	9 - 20
Hardware FRU's for LOGIQ3 BT'05 . . . . .	9 - 21
Software FRU's for LOGIQ3 Expert . . . . .	9 - 21
Software FRUs for LOGIQ™3 PRO . . . . .	9 - 22
Software FRUs for LOGIQ™3 Black And White . . . . .	9 - 22

## CHAPTER 10

Overview .....	10 - 1
Periodic Maintenance Inspection .....	10 - 1
Purpose of Chapter 10 .....	10 - 1
Why do Maintenance .....	10 - 2
Keeping Records .....	10 - 2
Quality Assurance .....	10 - 2
Periodic Maintenance Schedule .....	10 - 2
How often should care & maintenance tasks be performed? .....	10 - 2
Tools Required .....	10 - 4
Standard GE Tool Kit .....	10 - 4
Special Tools, Supplies and Equipment .....	10 - 6
Specific Requirements for Care & Maintenance .....	10 - 6
System Maintenance .....	10 - 7
Preliminary Checks .....	10 - 7
Functional Checks (See Also Chapter 4) .....	10 - 8
System Checks .....	10 - 8
Peripheral/Option Checks .....	10 - 9
Input Power .....	10 - 9
Mains Cable Inspection .....	10 - 9
Cleaning .....	10 - 9
General Cleaning .....	10 - 9
Air Filter Cleaning .....	10 - 10
Physical Inspection .....	10 - 10
<u>Optional</u> Diagnostic Checks .....	10 - 11
View the Logs .....	10 - 11
Probe Maintenance .....	10 - 11
Probe Related Checks .....	10 - 11
Basic Probe Care .....	10 - 11
Basic Probe Cleaning .....	10 - 11
Using a Phantom .....	10 - 12
Electrical Safety Tests .....	10 - 12
Safety Test Overview .....	10 - 12
GEMS Leakage Current Limits .....	10 - 13
Outlet Test - Wiring Arrangement - USA & Canada .....	10 - 14
Grounding Continuity .....	10 - 15
Meter Procedure .....	10 - 15

---

Dale 600 - Ground Continuity .....	10 - 16
Chassis Leakage Current Test .....	10 - 17
Definition .....	10 - 17
Generic Procedure .....	10 - 17
Dale 600 Meter Procedure .....	10 - 18
Data Sheet for Chassis Source Leakage Current .....	10 - 19
Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Ground .....	10 - 19
Definition .....	10 - 19
Generic Procedure .....	10 - 20
Dale 600 Meter Procedure .....	10 - 20
Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage-Lead to Lead .....	10 - 22
Dale 600 Patient Lead Tests .....	10 - 22
Isolated Patient Lead (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test .....	10 - 22
Data Sheet for ECG Leakage Current .....	10 - 23
Probe Leakage Current Test .....	10 - 24
Definition .....	10 - 24
Generic Procedure .....	10 - 24
Meter Procedure Using Probe Adapter .....	10 - 24
No Meter Probe Adapter Procedure .....	10 - 26
Data Sheet for Transducer Source Leakage Current .....	10 - 27
When There's Too Much Leakage Current.....	10 - 28

This page was intentionally left blank.

---

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### Section 1-1 Overview

#### 1-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 1

This chapter describes important issues related to safely servicing the LOGIQ™ 3 scanner. The service provider must read and understand all the information presented in this manual before installing or servicing a unit.

#### 1-1-2 Chapter Contents

Table 1-1 Contents in Chapter 1

Section	Description	Page Number
1-1	Overview	1-1
1-2	Safety	1-3
1-3	Important Conventions	1-4
1-4	Safety Considerations	1-9
1-5	EMC, EMI, and ESD	1-16
1-6	Customer Assistance	1-17

#### 1-1-3 Purpose of Service Manual

This Service Manual provides installation and service information for the LOGIQ™ 3 Ultrasound Scanning System and contains the following chapters:

- 1.) **Chapter 1 - Introduction** Contains a content summary and warnings.
- 2.) **Chapter 2 - Pre-Installation** Contains pre-installation requirements for the LOGIQ™ 3 .
- 3.) **Chapter 3 - Installation** Contains installation procedure with installation checklist.
- 4.) **Chapter 4 - Functional Checks** Contains functional checks that must be performed as part of the installation, or as required during servicing and periodic maintenance.
- 5.) **Chapter 5 - Components and Functions (Theory)** Contains block diagrams and functional explanations of the electronics.
- 6.) **Chapter 6 - Service Adjustments** Contains instructions on how to make available adjustments to the LOGIQ™ 3 .
- 7.) **Chapter 7 - Diagnostics/Troubleshooting** Provides procedures for running diagnostic or related routines for the LOGIQ™ 3 .
- 8.) **Chapter 8 - Replacement Procedures** Provides disassembly procedures and reassembly procedures for all changeable Field Replaceable Units (FRU).
- 9.) **Chapter 9 - Renewal Parts** Contains a complete list of replacement parts for the LOGIQ™ 3 .
- 10.) **Chapter 10 - Care & Maintenance** Provides periodic maintenance procedures for the LOGIQ™ 3 .

**1-1-4 Typical Users of the Basic Service Manual**

- Service Personnel (installation, maintenance, etc.).
- Hospital's Service Personnel
- Contractors (Some parts of Chapter 2 - Pre-Installation)

**1-1-5 LOGIQ™ 3 Models Covered by this Manual**

**LOGIQ 3 Expert-BT'05**

Console HCAT	Logiq 3 Model Name	PSI Code
H41772LM	LOGIQ 3 Expert CHILE/KOREA MODEL	ULOG3I
H41772LN	LOGIQ 3 Expert JAPAN MODEL	ULOG3I
H41772LP	LOGIQ 3 Expert CHINA MODEL	ULOG3I
H41772LR	LOGIQ 3 Expert INDIA MODEL	ULOG3I
H41812LE	LOGIQ 3 Expert EUROPE MODEL with printer fixture	ULOG3I
H41772LT	LOGIQ 3 Expert AMERICAS MODEL	ULOG3I

**LOGIQ 3 Pro-BT'05**

Console HCAT	Logiq 3 Model Name	PSI Code
H41802LN	LOGIQ 3 CHILE/KOREA MODEL	ULOG3M
H41802LP	LOGIQ 3 JAPAN MODEL	ULOG3M
H41802LR	LOGIQ 3 CHINA MODEL	ULOG3M
H41802LS	LOGIQ 3 INDIA MODEL	ULOG3M
H41812LF	LOGIQ 3 EUROPE MODEL with Printer fixture	ULOG3M
H41802LW	LOGIQ 3 AMERICAS MODEL	ULOG3M

**LOGIQ 3 B/W-BT'05**

Console HCAT	Logiq 3 Model Name	PSI Code
H41802LZ	LOGIQ 3 CHILE/KOREA MODEL	ULOG3L
H41812LA	LOGIQ 3 CHINA MODEL	ULOG3L
H41812LB	LOGIQ 3 INDIA MODEL	ULOG3L

**1-1-6 Purpose of OperatorManual(s)**

The Operator Manual(s) should be fully read and understood before operating the LOGIQ™ 3 and also kept near the unit for quick reference.



## Section 1-2 Safety

### 1-2-1 Warnings



**WARNING CAREFULLY READ ALL OF THE WARNINGS BELOW**

- 1.) The operator manual should be fully read and understood before operating the LOGIQ™ 3 and kept nearby for quick reference.
- 2.) Although the ultrasound energy transmitted from the LOGIQ™ 3 transducer is within AIUM/NEMA standards, unnecessary exposure should be avoided. Only trained personnel should operate the LOGIQ™ 3.
- 3.) To prevent electrical shock, the LOGIQ™ 3 should be connected to a properly grounded power receptacle. Do not use a three prong to two prong adapter. This defeats safety grounding.
- 4.) Probes are fragile, please handle with care.
- 5.) Concerning Outside Markings, refer to Figure 1-2 through 1-3.
- 6.) For the cleaning, disinfection, and sterilization, refer to Probe section in LOGIQ™ 3 User Manual and Caution Sheet supplied with each probe.



**NOTICE** This medical equipment is approved, in terms of the prevention of radio wave interference, to be used in hospitals, clinics and other institutions which are environmentally qualified. The use of this equipment in an inappropriate environment may cause some electronic interference to radios and televisions around the equipment. Proper handling of this equipment is required in order to avoid such trouble according to the operator and service manuals. This equipment can be used in residential areas only under the supervision of physicians or qualified technicians.



**CAUTION Improper performance possibility. Do not use the following devices near this equipment. Cellular phone, radio transceiver, mobile radio transmitter, radio-controlled toy, etc. Use of these devices near this equipment could cause this equipment to perform outside the published specifications. Keep power to these devices turned off when near this equipment**

## Section 1-3 Important Conventions

### 1-3-1 Conventions Used in Book

#### Icons


Pictures, or icons, are used wherever they reinforce the printed message. The icons, labels and conventions used on the product and in the service information are described in this chapter.


#### Safety Precaution Messages

Various levels of safety precaution messages may be found on the equipment and in the service information. The different levels of concern are identified by a flag word that precedes the precautionary message. Known or potential hazards are labeled in one of following ways:

 **DANGER** **DANGER IS USED TO INDICATE THE PRESENCE OF A HAZARD THAT WILL CAUSE SEVERE PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH IF THE INSTRUCTIONS ARE IGNORED.**

 **WARNING** **WARNING IS USED TO INDICATE THE PRESENCE OF A HAZARD THAT CAN CAUSE SEVERE PERSONAL INJURY OR PROPERTY DAMAGE IF INSTRUCTIONS ARE IGNORED.**

 **CAUTION** **Caution is used to indicate the presence of a hazard that will or can cause minor personal injury and property damage if instructions are ignored.**

 **NOTICE** **Equipment Damage Possible**  
**Notice is used when a hazard is present that can cause property damage but has absolutely no personal injury risk.**  
*Example: Disk Drive will crash.*

**NOTE:** *Notes provide important information about an item or a procedure. Information contained in a NOTE can often save you time or effort.*

### 1-3-2 Standard Hazard Icons








Important information will always be preceded by the exclamation point contained within a triangle , as seen throughout this chapter. In addition to text, several different graphical icons (symbols) may be used to make you aware of specific types of hazards that could cause harm.

Table 1-2 Standard Hazard Icons

ELECTRICAL	MECHANICAL	RADIATION
		
LASER	HEAT	PINCH
		

Other hazard icons make you aware of specific procedures that should be followed.

Table 1-3 Standard Icons Indicating a Special Procedure Be Used

AVOID STATIC ELECTRICITY	TAG AND LOCK OUT	WEAR EYE PROTECTION
		

### 1-3-3 Product Icons

The following table describes the purpose and location of safety labels and other important information provided on the equipment.

**Table 1-4 Product Icons**







LABEL/SYMBOL	PURPOSE/MEANING	LOCATION
Identification and Rating Plate	Manufacturer's name and address Date of manufacture Model and serial numbers Electrical ratings	Rear of console near power inlet On each probe
Device Listing/Certification Labels	Laboratory logo or labels denoting conformance with industry safety standards such as UL or IEC.	Rear of console
Type/Class Label	Used to indicate the degree of safety or protection	
IP Code (IP68)	Indicates the degree of protection provided by the enclosure per IEC 60529. IP68 indicates can be used in operating room environment.	Footswitch
	Equipment Type BF (man in the box symbol) IEC 60878 indicates B Type equipment having a floating applied part	Probe connectors and PCG Connectors
	Equipment Type CF (heart in the box symbol) IEC 60878 indicates equipment having a floating applied part having a high degree of protection suitable for direct cardiac contact.	ECG connector and Probes marked Type CF
<p><b>"CAUTION</b> This unit weighs... Special care must be used to avoid..."</p> 	This precaution is intended to prevent injury that may result if one person attempt to move the unit considerable distances or on an incline due to the weight of the unit.	On the console where easily seen during transport
	"CAUTION" The equilateral triangle is usually used in combination with other symbols to advise or warn the user.	Various
	ATTENTION - Consult accompanying documents " is intended to alert the user to refer to the operator manual or other instructions when complete information cannot be provided on the label.	Various
	"CAUTION - Dangerous voltage" (the lightning flash with arrowhead in equilateral triangle) is used to indicate electric shock hazards.	Various

Table 1-4 Product Icons (Continued)











LABEL/SYMBOL	PURPOSE/MEANING	LOCATION
	"Mains OFF" Indicates the power off position of the mains power switch.	Rear of system adjacent to mains switch
	"OFF/Standby" Indicates the power off/standby position of the power switch. <b>CAUTION</b> <b>This Power Switch DOES NOT ISOLATE Mains Supply</b>	Adjacent to On-Off/Standby Switch
	"Mains ON" Indicates the power on position of the mains power switch. <b>CAUTION</b> <b>This Power Switch DOES NOT ISOLATE Mains Supply</b>	Rear of system adjacent to mains switch
	"Protective Earth" Indicates the protective earth (grounding) terminal.	Internal
	Type CF Defib-Proof Applied Part (heart in the box with paddle) symbol is in accordance with IEC 878-02-03	ECG Module
	Alternating Current	Rear Panel, Circuit breaker label of Console and Front Panel
	"Non-ionizing Radiation" indicates that the system applies RF energy.	Rear of console
	Do not use the following devices near this equipment, Cellular phones, radio transceivers, mobile radio transmitters, radio controlled toy etc. Use of these devices could cause this equipment to perform outside the published specifications. Keep power to these devices turned off when near this equipment.	Rear of console
	This Symbol indicates that waste electrical and electronic equipment must not be disposed of as unsorted municipal waste and must be collected separately. Please contact an authorised representative for manufacturer for information concerning the decompositing of your requirement.	Rear Panel

Table 1-4 Product Icons (Continued)

LABEL/SYMBOL	PURPOSE/MEANING	LOCATION
	<p>Indicates the presence of hazardous substance(s) above the maximum concentration value. Maximum concentration values for electronic information products, as set by the People’s Republic of China Electronic Industry Standard SJ/T11364-2006, include the hazardous substances of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, cadmium, polybrominated biphenyl (PBB), and polybrominated diphenyl ether (PBDE). “20” indicates the number of years during which the hazardous substance(s) will not leak or mutate so that the use of this product will not result in any severe environmental pollution, bodily injury, or damage to any assets.</p>	<p>Rear Panel[For China Only]</p>

## Section 1-4 Safety Considerations

### 1-4-1 Introduction


The following safety precautions must be observed during all phases of operation, service and repair of this equipment. Failure to comply with these precautions or with specific warnings elsewhere in this manual, violates safety standards of design, manufacture and intended use of the equipment.

### 1-4-2 Human Safety


Operating personnel must not remove the system covers.  
Servicing should be performed by authorized personnel only.  
Only personnel who have participated in a LOGIQ™ 3 Training Seminar are authorized to service the equipment.

### 1-4-3 Mechanical Safety


**WARNING**  **WHEN THE UNIT IS RAISED FOR A REPAIR OR MOVED ALONG ANY INCLINE, USE EXTREME CAUTION SINCE IT MAY BECOME UNSTABLE AND TIP OVER.**

**WARNING**  **ULTRASOUND PROBES ARE HIGHLY SENSITIVE MEDICAL INSTRUMENTS THAT CAN EASILY BE DAMAGED BY IMPROPER HANDLING. USE CARE WHEN HANDLING AND PROTECT FROM DAMAGE WHEN NOT IN USE. DO NOT USE A DAMAGED OR DEFECTIVE PROBE. FAILURE TO FOLLOW THESE PRECAUTIONS CAN RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY AND EQUIPMENT DAMAGE.**

**WARNING**  **NEVER USE A PROBE THAT HAS FALLEN TO THE FLOOR. EVEN IF IT LOOKS OK, IT MAY BE DAMAGED.**

**CAUTION**  Always lock the Control Console in its parking (locked) position before moving the scanner around.

The LOGIQ™ 3 weights approx 155kg (342lbs), depending on installed peripherals, when ready for use. Care must be used when moving it or replacing its parts. Failure to follow the precautions listed below could result in injury, uncontrolled motion and costly damage.

**CAUTION**  ALWAYS:

- Be sure the path way is clear.
- Use slow, careful motions.
- Use two people when moving on inclines or lifting more than 23 kg (50 lb.).

**NOTE:** *Special care should be taken when transporting the unit in a vehicle:*

- *Secure the unit in an upright position.*
- *Lock the wheels (brake)*
- *DO NOT use the Control Panel as an anchor point.*
- *Place the probes in their carrying case.*
- *Eject any CD (R/W) disk from the CD(R/W) Drive*
- *Remove the Footswitch and place it in a secure place*
- *Disconnect any other Off board peripherals if used.*


**NOTE:** *Keep the Heat venting holes on the monitor unobstructed to avoid overheating of the monitor.*

## 1-4-4 Electrical Safety

To minimize shock hazard, the equipment chassis must be connected to an electrical ground. The system is equipped with a three-conductor AC power cable. This must be plugged into an approved electrical outlet with safety ground. If an extension cord is used with the system, make sure that the total current rating of the extension cord is greater than the system rating.

The power outlet used for this equipment should not be shared with other types of equipment.

Both the system power cable and the power connector meet international electrical standards.

 **CAUTION** If the Power Plug is Modified or replaced to Suit the local Conditions and regulations, Ground continuity check should be performed between Ground Pin on the Plug and a Metal Part on the LOGIQ™ 3 .

## 1-4-5 Returning/Shipping Probes and Repair Parts

Equipment being returned must be clean and free of blood and other infectious substances.

GEMS policy states that body fluids must be properly removed from any part or equipment prior to shipment. GEMS employees, as well as customers, are responsible for ensuring that parts/equipment have been properly decontaminated prior to shipment. Under no circumstance should a part or equipment with visible body fluids be taken or shipped from a clinic or site (for example, body coils or an ultrasound probe).

The purpose of the regulation is to protect employees in the transportation industry, as well as the people who will receive or open this package.

**NOTE:** *The US Department of Transportation (DOT) has ruled that “items that were saturated and/or dripping with human blood that are now caked with dried blood; or which were used or intended for use in patient care” are “regulated medical waste” for transportation purposes and must be transported as a hazardous material.*



1-4-6 Labels Locations

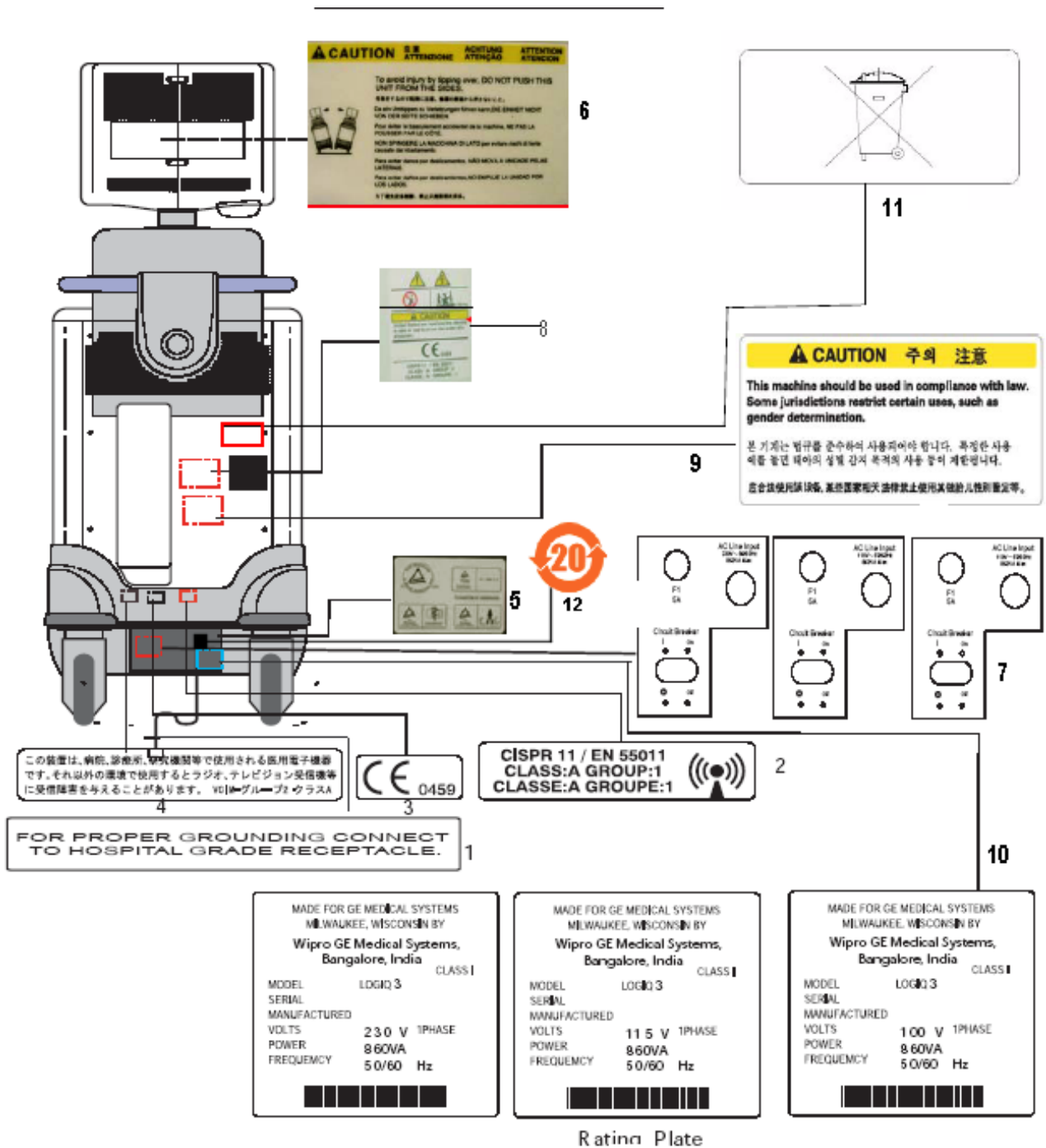


Figure 1-1 Label Location

**1-4-6 Labels Locations** (contd.)

**Location:**

- 1.) Grounding reliability Label
- 2.) CISPR Label
- 3.) CE Mark Label
- 4.) EIAJ Label
- 5.) TUV Label
- 6.) Tipping Caution Label
- 7.) Power Indication Label
- 8.) Prescription Device for US Only
- 9.) Gender Determination Label for Asia only
- 10.) Identification and Rating Plate
- 11.) WEEE Marking
- 12.) EFUP Label[For China Only]

### 1-4-6 Label Locations (Cont'd).

NOTE: For an explanation of the symbols shown in the illustration, refer to latter pages in this chapter.

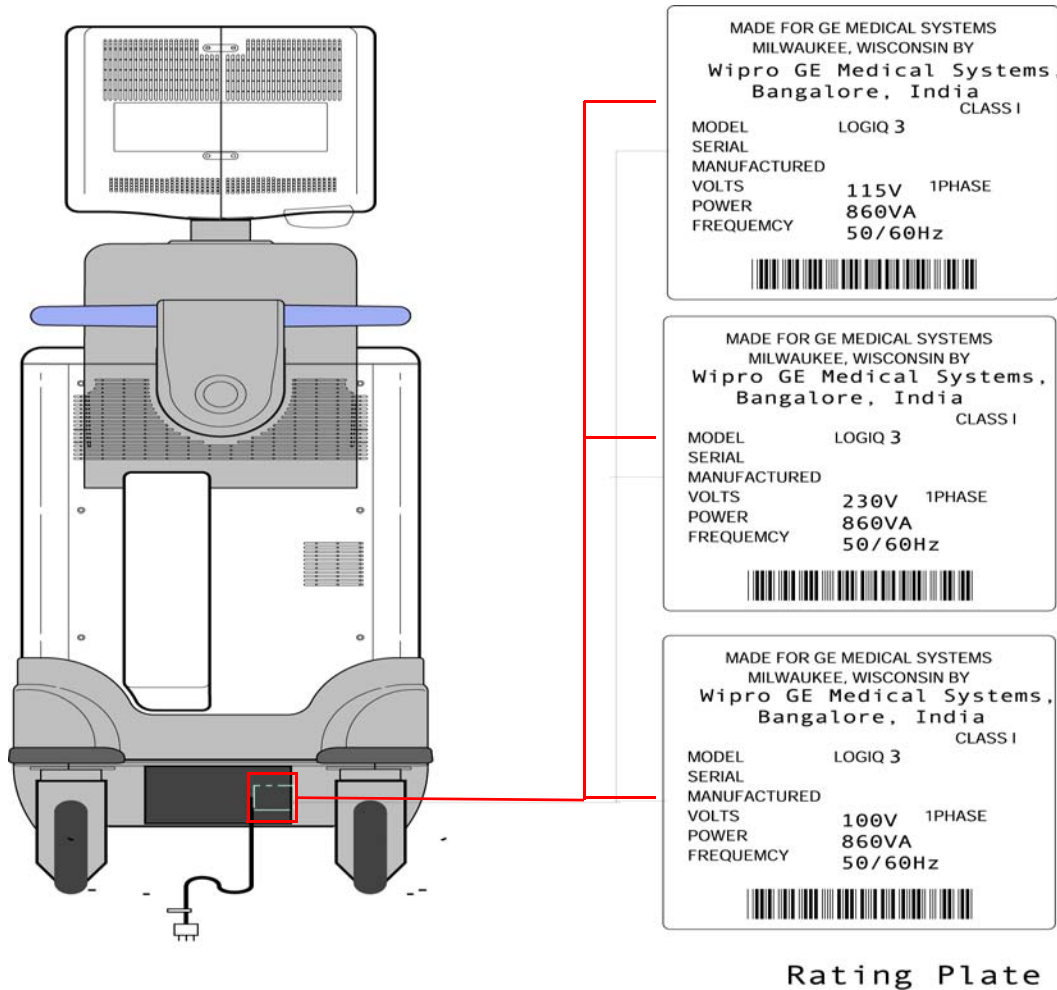


Figure 1-2 OUTSIDE MARKINGS OF LOGIQ™ 3

NOTE: For an explanation of the symbols shown in the illustration, refer to latter pages in this chapter.  
The CAUTION label for the radio influence is required to be attached on the console from April, 1996.  
The GOST label is required to be attached on the console from June, 1998.  
The Sex determination label is required to be attached on the console from September 2001, for Asia Only

NOTE: The labels shown in the Figure 1-2 are supplied with the consoles for Europe. They shall be attached on the console over the existing labels as necessary. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the labels.

### 1-4-6 Label Locations (Cont'd).

Labels at Front Panel

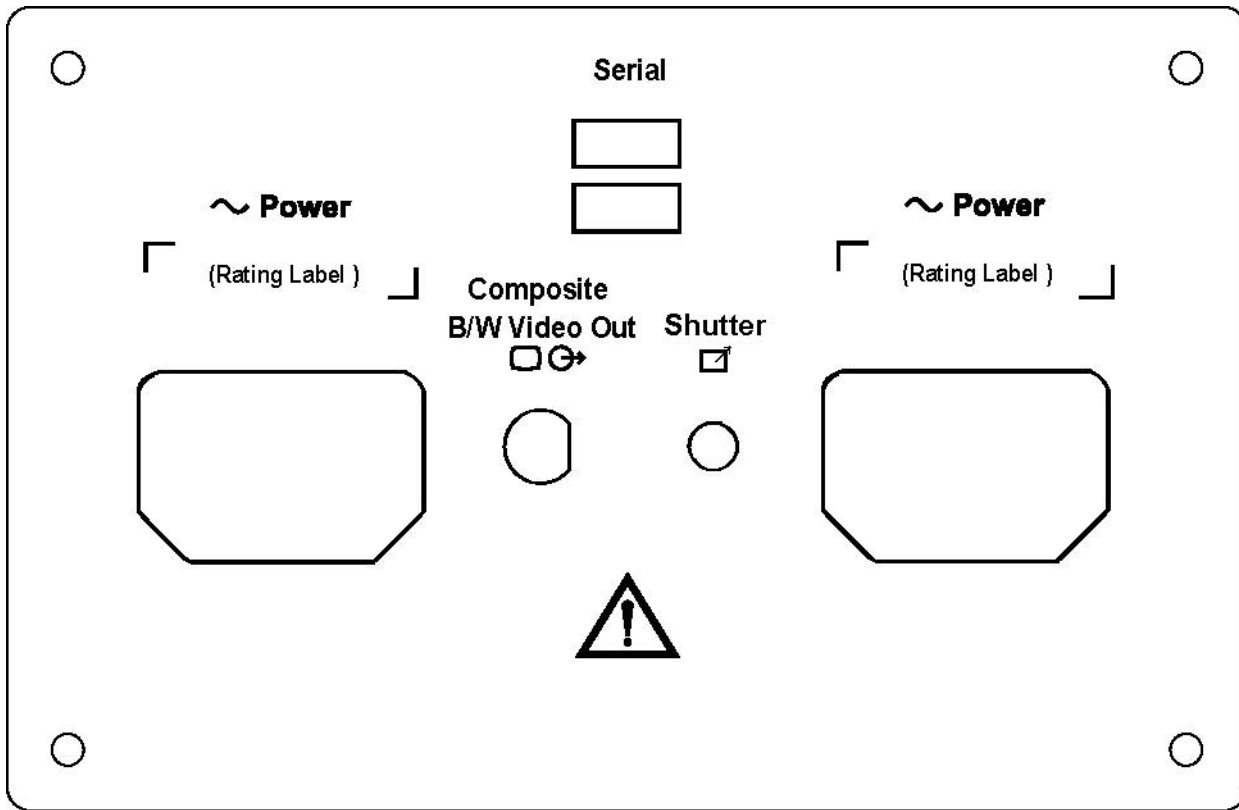


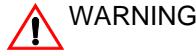
Figure 1-3 OUTSIDE MARKINGS OF LOGIQ™ 3

### 1-4-7 Dangerous Procedure Warnings

Warnings, such as the example below, precede potentially dangerous procedures throughout this manual. Instructions contained in the warnings must be followed.



**DANGEROUS VOLTAGES, CAPABLE OF CAUSING DEATH, ARE PRESENT IN THIS EQUIPMENT. USE EXTREME CAUTION WHEN HANDLING, TESTING AND ADJUSTING.**



***EXPLOSION WARNING: DO NOT OPERATE THE EQUIPMENT IN AN EXPLOSIVE ATMOSPHERE. OPERATION OF ANY ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT IN SUCH AN ENVIRONMENT CONSTITUTES A DEFINITE SAFETY HAZARD.***



***DO NOT SUBSTITUTE PARTS OR MODIFY EQUIPMENT: BECAUSE OF THE DANGER OF INTERDICTING ADDITIONAL HAZARDS, DO NOT INSTALL SUBSTITUTE PARTS OR PERFORM ANY UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION OF THE EQUIPMENT.***

### 1-4-8 Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA / Europe Only)

Follow OSHA Lockout/Tagout requirements by ensuring you are in total control of the plug.

## Section 1-5 EMC, EMI, and ESD

### 1-5-1 Electromagnetic Compatibility

Electro Magnetic Compatibility describes a level of performance of a device within its electromagnetic environment. This environment consists of the device itself and its surroundings including other equipment, power sources and persons with which the device must interface. Inadequate compatibility results when a susceptible device fails to perform as intended due interface from its environment or when the device produces unacceptable levels of emission to its environment. This interference is often referred to as radio-frequency or electromagnetic interface (RFI/EMI) and can be radiated through space or conducted over interconnecting power or signal cables. In addition to electromagnetic energy, EMC also includes possible effects from electrical fields, magnetic fields, electrostatic discharge and disturbances in the electrical power supply.

### 1-5-2 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Prevention

**DO NOT TOUCH ANY BOARDS WITH INTEGRATED CIRCUITS PRIOR TO TAKING THE NECESSARY ESD PRECAUTIONS:**



WARNING 1.)

***Always connect yourself, via an arm-wrist strap, to the advised ESD connection point located on the rear of the scanner (to the right of the power connector).***



2.) ***Follow general guide lined for handling of electrostatic sensitive equipment.***

### 1-5-3 CE Compliance

The LOGIQ™ 3 unit conforms to all applicable conducted and radiated emission limits and immunity from electrostatic discharge, radiated and conducted RF fields, magnetic fields and power line transient requirements.

Applicable standards are: 47CFR Part18, IEC/EN 60601-1-2

**NOTE:** *For CE Compliance, it is critical that all covers, screws, shielding, gaskets, mesh, clamps, are in good condition, installed tightly without skew or stress. Proper installation following all comments noted in this service manual is required in order to achieve full EMC performance.*

## Section 1-6 Customer Assistance

### 1-6-1 Contact Information

If this equipment does not work as indicated in this service manual or in the User Manual, or if you require additional assistance, please contact the local distributor or appropriate support resource, as listed below.

- Prepare the following information before you call:
- System ID serial number.
- Software version.

**For GE Service:**

**Table 1-5 GE Service**

Location	Phone Number
<b>AMERICA:</b> GE Healthcare Ultrasound Service Engineering, 9900 Innovation Drive, Wauwatosa, WI 53226  Customer Answer Center(US)	TEL: (1) 800-437-1171  FAX: (1) 414-721-3865  TEL: (1) 877-800-6776
<b>CANADA:</b> Customer Answer Center(CANADA)	TEL: (1) 262-524-5698
<b>LATIN AMERICA:</b> GE Healthcare Ultrasound Service Engineering 9900 Innovation Drive Wauwatosa, WI 53226  Customer Answer Center	TEL: (1) 262-524-5300  TEL: (1) 262-524-5698
<b>ASIA:</b> GE Ultrasound Asia (Singapore) Service Department - Ultrasound 298 Tiong Bahru Road #15-01/06 Central Plaza Singapore 169730  <b>JAPAN:</b> GE Yokogawa Medical Systems Customer Service Center	TEL: 65-291 8528  FAX: 65-272-3997  TEL: (81) 426-48-2950  FAX: (81) 426-48-2902

Table 1-5 GE Service

Location	Phone Number
<b>EUROPE:</b> GE Ultraschall Deutschland GmbH & Co. KG Beethovenstrasse 239 Postfach 11 05 60 D-42655 Solingen	TEL: 0130 81 6370 toll free  TEL: (33) 130.831.300  FAX: (49) 212.28.02.431

**1-6-2 System Manufacturer**

Table 1-6 System Manufacturer

WIPRO GE MEDICAL SYSTEMS - INDIA
WIPRO GE MEDICAL SYSTEMS ULTRASOUND GROUP.  PLOT # 4, KADUGODI INDUSTRIAL AREA, SADARAMANGALA,  BANGALORE 560067, INDIA  TEL: (91) 80-2845-2923 FAX: (91) 80-2845-2924



# Chapter 2

## Pre-Installation

### Section 2-1 Overview

#### 2-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 2

This chapter provides the information required to plan and prepare for the installation of a LOGIQ™ 3. Included are descriptions of the facility and electrical needs to be met by the purchaser of the unit.

#### 2-1-2 Chapter Contents

Table 2-1 Contents in Chapter 2

Section	Description	Page Number
2-1	Overview	2-1
2-2	General Console Requirements	2-2
2-3	Facility Needs	2-7

## Section 2-2 General Console Requirements

### 2-2-1 Console Environmental Requirements

Table 2-2 Environmental Requirements for LOGIQ™ 3 Scanners

	Operation	Storage	Transport
<b>Temperature</b>	10 - 40 degree C 50 - 104 degree F	-10 - 60 degree C 14 - 140 degree F	-40 - 60 degree C -40 - 140 degree F
<b>Humidity</b>	30 - 85% non-condensing	30 - 90% non-condensing	30 - 90% non-condensing
<b>Pressure</b>	700 - 1060hPa	700 - 1060hPa	700 - 1060hPa

Table 2-3 Environmental Requirements for an Ultrasound Room

Item	Values
<b>Power Source</b>	Refer to Table 2-4 on page 2-3.
<b>Current Rating</b>	10A (100V); 8.5A(115V); 5A(230V)
<b>Radiation Shielding</b>	NONE REQUIRED for ULTRASOUND ENERGY
<b>Temperature</b>	20-26 DEG. C (68-79 DEG F) for PATIENT COMFORT
<b>Humidity</b>	50% to 70% for PATIENT COMFORT
<b>Heat Dissipation</b>	1366 BTU/Hr.
<b>Floor Landing</b>	Approximately 680 - 800 kg/m <sup>2</sup> without Accessories
<b>Floor Condition</b>	Gradient: WITHIN 5 degrees
<b>Weight</b>	155 kg (342lbs) without Accessories

#### 2-2-1-1 Cooling

The cooling requirement for the LOGIQ™ 3 is 1366 BTU/hr. This figure does not include cooling needed for lights, people, or other equipment in the room. Each person in the room places an additional 300 BTU/hr. demand on the cooling system.

#### 2-2-1-2 Lighting

Bright light is needed for system installation, updates and repairs. However, operator and patient comfort may be optimized if the room light is subdued and indirect. Therefore a combination lighting system (dim/bright) is recommended. Keep in mind that lighting controls and dimmers can be a source of EMI which could degrade image quality. These controls should be selected to minimize possible interference.

## 2-2-2 Electrical Requirements

**NOTE:** GE Medical Systems requires a dedicated power and ground for the proper operation of its Ultrasound equipment. This dedicated power shall originate at the last distribution panel before the system.

### Sites with a mains power system with defined Neutral and Live:

The dedicated line shall consist of one phase, a neutral (not shared with any other circuit), and a full size ground wire (not shared with any other circuit) from the distribution panel to the Ultrasound outlet.

### Sites with a mains power system without a defined Neutral:

The dedicated line shall consist of one phase (two lines), not shared with any other circuit, and a full size ground wire (not shared with any other circuit) from the distribution panel to the Ultrasound outlet.

**NOTE:** Please note that image artifacts can occur, if at any time within the facility, the ground from the main facility's incoming power source to the Ultrasound unit is only a conduit.

## 2-2-3 Power Requirements

Electrical Specifications for LOGIQ™ 3.

**Table 2-4 Electrical Specifications for LOGIQ™ 3**

PARAMETER	AREA	LIMITS
Voltage Range	100V	100 VAC ± 10% (90-110 VAC)
	230V	230 VAC ±10% (207-253 VAC)
	115V	115 VAC ±10% (103-127 VAC)
Power	All applications	MAX. 860VA
Line Frequency	All applications	50/60Hz (±2Hz)
Power Transients	All applications	Less than 25% of nominal peak voltage for less than 1 millisecond for any type of transient, including line frequency, synchronous, asynchronous, or aperiodic transients.
Decaying Oscillation	All applications	Less than 15% of peak voltage for less than 1 millisecond.

### 2-2-3-1 Inrush Current

Inrush current is not a factor to consider due to inrush current limiting properties of the power supplies.

### 2-2-3-2 Site Circuit Breaker

It is recommended that the branch circuit breaker for the machine be ready accessible.



#### **POWER OUTAGE MAY OCCUR.**

**DANGER** The LOGIQ™ 3 requires a dedicated single branch circuit. To avoid circuit overload and possible loss of critical care equipment, make sure you DO NOT have any other equipment operating on the same circuit.

**2-2-3-3 Site Power Outlets**

A dedicated AC power outlet must be within reach of the unit without extension cords. Other outlets adequate for the external peripherals, medical and test equipment needed to support this unit must also be present within 1 m (3.2 ft.) of the unit. Electrical installation must meet all current local, state, and national electrical codes.

**2-2-3-4 Unit Power Plug**

If the unit arrives without the power plug, or with the wrong plug, you must contact your GE dealer or the installation engineer must supply what is locally required.

**2-2-3-5 Power Stability Requirements**

Voltage drop-out / Max 10 ms.

Power Transients

Refer table [2-4](#)

## 2-2-4 EMI Limitations

Ultrasound machines are susceptible to Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) from radio frequencies, magnetic fields, and transients in the air or wiring. Ultrasound machines also generate EMI. The LOGIQ™ 3 complies with limits as stated on the EMC label. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

Possible EMI sources should be identified before the unit is installed.

Electrical and electronic equipment may produce EMI unintentionally as the result of a defect. These sources include:

- medical lasers,
- scanners,
- cauterizing guns,
- computers,
- monitors,
- fans,
- gel warmers,
- microwave ovens,
- light dimmers
- portable phones.
- Lift

The presence of a broadcast station or broadcast van may also cause interference.

See [Table 2-5](#) for EMI Prevention tips.

**Table 2-5 EMI Prevention/Abatement**


EMI Rule	Details
Be aware of RF sources	Keep the unit at least 5 meters or 15 feet away from other EMI sources. Special shielding may be required to eliminate interference problems caused by high frequency, high powered radio or video broadcast signals.
Ground the unit	Poor grounding is the most likely reason a unit will have noisy images. Check grounding of the power cord and power outlet.
Replace all screws, RF gaskets, covers, cores	After you finish repairing or updating the system, replace all covers and tighten all screws. Any cable with an external connection requires a magnet wrap at each end. Install the shield over the front of card cage. Loose or missing covers or RF gaskets allow radio frequencies to interfere with the ultrasound signals.
Replace broken RF gaskets	If more than 20% or a pair of the fingers on an RF gasket are broken, replace the gasket. Do not turn on the unit until any loose metallic part is removed.
Do not place labels where RF gaskets touch metal	Never place a label where RF gaskets meet the unit. Otherwise, the gap created will permit RF leakage. Or, if a label has been found in such a position, move the label.
Use GE specified harnesses and peripherals	The interconnect cables are grounded and require ferrite beads and other shielding. Also, cable length, material, and routing are all important; do not change from what is specified.
Take care with cellular phones	Cellular phones may transmit a 5 V/m signal; that could cause image artifacts.
Properly dress peripheral cables	Do not allow cables to lie across the top of the card cage or hang out of the peripheral bays. Loop the excess length for peripheral cables inside the peripheral bays. Attach the monitor cables to the frame.

## 2-2-5 Probes Environmental Requirements

Table 2-6 Operation and storage Temperatures for Probes


	ELECTRONIC
Operation:	10 to 40 degree C(50 to 104 degree F)
Storage:	-20 to 50 degree C(-4 to 122 degree F)
Temperatures in degree C, conversion to degree F = degree C*(9/5) + 32)	

NOTE: *Temperature in degrees C. Conversion to Degrees F = (Degrees C \* 9/5) + 32).*

 **NOTICE** SYSTEMS AND ELECTRONIC PROBES ARE DESIGNED FOR STORAGE TEMPERATURES OF -20 TO + 50(-4 to 122 degree F) degrees C. WHEN EXPOSED TO LARGE TEMPERATURE VARIATIONS, THE PRODUCT SHOULD BE KEPT IN ROOM TEMPERATURE FOR 10 HOURS BEFORE USE.

## 2-2-6 Time and Manpower Requirements

Site preparation takes time. Begin Pre-installation checks as soon as possible. If possible, allow six weeks before delivery, for enough time to make necessary changes.

 **CAUTION** Have two people available to deliver and unpack the LOGIQ™ 3. Attempts to move the unit considerable distances or on an incline by one person could result in injury or damage or both.



## Section 2-3 Facility Needs

### 2-3-1 Purchaser Responsibilities

The work and materials needed to prepare the site is the responsibility of the purchaser. Delay, confusion, and waste of manpower can be avoided by completing pre installation work before delivery. Use the Pre installation checklist to verify that all needed steps have been taken. Purchaser responsibility includes:

- Procuring the materials required.
- Completing the preparations before delivery of the ultrasound system.
- Paying the costs for any alterations and modifications not specifically provided in the sales contract.

*NOTE: All electrical installations that are preliminary to the positioning of the equipment at the site prepared for the equipment must be performed by licensed electrical contractors. Other connections between pieces of electrical equipment, calibrations, and testing must also be performed by qualified personnel. The products involved (and the accompanying electrical installations) are highly sophisticated and special engineering competence is required. All electrical work on these products must comply with the requirements of applicable electrical codes. The purchaser of GE equipment must only utilize qualified personnel to perform electrical servicing on the equipment.*

The desire to use a non-listed or customer provided product or to place an approved product further from the system than the interface kit allows presents challenges to the installation team. To avoid delays during installation, such variances should be made known to the individuals or group performing the installation at the earliest possible date (preferably prior to the purchase).

The ultrasound suite must be clean prior to delivery of the machine. Carpets are not recommended because they collect dust and create static. Potential sources of EMI (electromagnetic interference) should also be investigated before delivery. Dirt, static, and EMI can negatively impact system reliability.

### 2-3-2 Required Features

*NOTE: GE Medical Systems requires a dedicated power and ground for the proper operation of its Ultrasound equipment. This dedicated power shall originate at the last distribution panel before the system.*

#### **Sites with a mains power system with defined Neutral and Live:**

The dedicated line shall consist of one phase, a neutral (not shared with any other circuit), and a full size ground wire from the distribution panel to the Ultrasound outlet.

#### **Sites with a mains power system without a defined Neutral:**

The dedicated line shall consist of one phase (two lines), not shared with any other circuit, and a full size ground wire from the distribution panel to the Ultrasound outlet.

*NOTE: Please note that image artifacts can occur, if at any time within the facility, the ground from the main facility's incoming power source to the Ultrasound unit is only a conduit.*

- Dedicated single branch power outlet of adequate amperage meeting all local and national codes which is located less than 2.5 m (8 ft.) from the unit's proposed location
- Door opening is at least 76 cm (30 in) wide
- Proposed location for unit is at least 0.3 m (1 ft.) from the wall for proper cooling of the system
- Power outlet and place for any external peripheral are within 2 m (6.5 ft) of each other with peripheral within 1 m of the unit to connect cables.

*NOTE: The LOGIQ™ 3 has three outlets in the unit. One is for the on board peripheral and two for off board peripherals.*

- Power outlets for other medical equipment
- Power outlets for test equipment and modem within 1 m (3.2 ft) of unit
- Clean and protected space to store transducers (in their cases or on a rack)
- Material to safely clean probes (done with a plastic container, never metal)

**2-3-2-1 Desirable Ultrasound Room Facilities**

- Door is at least 92cm (3 ft.) wide
- Circuit breaker for dedicated power outlet is easily accessible
- Lab sink with hot and cold water
- Receptacle for bio-hazardous waste, like used probe sheaths
- Emergency oxygen supply
- Storage for linens and film
- Medical equipment storage
- Hospital grade equipment electrical outlet
- Analog telephone line for connection to InSite
- Nearby waiting room, lavatory, and dressing room
- Dual level lighting (bright and dim)
- Lockable cabinet for GE Software & proprietary manuals
- Trash bin.



2-3-2-2 Minimal Floor Plan Suggestion

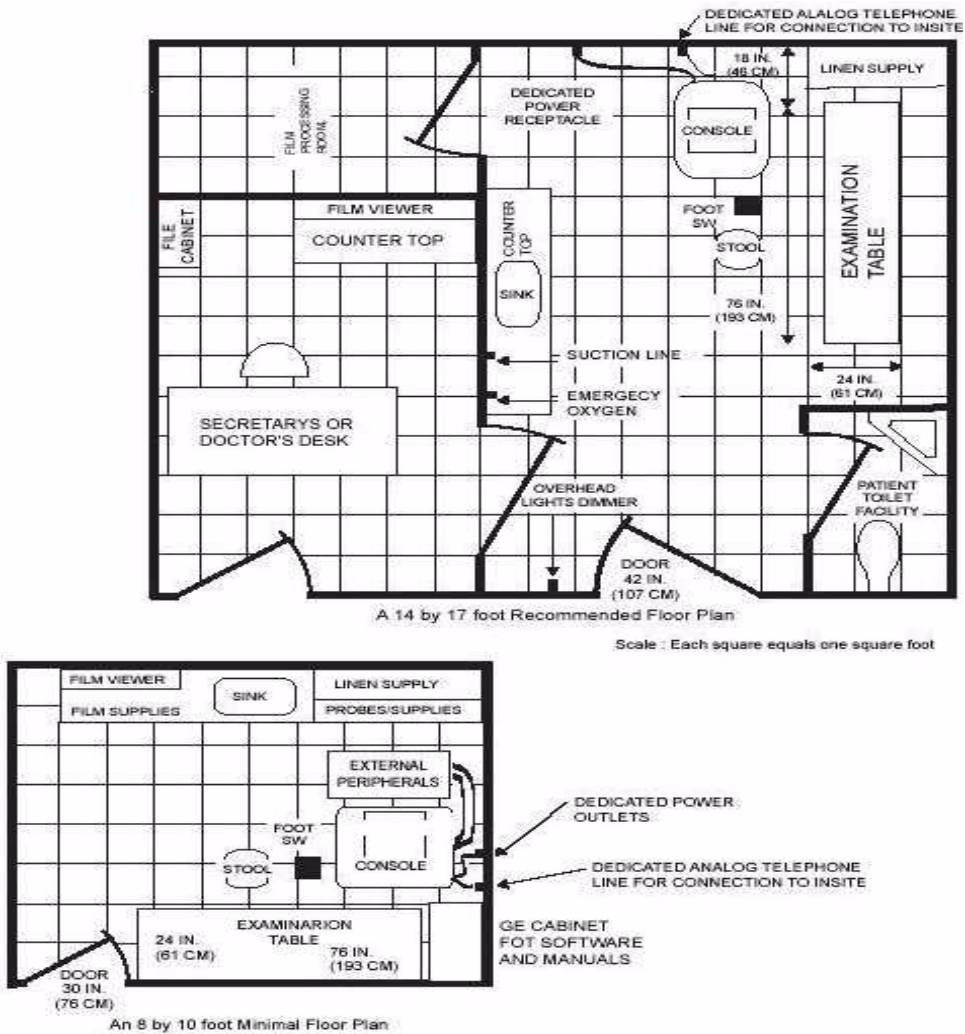


Figure 2-1 Minimal Floor Plan

## **2-3-3 Networking Pre-installation Requirements**

### **2-3-3-1 Purpose of DICOM Network Function**

DICOM services provide the operator with clinically useful features for moving images and patient information over a hospital network. Examples of DICOM services include the transfer of images to workstations for viewing or transferring images to remote printers. As an added benefit, transferring images in this manner frees up the on-board monitor and peripherals, enabling viewing to be done while scanning continues. With DICOM, images can be archived, stored, and retrieved faster, easier, and at a lower cost.

### **2-3-3-2 DICOM Option Pre-installation Requirements**

To configure the LOGIQ™ 3 to work with other network connections, the site's network administrator must provide information to complete the form in *Chapter 2 - Worksheet for DICOM Network Information*.

Information must include:

- A host name, local port number, AE Title, IP address and Sub Net Mask for the LOGIQ™ 3.
- The IP addresses for the default gateway and other routers at the site for ROUTING INFORMATION.
- The host name, IP address, port and AE Title for each device the site wants connected to the LOGIQ™ 3 for DICOM APPLICATION INFORMATION. A field for the make (manufacturer) and the revision of the device, is also included. This information may be useful for solving errors.

2-3-3-2 DICOM Option Pre-installation Requirements (cont'd)

LOGIQ™ 3  
 Host Name  Local Port  IP Address  .  .  .   
 AE Title  Net Mask  .  .  .

ROUTING INFORMATION

	Destination IP Addresses				GATEWAY IP Addresses			
					Default			
ROUTER1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
ROUTER2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
ROUTER3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

DICOM APPLICATION INFORMATION

	NAME	MAKE/REVISION	AE TITLE	IP ADDRESSES	PORT
Store 1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Store 2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Store 3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Store 4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Store 5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Store 6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Work List	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Storage Commit	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
MPPS	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/> . <input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Figure 2-2 Worksheet for DICOM Network Information

This page was intentionally left blank.

---

# Chapter 3

## Installation

### Section 3-1 Overview

#### 3-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 3

This chapter contains information needed to install the unit. Included are references to a procedure that describes how to receive and unpack the equipment and how to file a damage or loss claim

#### 3-1-2 Chapter Contents

**Table 3-1 Contents in Chapter 3**

Section	Description	Page Number
3-1	Overview	3-1
3-2	Receiving and Unpacking LOGIQ™ 3	3-3
3-2-1	Safety Reminders	3-7
3-2-2	Moving into Position	3-8
3-2-3	Adjusting System Clock	3-8
3-2-4	Product Locator Installation Card	3-8
3-3	Preparing for Installation	3-9
3-4	Completing the Installation	3-10
3-5	System Configuration	3-16
3-6	Storage And Operation Requirements	3-18
3-7	Optional Peripherals	3-19
3-9	Connectivity Installation Worksheet	3-32
3-10	Loading Base System Software	3-33
3-11	Loading Application Software	3-37
3-12	Paperwork	3-40

### 3-1-3 Average Installation Time

**Table 3-2 Average Installation Time**

Description	Average Installation Time	Comments
Unpacking the scanner	Approximately 0.5 hour	
Scanner wo/options	Approximately 0.5 hour	Dependant on the required configuration

The LOGIQ™ 3 has been designed to be installed and checked out by an experienced service technician in approximately **Four** hours. LOGIQ™ 3 console with optional may take slightly longer.


*NOTE: For Installing Options average installation time is approximately between 0.5 - 2hrs depending on the required configuration*

### 3-1-4 Installation Warnings

- 1.) Since the LOGIQ™ 3 weighs approximately 155 kg (342 lbs) without options, preferably two people should unpack it. Two people are also preferable for installing any additional bulky items.
- 2.) There are no operator serviceable components. To prevent shock, do not remove any covers or panels. Should problems or malfunctions occur, unplug the power cord. Only qualified service personnel should carry out servicing and troubleshooting.

*NOTE: For information regarding packing labels, refer to LABELS ON PACKAGE.*

- 3.) After being transported, the unit may be very cold or hot. If this is the case, allow the unit to acclimate before you turn it on. It requires one hour for each 2.5°C increment in it's temperature, if it is below 10°C or above 40°C.

 **Equipment damage possibility. Turning the system on without acclimation after arriving at site may cause the system to be damaged**  
**CAUTION**

°C	60	55	50	45	40	35	30	25	20	15	10	5	0	-5	-10	-15	-20	-25	-30	-35	-40
°F	140	131	122	113	104	96	86	77	68	59	50	41	32	23	14	5	-4	-13	-22	-31	-40
hrs	8	6	4	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20

**Table 3-3 Time for Settlement**

## Section 3-2 Receiving and Unpacking LOGIQ™ 3

When a new system arrives, ensure that none of the components are damaged or in short supply. If shipping damage or shortage occurs, contact the address shown in Chapter 1.

The Packaging/Unpacking Procedure.

Topics discussed in the Packaging/Unpacking Procedure:

- 1.) Check the Shipment,
- 2.) Unpack the Unit,
- 3.) Handling Incomplete or Damaged Shipment

Please read these procedures before packing/unpacking the LOGIQ™ 3.

We strongly advise you to store the LOGIQ™ 3 packing material in undamaged condition in case of future transportation.



**Do not lift the unit by the Keyboard. This may cause equipment damage.**

### CAUTION



**The crate with the LOGIQ™ 3 weighs approximately 195 kg. Be prepared for a sudden shift of weight as the unit is removed from its base (pallet).**

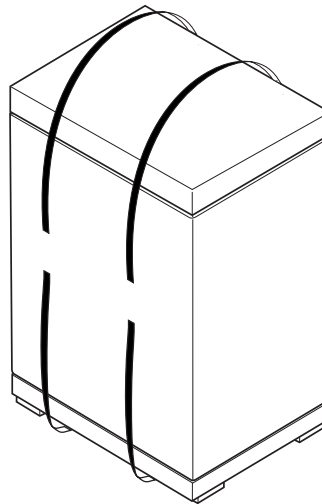
### CAUTION



**Inspect the Shcik watch and Tilt watch. Ensure that they are not fused. (Refer to the instructions attached on the packing Box on howto check the Shcik watch and Tiltwatch)**

### CAUTION

- 1.) Cut the two Metal Bands.



**Figure 3-1 Cutting the two metal bands.**

## Section 3-2 Receiving and Unpacking LOGIQ™ 3 (cont'd)

- 2.) Lift the TOP Cover up and off.

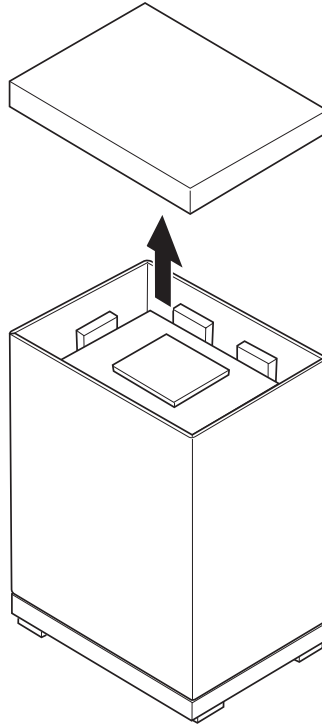


Figure 3-2 Removing the top cover

- 3.) Remove the Monitor Cap up and off...

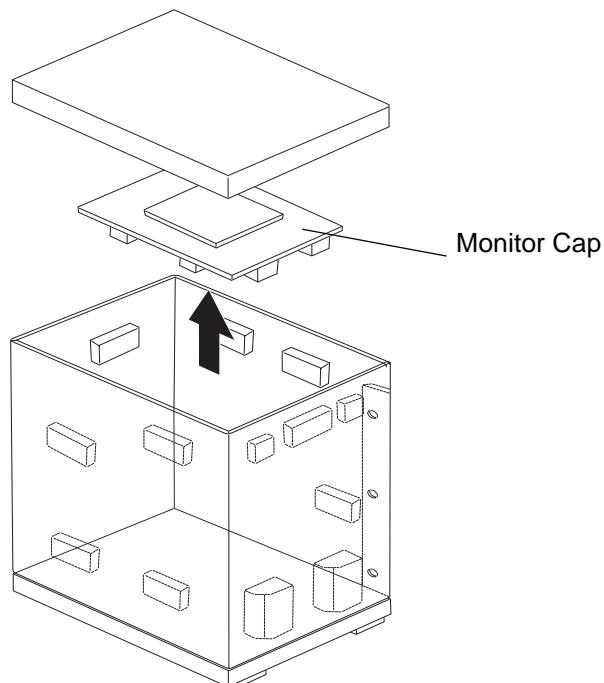


Figure 3-3 Removing the Monitor Cap



## Section 3-2 Receiving and Unpacking LOGIQ™ 3 (cont'd)

- 4.) Remove the three Plastic Joints from the Outer Sleeve.(Refer to the Labels on the Packing Box for more detailed instructions)
- 5.) Remove the Outer Sleeve.
- 6.) Remove the Inner Sleeve.

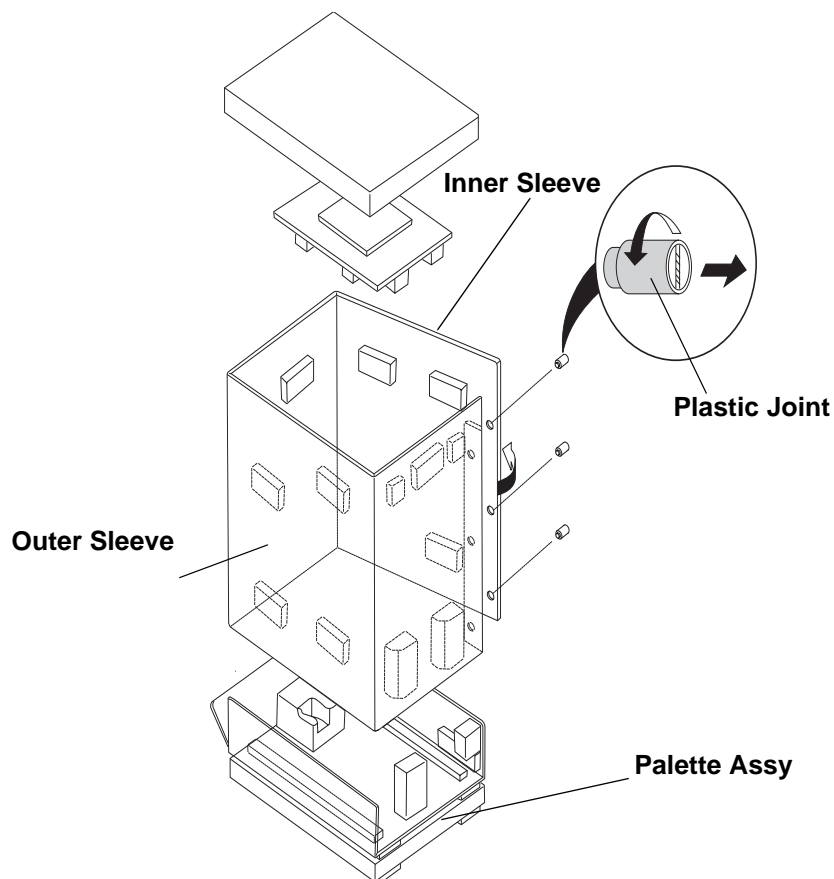


Figure 3-4 Removing Plastic Joints and Sleeves

## Section 3-2 Receiving and Unpacking LOGIQ™ 3 (cont'd)

- 7.) Remove the Plastic Wrapping around the LOGIQ™ 3.
- 8.) Remove the Monitor Support and Monitor Packing.
- 9.) Remove the adhesive tapes attached at the four corners of the Top Cover.
- 10.) Put the Ramp Board on floor and prepare the slope to put the console down.
- 11.) Unlock the brakes on the front castors, then carefully put the console off the Palette.

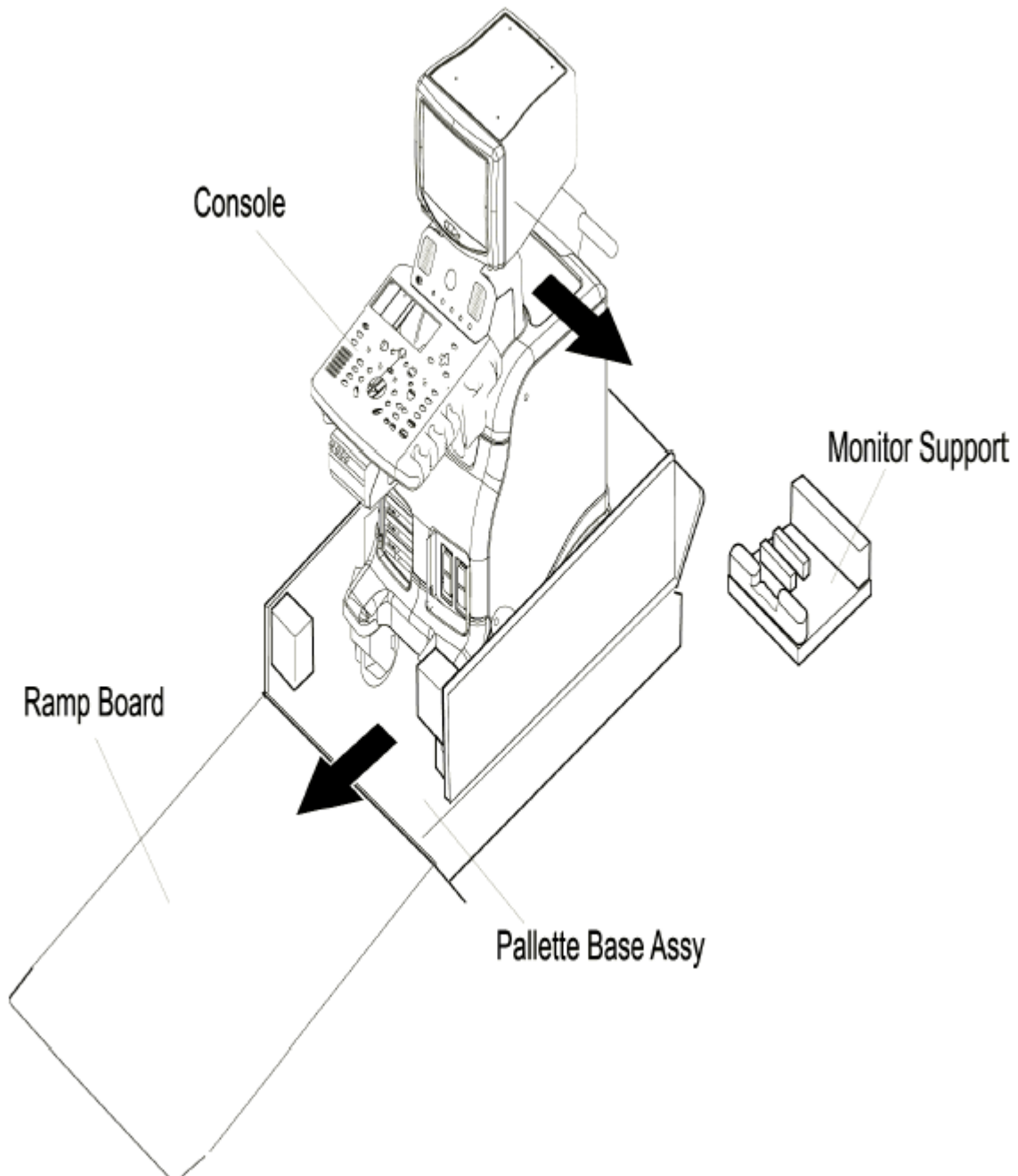


Figure 3-5 Moving the LOGIQ™ 3 from the crate

### 3-2-1 Safety Reminders



**DANGER** WHEN USING ANY TEST INSTRUMENT THAT IS CAPABLE OF OPENING THE AC GROUND LINE (I.E., METER'S GROUND SWITCH IS OPEN), DON'T TOUCH THE UNIT!



If the unit is very cold or hot, do not turn on its power until it has had a chance to acclimate to its operating environment.

**CAUTION**



To prevent electrical shock, connect the unit to a properly grounded power outlet. Do not use a three to two prong adapter. This defeats safety grounding.

**CAUTION**



Do NOT wear the ESD wrist strap when you work on live circuits and more than 30 V peak is present.

**CAUTION**



Do not operate this unit unless all board covers and frame panels are securely in place. System performance and cooling require this.

**CAUTION**



#### OPERATOR MANUAL(S)

The User Manual(s) should be fully read and understood before operating the LOGIQ™ 3 and

**CAUTION** kept near the unit for quick reference.



#### ACOUSTIC OUTPUT HAZARD

Although the ultrasound energy transmitted from the LOGIQ™ 3 probe is within AIUM/NEMA

**CAUTION** standards, avoid unnecessary exposure. Ultrasound energy can produce heat and mechanical damage.



**NOTE:** Check the shipping container for special instructions. Verify that the container is intact. In some cases a secondary container may be used. If so, ask the carrier for unpacking instructions.

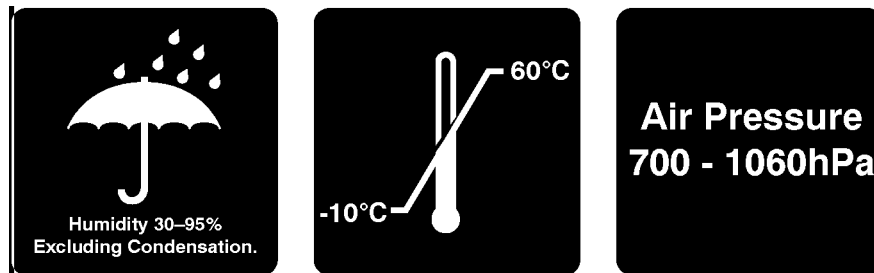


Figure 3-6 LABELS ON PACKAGE

### 3-2-2 Moving into Position



**Do not lift the unit by the Keyboard.  
 Do not tilt the unit more than 5 degrees to avoid tipping it over.**

**CAUTION**



**Equipment Damage Possibility. Lifting the console by holding covers may damage the covers.  
 Do not lift the console by holding any covers.**

**CAUTION**



In general, a single adult can move the LOGIQ™ 3 along an even surface with no steep grades. At least two people should move the machine when large humps, grooves, or grades are encountered. (It is better to pull from the rear rather than push from the front of the unit). Before moving, store all loose parts in the unit. Wrap transducers in soft cloth or foam to prevent damage.

Although LOGIQ™ 3 is a compact and mobile machine, two people should move it over rough surfaces or up and down grades.


### 3-2-3 Adjusting System Clock

Set the system clock for the LOGIQ™ 3 to the local time. For procedure of adjusting the system clock, refer to 4-5 Software Configuration Checks, in Chapter 4, FUNCTIONAL CHECKS.

### 3-2-4 Product Locator Installation Card

Fill out proper customer Information on the Product Locator Installation Card. Mail this Installation Card "Product Locator" to the address corresponding to your pole.

*NOTE: The Product Locator Installation Card shown may not be same as the provided Product Locator card.*

	Mailing Address GE Medical Systems Product Locator File P.O. Box 414 Milwaukee, WI 53201-0414					
	DESCRIPTION	FDA	MODEL	REV	SERIAL	
PREPARE FOR ORDERS THAT DO NOT HAVE A LOCATOR INSTALLATION REPORT  SYSTEM ID NUMBER <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 150px; height: 15px; margin-top: 5px;"></div>			OCP	BS	ORD	DATE (MO-DA-YR)
			DIST.-COUNTRY	ROOM		EMPLOYEE NO.
PRINTED IN USA INSTALLATION  <b>INSTALLATION</b>			CUSTOMER NO.			
			DESTINATION - NAME AND ADDRESS			
			_____			
			_____			
			ZIP CODE			

PRODUCT LOCATOR INSTALLATION CARD

## Section 3-3 Preparing for Installation

### 3-3-1 Verify Customer Order

Compare items received by the customer to that which is listed on the delivery order. Report any items that are missing, back ordered or damaged.

### 3-3-2 Physical Inspection

#### 3-3-2-1 Systems Voltage Settings

Verify that the recieved scanner is set to the correct voltage.

The Voltage ratings for the LOGIQ™ 3 Scanner is found on Rating label near the Circuit Breaker at the rear of the system



**WARNING** **CONNECTING A LOGIQ™ 3 SCANNER TO THE WRONG VOLTAGE LEVEL WILL MOST LIKELY DESTROY THE SCANNER.**

#### 3-3-2-2 Video Formats

Check that the video format is set to the locally used video standard, NTSC or PAL. This can be done in the *Utilities* menu. (Refer to Chapter 16 of the Basic Users Manual for the procedure for changinh the settings)

### 3-3-3 EMI Protection

This unit has been designed to minimize the effects of Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI). Many of the covers, shields, and screws are provided primarily to protect the system from image artifacts caused by this interference. For this reason, it is imperative that all covers and hardware are installed and secured before the unit is put into operation.

### 3-3-4 Checking the Components

When a new system arrives, check that nonne of the components are damaged or in short supply. If shipping damage or shortage occurs, contact the address shown in Chapter 1.



**CAUTION** **If the Power Plug is Modified or replaced to Suit the local Conditions and regulations, Ground continuity check should be performed between Ground Pin on the Plug and the Metal Part on the LOGIQ™ 3. Refer Section 10-7-4 for more details.**

## Section 3-4 Completing the Installation

### 3-4-1 System Specifications

#### 3-4-1-1 Physical Dimensions

The physical dimensions of the LOGIQ™ 3 unit are summarized in [Table 3-4 on page 10](#) .  
The Size of LOGIQ™ 3, with monitor and peripherals is shown in [Figure 3-7 on page 11](#)

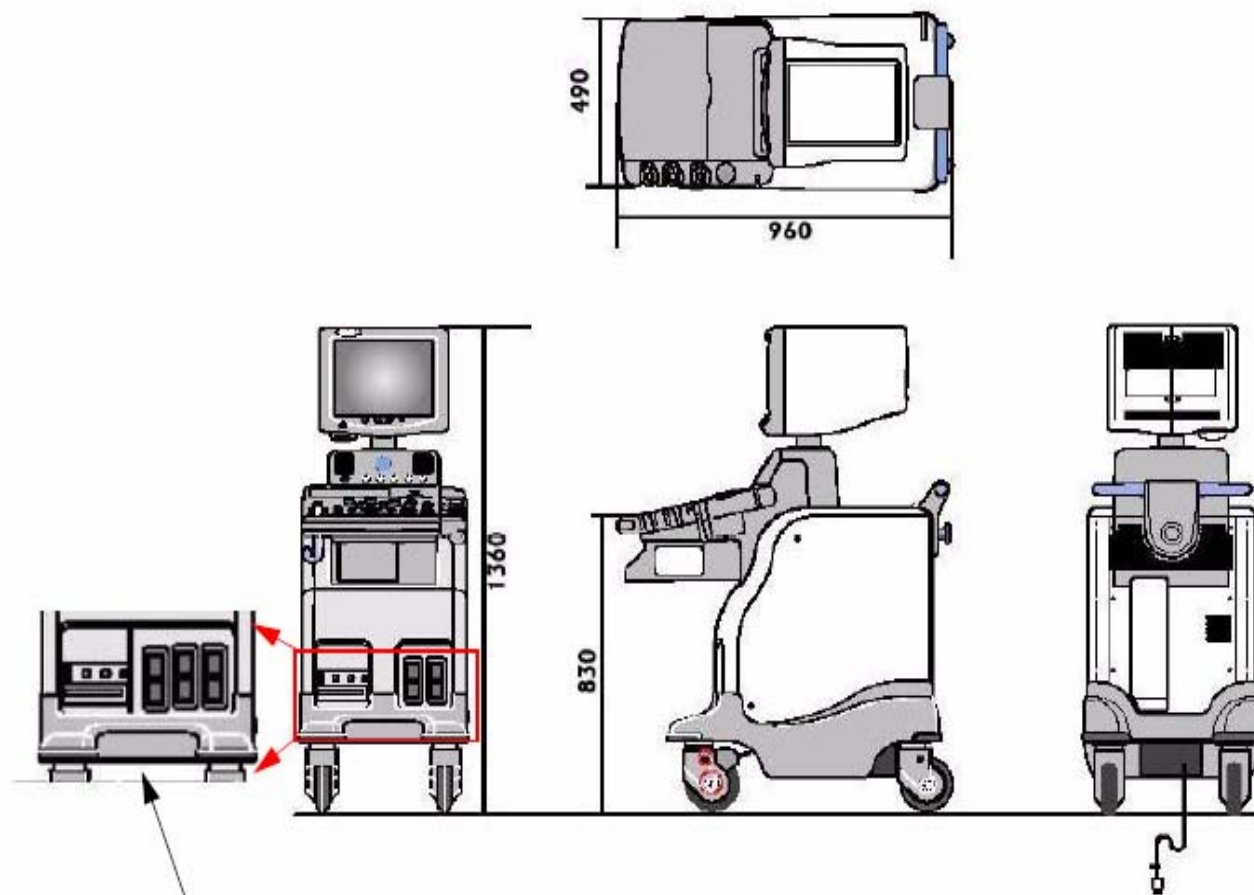
**Table 3-4 Physical Dimension of LOGIQ™ 3**

Height	Width	Depth	Unit
136	49.0	96	cm
53.54	19.29	37.79	inches

WEIGHT: 155kg (342lbs)

NOTE: Length is in mm

Variation: +/- 5%



The LOGIQ™ 3 Expert will have 3 Probe Ports as seen here

Figure 3-7 OVERALL DIMENSIONS

### 3-4-1-2 Weight with Monitor and without Peripherals

The Weight of LOGIQ™ 3 with monitor, without peripherals

**Table 3-5 Weight of LOGIQ™ 3**

Model	Weight [Kg]	Weight [lbs]
LOGIQ™ 3	155	342

### 3-4-1-3 Acoustic Noise Output:

Less than 70dB (A) according to DIN 45635 - 19 - 01 - KL2.

## 3-4-2 Electrical Specifications

Electrical conduit, junction boxes, outlets, circuit breakers, and switches should be in place before installing the LOGIQ™ 3 console

**Table 3-6 Electrical Specification for LOGIQ™ 3**

System	Voltage	Current	Frequency
1	100 ~ VAC	10A	50-60 Hz
2	115 ~ VAC	8.2A	50-60 Hz
3	230 ~ VAC	4,1A	50-60 HZ

## 3-4-3 Probe (Transducer) Connection

- 1.) Connect a transducer to the upper transducer receptacle as follows:
  - A.) Ensure that the transducer twist lock lever points towards the 9 o'clock position.
  - B.) Insert the transducer connector on the receptacle guide pin until it touches the receptacle mating surface.
  - C.) Twist the transducer twist lock lever to the 2 o'clock position to lock it in place. Twist the lever to the 9 o'clock position to disconnect the transducer.

**NOTE:** It is not necessary to turn OFF power to connect or disconnect a transducer.

Connect the main power cable to a hospital grade power receptacle with the proper rated voltage checked during pre installation. Never use a three-to-two prong adapter; this defeats the safety ground.

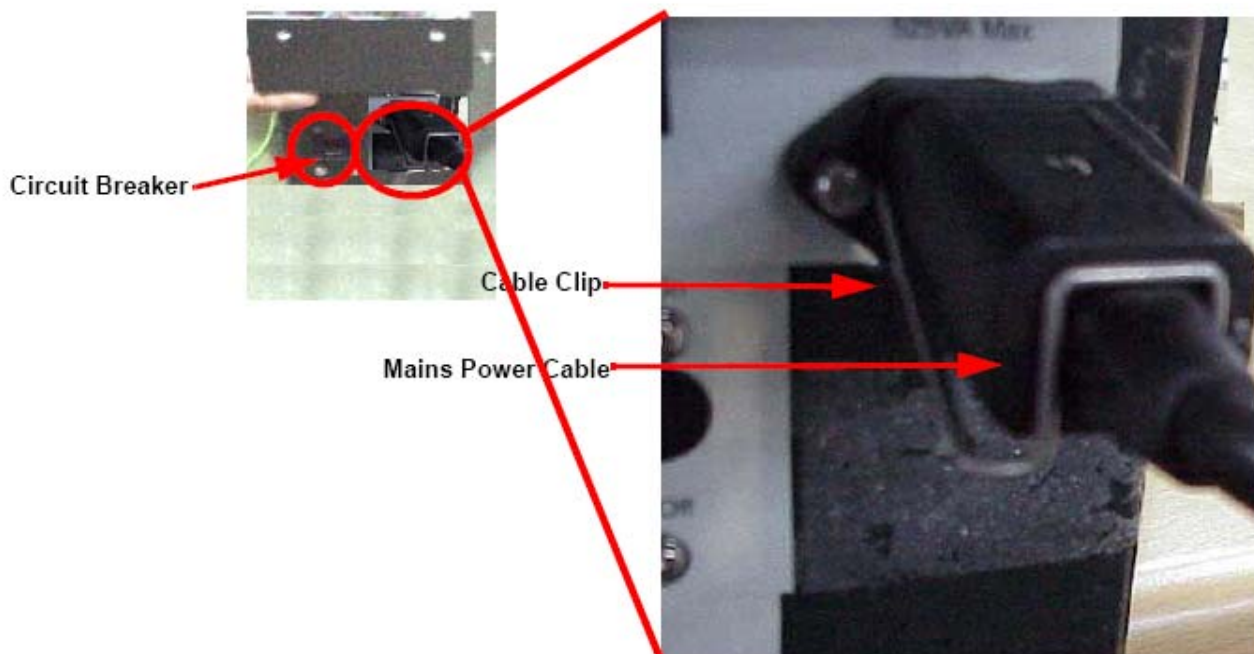
## 3-4-4 Power On / Boot Up

**NOTE:** After turning off a system, wait at least ten seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.

### 3-4-4-1 Scanner Power On

- 1.) Connect the Power Cable to the back of the system.
- 2.) Ensure the Cable Clip slips securely over the shoulders on the molded plug.
- 3.) Connect the Main Power Cable to a hospital grade power receptacle with the proper rated voltage. Never use an adapter that would defeat the safety ground.
- 4.) Switch ON the Circuit Breaker at the rear of the system.



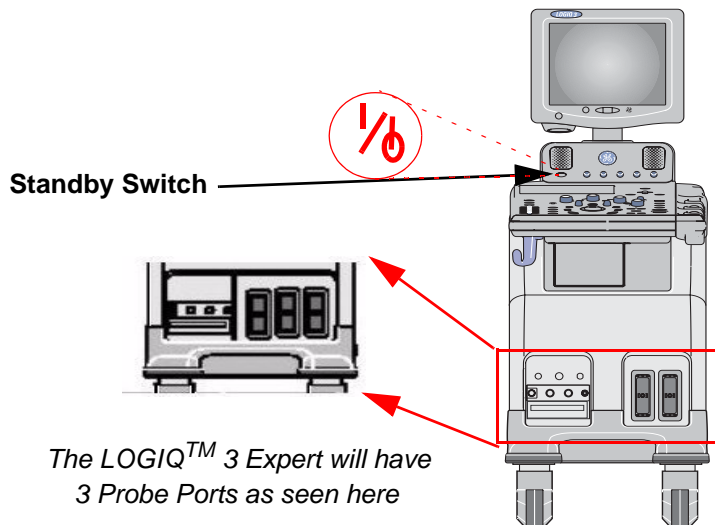


**Figure 3-8 Circuit Breaker and Power Cable on Back of Scanner**

When power is applied to the scanner and the rear Circuit Breaker is turned ON, power is distributed to the Transformer Assembly.

### 3-4-4-2 Back-end Processor Boot Up

Press the **Standby** switch on the Control Panel once.



**Figure 3-9 Standby Switch for Back-end Processor Boot Up**

When the **Standby** switch on the Control Panel is pressed once, the Power is distributed to the Front-End, to the Peripheral outlets and to the Back End Processor. The Back End Processor starts and the software is initiated to start the scanner.

No status messages are displayed during this process.

### 3-4-5 Power Off/ Shutdown

**NOTE:** After turning off a system, wait at least ten seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.

#### 3-4-5-1 Back-end Processor Power Down

- 1.) Press the **Standby** switch on the Control Panel once to display the SYSTEM - EXIT menu.
- 2.) Select Shutdown from the SYSTEM - EXIT menu.



**Figure 3-10 System Exit Menu for Back-end Processor Power Down**

3-4-5-2 Scanner Shutdown

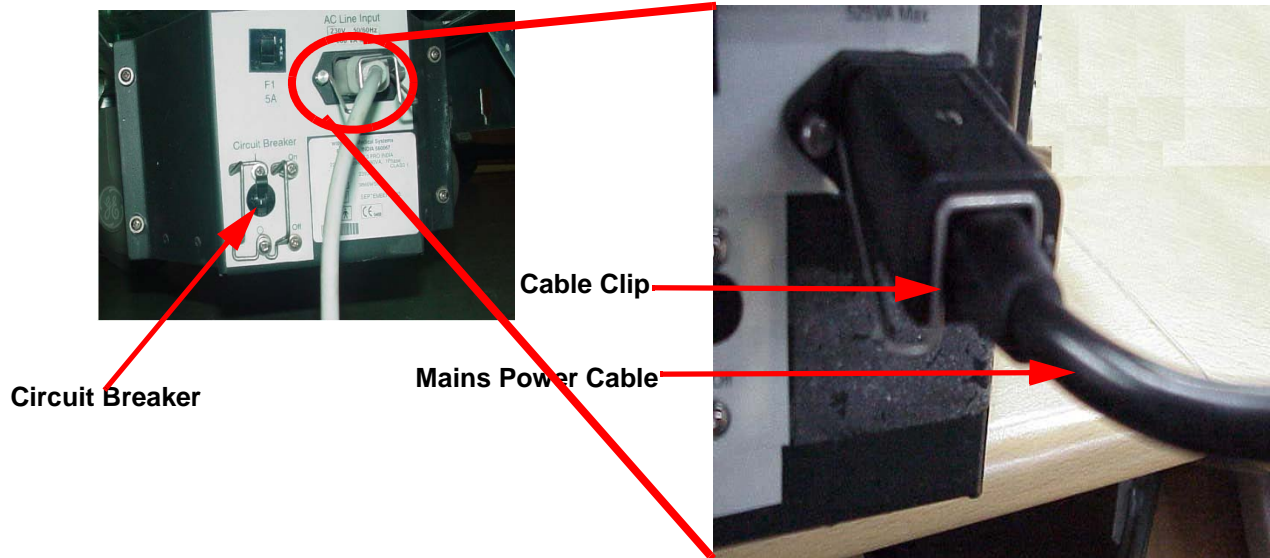


Figure 3-11 Circuit Breaker and Power Cable on Back of Scanner

- 1.) Switch OFF the Circuit Breaker at the back of the system.
- 2.) Disconnect the Mains Power Cable if necessary. *For example:* Relocating the scanner.



NOTICE

Disconnecting the Mains Power Cable *before* switching OFF the Circuit Breaker will activate the uninterruptible power system (UPS) in the backend processor, forcing an ordered shutdown of the system.



NOTICE

The UPS serves *only* as a battery backup that allows for a soft shut-down of the scanner to prevent file corruption. **IT DOES NOT REGULATE INCOMING VOLTAGE.**

## Section 3-5 System Configuration

### 3-5-1 System Configuration

#### 3-5-1-1 System Settings

Table 3-1 System Configuration

Configuration Category	Description
Settings	Enables the user or service personnel to set the date, time, unit, language, basic information about the organization such as the institution name and department.

- 1.) Power OFF the scanner.
- 2.) The SYSTEM EXIT window appears. Click on **Logoff**.



Figure 3-12 System EXIT window

- 3.) The message window appears. Click on OK.
- 4.) The OPERATOR LOGIN window appears. Change the User level to **Admin**, then enter **Password**, Then Click on **OK**

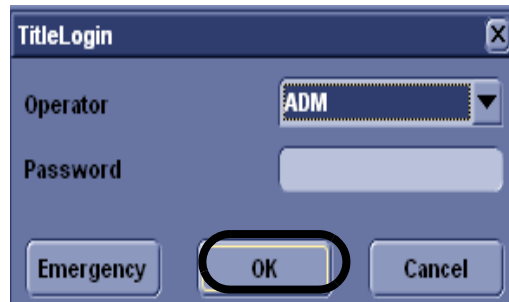


Figure 3-13 Operator Login Window

- 5.) Select **Utilities > System**
- 6.) Set the **Hospital name, Department, Date and Time, Language, and Units.**
- 7.) Click on Save the changes or cancel to revert back to previous settings.
- 8.) Click on Exit or Utilities to terminate the utility function.



Figure 3-14 Utilities Window

## Section 3-6 Storage And Operation Requirements

The LOGIQ™ 3 is shipped in a single container excluding PROBES. Shipping weight is approximately 430 lbs (195kg). The size of the container is B120 cm x W66 cm x H139 cm. (47 in. x 26 in. x 55 in). Table 3-1 provides a summary of temperature, atmospheric pressure, and humidity tolerances for shipping, installation, and operation.

**Table 3-2 STORAGE AND OPERATION REQUIREMENTS**

Parameter	Storage	Operation
Temperature (Deg C) (Deg F)	-10 to 60 14 to 140	10 to 40 50 to 104
Atmospheric Pressure (hPa)	700 to 1060	700 to 1060
Humidity (%) (non-condensing)	30 to 95	30 to 85

## Section 3-7 Optional Peripherals

### 3-7-1 Optional Peripherals/Peripheral Connection

See the Internal and External I/O description in Chapter 5.

#### 3-7-1-1 Approved peripherals

The tables below shows the suggested optional peripherals for LOGIQ™ 3. B/W Video Printer is the only On-board peripheral. All other peripherals are Off-board.

**Table 3-3 List of Recording Devices**

Device	Manufacturer	Model	Video Signal
B/W Video Printer	SONY	UP-895MDW UP-D895MDW UP-897MDW UP-D897MD	NTSC/PAL/USB
B/W Video Printer	Mitsubishi	P91W P91DW P93DW	NTSC/PAL/USB
Video Cassette Recorder	SONY	SVO-9500MD SVO-9500-MDP	NTSC PAL
Video Cassette Recorder	Mitsubishi	MD3000E MD3000U	PAL NTSC
Video Cassette Recorder	Panasonic	AG-MD835P AG-MD835E	NTSC PAL
A6 Color Video Printer	SONY	UP-21MD UPD-21MD USB UPD-23MD USB	NTSC/PAL
A6 Color Video Printer	Mitsubishi	CP900UM	
A5 Color Video Printer	SONY	UP51MD	NTSC/PAL
PC Printer	HP	HP 990CXi HP1200 HP6122 HP5652/HP5650 HPK550	
Color Video Printer	Mitsubishi	CP 900E CP 900DW	

**Table 3-4 USB Devices**

Device	Device Name	Manufacturer	Device Type	Memory Size
USB	JetFlashTS256 M	Transcend	Digital	256MB USB 2.0 Flash Memory
USB	Data traveller 2.0	Kingston	Digital	512MB USB 2.0 Flash Memory

**NOTE:** See each option installation instructions for installation and connection procedures.

3-7-1-2 Connecting Cables


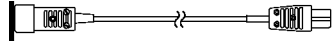
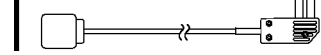
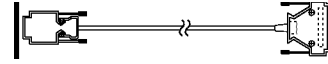
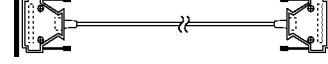

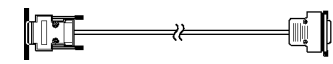
 **Equipment damage possibility. Be sure to use the following recommended connecting cables to connect recording devices and a network with LOGIQ™ 3 console. Failure to do so would result CAUTION in unstable system behaviour and can possibly damage the Equipment**

Table 3-5 LIST OF CONNECTING CABLES

Name	Part No.	Figure	NOTE
Power Cable	P9509EE		Use only approved IEC Couplers for peripherals connection to System Rear panel
	P9509MH		Used only for installing Peripherals on front panel of the console
RS232C Cable	P9509MN		For control signals
	P9509NA		For InSite connection
Mini-Plug Cable	P9509BE		For control signals (used only for B/W video printer)
Ethernet Cable	2195662		For DICOM capability Included in the DICOM Support option with Transceivers



3-7-1-3 Power Consumption of Optional Peripherals

Table 3-6 Power Consumption of Optional Recording Devices

Device	Manufacturer	Model	Power Consumption (VA)
B/W Video Printer	SONY	UP-895MDW	133
		UP-D895MDW	133
		UP-897 MDW	133
		UP-D897MD	133
B/W Video Printer	Mitsubishi	P91W	144
		P91DW	144
		P93DW	144
Video Cassette Recorder	SONY	SVO-9500MD	72
		SVO-9500-MDP	72
Video Cassette Recorder	Mitsubishi	MD3000E	46
		MD3000U	46
Video Cassette Recorder	Panasonic	AG-MD835P	39
		AG-MD835E	39
A6 Color Video Printer	SONY	UP-21MD	216
		UP-21MD USB	180
		UPD-23 MD	230
A6 Color Video Printer	Mitsubishi	CP900UM	264
			264
A5 Color Video Printer	SONY	UP51MD	336
PC Printer	HP	HP 990CXi	60
		HP1200	72
		HP6122	32
		HP5652/HP5650	
PC Printer	Epson	CP 900E	44
		CP 900DW	44

NOTE: At Any point of time, only one peripheral should be activated.

### 3-7-2 Available Probes

See in specification in the LOGIQ™ 3 Reference Manual for Probes and intended use.  
See Chapter 9 - Renewal Parts for Part Numbers to be used when ordering new or replacement probes.

**Table 3-7 LIST OF TRANSDUCERS**

Probe Name	Material of Headshell	Area of Using	TYPE	Catalog Number	Part Number
3C	PES	Abdomen, OB/GYN, Urology	Convex	H40412LB	2286354
5C	PES	Abdomen, OB/GYN, Urology	Convex	H40412LA	2294516
8C	PES	Abdomen, OB/GYN, Urology	Convex	H41762LM	2348094
BE9C *	PES	Urology	Convex	H40482LA	2389382
3.5C	PES	Abdomen, OB/GYN, Urology	Convex	H4901PE	2296158
3S	NORYL	Cardiac, Transcranial	Sector	H4550SZ	2323337
7S	NORYL	Cardiac, Transcranial	Sector	H4000P	2263669
8L	NORYL	Vascular, Small Parts, Musculoskeletal, Masso sonography	Linear	H40482L	5140738
10LB	NORYL	Vascular, Small Parts, Musculoskeletal, Masso sonography	Linear	H45202LM	2253846
10L *	NORYL	Vascular, Small Parts, Musculoskeletal, Masso sonography	Linear	H41762LK	2294523
12L *	NORYL	Vascular, Small Parts, Musculoskeletal, Masso sonography	Linear	H41762LL	2295377
E8C	NORYL/PBT	TRANSVAGINAL	Micro_Convex	H40412LE	2294641

NOTE: \* Indicates Probe Exclusive to LOGIQ 3 Expert

NOTE: PES: Polyethersulfone NORYL: Modified Polyphenylene Oxide PU: Polyurethane  
PBT: Polybutylene Terephthalate ABS: Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene

### 3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel

Connection to the Peripherals and Accessories can be established by connecting to the LOGIQ™ 3 Rear panel.

Located on the panel are video input and output connectors, audio input and output, footswitch connector, power connector and control connections for VCR, printer and service tools.

This section indicates the pin assignment for each connector (1 through 8).

3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel (cont'd).

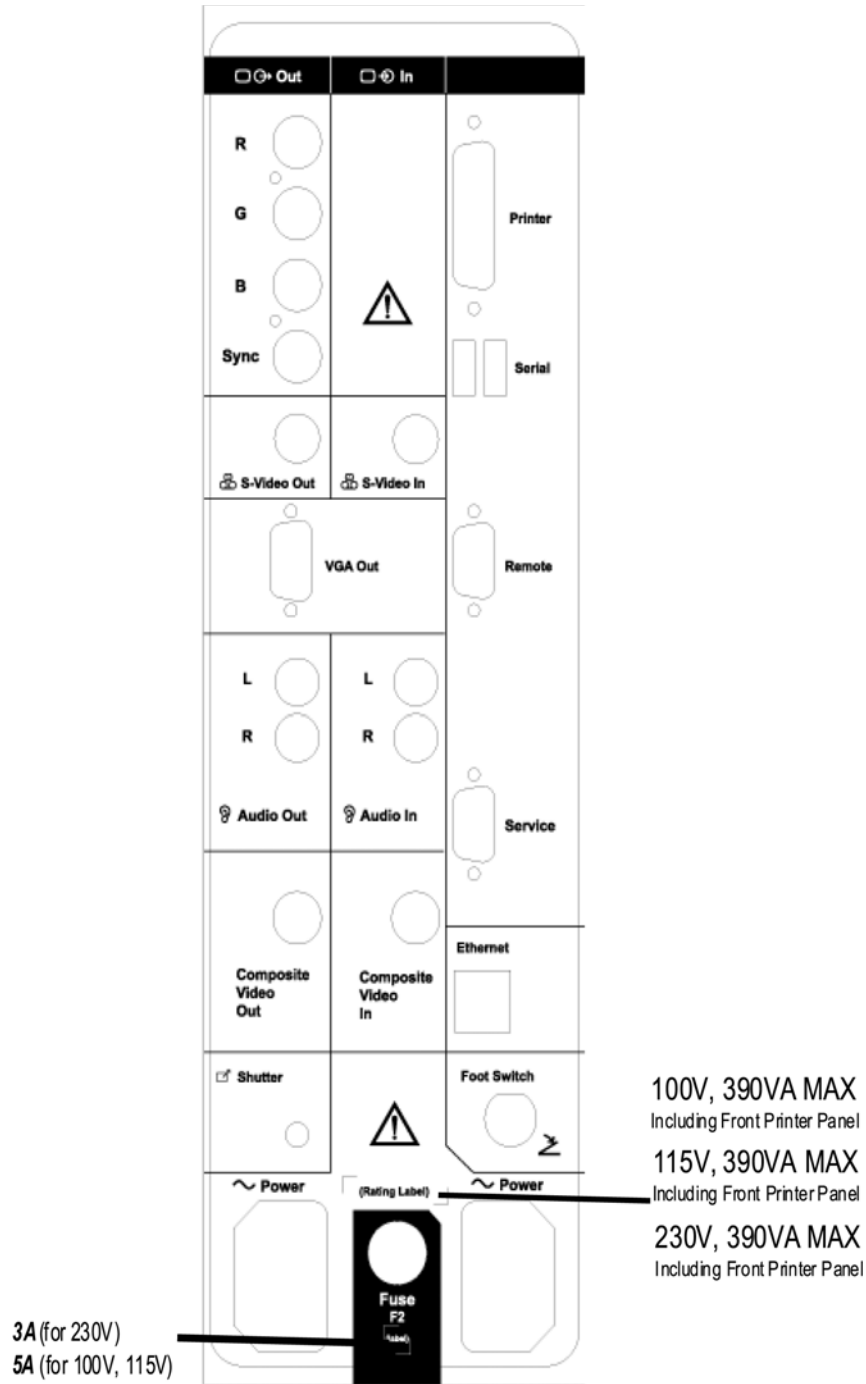


Figure 3-15 Rear Panel for 230V, 115V and 100V

**3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel (cont'd)**

External I/O Connectors.

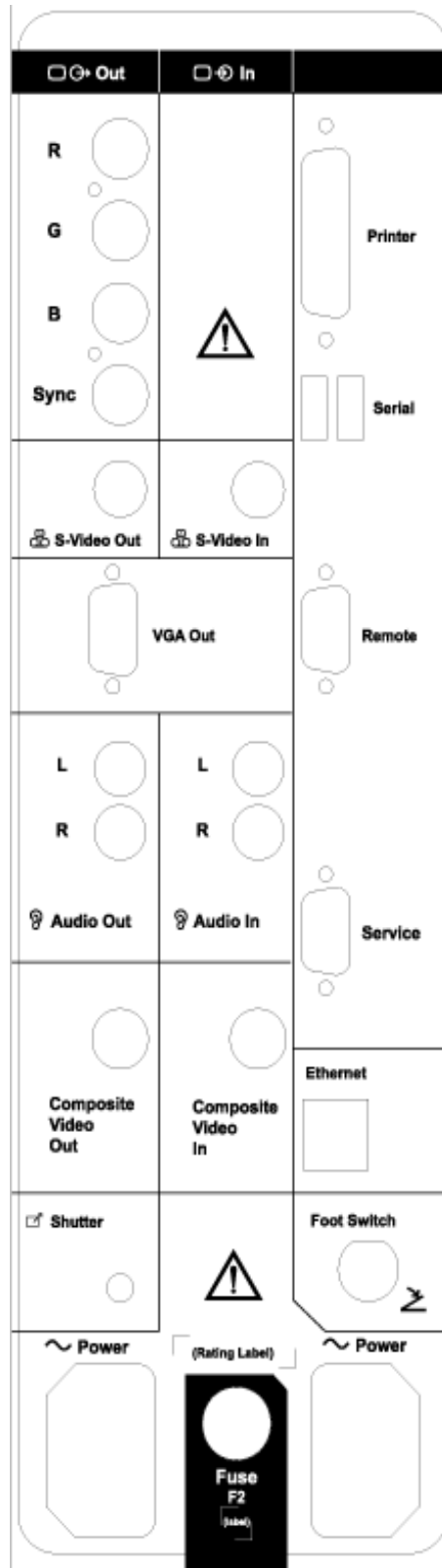


Figure 3-16

**3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel (cont'd)**

**Table 3-8 External I/O Connector Descriptions**

Item	Connector Name	Table Number	Description
1	RGB Sync		BNC Connector, Color Output
2	S-Video Out	Table 3-16	4 pin mini-DIN
3	S- Video In	Table 3-16	4 pin mini-DIN
4	VGA Out	Table 3-17	DSUB-HD22 15 Pin female
5	Audio Out		RCA Phono Jack
6	Audio In		RCA Phono Jack
7	Composite Video Out		BNC Connector, Color Output
8	Composite Video In		BNC Connector, Color Input
9	Shutter	Table 3-15	Mini-phone Jack
10	Foot Switch	Table 3-14	Hirose Electric Co. RM12BRB-5S,
11	Ethernet	Table 3-13	RJ-45 Connector
12	Service	Table 3-9	DSUB 9 pin male
13	Remote	Table 3-11	DSUB 9 pin female
14	USB	Table 3-12	
15	Printer		DSUB 25 pin female

**3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel (cont'd)**

1. Pin Assignment of Remote

Connector: D-SUB, 9 Pin, Female

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal
1	N/A	6	DSR
2	RXD	7	RTS
3	TXD	8	CTS
4	DTR	9	N/A
5	GND		

**Table 3-9 Pin Assignments of RS232C for Remote**

*NOTE: Output level of RS232C signals:*

**Table 3-10 Output Level of RS232C signals**

High	+3V to +15V
Low	-15V to 0V

2. Pin Assignment of RS232C for Service

Connector: D-SUB, 9Pin, Male

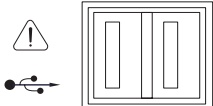
Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal	Picture
1	NA	6	DSR	
2	RXB	7	RTS	
3	TXB	8	CTS	
4	DTR	9	NA	

**Table 3-11 Pin Assignments of RS232C for Service**

**3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel (cont'd)**

3. Pin Assignment of USB1 & USB2

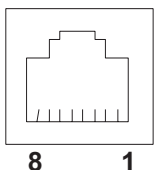
Connector: USB

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal	Picture
1	+5 VDC	3	DATA +	
2	DATA -	4	GND	

**Table 3-12 Pin Assignments of USB**

4. Pin Assignment of Ethernet

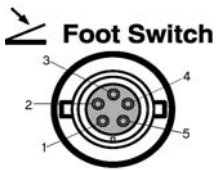
Connector: RJ45

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal	Picture
1	TX+	2	TX-	
3	RX+	4	RX-	
5	NA	6	NA	
7	NA	8	NA	

**Table 3-13 Pin Assignments of Ethernet**

5. Pin Assignment of Foot Switch

Connector: Circular

Pin No.	Signal	Picture
1	SW1	
2	GND	
3	SW2	
4	GND	
5	SW3	

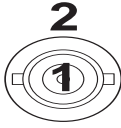
**Table 3-14 Pin Assignments of Foot Switch**

**3-7-3 Peripherals/Accessories Connector Panel (cont'd)**

6. Pin Assignment of Mini-Jack

Mini-Jack:


**Table 3-15 Pin Assignments of Mini-Jack**

Pin No.	Output Signal	Picture
1	Print *	
2	Signal Gnd	

\* Printer starts printing by receiving the Low Pulse for more than 100 ms


7. S-Video Connector - 4Pin mini-DIN

**Table 3-16 S-Video Connector, 4 Pin**

Pin No	Output Signal	Description	Picture
1	SVIDEO OUT/IN YG	Y (Luma) GND	
2	SVIDEO OUT/IN CG	C (Chroma) GND	
3	SVIDEO OUT/IN Y	Y (Luma) SIGNAL	
4	SVIDEO OUT/IN C	C (Chroma) SIGNAL	

8. VGA Out - DSUB-HD22 15 pin female

**Table 3-17 VGA Connector, Shrunked Sub-D 15 Pin**

Pin No	Output Signal	Description	Picture
1	VGA OUT1 R	Red	
2	VGA OUT1 G	Green	
3	VGA OUT1 B	Blue	
4, 9,11,12,15	N/C	N/C	
5, 6, 7, 8, 10	GND	GND	
13	VGA OUT1 HS	H Sync	
14	VGA OUT1 VS	V Sync	



9. 25 pin printer parallel Port DB-25 Connector.

**Table 3-18 DB-25 25 - pin Parallel Port Printer**

Pin No.	Description	Picture
1	Strobe	
2	Data 0	
3	Data 1	
4	Data 2	
5	Data 3	
6	Data 4	
7	Data 5	
8	Data 6	
9	Data 7	
10	$\overline{\text{ACK}}$	
11	Busy	
12	Paper Empty	
13	Select	
14	$\overline{\text{Auto Feed}}$	
15	$\overline{\text{Error}}$	
16	Initialize Printer	
17	$\overline{\text{Select Input}}$	
18 - 25	GND	

**3-7-4 Video Specification**

**Table 3-19 VIDEO SPECIFICATIONS**

Timing Parameter	1024x768 75Hz	768x576 50Hz	800x600 60Hz	800x600 75Hz	640x480 60Hz	1024x768 60Hz
Horizontal Rate [kHz]	60.02	31.25	37.88	46.88	31.47	48.36
Horizontal Period [ $\mu$ s]	16.66	32.00	26.40	21.33	31.78	20.68
Pixel Clock [MHz]	78.75	29.50	40.00	49.50	24.55	65.00
H Blank Width [ $\mu$ s]	3.66	5.97	6.40	5.17	5.70	4.92
H Sync Width [ $\mu$ s]	1.22	2.34	3.20	1.62	2.36	2.09
H Front Porch [ $\mu$ s]	0.20	0.75	1.00	0.32	0.73	0.37
Active Horizontal Period [ $\mu$ s]	13.00	26.03	20.00	16.16	26.07	15.75
Vertical Rate [Hz]	75.03	50.0	60.32	75.00	59.94	60.00
Vertical Period [ms]	13.33	20.0	16.58	13.33	16.68	16.67
V Sync Width [lines= $\mu$ s]	32=0.53	49=1.57	28=0.74	25=0.53	45=1.43	38=0.79
V Front Porch [lines= $\mu$ s]	3=50.00	5=160.0	4=105.60	3=64.00	6=190.70	6=124.10
Equalization Gate [lines= $\mu$ s]	1=16.66	5=160.0	1=26.4	1=21.3	6=190.7	3=62.00
Lines: Field/Frame	800	625/625	628	625	525/525	806
Active Lines/Frame	768	576	600	600	480	768

## Section 3-8 Software Option Configuration

Refer to the LOGIQ™ 3 Basic User Manual, Chapter 16, Customizing Your System for information on configuring items like Hospital, Department, Language, Units (of measure), Date, Time and Date Format.

For information on configuring Software Options, Refer to the LOGIQ™ 3 Basic User Manual, Chapter 16, Customizing Your System.

For information on configuring DICOM Connectivity, Refer to the LOGIQ™ 3 Basic User Manual, Chapter 16, Customizing Your System.

## Section 3-9 Connectivity Installation Worksheet

### Site System Information

Site:  Floor:  Comments:

Dept:  Room:

LOGIQ SN:  Type:  REV:

### CONTACT INFORMATION

Name	Title	Phone	E-Mail Address

### TCP/IP Settings

Name - AE Title:

#### IP Settings

IP Address:

Subnet Mask:

Default Gateway:

#### Remote Archive Setup

Remote Archive IP:

Remote Archive Name:

### Services (Destination Devices)

	Device Type	Manufacturer	Name	IP Address	Port	AE Title
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						
11						
12						

## Section 3-10 Loading Base System Software

### 3-10-1 Software Compatible Matrix

The following table shows all s/w revisions happend to LOGIQ™ 3.

S/W Version	Release Date	Applica- tion S/W Part No.	Base Image Part No (BEP1)	Base Image Part No (BEP2)	Base Image Part No (BEP3)	Base Image Part No (BEP4)	Product Type
R.2.2.0	31-May-04	2356515-4	2356514-3	2378390-4	5124774	NA	
R2.2.1	17-Aug-04	2356515-5	2356514-4	2378390-5	5124775	NA	
R2.2.2	27-Nov-04	2356515-6	2356514-4	2378390-5	5124775	NA	
R2.2.3	14-Apr-04	2356515-7	2356514-4	2378390-5	5124775	NA	
R4.0.x	FW42 2005	5133116	NA	5120163	5120166	NA	Expert
		5140654	NA	5140647	5120166	NA	PRO
		5140661	NA	5140659	5120166	NA	B/W
R4.1.x	FW10 2007	5133116-2	NA	5120163-2	5120166-3	5193870	Expert
		5140654-3	NA	5120163-2	5120166-3	5193870	PRO
		5140661-2	NA	5120163-2	5120166-3	5193870	B/W

**NOTE:** For R4.1.X, BEP2, BEP3, and BEP4 Base Image software is made common to all LOGIQ3 models (Expert, Pro, and B/W).

### 3-10-2 Before You Load Software

Save to CD-R or MOD any patient data, images, and system presets that have been stored or configured. Installing the base operating software destroys all patient data, images and system setups saved on the system.

### 3-10-3 Managing Data, Presets and Images

Before loading software, if you need to save Patient Data, Presets or Images, refer to [8-10-4 "Image Management Guide"](#) on page 8-100.



**WARNING** *The next steps will destroy ALL data on the Scanner*

### 3-10-4 Base Software Load Procedure For BEP Ver 2 , 3, & 4

**NOTE:** *Disconnect the system from the network and remove all transducers, all External Drives (USB MOD, Flash Sticks, USB Memory etc.), Switch Off peripherals like printers, VCR, VGP before installing Base Load.*

- 1.) Insert the disk labeled "Base System Software Load Image as per BEP Type" into the CDROM drive and switch on the system. The following screen appears, Press any key to Continue.

```
***** WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING *****
THIS PROCEDURE MAY RESULT IN COMPLETE PATIENT DATA LOSS IF NOT USED
CORRECTLY! PLEASE READ THE OPTION BELOW CAREFULLY BEFORE PROCEEDING.

This process is NOT REVERSIBLE and should NOT be stopped once started!
DO NOT power off the system until the process has completed. It will
take less than 15 minutes to load the drive. If this process is stopped
for some reason, you WILL have to run it again to completion or else the
system will not work.

If you want to proceed with this process press the "Enter" key to
continue with option selection

... OR ...

Remove the CDROM from the CDROM drive and Press "CTRL-C" now to exit and
power cycle your system to restart it without overwriting your disk drive's
current contents

Press any key to continue . . . _
```

Figure 3-17 Base Load Warning Message

- 2.) **Select 1** if the Patient Data on D drive was less than 2 GB and has been backed up using EXPORT function or **Select 2** if the Patient Data on D drive was greater than 2 GB, It will need to be backed up after the Upgrade using EzBackup function.

**NOTE:** If the Patient image data is large and cannot be backed up by using 'EXPORT', It is recommended to select option '2' i.e., Load Bootable C partition only..

```
. Please select ONE of the following options for loading the LOGIQ3
"Base System Software Load Image" onto your system:

[ 1] Load the complete disk - All existing data will be lost
NOTE: APPLICATION SOFTWARE WILL NEED TO INSTALLED WHEN THIS
PROCEDURE
HAS COMPLETED. ALL PATIENT DATA (IF ANY) WILL BE DESTROYED!

[ 2] Load the bootable C: partition only - patient data is NOT lost
NOTE: DO NOT USE THIS OPTION ON A BRAND NEW SYSTEM. IT IS
INTENDED FOR RECOVERY OF A SYSTEM THAT WILL NOT BOOT UP.
APPLICATION SOFTWARE WILL NEED TO BE INSTALLED WHEN THIS
PROCEDURE HAS COMPLETED. ALL PATIENT DATA IS PRESERVED.

[ 3] Exit to the a\ PROMPT
```

Figure 3-18 Base Load Option Message

- 3.) You will see a screen showing Ghost. This automatically loads the base software onto the hard disk. Let it run to completion (Approximately 10 mins).



Figure 3-19 Ghost Screen

- 4.) A message will be displayed when the process is completed.

```
The "Base System Software Load Image" process has successfully completed.
You will need to load the "Application Software" onto your system.

Please remove the CDROM from the drive, Power off the system and then
Power it on again so you can continue with the "Application Software" load
procedure
Thank you!

A:\>-
```

Figure 3-20 Base Load Completion Message

### 3-10-4 Base Software Load Procedure For BEP Ver 2 , 3, & 4 (cont'd)

- 5.) Remove the CD-ROM

**NOTE:** *Remove the CD-ROM from the drive; otherwise you will be repeating the Base System Software Load process.*

- 6.) After removing the CDRom from the drive, properly turn off the scanner by pressing and holding power on button on keyboard for more than 20 sec's.
- 7.) Turn the scanner back on. It will now boot up and automatically log on to start checking hardware and Device Manager. This is a normal and should be allowed to run to completion.

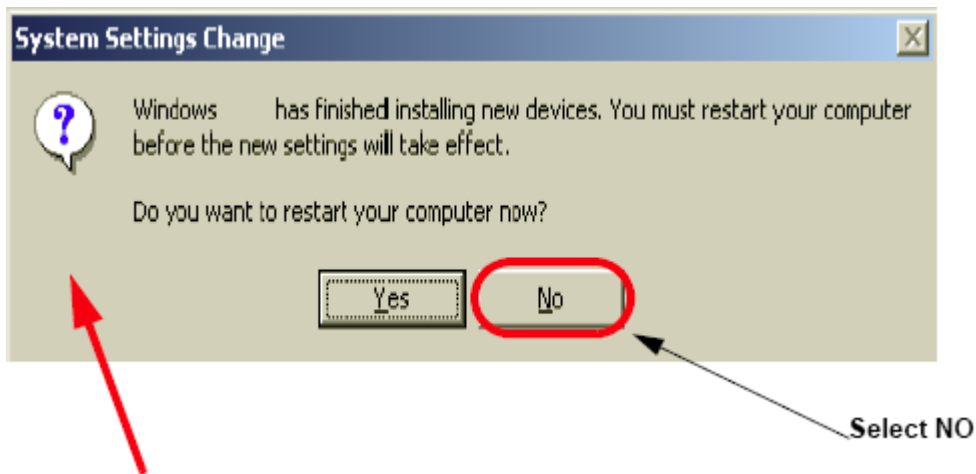
**NOTE:** *When booting up the first time it could take 30-90 seconds after the login box appears before the trackball and key board are active. Watch for the arrow cursor to appear.*

**NOTE:** *While the script is running, several windows or dialog boxes will appear on the screen. Wait for the "System Settings Change" dialog box "Restart computer now" (approximately 3 minutes after the desktop).*

**Do NOT touch the system during this process. Activating the keyboard, mouse or front panel could corrupt the installation.**

**NOTE:** *At times it may look like the system is unresponsive. PATIENCE! The process takes 3-4 minutes. Wait for the "Restart computer now" message to appear before activating the keyboard, mouse or front panel controls.*

- 8.) Wait till you get a windows reboot message. This may take upto 3 minutes. On this message, Click on **NO** as shown in the Figure 3-21 below.



**This screen will look different with WIN XP**

Figure 3-21 Windows Restart Screen



## Section 3-11 Loading Application Software

### 3-11-1 Loading Applications Software

- 1.) Place the “**Application Software**” CDROM into the CDROM drive.
- 2.) Move the cursor using Trackball to find the “**Start**” command button on the Monitor screen
- 3.) Press the **Start** button on the tool bar at the bottom of the Screen and select “**Run...**”.
- 4.) Enter “**g:\LoadSoftware.bat**” into the dialog box as shown in Figure 3-22.

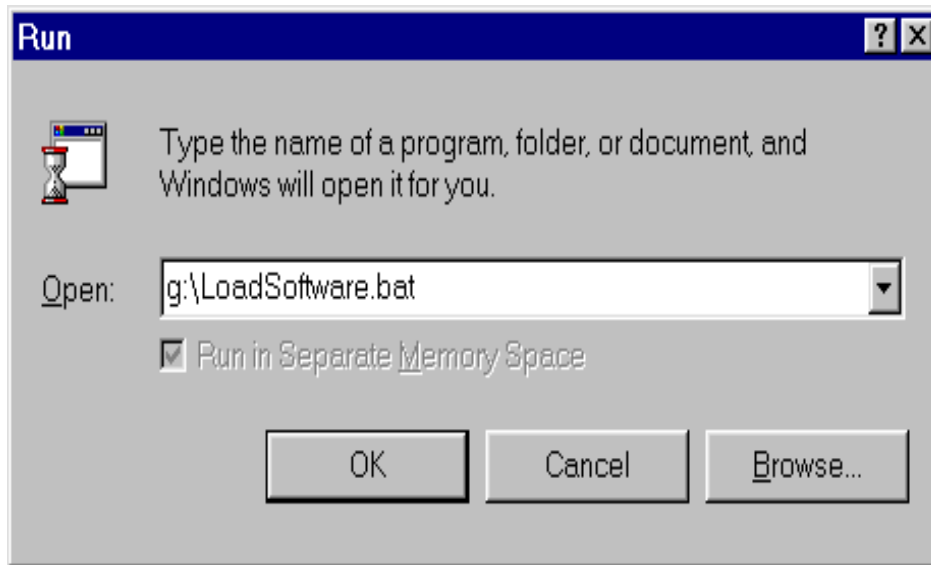
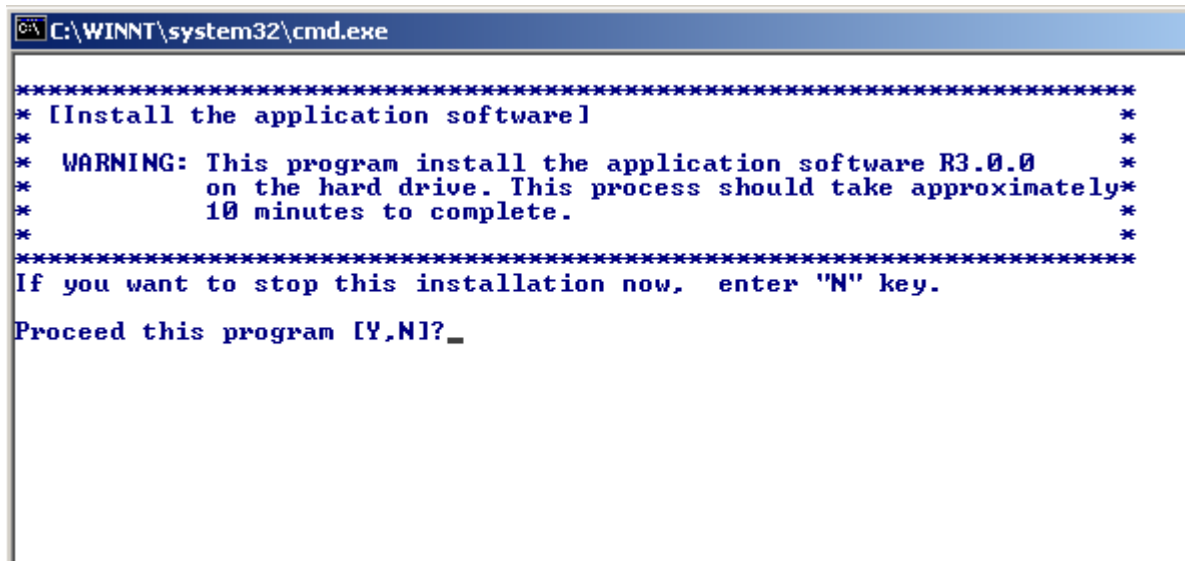


Figure 3-22 Run Load Software

- 5.) You will see a Command (CMD) window open as shown in Figure 3-23.

## Loading Applications Software (cont'd)



```
C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe
*****
* [Install the application software] *
* *
* WARNING: This program install the application software R3.0.0 *
* on the hard drive. This process should take approximately*
* 10 minutes to complete. *
* *
*****
If you want to stop this installation now, enter "N" key.
Proceed this program [Y,N]? _
```

Figure 3-23 Application CD Installation Popup

- 6.) Press "Y" key twice to start the process.
- 7.) During Application Software loading process, the System will auto Shutdown. Manually switch on the System using the 'standby- ON/OFF' switch.
- 8.) After the software loading is completed, the system will pop-up a message, asking to make the selection for Presets according to location of site as seen in the Figure 3-24 below. Make the appropriate selection.

```
Please make your selection from the below choices for Preset.....
1. USA
2. Europe
3. Asia
```

Figure 3-24 Preset Selection

- 9.) Wait until the system shuts down automatically (Approx 5 Minutes to shut down).
- 10.) Wait for Approx. 15 seconds.
- 11.) Power on the System and Remove the CD while it boots.
- 12.) The System pops up the Screen asking for **Option Key**. **Enter the Basic Option Key obtained on ordering of the BT'05 Upgrade.**

### 3-11-2 System Setup

To complete the system setup:

- 1.) Connect the system to the network if applicable.
- 2.) Select *Utility>Connect>TCPIP* Tab. For systems with S/W version lower than R2.2.0, the path is *Utility>Connectivity>TCPIP* Tab.
- 3.) Ensure that DHCP is deselected so you can enter information manually.
- 4.) Input the DICOM information.
  - \* This should be the appropriate DICOM information for the system if it is on the hospital network. If it is not correct, input the correct data.
- 5.) After all information is entered select SAVE SETTINGS.
- 6.) If the system is **NOT** on a network you will need to input a set of "dummy" data for proper InSite and Diagnostic operation. Enter the following data if you are not on a network:
  - \* Computer Name:
  - \* IP Address: 3.192.28.253
  - \* Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
- 7.) After all information is entered select SAVE SETTINGS.
- 8.) Reset the VCR by going to *Utilities>System>Setup*.
- 9.) Select *Sony 9500 VCR* and SAVE
- 10.) Select *Exit* in the lower left-hand corner of the Touch Screen.
- 11.) Do an auto-shut down
- 12.) Press the STANDBY switch on the Control Panel once to display the SYSTEM - EXIT menu.
- 13.) Select SHUTDOWN from the SYSTEM - EXIT menu.

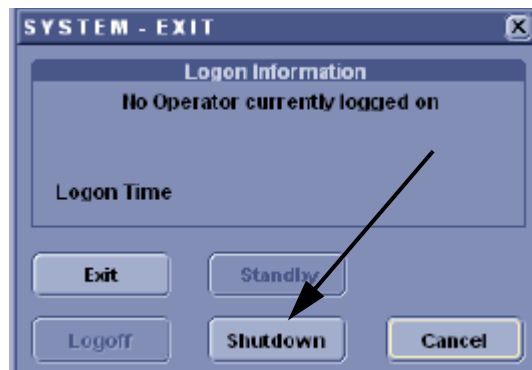


Figure 3-25 System Exit Menu for Back-end Processor Power Down

## Section 3-12 Paperwork

**NOTE:** During and after installation, the documentation (i.e. User Manuals, Installation Manuals...) for the peripheral units must be kept as part of the original system documentation. This will ensure that all relevant safety and user information is available during the operation and service of the complete system.

### 3-12-1 Product Locator Installation

**NOTE:** The Product Locator Installation Card shown may not be same as the provided Product Locator card.


		Mailing Address GE Medical Systems Product Locator File P.O. Box 414 Milwaukee, WI 53201-0414			
		DESCRIPTION	FDA	MODEL	REV
PREPARE FOR ORDERS THAT DO NOT HAVE A LOCATOR INSTALLATION REPORT		OCF	BS	ORD	DATE (MO-DA-YR)
		DIST.-COUNTRY	ROOM	EMPLOYEE NO.	
SYSTEM ID NUMBER  <b>INSTALLATION</b>		CUSTOMER NO.			
		DESTINATION - NAME AND ADDRESS _____ _____ _____ _____			
PRINTED IN USA INSTALLATION		_____ _____ _____ _____			
		_____ _____ _____ _____			
		ZIP CODE			

Figure 3-1 Product Locator Installation Card

### 3-12-2 GE Cares Sticker

Stick GE CARES sticker after Installation. Refer Figure 3-26 for details.

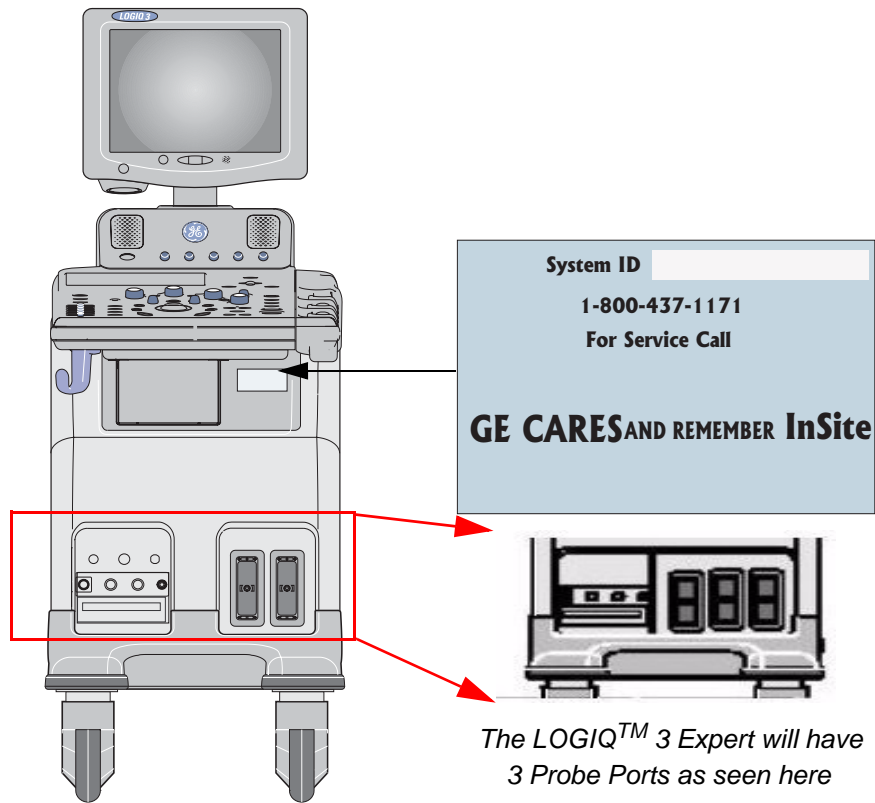


Figure 3-26 GE CARES Sticker Location

### 3-12-3 User Manual(s)

- 1.) **User:** Check that the correct User Manual(s) for the system and software revision, is included with the installation. Specific language versions of the User Manual may also be available. Check with your GE Sales Representative for availability.

This page was intentionally left blank.

---

# Chapter 4

## Functional Checks

### Section 4-1 Overview

#### 4-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 4

This chapter provides procedures for quickly checking major functions of the LOGIQ™ 3 scanner diagnostics by using the built-in service software, and power supply adjustments.

#### 4-1-2 Chapter Contents

Table 4-1 Contents in Chapter 4

Section	Description	Page Number
4-1	Overview	4-1
4-2	Required Equipment	4-1
4-3	General Procedure	4-2
4-4	Functional Checks	4-10
4-5	Software Configuration Checks	4-26
4-6	Peripheral Checks	4-27
4-7	Safety Issues	4-28
4-8	Site Log	4-29



**NOTICE** Most of the information pertaining to this *Functional Checks* chapter is found in the *LOGIQ™ 3 Basic User Manual (Direction number 5122538-100)*.

Look for the letters **(BUM)** after a section in the Table of Contents to determine if the information is in this chapter or in the *Basic User Manual*.

### Section 4-2 Required Equipment

- An empty (blank) CD R/W disk
- At least one transducer. (normally all the transducers used on the system should be checked).

## Section 4-3 General Procedure



### CAUTION SYSTEM REQUIRES ALL COVERS

Operate this unit only when all board covers and frame panels are securely in place. The covers are required for safe operation, good system performance and cooling purposes.



### NOTICE Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA only)

Follow OSHA Lockout/Tagout requirements by ensuring you are in total control of the Power Cable on the system.



### 4-3-1 Power On/Boot Up

**NOTE:** After turning off the system, wait at least ten seconds before turning it on again. The system may not be able to boot if power is recycled too quickly.

#### 4-3-1-1 Scanner Power On

- 1.) Connect the Main Power Cable at the rear of the System



**WARNING** *Protective earth must be taken care when connecting AC power cable without its plug to wall outlet.*

- 2.) Ensure the retainer clamp slips securely over the shoulders on the molded plug.
- 3.) Connect the Main Power cable to an appropriate mains power outlet.
- 4.) Switch ON the Main Circuit Breaker at the rear of the System.



4-3-1 Power On/Boot Up (cont'd)

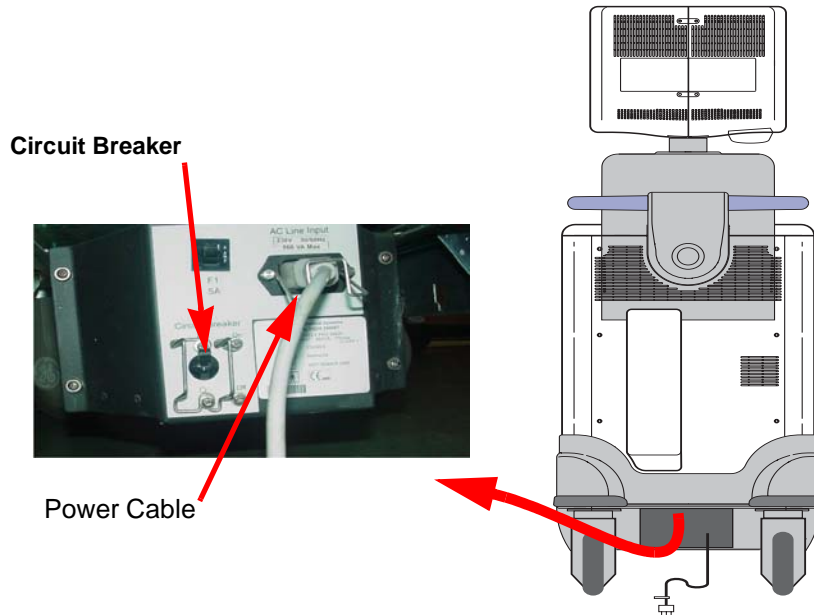
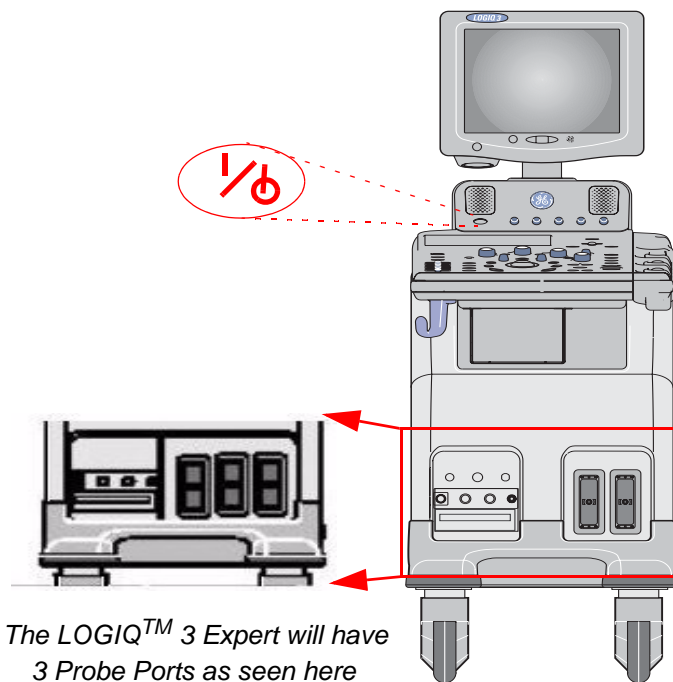


Figure 4-1 Circuit Breaker

When power is applied to the Scanner, and the Rear Circuit breaker is turned ON, Power is distributed to the Transformer Assembly. When the Control panel **ON/OFF** key is pressed once, Fans, Control Panel, Monitor, Internal and External I/O's, Nest Boards, Peripherals and the Back End Processor are given power. Back-end Processor boots up and the system starts in the scanning mode.

Press the **ON/OFF (STANDBY)** Switch on the Control Panel once.



The LOGIQ™ 3 Expert will have 3 Probe Ports as seen here

Figure 4-2 Power On/Off Standby Switch Location

### 4-3-1 Power On/Boot Up (cont'd)

When the **Standby** switch on the Control Panel is pressed once, the Back-end Processor starts and the software code is distributed to initiate the scanner.

No status messages are displayed during this process.

#### 4-3-1-2 Power Off

Purpose: This is a description on how to Shutdown the system.

- 1.) Press the **ON/OFF** keys on the keyboard
- 2.) The System Exit dialog box is displayed on the monitor.  
Select "Shutdown" from the System Exit dialog box.



Figure 4-3 System Exit Dialog Box

- 3.) The power off sequence begins. The system power turns off automatically when the power off sequence is completed.

#### 4-3-1-3 Power Shutdown


- 1.) Press the **ON/OFF** key at the front of the System once.
- 2.) The System Exit dialog box is displayed on the monitor.  
Select "Shutdown" from the System Exit dialog box
- 3.) Switch OFF the Main Circuit Breaker at the rear of the system Refer to [Figure 4-1 on page 3](#) .
- 4.) Disconnect the Main Power Cable if needed.

### 4-3-2 Using CD-RW Drive/MOD Drive (Optional)

#### 4-3-2-1 Using CD-RW

 **NOTICE** Never move the unit with a disk in the CD-RW because the drive actuator will not be locked and the CD-RW could break.

- 1.) Use F3 to EJECT

 **NOTICE** Avoid mechanical ejection whenever possible. Mechanical ejection leaves the actuator unlocked and the CDR-W susceptible to damage if moved. If forced to use this method, reboot the system, then insert and eject a known good disk using one of the other methods.

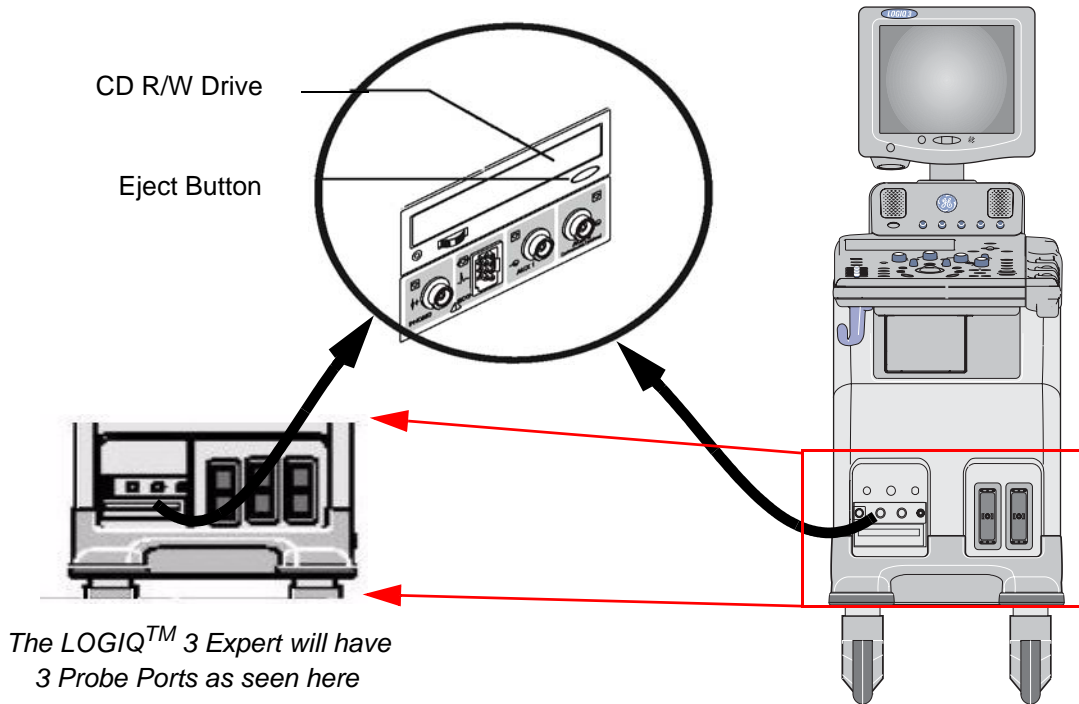


Figure 4-4 CD-RW drives

**NOTE:** DON'T Use EJECT Button

**4-3-2-2 Using MOD (Optional)**

*NOTE:* MOD can be installed through USB Port of LOGIQ™ 3

- 1.) Before installing an MO disk in the MOD, check the MO disk for loose hardware or damaged labels which could jam inside the MO Drive. Also ensure that the slide switch in one corner of the disk is set so that the disk is write enabled (disk hole closed).
- 2.) Insert the disk into the MOD with the label facing up.



**NOTICE** Never move the unit with a disk in the MOD because the drive actuator will not be locked and the MOD could break.

- 3.) There are number of methods to eject a disk from the MOD. Ejection is automatic in some cases. Manual ejection methods, listed in preferred order of use, are:
  - a.) Press **EJECT** button on the MOD while system is ON.
  - b.) Press and hold **EJECT** button while the system is booting.
  - c.) Mechanical eject. Insert the end of a paper clip into the hole next to the EJECT button while system power is OFF.




**NOTICE** Avoid mechanical ejection whenever possible. Mechanical ejection leaves the actuator unlocked and the MOD susceptible to damage if moved. If forced to use this method, reboot the system, then insert and eject a known good disk using one of the other methods.

### 4-3-3 Archiving and Loading Presets

**NOTE:** Always save presets before any software reload. This ensures the presets loaded after the software reload are as up-to-date as possible.

All user presets except changes to Summary, Anatomy, and Biometry pages, can be saved on an CD-RW/MOD disk for reloading on the system.

 **NOTICE** Presets should NOT be saved on the same CD-RW/MO disk as images. The Archive Menu lists the images but does NOT list the presets stored on a CD-RW/MO disk.

#### 4-3-3-1 Formatting CD(R/W)/MO Disk

- 1.) Insert an empty (blank) CD(R/W)/MO Disk into the Device Drive.
- 2.) Press the **UTILITY** Key on the Keyboard and select **Connect> Removable Media**. The Tools screen will be shown on the monitor. For Systems with S/W versions R2.x.x , Press the **UTILITY** Key on the Keyboard and select **Connectivity> TOOLS**. The Tools screen will be shown on the monitor.

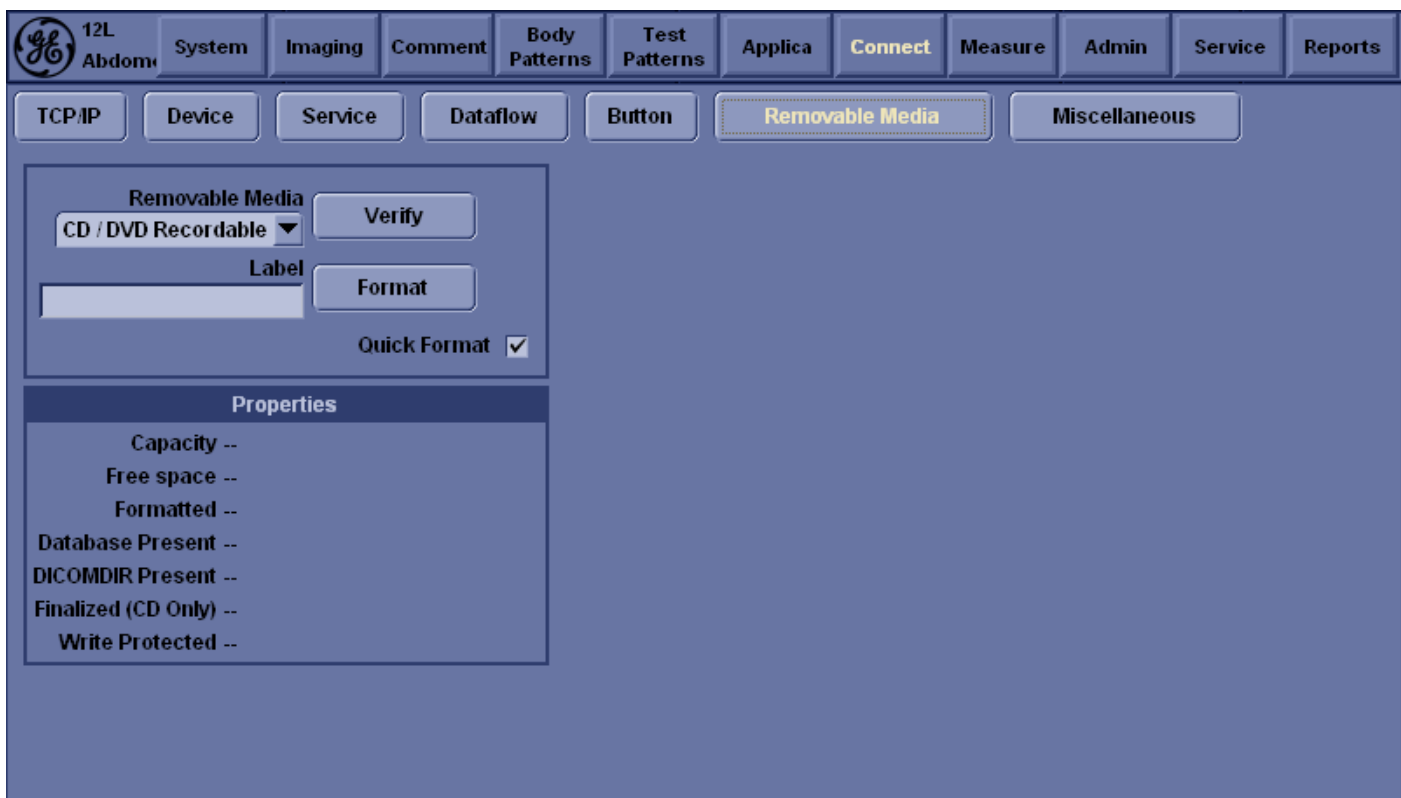


Figure 4-5 Formatting Removable Media

- 3.) Select the Media from the media list
- 4.) Type a name for the removable media in label field.
- 5.) Select **FORMAT** button.

### 4-3-3-2 Archiving Presets to an CD(R/W)/MO Disk

- 1.) Insert an empty (blank) formatted CD(R/W)/MO disk into the device drive.
- 2.) Press the **UTILITY** Key in the Keyboard and Select **System> BACKUP/RESTORE**. For systems with software version R2.X.X , Press the **UTILITY** Key in the Keyboard and Select **System> BACKUP**. The Backup Screen will be shown on the monitor.



Figure 4-6 Backup Sheet

- 3.) Select the item to back up either from Resource Files.
- 4.) Enter backup destination or browse through the disk to locate the destination.
- 5.) Click on **BACKUP** the backup status for each item is displayed on the Result column.
- 6.) Make sure "Finished OK" is displayed on the Result column.

### 4-3-3-3 Loading Presets from an CD(R/W)/MO disk

- 1.) Insert the CD(R/W)/MO Disk with the archived Presets into the CD(R/W)/MO Disk.
- 2.) Press the **UTILITY** Key in the Keyboard and Select **System> BACKUP/RESTORE**. For systems with software version R2.X.X , Press the **UTILITY** Key in the Keyboard and Select **System> BACKUP**. The Backup Screen will be shown on the monitor.

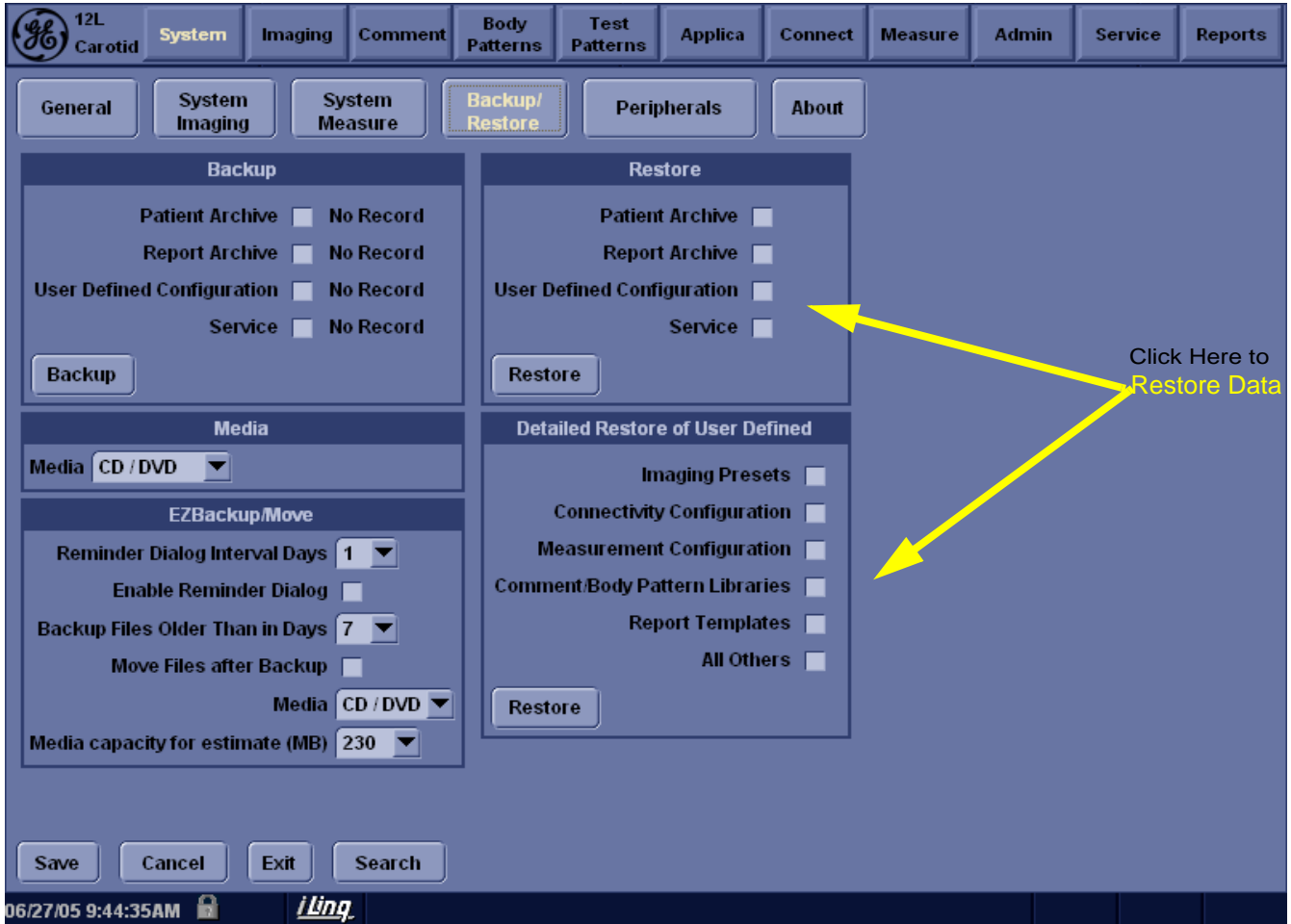


Figure 4-7 Restore Sheet

- 3.) Select the item to restore either from resource files.
- 4.) Click on **Restore**. A message to make sure the restore process is displayed on the monitor. Click **OK**. The restore status for each item is displayed on the Result column.
- 5.) Make sure "Finished OK" is displayed on the result column.

**NOTE:** This process will restart the System and all selected Parameters will be reloaded

## 4-3-4 Adjusting the Display Monitor

### 4-3-4-1 Brightness and Contrast

To adjust the brightness:

- 1.) Press the Center button of the display monitor twice.
- 2.) Press the Right button to increase brightness.  
Press the Left button to decrease brightness.  
The amount of brightness is shown on a slider on the screen.

To adjust the contrast:

- 1.) Press the Center button of the display monitor once.
- 2.) Press the Right button to increase the contrast.  
Press the Left button to increase the contrast.  
The amount of the contrast is shown on a slider on the screen.

### 4-3-4-2 Manual Degauss

To activate the manual degauss:

- 1.) Press the Center button until menu OSD appears on the screen.
- 2.) Press the toggle button for brightness and contrast.
- 3.) Press the Decrease or Increase monitor adjustment button and select degauss now.
- 4.) Monitor degaussing is done.

## 4-3-5 Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA/Europe Only)

Follow OSHA Lockout/Tagout requirements by ensuring you are in total control of the plug.



### NOTICE

Lockout/Tagout Requirements (For USA / Europe only)

Follow OSHA Lockout/Tagout requirements by ensuring you are in total control of the Power Cable on the system.



## Section 4-4 Functional Checks

### 4-4-1 Basic Controls

#### 4-4-1-1 Alpha Numeric Keyboard

**Table 4-2 Keyboard**

Task	Expected Result
Esc	Exit current display screen.
Help (F1)	Enter Online help / User manual.
Word Delete (F10)	Erase word associated with comment cursor.
Arrow (F2)	Annotation arrow.
Grab Last (F9)	Activate the last selected data for edit.
Home/Set Home (F7)	Move annotation cursor to home position; shift+key to set current annotation cursor position as the new home position.
Text1/Text2(F8)	Switch between user text annotation overlays.

#### 4-4-1-2 Keyboard Controls

**Table 4-3 Keyboard Controls**

Task	Expected Result
Patient	Enter Patient Demographic data screen.
B-Mode (Scan)	Returns machine to scanning state and select scan mode.
Report	Activates default report and touch screen of report choices.
Utility	Activates the machine's configuration.
Application (Probe Indicator)	Indicates the 2 connected probes and selected application

#### 4-4-1-3 Top and Sub Menu

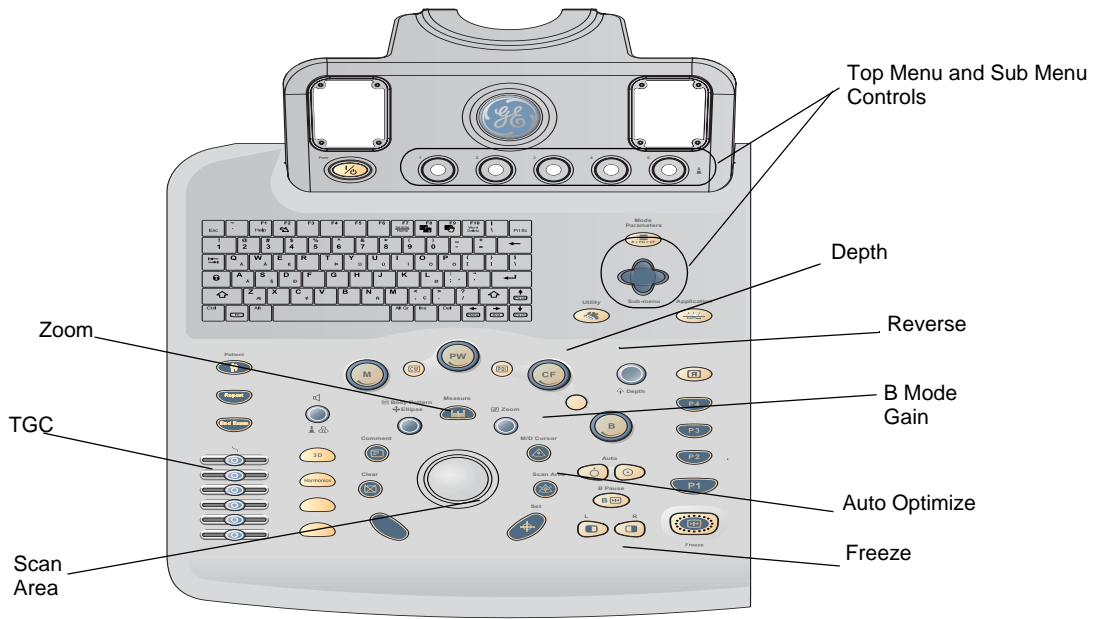
Refer Operator Manual Chapter 4 for more details



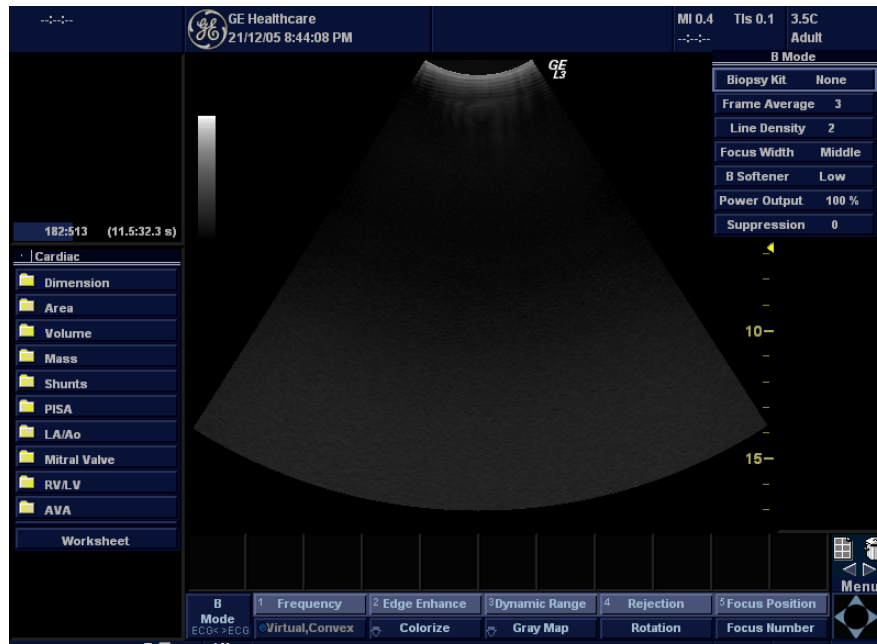
**4-4-2 B Mode Checks**

**4-4-2-1 Preparations**

- 1.) Connect one of the probes listed in 3-5-3 Available Probe, in Chapter 3 Installation to the System probe connector.
- 2.) Turn ON the scanner (if it isn't turned on already)
- 3.) Perform the "Screwdriver Test" on the system, to ensure that that B-mode image is fine. Refer to Chapter 7, Section 7-10-6 for more details on the "Screwdriver Test".



**Figure 4-8 LOGIQ™ 3 B Mode Controls**



**Figure 4-9 B Mode Screen Picture Example**

4-4-2-2 B Mode OP Panel Controls

Table 4-4 B Mode Control Panel Controls

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Press B Mode key	B Mode Starts
2	Adjust Depth	Adjust the field of view. Increasing the depth may view larger/deeper structures rates, and decreasing the depth may view near the skin line. Turn Depth right/left to increase/decrease. Depth displays on the monitor in cm.
3	Adjust Gain	Controls the amount of echo information displayed in an image. Turn B Mode dial to the left/right to increase/decrease Gain. Gain displays on the monitor in G (dB).
4	Adjust Time Gain Compensation (TGC)	Amplifies the returning signals to correct for the attenuation caused by tissues at increasing depth. TGC slide pots spaced proportional to the depth. Move the slide pots to the left/right to decrease/increase TGC. A TGC curve appears on the display.
5	Adjust Scan Area	Widen or narrow the size of the sector angle to maximize the image's region of interest (ROI). Press Scan Area and move the Trackball to narrow/widen the angle.
6	Activate Auto Optimize	Optimize the image based upon a specified region of interest or anatomy. Press the right Auto control to activate.
7	Adjust Zoom	Changes the location of the focal point(s). A triangular focus marker indicates the depth of the focal point.
8	Reverse	Toggles the left/right orientation of the scan image.
9	Harmonics (Activate Tissue Harmonics)	Diminishes low frequency high amplitude noise and improves imaging. Enhances near field resolution for improved small parts imaging as well as far field penetration. Press Harmonics Key to activate.

### 4-4-2-3 B Mode Top and Sub menu Controls

Table 4-5 B Mode Top and Sub menu Controls

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Rejection	Adjust rejection level. When this control is increased, low-level echoes are rejected and appear darker in the B image. Rotate Rejection to left/right to adjust the level. An index number is displayed on the Top Menu to indicate the relative level of rejection.
2	Colorize	Colorize the gray scale image to enhance the eyes' discrimination capability. Rotate the Colorize Knob to cycle through the available color maps.
3	Edge Enhance	Enhance the gray scale differences corresponding to the edges of structures. Press and turn Edge Enhance left/right to cycle through the settings.
4	Gray Map	Displays a map window adjacent to the image. Rotate the Gray Map Knob to select the map. The image reflects the map as scrolled through the selections.
5	Frequency	Enables the adjustment of the probe's operating frequency. Rotate Frequency and select desired value. The selected frequency is displayed in the status window.
6	Virtual Convex	Displays larger field of view in the far field. Press the Virtual Convex on Top Menu to activate. This mode is Available only on the Linear Probes
7	Frame Average	Averages frames together and create more pixel, smoother image. Use the Paddle left/right switch to adjust the value. The selected value is displayed on the Sub Menu.
8	Up-Down Invert	Flip the image vertically. Press Up-Down invert to flip up/down.
9	Dynamic Range	Dynamic Range controls how echo intensities are converted to shades of gray, thereby increasing the adjustable range of contrast. This Control is available on the Top Menu
10	B Softener	Affects the amount of lateral smoothing. This control is available on the Sub Menu
11	Suppression	Suppress the Noise level.
12	Focus Width	Adjust the Width between two Focus points
13	Power Output	Adjust Power Output Level
14	Focus Position and Number	Increases the number of focal zones or moves the focal zone(s) to tighten up the beam for specific area. Press the control to toggle between Focus Position and Focus Number. Turn Focus Position left/right to move the Focus. Press and Turn the Knob to adjust the focal numbers.
15	Biopsy	Biopsy guidelines appears.
16	Line Density	Optimizes B-Mode frame rate or spatial resolution.

### 4-4-3 M Mode Controls

#### 4-4-3-1 Preparations

- 1.) Connect one of the probes listed in 3-5-3 Available Probe, in Chapter 3 Installation to the System probe connector.
- 2.) Turn ON the scanner (if it isn't turned on already)

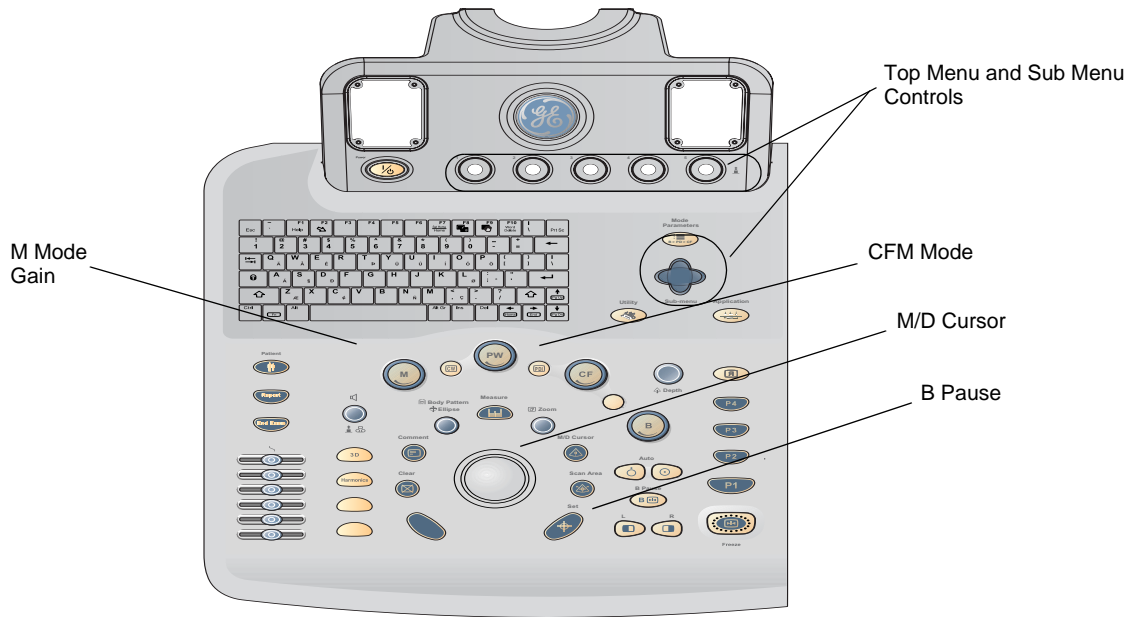


Figure 4-10 Controls available in M Mode

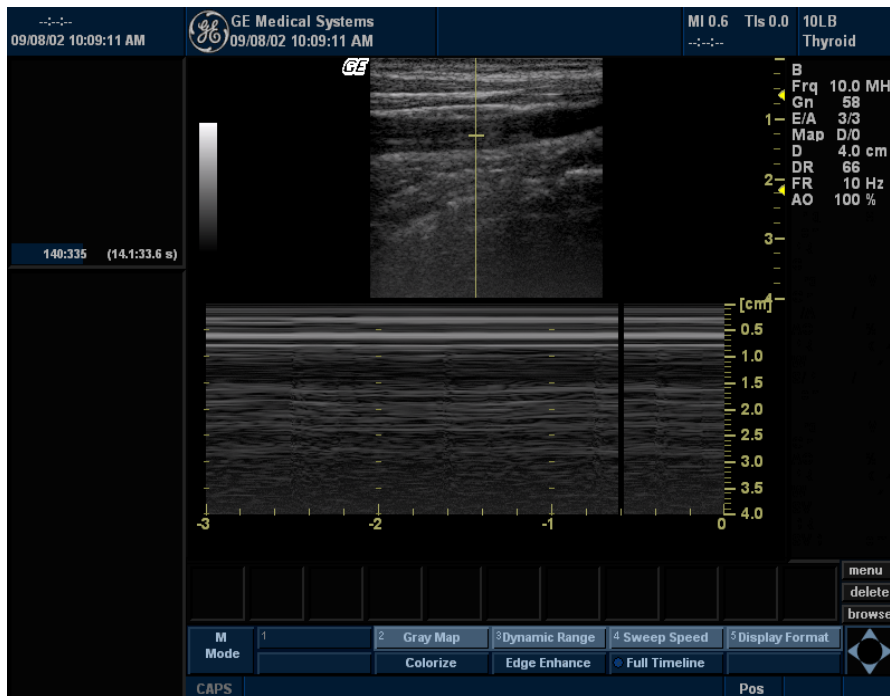


Figure 4-11 M Mode Screen Picture Example

4-4-3-2 M Mode OP Panel Controls

Table 4-6 M Mode OP Panel Controls

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Press M Mode key	M Mode Starts
2	Adjust Gain	Controls the amount of echo information displayed in an image. Turn M Mode dial to the left/right to increase/decrease Gain. Gain displays on the monitor in G (dB).
3	Display M-Mode Cursor	Displays the M-Mode cursor on the B-Mode image. Press M/D Cursor and Trackball to position M-Mode Cursor.
4	B Pause	Toggle between simultaneous and update presentation while viewing the M-Mode trace or Spectral Doppler. Press B Pause to toggle between simultaneous and update.
5	Activate M Color Flow Mode	Overlays color on the M-Mode image using velocity and variance color maps. Press M, then CFM Mode key (or vice versa) to activate.

4-4-3-3 M Mode Top and Sub menu Controls

Table 4-7 M Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Rejection	Adjust rejection level. When this control is increased, low-level echoes are rejected and appear darker in the M image. Use Paddle left/right key to adjust Rejection level. An index number is displayed in the status window to indicate the relative level of rejection.
2	Sweep Speed	Changes the speed at which timeline is swept. Rotate Sweep Speed left/right to increase/decrease the value.
3	Edge Enhance	Enhance the gray scale differences corresponding to the edges of structures. Press and Rotate Edge Enhance left/right to cycle through the settings.
4	Gray Map	Displays a map window adjacent to the image. Rotate the Gray Map knob. The image reflects the map as scrolled through the selections.
5	Power Output	Adjust Power output level.
6	Colorize	Colorize the gray scale image to enhance the eyes' discrimination capability. Press and Rotate the Colorize knob to select the appropriate color map.
7	Full Timeline	Displays only timeline screen. Press the Full Time line to activate.
8	Display Format	Select the format to display B image and M image on the monitor. Rotate Display Format knob and select from the Top Menu.
9	Dynamic Range	Enables control of the dynamic range or contrast of the image. When dynamic range is set high, the image is softer and more low-level data is visible. Turn Dynamic Range rotation knob left/right to increase/decrease the value.

## 4-4-4 Color Flow Mode Checks

### 4-4-4-1 Preparations

- 1.) Connect one of the probes listed in 3-5-3 Available Probe, in Chapter 3 Installation to the System probe connector.
- 2.) Turn ON the scanner (if it isn't turned on already)

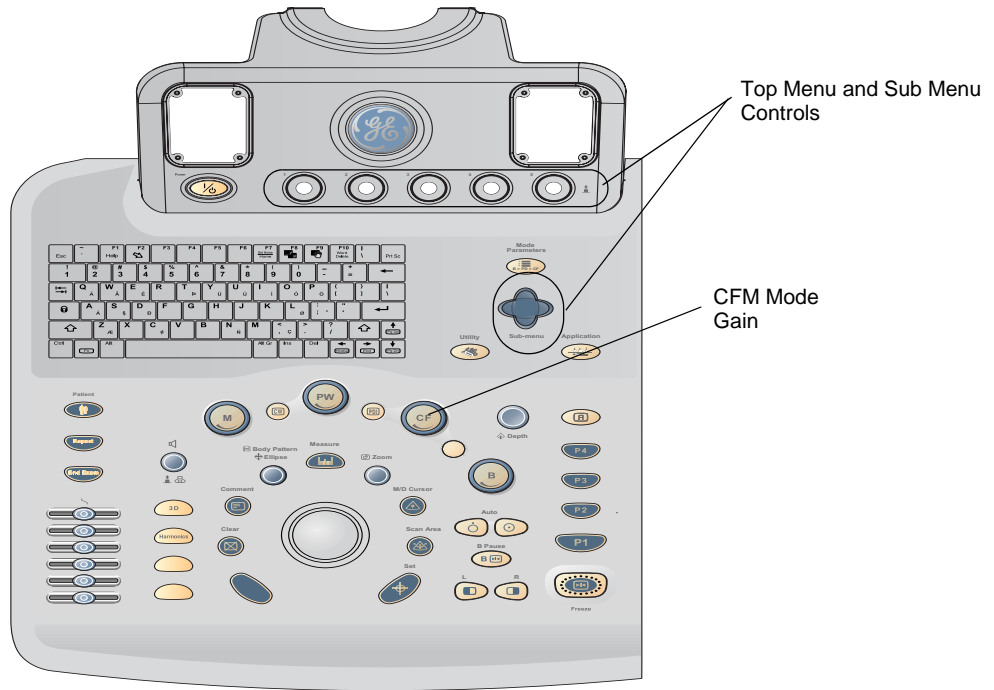


Figure 4-12 Controls available in Color Flow Mode

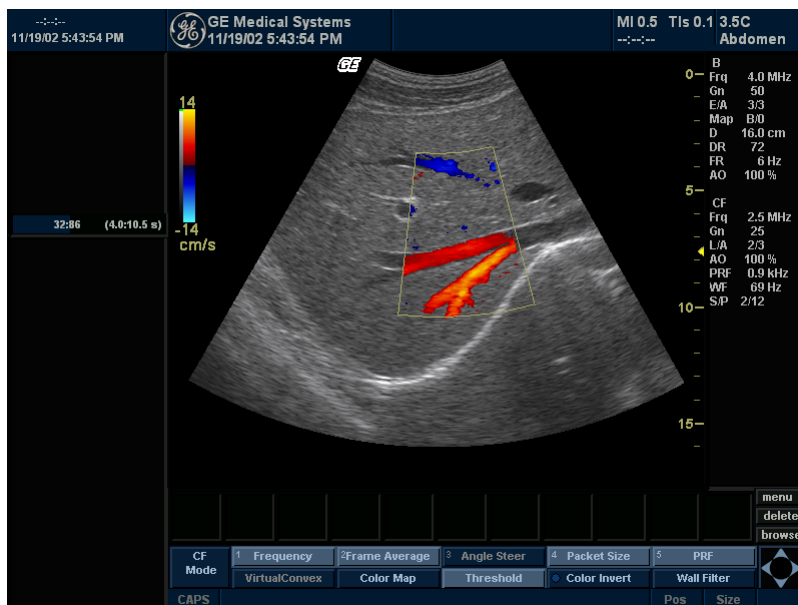


Figure 4-13 CFM Mode Screen Picture Example

**4-4-4-2 Color Flow Mode OP Panel Controls**

**Table 4-8 Color Flow Mode OP Panel Controls**

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Press CFM-Mode key	CFM Mode Starts
2	Adjust Gain	Amplifies the overall strength of the echoes processed in the Color Flow window. Turn the Gain dial (CFM Mode key) to the left/right to increase/decrease Gain.

**4-4-4-3 Color Flow Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls**

**Table 4-9 Color Flow Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls**

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Threshold	Assigns the gray scale level at which color information stops. Rotate Threshold Knob left/right to increase/decrease the gray scale threshold.
2	Packet Size	Controls the number of samples gathered for a single color flow vector. Rotate Packet Size left/right to increase/decrease the packet size.
3	Color maps	Selects a specific color map. Rotate Color Map left/right to cycle through available maps.
4	Frequency	Enables the adjustment of the probe's operating frequency. Press Frequency and select desired value. The selected frequency is displayed in the status window.
5	Set Frame Average	Averages color frames. Rotate Frame Average left/right to smooth temporal averaging. The selected value displays on the Top and Sub Menu.
6	Color Invert	Views blood flow from a different perspective. Press Invert to reverse the color map.
7	Virtual Convex	The Region of Interest gets enlarged, covering more image area. This is available only in Linear Probes.
8	Spatial Filter	Activates Spatial Filter
9	Dynamic Range	Enables control of the dynamic range or contrast of the image. When dynamic range is set high, the image is softer and more low-level data is visible. Turn Dynamic Range rotation knob left/right to increase/decrease the value.
10	ACE	Eliminates the motion artifacts. Press Ace on the Sub Menu to activate.
11	Angle Steer	Slant the Color Flow linear image left or right to get more information without moving probes. Click Angle Steer to the left/right to slant the linear image.
12	Baseline	Changes the spectrum baseline to accommodate higher velocity blood flow. Rotate Baseline left/right to adjust the baseline.
13	PRF / Wall Filter	Velocity scale determines pulse repetition frequency. If the sample volume gate range exceeds single gate PRF capability, the system automatically switches to high PRF mode indicated by Multiple gates.
14	Transparency Map	Activates Transparency Map.



## 4-4-5 Doppler Mode Checks

### 4-4-5-1 Preparations

- 1.) Connect one of the probes listed in 3-5-3 Available Probe, in Chapter 3 Installation to the System probe connector.
- 2.) Turn ON the scanner (if it isn't turned on already)
- 3.) If Continuous Wave Doppler is available, Turn it on and Ensure that the Probe does not heat up immediately.

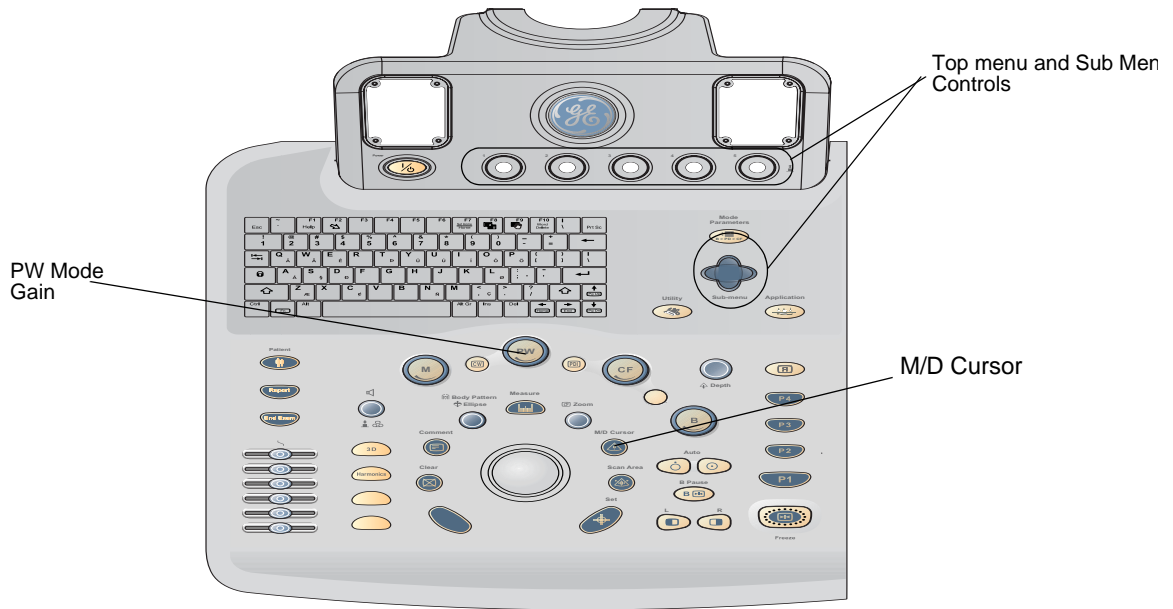


Figure 4-14 Controls available in Doppler Mode

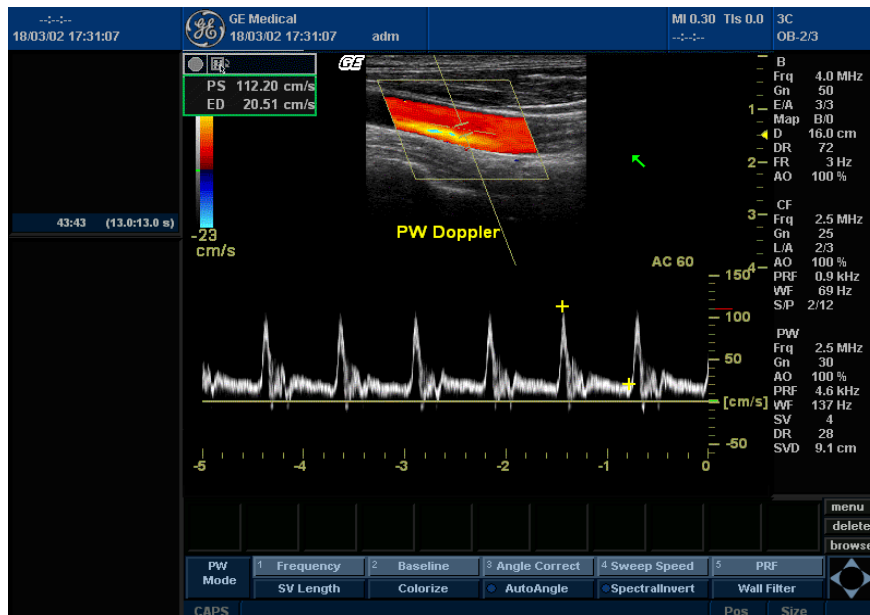


Figure 4-15 Doppler Mode Screen Picture Example

**4-4-5-2 Doppler Mode OP Panel Controls**

**Table 4-10 Doppler Mode OP Panel Controls**

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Press PW Mode key	PW Mode Starts
2	Adjust Gain	Amplifies the overall strength of the echoes processed in the Color Flow window. Turn the Gain dial (PW Mode key) to the left/right to increase/decrease Gain.
3	Display M/D-Mode Cursor	Displays the M/D-Mode cursor on the B-Mode image. Press Cursor and Trackball to position sample volume graphic. Rotate SV gate to adjust sample volume gate size.
4	Audio Volume	Controls Doppler audio output. Turn Volume left/right to adjust PW Doppler audio.

**4-4-5-3 Doppler Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls**

**Table 4-11 Doppler Mode Top and Sub Menu Controls**

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1	Rejection	Adjust rejection level. When this control is increased, low-level echoes are rejected and appear darker in the PW image. Press Rejection Paddle left/right keys to adjust the level.
2	Sweep Speed	Changes the speed at which timeline is swept. Rotate left/right to increase/decrease the value.
3	Full Timeline	Displays only timeline screen. Press the Full Time in the Sub-menu screen to activate.
4	Display Format	Select the format to display B image and PW image on the monitor. Press Paddle switch and select from the Top Menu
5	Frequency	Enables the adjustment of the probe's operating frequency. Press Frequency and select desired value. The selected frequency is displayed in the status window.
6	Angle Correct	Optimizes the accuracy of the flow velocity. Rotate left/right to adjust the angle relative to the probe face
7	Spectral Invert	Vertically inverts the spectral trace without affecting the baseline position. Press invert to invert the spectral trace. The Plus and Minus signs on the velocity scale reverse when the spectrum is inverted.
8	Sample Volume Length	Sizes the sample volume gate. Rotate SV length Knob to resize gate.
9	Spectral Average	Activates Spectral Average.
10	Duplex / Triplex	Activates Duplex/Triplex Mode of operation
11	Color Map	Colorize the gray scale image to enhance the eyes' discrimination capability. Select the Color Map on the sub menu and select the appropriate map.
12	Trace Direction / Method	Provides automatic Trace of the Spectrum above and/or below the base line.
13	Dynamic Range	Controls how echo intensities are converted to shades of gray. Click Dynamic Range Paddle key to increase/decrease the value.
14	Auto Calculations	Activates Auto Calculations of the Measurements
15	Adjust Angle Steer	Slant the Color Flow linear image left or right to get more information without moving probes. Rotate Angle Steer to the left/right to slant the linear image.
16	Move Baseline	Adjusts the baseline to accommodate faster or slower blood flows to eliminate aliasing. Rotate Baseline left/right to shift the baseline.
17	PRF / Wall Filter	Adjust the velocity scale to accommodate faster/slower blood flow velocities. Rotate PRF left/right to select values
18	Trace Sensitivity	Activates Trace Sensitivity.

## 4-4-6 Measurement and Multi Image Checks

### 4-4-6-1 Performing B Mode Measurements Checks



Figure 4-16 Measurement Keys

Table 4-12 Measurement Checks

Step	Task	Expected Result(s)
1.	Generate the B image.	A B image is active on the screen
2.	Press Freeze	Freeze the image to measure.
3.	Press <b>MEASURE</b> on the Control Panel to enter the Assign and Measure modality.	The measurement soft menu for the current exam category is displayed on the Monitor. Select the appropriate exam category and measurement kind.
5.	<b>Trackball</b> the cursor	Move the cursor to the start point of the measurement
6.	Press <b>Set</b> .	Anchor the start point of the measurement.
7.	Trackball the cursor	Move the cursor to the measurement end point. The current distance value is displayed in the <i>Measurement result table</i> and is instantaneously updated when moving the cursor

## 4-4-7 Basic Measurements

*NOTE:* The following instructions assume that you first scan the patient and then press **Freeze**.

### 4-4-7-1 Distance and Tissue Depth Measurements

- 1.) Press **MEASURE** once; an active caliper displays.
- 2.) To position the active caliper at the start point (distance) or the most anterior point (tissue depth), move the **TRACKBALL**.
- 3.) To fix the start point, press **Set**. The system fixes the first caliper and displays a second active caliper.
- 4.) To position the second active caliper at the end point (distance) or the most posterior point (tissue depth), move the **TRACKBALL**.
- 5.) To complete the measurement, press **SET**. The system displays the distance or tissue depth value in the measurement results window.

Before you complete a measurement:

To toggle between active calipers, press **MEASURE**.

To erase the second caliper and the current data measured and start the measurement again, press **CLEAR** once.

*NOTE:* To rotate through and activate previously fixed calipers, turn **CURSOR SELECT**.

*NOTE:* After you complete the measurement, to erase all data that has been measured to this point, but not data entered onto worksheets, press **CLEAR**.

### 4-4-7-2 Circumference/Area (Ellipse) Measurement

- 1.) Press **MEASURE** once; an active caliper displays.
- 2.) To position the active caliper, move the **TRACKBALL**.
- 3.) To fix the start point, press **SET**. The system fixes the first caliper and displays a second active caliper.
- 4.) To position the second caliper, move the **TRACKBALL**.
- 5.) Turn the **ELLIPSE** control; an ellipse with an initial circle shape appears.

#### 4-4-7-2 Circumference/Area (Ellipse) Measurement (cont'd)

*NOTE: Be careful not to press the Ellipse control as this activates the Body Pattern.*

- 6.) To position the ellipse and to size the measured axes (move the calipers), move the **TRACKBALL**.
- 7.) To increase the size, turn the **ELLIPSE** control in a clockwise direction. To decrease the size, turn the **ELLIPSE** control in a counterclockwise direction.
- 8.) To toggle between active calipers, press **MEASURE**.
- 9.) To complete the measurement, press **SET**. The system displays the circumference and area in the measurement results window.

Before you complete a measurement:

- To erase the ellipse and the current data measured, press **CLEAR** once. The original caliper is displayed to restart the measurement.
- To exit the measurement function without completing the measurement, press **CLEAR** a second time.

#### 4-4-7-3 Worksheets

Measurement/Calculation worksheets are available to display and edit measurements and calculations. There are generic worksheets as well as Application specific worksheets. The worksheets are selected from the Measurement Menu.

#### 4-4-7-4 Report Pages

Measurements/Calculations that are included on the worksheet can also be displayed on Report Pages.

**NOTE: This Feature is not yet fully functional on the LOGIQ™ 3**

### 4-4-8 Probe/Connectors Usage

#### 4-4-8-1 Connecting a probe

- 1.) Place the probe's carrying case on a stable surface and open the case.
- 2.) Carefully remove the probe and unwrap the probe cable.
- 3.) **DO NOT** allow the probe head to hang free. Impact to the probe head could result in irreparable damage.
- 4.) Turn the connector locking handle counterclockwise.
- 5.) Align the connector with the probe port and carefully push into place.
- 6.) Turn the connector locking handle clockwise to secure the probe connector.
- 7.) Carefully position the probe cable in the probe cord holder spot so it is free to move, but not resting on the floor.

#### 4-4-8-2 Activating the probe

Select the appropriate probe from the probe indicators on the NTPUI.

The probe activates in the currently-selected operating mode. The probe's default settings for the mode and selected exam are used automatically.

#### 4-4-8-3 Deactivating the probe

When deactivating the probe, the probe is automatically placed in standby mode.

- 1.) Press the **Freeze** key.
- 2.) Gently wipe the excess gel from the face of the probe. (Refer to the Basic User Manual for complete probe cleaning instructions.)
- 3.) Carefully slide the probe around the right side of the keyboard, toward the probe holder. Ensure that the probe is placed gently in the probe holder.

#### 4-4-8-4 Disconnecting the probe

Probes can be disconnected at any time. However, the probe should not be selected as the active probe.

- 1.) Move the probe locking handle counterclockwise. Pull the probe and connector straight out of the probe port.
- 2.) Carefully slide the probe and connector away from the probe port and around the right side of the keyboard. Ensure the cable is free.
- 3.) Be sure that the probe head is clean before placing the probe in its storage box.

### 4-4-9 Using Cine

#### 4-4-9-1 Activating CINE

Press **FREEZE**, then roll the **TRACKBALL** to activate CINE. To start CINE Loop playback, press Run/Stop. To stop CINE Loop playback, press Run/Stop.

#### 4-4-9-2 Quickly Move to Start/End Frame

Press **FIRST** to move to the first CINE frame; press **LAST** to move to the last CINE frame.

#### 4-4-9-3 Start Frame/End Frame

Turn the **START FRAME** dial to the left to move to the beginning of the CINE Loop. Turn the dial to the right to move forward through the CINE Loop.

Turn the **END FRAME** dial to the right to move to the end of the CINE Loop. Turn the dial to the left to move backward through the CINE Loop.

#### 4-4-9-4 Adjusting the CINE Loop Playback Speed

Turn the **LOOP SPEED** dial right/left to increase/decrease the CINE Loop playback speed.

#### 4-4-9-5 Moving through a CINE Loop Frame By Frame

Turn **FRAME BY FRAME** to move through CINE memory one frame at a time.

#### **4-4-10 Image Management (QG)**

For Image Management functionality refer to the LOGIQ™ 3 Quick Guide. It talks about several topics:

- Clipboard
- Printing Images
- Browsing and Managing an Exam's Stored Image
- Connectivity, and Dataflow Concept and Creation
- Starting an Exam
- Configuring Connectivity
- TCP/IP
- Services (Destinations)
- Buttons
- Views
- Verifying and Pinging a Device

#### **4-4-11 Back End Processor Checks**

If all the previous tests have been passed successfully, the backend processor is most likely OK. If the system seems to be operating erratically, Please refer to Chapter7, Diagnostic/Troubleshooting.

## Section 4-5 Software Configuration Checks

**Table 4-13 Software Configuration Checks**

Step	Task to do	Expected Result(s)	
1.	Check Date and Time setting	Date and Time are correct	Adjust the Date and Time setting
2.	Check that Location (Hospital Name and Department) is correct	Location Name is correct	Re-enter the correct Location Name
3.	Check Language setting	Language is proper	Set the proper Language
4.	Check Units setting	Units are proper	Set the local units
5	Check assignment of Printer Keys	Print1-4 Keys are assigned as desired by the customer	
6	Check that all of the customer's options are set up correct	All authorized functions are enabled	



## Section 4-6 Peripheral Checks

Check that peripherals work as described below:

**Table 4-14 Peripheral checks**

Step	Task to do	Expected Result(s)
1.	Press <u>(FREEZE)</u>	Stop image acquisition.
2.	Press <u>(PRINT 1)</u> or <u>(PRINT 4)</u> on the Control panel	The image displayed on the screen is printed on B&W or Color printer, depending on the key assignment configuration.
3.	Press <u>VIDEO</u> on the Control Panel.	To start the video counter at a different point:
4.	Press <u>VIDEO</u> or <u>B MODE</u> on the Control Panel	to return to the scanning mode
5.	Press <u>REC/PAUSE</u> on the <i>Control panel</i> .	to Start Recording A red dot is displayed in the <i>VCR status area</i> on the <i>Title bar</i> to indicate that recording has begun
6.	Press <u>REC/PAUSE</u> on the <i>Control panel</i> .	To Stop recording The video status icon is changed to (Pause)
7.	Press <u>VIDEO</u> on the Control Panel. and the assignable play	To start Play back an examination
8.	Use the <b>Assignable keys</b> on the <i>Control panel</i>	to perform actions on the recorded session, such as stop, pause, rewind or fast forward. The video status icon in updated accordingly.
9.	While in playback mode, use the <u>TRACKBALL</u> to adjust the video playback speed and scroll through the record.	To search on the tape
10.	Press the assignable <u>PAUSE</u>	to stop the tape at the desired frame.
11.	When playing back an examination	part of it can be stored on the computer's memory as a cineloop. The cineloop enables the user to perform further operations on the stored section (see for further information on cineloop operation).
12.	Press <u>(FREEZE)</u> while playing back a recorded session.	<b>To store a recorded sequence as a cineloop.</b> The last few seconds are stored as a cineloop.

## Section 4-7 Safety Issues

### 4-7-1 Probe/Connectors Check

Take the probes and check them as described below:

**Table 4-15 Probe and connectors check**

Step	Task to do	Expected Result(s)
1.	Test Each delivered Probe	it will display pictorial data on the screen
2.	Test each probe in each connector slot	It will display pictorial data each time
3.	Hold the probe connector vertically with the cable pointing upward. Turn the connector locking handle to the horizontal position. Align the connector with the probe port and carefully push into place. Rotate the locking handle to the full vertical position to lock in place. Position the probe cable so that it is not resting on the floor <b>CAUTION:</b> Do not allow the probe head to hang freely. Impact to the probe head may result in irreparable damage.	To connect a probe:
4.	Select the appropriate probe key on the Application Menu to activate the probe. Key Light Indicators: - on the Probe Off - no probe attached to probe port. On: normal intensity - probe attaches to the probe port but not active. On: high intensity - probe attached to the probe port and active. The probe activated in the currently selected operating mode. Previously Selected Application and Preseta are retained.	To select a probe and an application:
5.	Rotate the lock handle counter-clockwise to the horizontal position to unlock the connector. Remove the connector from the port Ensure that the probe head is clean before placing the probe in its storage case.	To disconnect probes: The probes that are not connected to the unit should be stored in their storage case.



**WARNING** *Probes can be connected at any time, whether the unit is on or off*

Do NOT touch the patient and any of the connectors on the ultrasound unit simultaneously, including ultrasound probe connectors.



**WARNING** *Take the following precautions with the probe cables: Keep free from the wheels. Do not bend. Do not cross cables between probes.*

### 4-7-2 Power Supply Adjustment

There are no adjustments on the power supplies. The DC Power is self-regulated. If a voltage is outside the specified range, it means that something is wrong, either with the power supply itself or with a component connected to that specific power outlet.

# Section 4-8

## Site Log

**Table 4-16 Site Log**

Date	Service person	Problem	Comments

This page was intentionally left blank.

---

# Chapter 5

## Components and Functions (Theory)

### Section 5-1 Overview

#### 5-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 5

This chapter explains LOGIQ™ 3's system concepts, component arrangement, and subsystem function. It also describes the Power Distribution System (PDS) and probes.

**Table 5-1 Contents in Chapter 5**

Section	Description	Page Number
5-1	Overview	5-1
5-2	Block Diagrams and Theory	5-4
•	Top Console	5-9
5-3	External I/O on the Rear Panel	5-10
5-4	Peripherals	5-10
5-5	Power Diagrams	5-11
5-6	Circuit Boards Descriptions	5-14
5-7	Mechanical Descriptions	5-26
5-8	Air Flow Control	5-27
5-9	Common Service Platform	5-28

## 5-1-2 General Information

- LOGIQ™ 3 is a phased and linear array ultrasound imaging scanner. It has provisions for analog input sources like ECG and phono.
- The system can be used for:
  - 2D Black-and-White imaging
  - 2D Color Flow
  - M-Mode Black-and-White imaging
  - Color M-Mode
  - Pulse Doppler
  - Different combinations of the above modes
- Only LOGIQ™ 3 Expert supports 192 element Probes. It uses analog and digital delay to focus the beam. The analog delay is short and fixed. The digital delay is used for long delay and dynamic focus. This system also features many advanced image processing controls.
- Signal flow travels from the Probe Connector Panel to the Front End, to the Mid Processors and Back-End Processor, and finally to the monitor and peripherals.
- System configuration is stored on a hard disk and all necessary software is loaded from the hard disk on power up.

## 5-1-3 System Features

The key design goals of this system are:

- High Image Quality
- Increased User Productivity
- Multiple Clinical Applications
- Planned Upgrade ability
- High Mobility

## 5-1-4 Types of Applications

The LOGIQ™ 3 is a general imaging system which supports many clinical uses. Scan and display parameters may be user selected to default to desired values for each application. The system presets many parameters to clinically determined, optimal values.

- Radiology
- Cardiology
- OB/GYN
- Vascular

The LOGIQ™ 3 system can be divided into an analog signal processing section, a digital signal processing section, and the microprocessor driven system control section, which controls the system based on operator commands and system status information.

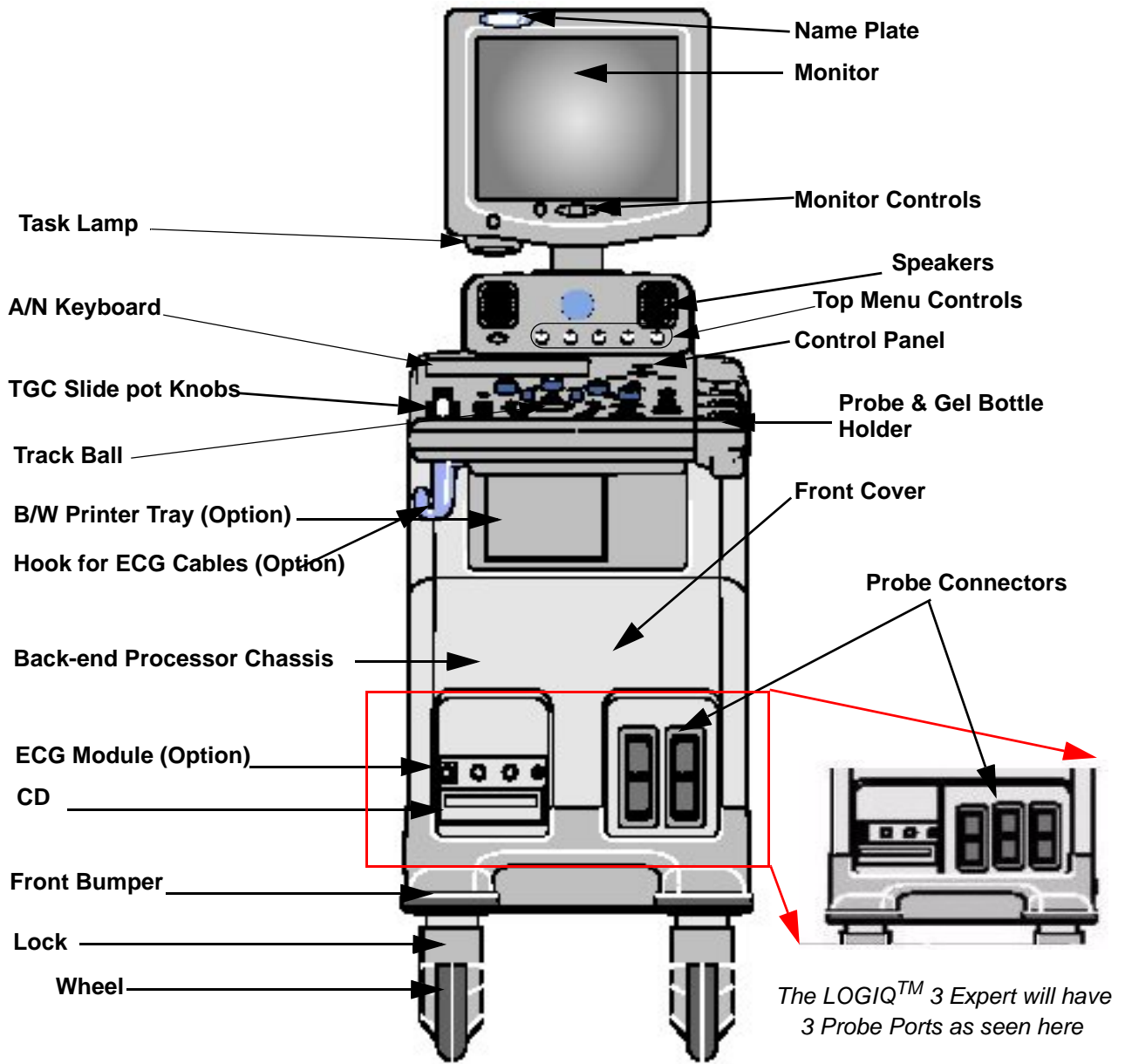


Figure 5-1 LOGIQ™ 3 Major Components

## Section 5-2 Block Diagrams and Theory

### 5-2-1 Block Diagram

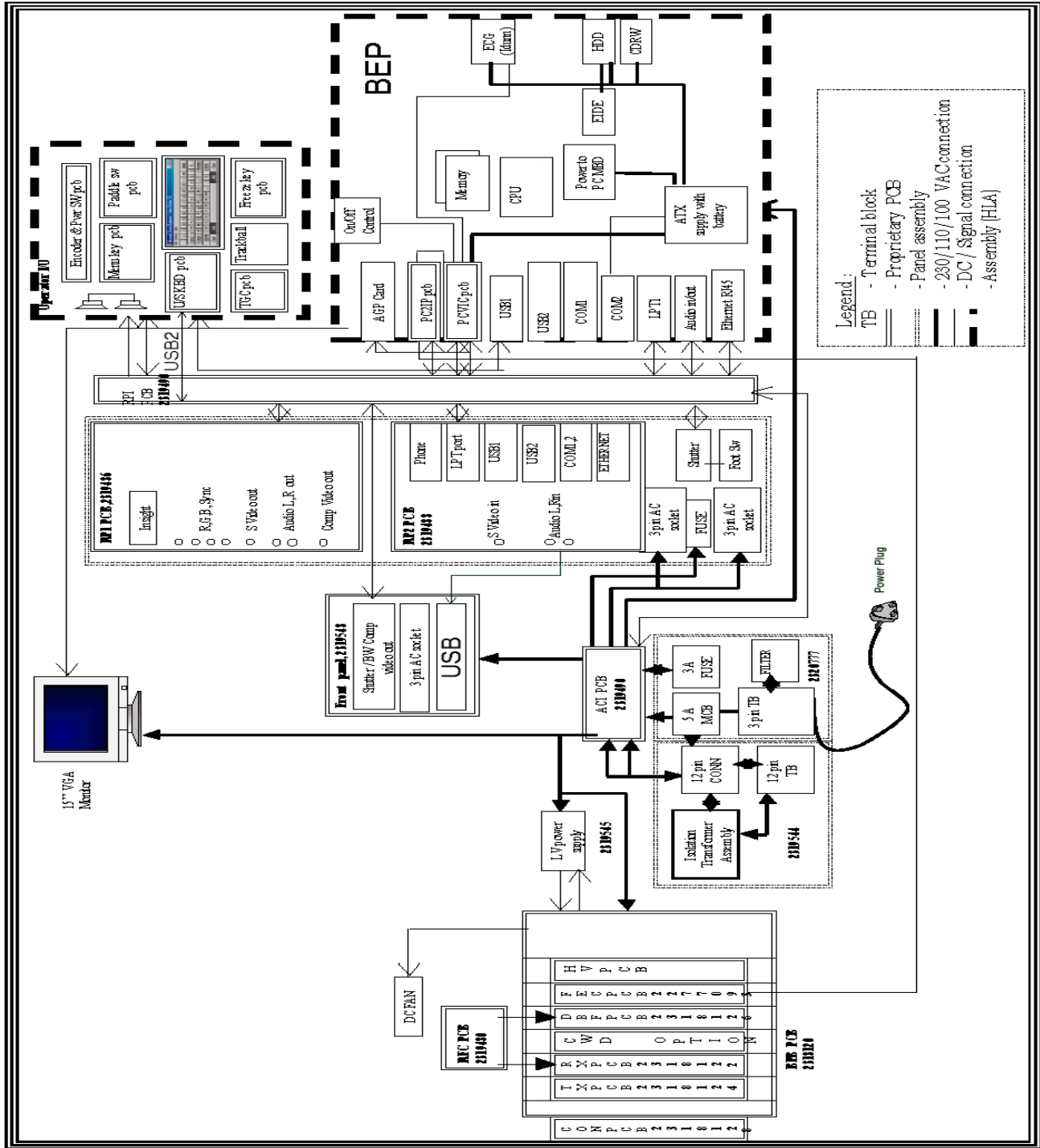


Figure 5-2 LOGIQ™ 3 Block Diagram



### 5-2-2 Front End

The Front End Consists of Conn. Board, Transmit Board, Receive Board & Digital Beam Former.

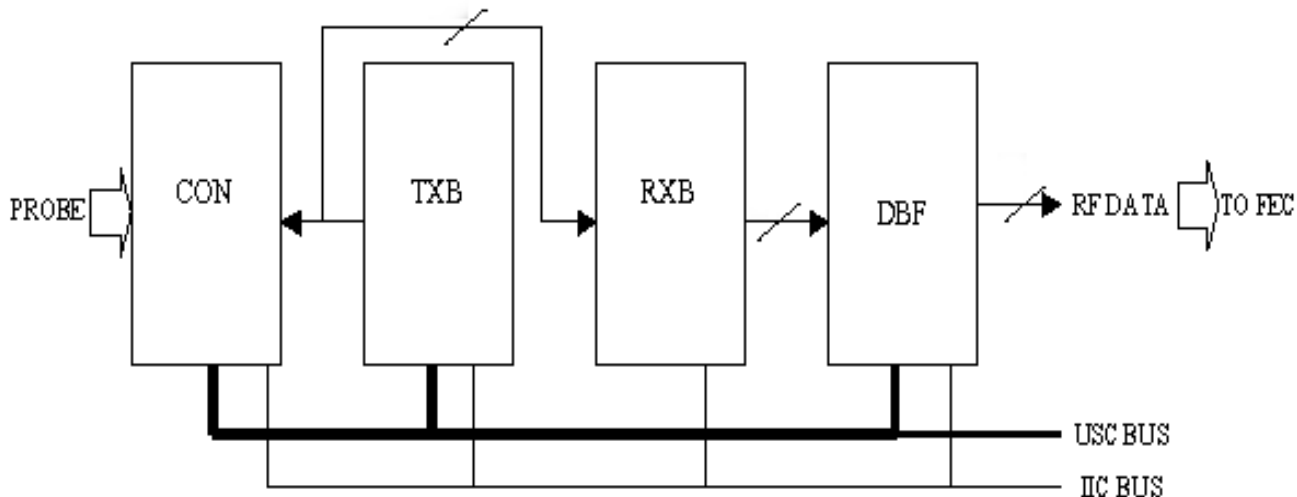


Figure 5-3 The Front End

The Front End generates electrical signals which are transmitted by the probes as ultrasound into the body. It also receives weak ultrasound echoes from blood cells and body structure, amplifies these signals and converts them to an 12 bit digital signal.

The digital representation of this signal is presented to the mid processor section.

RXB (Receive Board): The Pre-amplifier amplifies echo signals. The reception signals are sent to DBF.

DBF (Digital Beam Former): Performs receive delay summing for channels

TXB (Transmit Board): This has channel bipolar drivers, delay calculators.

5-2-3 Mid Processors

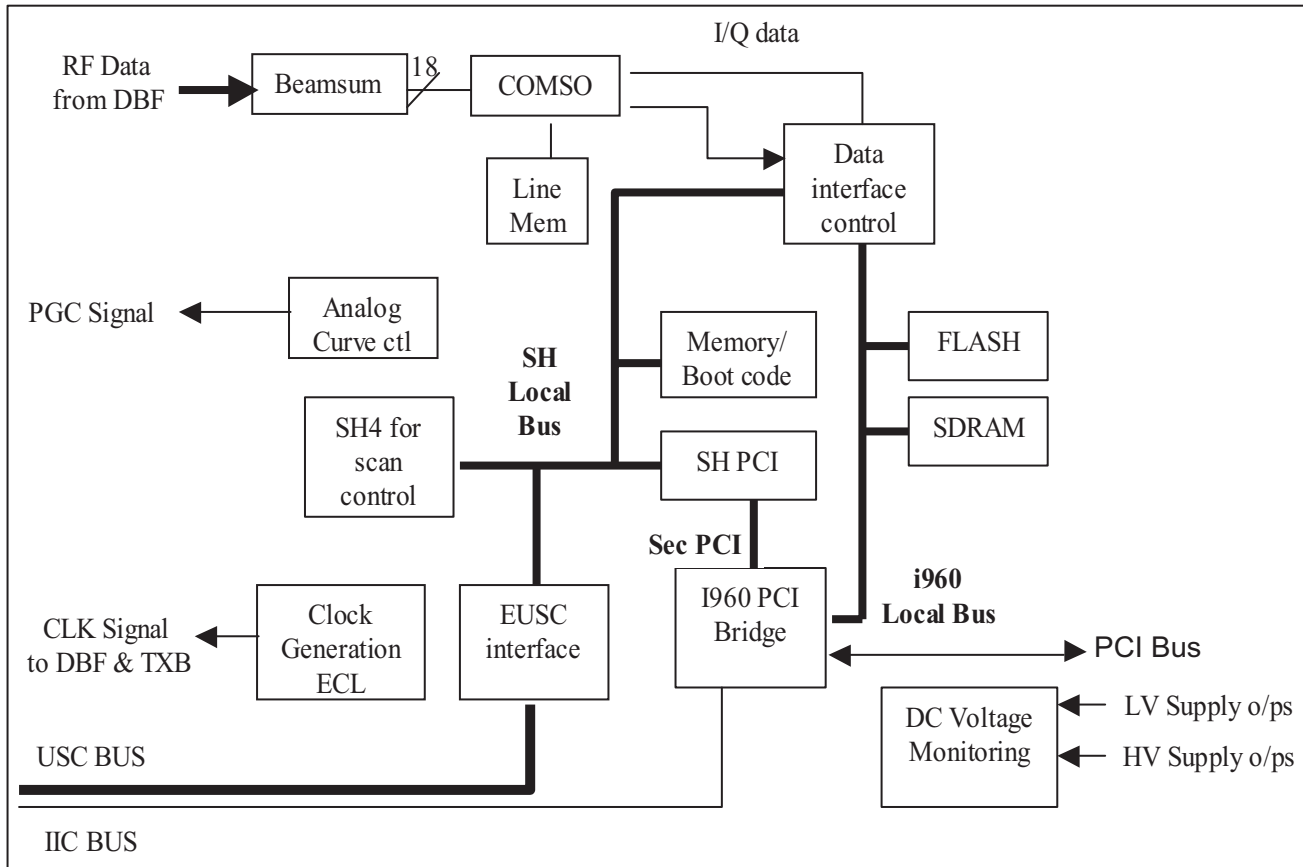


Figure 5-4 The Mid Processor

This block performs the adequate signal conditioning for Tissue and Doppler. This block is implemented in FEC only.

- **BEAM SUMMING:** adds the beam data from the two OQ Card banks (3 each) to make the one scan vector in FEC (Front End Control) ASSY.
- **COMSO:** makes the B / I / Q image data by filtering, enhancing, LOG compression, envelope detecting and so on.
- **PCI-to-PCI Bridge:** transfers the image data from COMSO through PCI DMA channel into PC main memory.
- **SH-4:** is in charge with real time control for scan operation and safety.

5-2-4 CPU/Backend Processor

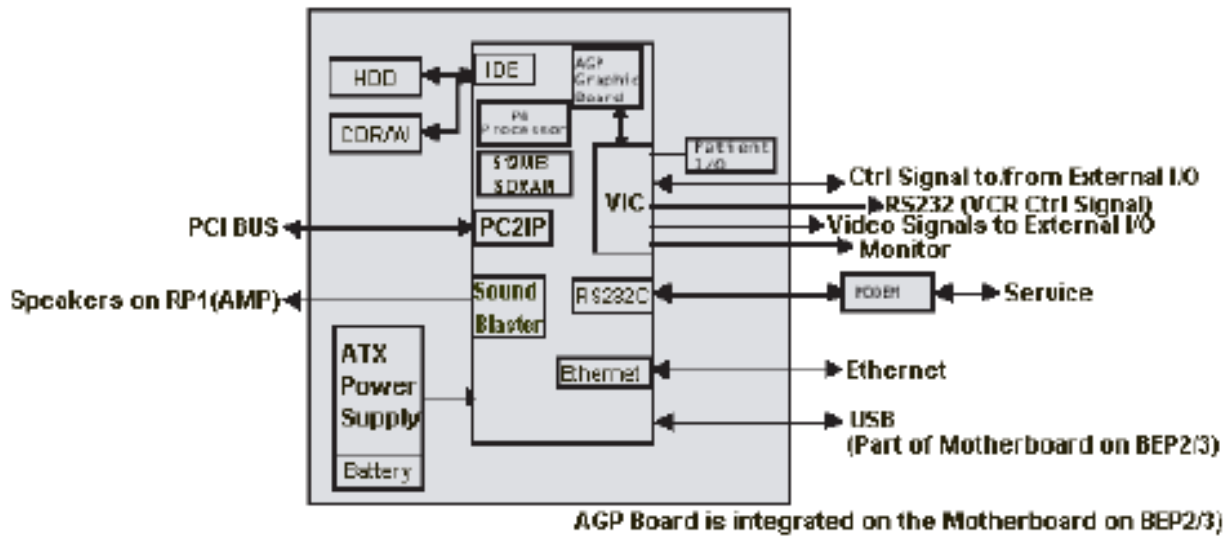


Figure 5-5 CPU/Backend Processor

The Back End Processor grabs the data from the FEC, stores it in a main memory, performs scan conversion to pixel domain and drives the system RGB monitor.

The Back End Processor grabs the data from the Front End, stores it in a main memory, performs scan conversion to pixel domain and drives the system RGB monitor. Back End Processor software is also providing B mode, M mode, CFM, Doppler processing

BEP Box include ATX smps and UPS battery, ATX type P4 motherboard and P4 CPU. Memory capacity is 512MB minimum. AGP and PCI slots on motherboard contains followings

- AGP video card displays image on monitor. Monitor display resolution is 800 x 600, 75Hz.

**NOTE:** *There is no Separate AGP present on the BEP2/3. It is integrated on the motherboard of the BEP2/3*

- PCI Slot #1 VIC Card: Video Converter Board for VCR playback and VCR recording and analog video image printing
- PCI Slot #2: Open slot
- PCI Slot #3 PC2IP card
- PCI Slot #4 Sound Card (integrated on the BEP Motherboard in BEP2/3)
- PCI Slot #5 Ethernet Card (integrated on the BEP Motherboard in BEP2/3)
- PCI Slot #6: Open slot for 3D sensor card option (to be introduced in the future)

**Storing Devices:**

- Hard Disk Drive (HD Drive) (Inside the PC box)
- CD R/W Drive (Available from the front of scanner).
- Optional Magneto Optical Drive (MO Drive) (Optional) (Available from the front of scanner).

5-2-5 VIC Card

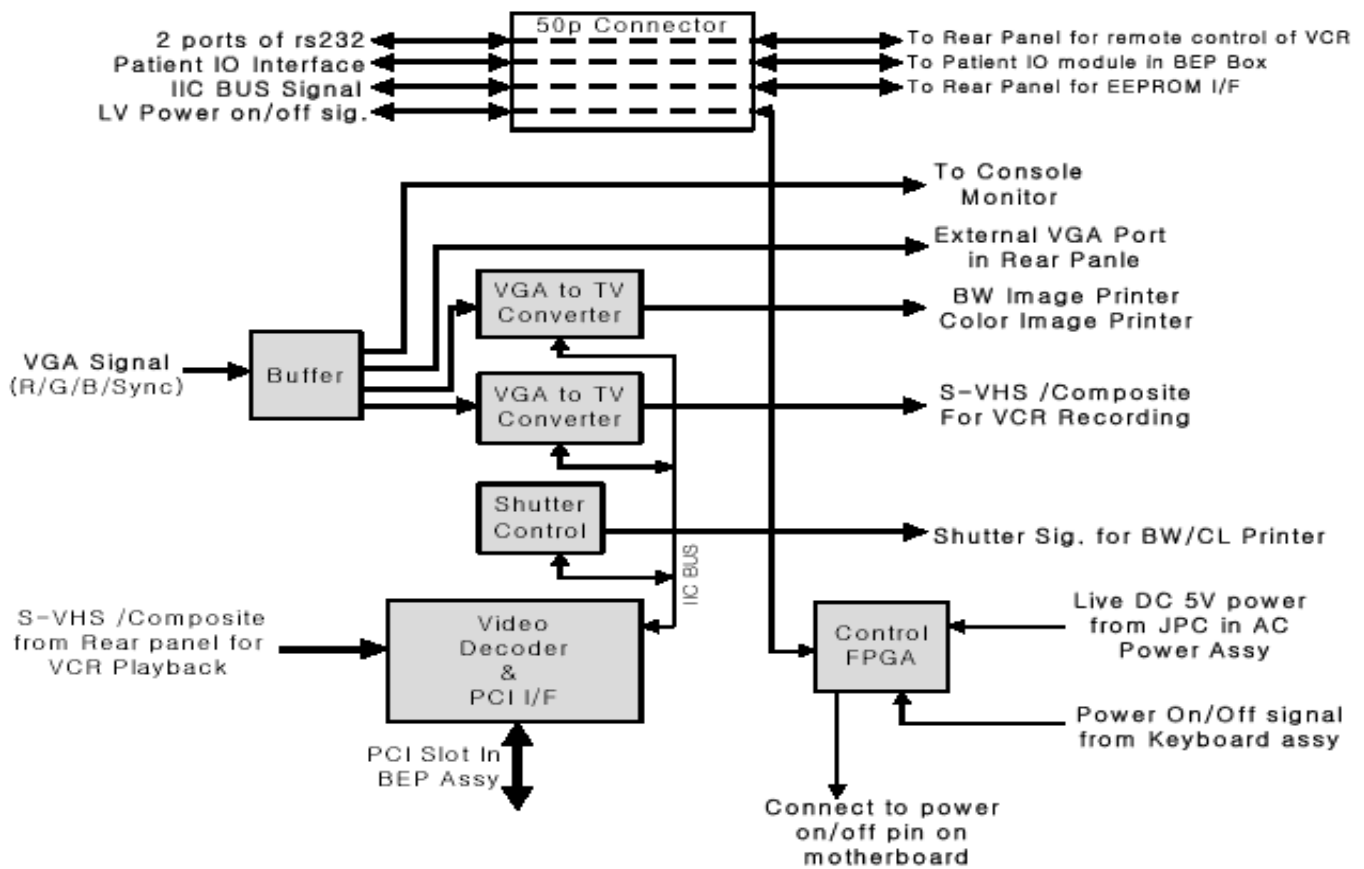


Figure 5-6 VIC Board

VIC Card perform video conversion operations and Power on/off control.

- Video Decoder: Video decoder convert S-VHS or composite video analog signal to digital RGB data and send the RGB digital data into BEP main memory on motherboard through PCI bus. And then this video digital data is displayed on console monitor. Video analog signal comes from rear panel. This video decoder also have IIC bus interface logic.
- VGA to TV Converter: This device convert the VGA display signal to TV display signal for B/W printer and color printer and VCR recording.
- Shutter Control CPLD: Shutter signals for analog B/W printer and color printer are generated by this CPLD. And this CPLD is controlled by video decoder via IIC bus.
- Power Control FPGA: This FPGA generates power on/off signal. This device is alive always by live DC power which comes from ACI assy in AC Power Assy. So this device monitor the status of power on/off switch on the keyboard. If power switch will be pushed once, this device turn on the LV power supply in AC power assy and after few seconds, turn on the BEP assy.

### 5-2-6 Patient I/O (Option)

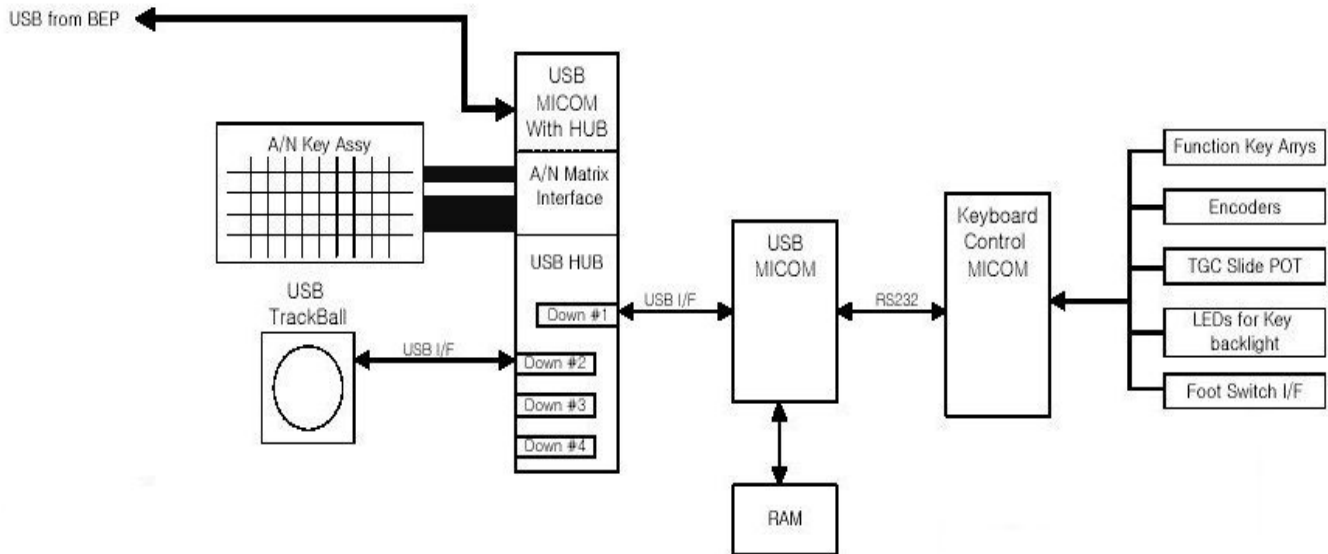
The optional Patient I/O is mounted at the front of the scanner with its connector panel.

**Available inputs:**

- PCG
- ECG
- AUX1
- AUX2
- Top Console

The Top Console includes a Stand By/On switch, a keyboard, different controls for manipulating the picture quality, controls for use in Measure & Analyze (M&A), and loudspeakers for stereo sound output (used during Doppler scanning, inside the Keyboard assy).

### 5-2-7 Keyboard



**Figure 5-7 Keyboard Block Diagram**

Keyboard assy provide all of operator interface for scan. Keyboard assy consist of several pieces of main function assembly.

- **USB HUB Assy:** The USB HUB assy has USB interface for upstream USB port which comes from BEP. USB HUB assy also has alpha numeric key interface, control functions and USB hub. So the USB trackball, the USB of main assy.
- **MAIN Assy:** The Main assy has a USB micom to interface between the main assy and USB hub assy. All function keys' and encoders' interface and controls are done by an additional control on the micom chip.

## 5-2-8 Monitor

15 inch high resolution RGB monitor with non interlace scan includes a task lamp to light up the A/N key on keyboard assy



Figure 5-8 Monitor

## Section 5-3 External I/O on the Rear Panel

The External I/O is the interface between the scanner and all external items, located at the rear side of the scanner.

Examples: InSite, TCP/IP network, Printer, etc.

## Section 5-4 Peripherals

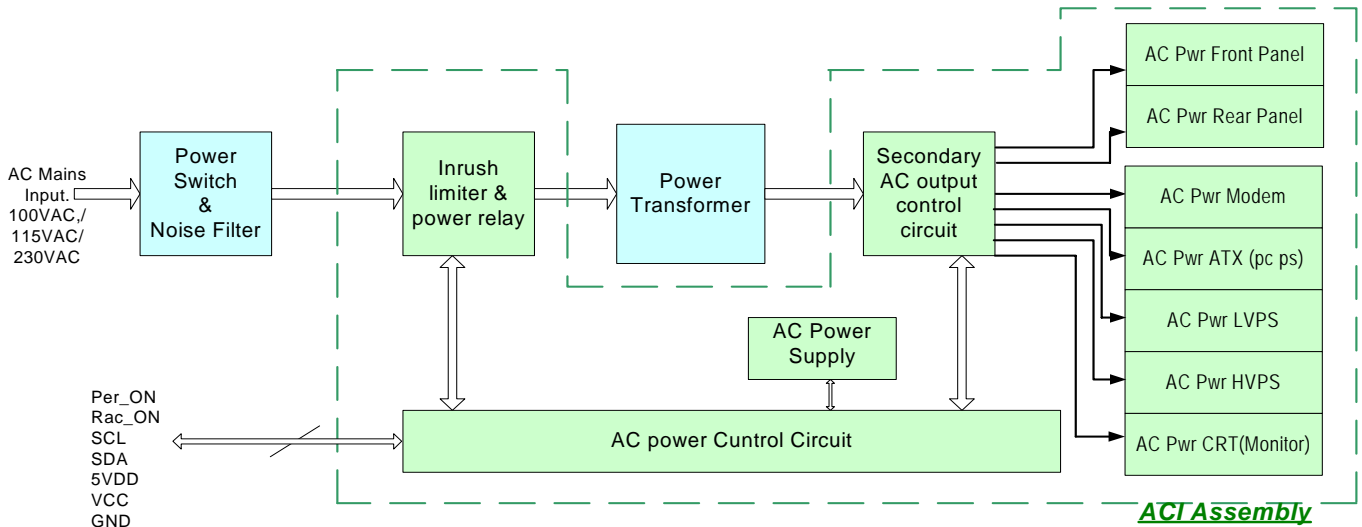
Black & White Video Printer (Optional) is installed onboard the scanner. VCR, Color Printer are connected off board through the External I/O (Rear Panel). For Connecting the Peripherals refer to Peripheral Option Manuals.

## Section 5-5 Power Diagrams

### 5-5-1 Overview

The AC Power's main tasks are to supply the various internal subsystems and to galvanically isolate the scanner from the on site Mains Power System. To reduce inrush current, an inrush current limiter board has been included in the AC box.

### 5-5-2 AC Power



**Figure 5-9 AC Power Distribution Block Diagram**

The mains cord has plugs in one side end. A male plug connects to the mains outlet on site.

The mains voltage is routed to the Main Circuit Breaker, located on the rear of the system.

The Main Circuit Breaker is of the auto fuse type, if for some reason the current grows to high, the switch will automatically break the power.

From the Main Circuit Breaker, the AC power is routed via an Inrush Current Limiter to a internal outlet connector for the Mains Transformer.

### 5-5-2 AC Power (cont'd)

The Transformer is the galvanic barrier between the rest of the scanner and the on site AC Mains. Input voltage to the transformer can be either 230 VAC or 115 VAC or 100 VAC.

AC Power is supplied directly to the ATX PS (PC Power supply, located on the PC box) and to the HV unit CRT Monitor and LV unit via ACI PCB.

When the Power switch is ON, this signal is outputted from VIC board to the following devices via KBD>RPI>VIC> Mother board.

- The signal is sent to PC Box, then sent to ATX PS, so that the ATX PS is switched ON to apply DC power to the PC.
- The signal is sent to ACI PCB so that the SSR is switched ON to apply AC power to the LV unit, HV unit, and CRT monitor.
- The signal is sent to ACI PCB so that the SSR is switched ON to apply AC power to AC outlets of the Rear panel/Front Panel

### 5-5-3 DC Power (Low Voltage)

AC110V is supplied to the LV unit via AC Box > Transformer > ACI PCB. This is multiplied and rectified then step-downed to Low DC voltage to supply the devices/boards in the scanner.

The LV also support 12VDC for the system cooling fan.

DC Output Capacity:

- +3.3V, 20A
- +5VD, 14A
- +5V, 10A
- -5V, 3A
- +12V, 4A
- -12V, 500mA (Generated on the Back PlaneBoard using DC/DC converter)



5-5-4 TX Power/HV Power Supply

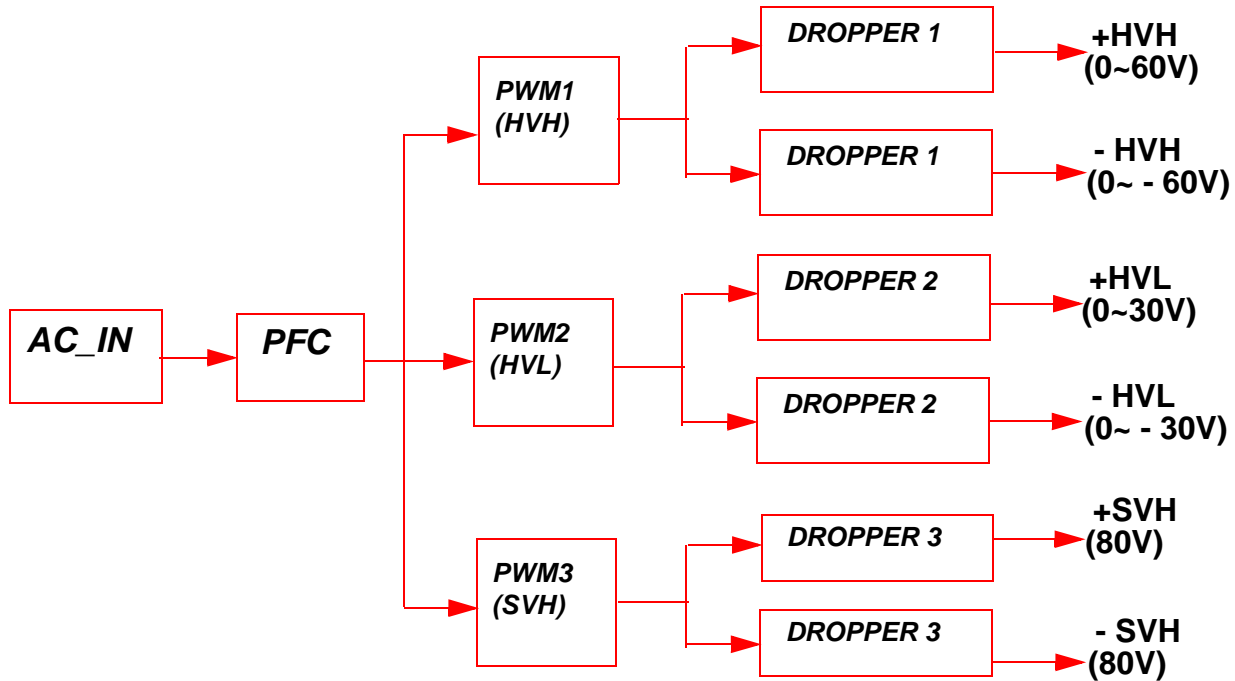


Figure 5-10 HV Unit Block Diagram

5-5-4-1 Overview

AC110V is supplied to the HV unit via AC Box > Transformer > ACI PCB. This is applied to the PFC, inside the HV unit. The PFC convert AC100V to DC400V, and DC voltage is applied to DC/DC, then to HVH, HVL, and SHV using dropper. They convert DC voltage to proper voltage to be outputted.

5-5-4-2 Specifications

DC Output Capacity:

- HVH: +/- 0V to +/- 60V variable, Max. 110W, Max. 2A
- HVL: +/-0V to +/- 30V variable, Max, 70W, 1A
- +SHV: +80V +/- 5%, 80mA
- -SHV: -80V +/- 5%, 80mA

5-5-4-3 Output Signal to FEC

The following signals are sent to FEC via BACKPLANE board.

- OV (Over Voltage), OC (Over Current) of each power source: HV tests in itself. The result transmits the FEC via BACKPLANE ASSY.

5-5-4-4 Input Signal from FEC

The following signals are sent to HV unit via FEC > BACKPLANE board.

- +5V, +/- 12V, HV STOP: These signals are sent to PFC to control DC voltage output of HVH, HVL, and -SHV. Normally HVSTOP is ON
- HVH Ref, HVL Ref: These are the digital signals (8 bits) sent to the DAC of HVH or HVL from FEC. Consequently, The DC Voltage (0 - 60V) is outputted from HV unit.

## Section 5-6 Circuit Boards Descriptions

The following table lists circuit boards and their respective card cage slot assignments on the mother board of the LOGIQ™ 3 system.

**Table 5-2 CIRCUIT BOARD DESCRIPTION**

Card Cage Slot	Board Name	Description	Note
1	TXB	Transmit Board	
2	RXB	Receive Board	
	CWD	Continuous Wave Doppler Board	
3	DBF	Digital Beam Former	
4	FEC	Front End Controller	
5	HVPS	High Voltage Power Supply	
	ACI	AC Control Interface	
	Conn.	Connector Board	
	RPL	Rear Panel Assy	RPI + RP1 + RP2
	LVPS	Low Voltage Power Supply	
	RPI	Rear Panel Interface	
	BPB	Back Plane Board	

5-6-1 Front End

5-6-1-1 Connector Board

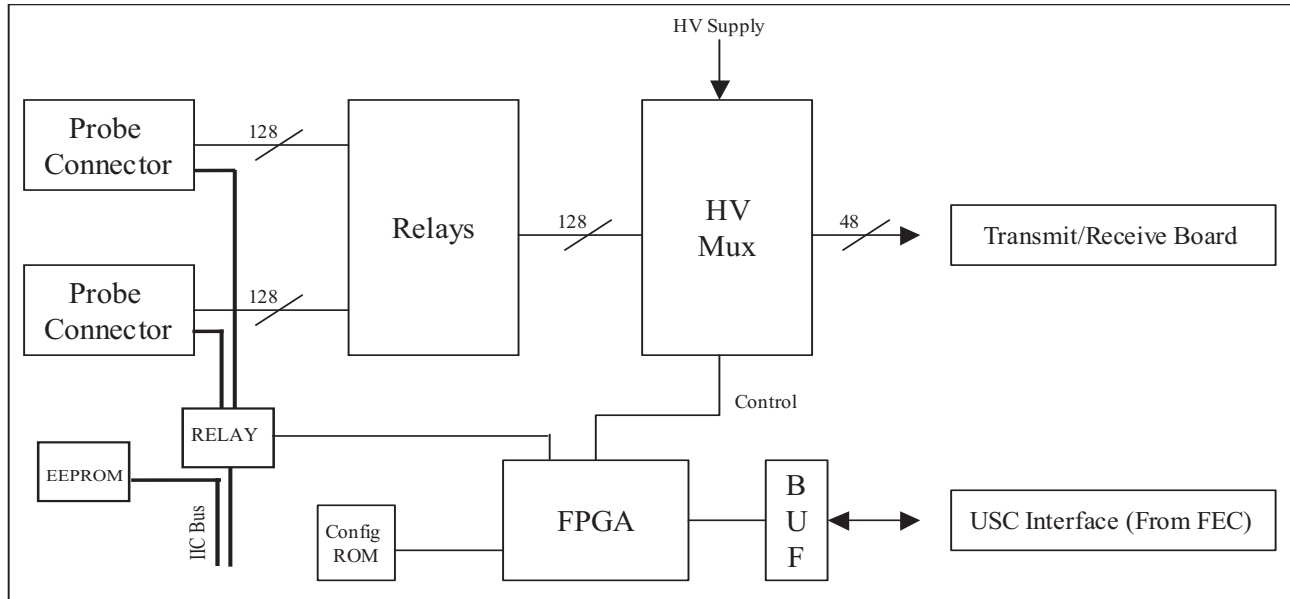
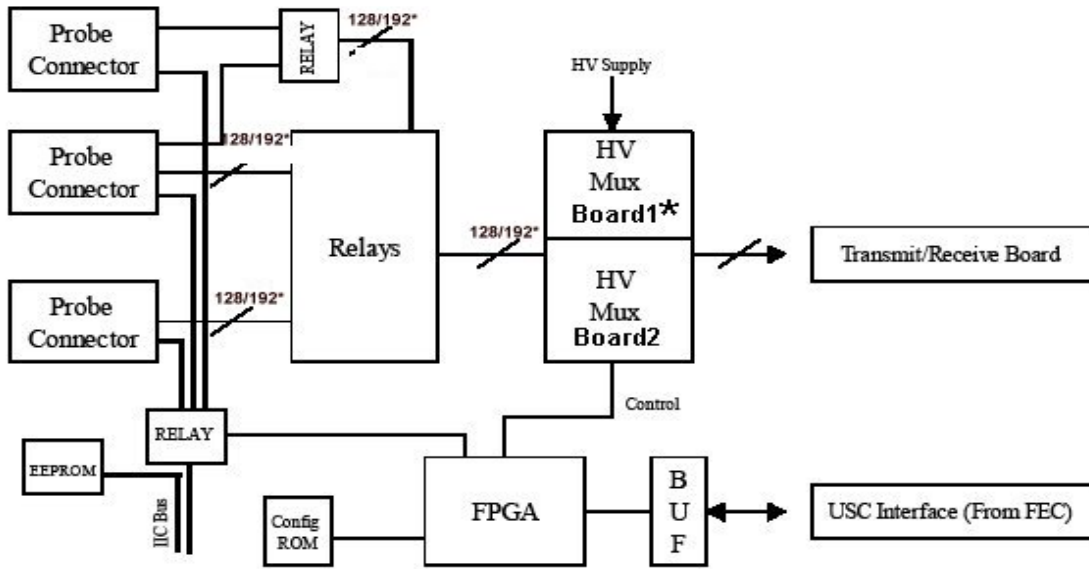


Figure 5-11 Connector Board - 2 Probe Port Type



\* - Piggy Back Board

Figure 5-12 Connector Board = 3 Probe Port Type

---

### **Overview**

Conn. Board contains of 2 phased array probe connectors and provides switchable connection between probes and transmitters/receivers.

The main function of Connector Board is as follows.

- 2-to-1 or 3-to-1 selectors for two or three probes.
- Interface with USC bus (control bus)
- Interface with FEC ASSY for IIC bus.
- Supply/Cut control and failure detection of supply voltage for Mux circuit in a Probe.
- Device: Mechanical Relay
- Switch: 128Ch 2:1 selector
- Max. Voltage: 140Vp-p
- Max. current: 0.5A
- Connector Board can support upto 192 elements , for LOGIQ 3 Expert only.

---

### **Interface to Probe**

- Probe Status detection
  - Detects whether or not a probe is connected.(POPEN)
  - Detects ID code of a connected probe.(PCODE)
- Mux Interface
  - Transfers control data of Mux to a probe.(CONSYS,CONSTA)
  - Enables/Disables control of data.
  - Detects whether Mux data setting is finished or not.
- Power Supply for Mux
  - Supply/Cut control:  
+5V and +12V on a connector are supplied while a probe is connected to the connector.  
+/-SHV are supplied only while a probe is selected.
- Surface temperature
  - Detects resistance of a thermistor in a probe head as voltage when the probe is selected.(PTEMP) This signal is connected to FEC.
- LED Blinking
  - The LED in a probe glows when the probe is selected. (Only on Selected probe which have LED's)

---

### **IIC bus**

- Connects signals of IIC bus with a relay when IIC bus access is required.
- Selects one of two probes that IIC access with 2-to-1 switch.
- Board Rev, Board No., Part No., are stored in EEPROM and sent to FEC through IIC Bus.

5-6-1-2 Transmit Board

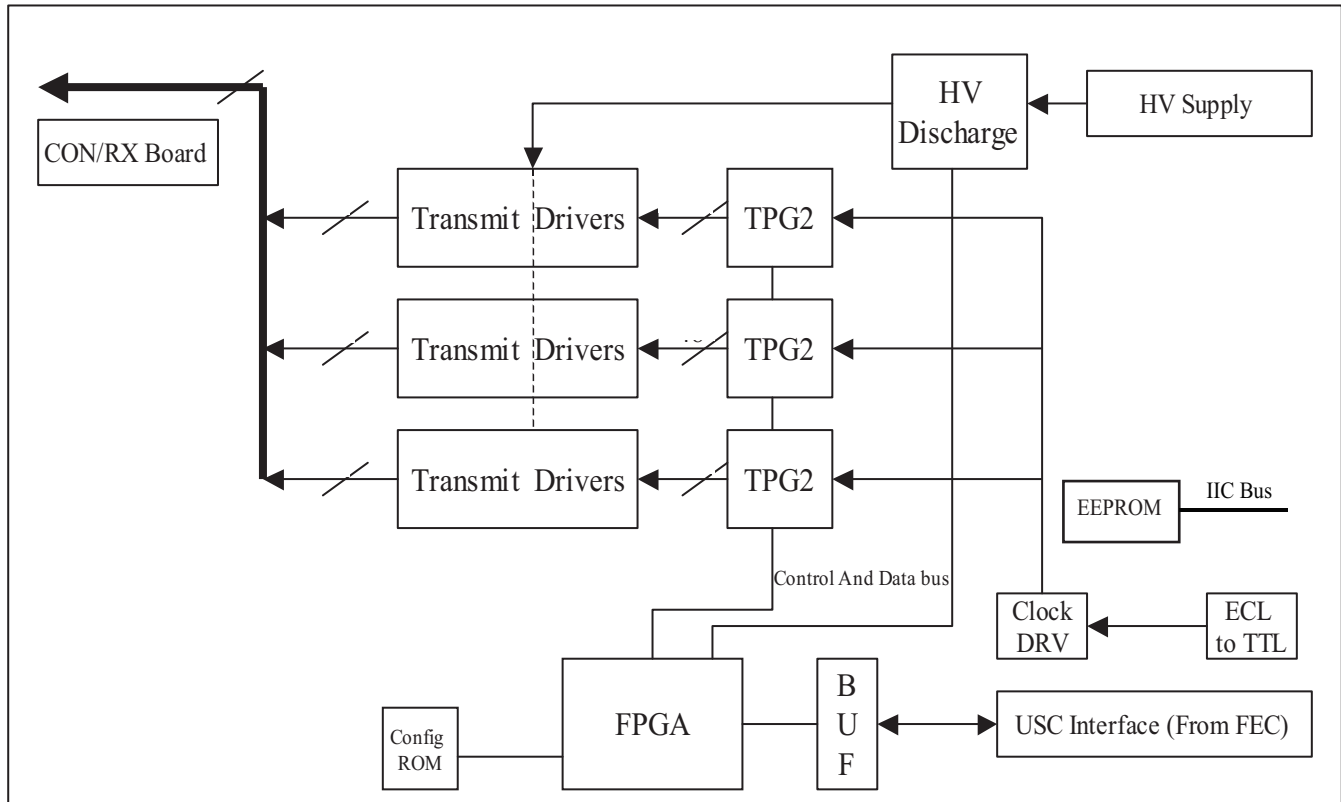


Figure 5-13 Transmit Board Block Diagram

**Overview**

The TXB Assy (Transmit Board) is designed for LOGIQ™ 3 system transmitter. This Assy has bipolar drivers, transmit pulse generator ASIC and so on.

**Key Features**

- Main Items are
  - \* TXIC: FPGA Interface and controller FPGA.
  - \* TPG 2 ASIC: Controller of pulse driver, Mixed signal ASIC.
- Bipolar drivers.

5-6-1-3 CWD Board (Optional)

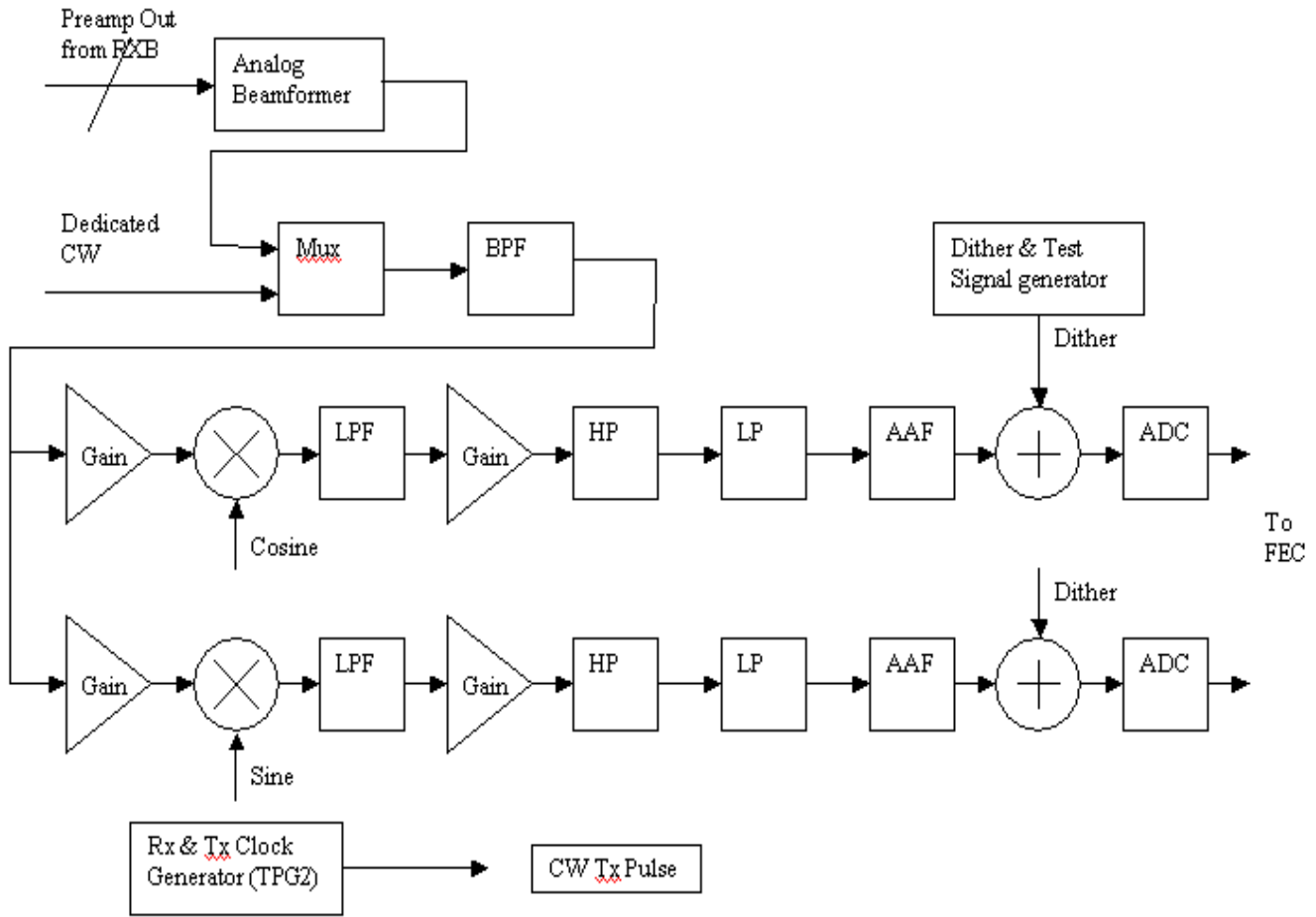


Figure 5-14

The major function of this board is analog beam forming by acting as a steering beam former and de-modulator. It receives analog input from the RXB via the RFC2 board and digital control input from FEC via the BPB.

It gives its digital output to FEC.

5-6-1-4 Receive Board

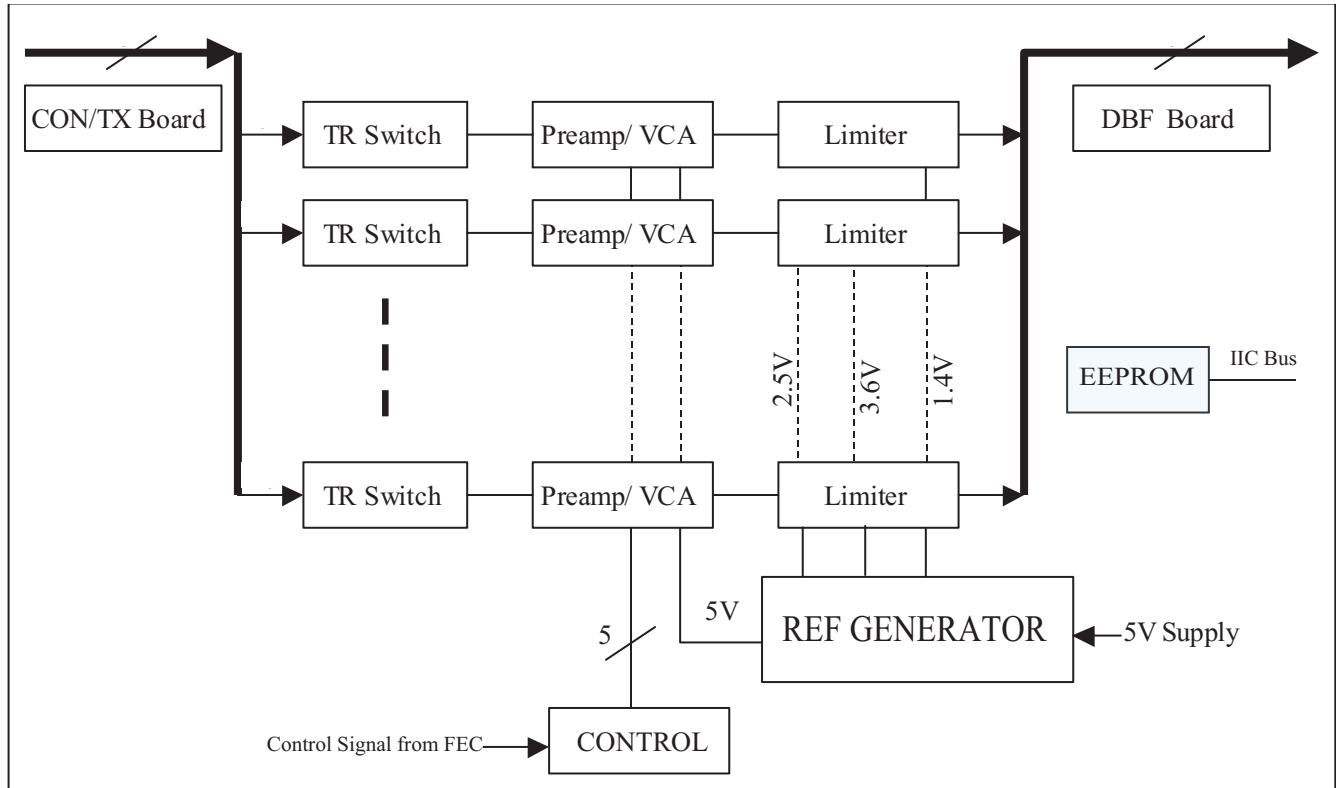


Figure 5-15 Receive Board

Sub-system receives and amplifies each echo signal. Then, all echo signals are outputted to the DBF Assy.

The RXB ASSY can amplify the echo signals. So, the echo signals are received by a RXB ASSY under appropriate control. The RXB ASSY are inserted into Nest box, which is composed of BACKPLANE and other boards.

The RXB ASSY have main three blocks: TR Switch, Pre-amp and Gain Control and Mode control block.

The Transmit/Receive Switch protects the receive amplifier from high voltage transmit pulse the RXB ASSY amplifies the echo signals. The mode control block selects a maximum gain code via dedicated control signals from FEC.

The analog voltage signal provided by Gain Control block gives total amplified gain.

The block diagram above of the RXB ASSY for a received signal is given. Actually, there are 48 echo adaptive channels in the assy.

The Pre-amp block consists of Low Noise Amplifier (LNA) which amplifies the RX Signal by fixed Gain and Time Gain Control Amplifier (TGC).

The Pre-amp block is controlled by totally 4digital signals and an analog signal. In digital, One for input impedance alternative low or high mode, another (3 bits) for choice of maximum gain code.

5-6-1-5 Digital Beam Former

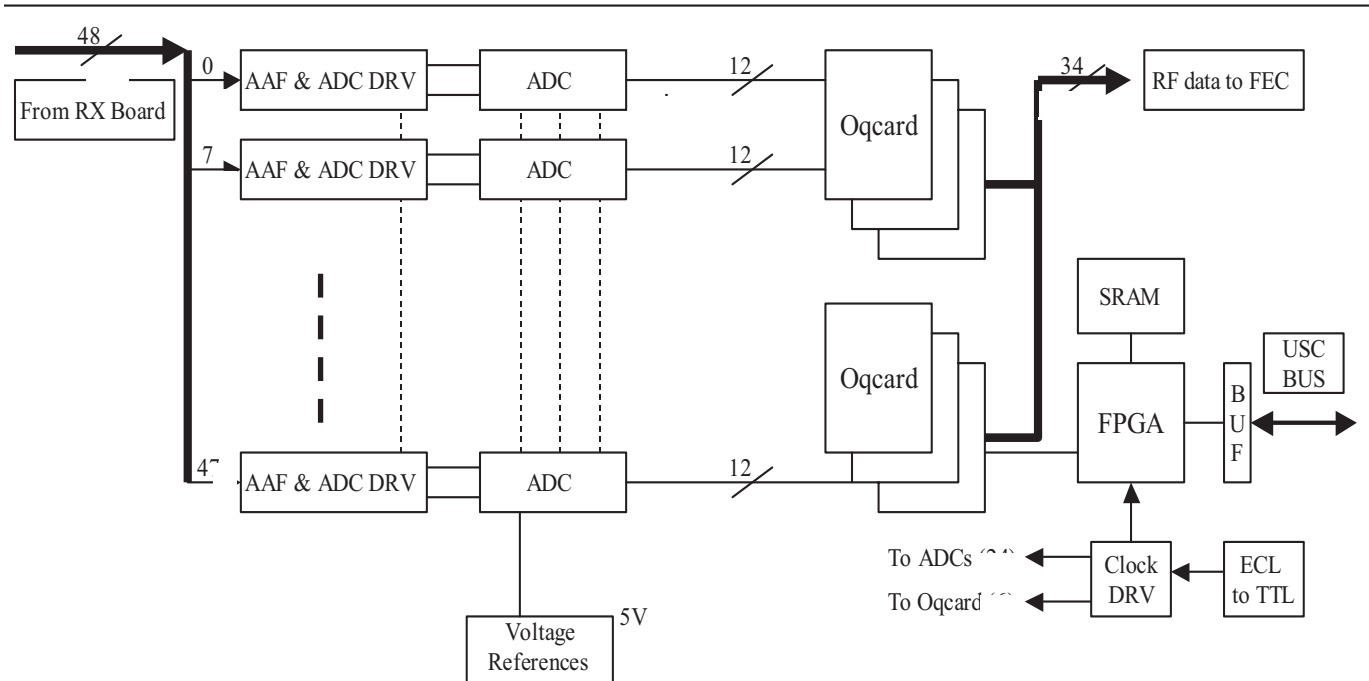


Figure 5-16 DBF Block Diagram

**Overview**

The DBF sub-system is the receiving Digital beam former.

The DBF sub-system is delay summing echo signals after pre-amplification and time controlled gain at the RXB ASSY. Then, the DBF sub-system adds the delay sum data and transfers the results to the FEC sub-system.

The block diagram is shown in the Figure above.

The DBF sub-system consists of delay summing part and its controller part.

**Control Part**

- Function Outline
  - Interfaces with CPU through USC Bus.
  - Generates receive timing.
  - Controls OQCARD's operation.
  - Controls delay data transfer from SRAM memories to OQCARD's.



- Operation Description
  - Scan Mode:  
This mode is for imaging. The parameters specific to scan line number are sent to OQCARD's and the start trigger for receiving signals is generated.
  - Access Mode:  
This mode is for accessing SRAM memories and OQCARD's.

**5-6-2 Mid Processors**

**5-6-2-1 FEC**

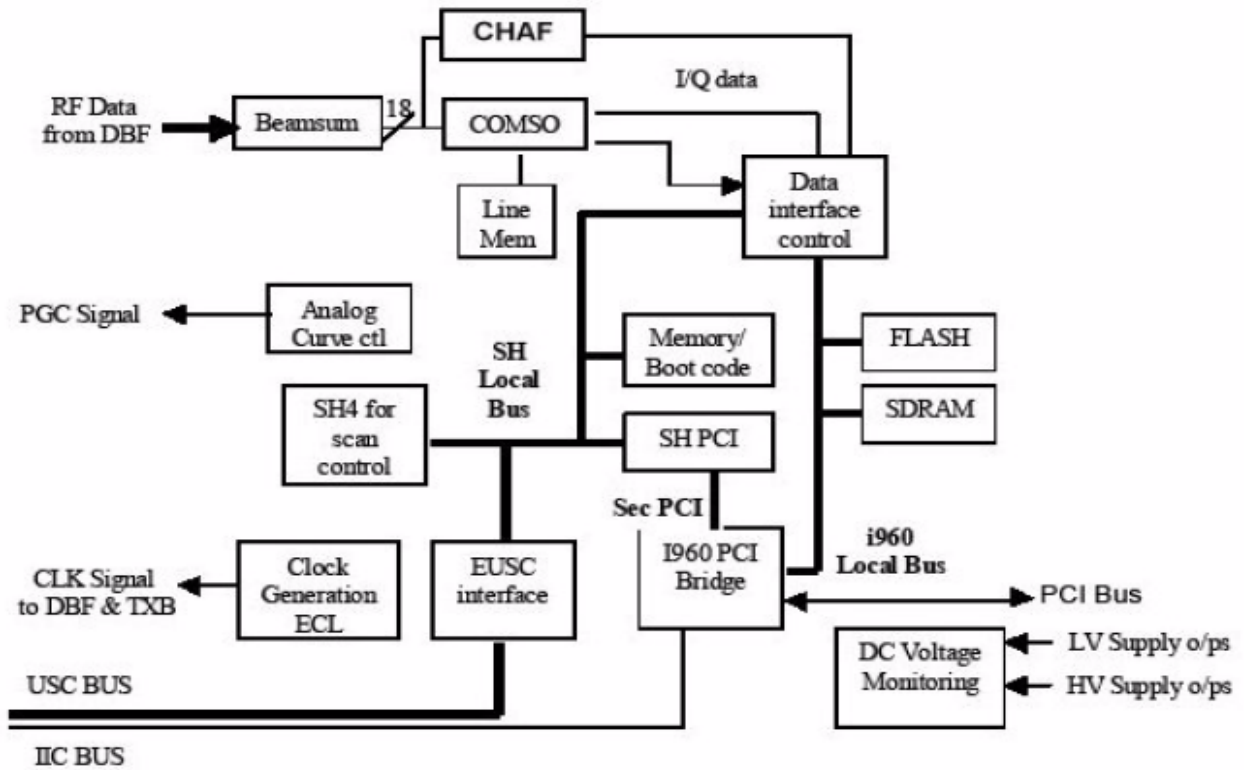


Figure 5-17 FEC Board

Figure 5-17 FEC Board

**Overview**

**Key Features**

- CHAF:(SPARE)  
Three CHAFs have functions of coded excitation decoder and 2nd harmonic filter.
- COMSO:  
Has functions of detector, B/M mode edge enhance, Log compression, and dynamic range control.

- **PCI IF:**  
Converts USC bus in FEC board. The local bus is connected to each block. It transfers B/M mode data to PACO FPGA via the COMSO data bus.
- **USC IF:**  
Has functions of generation to USC bus, generation of TGC signal and test signal for self-diagnostics, COMSO control, IIC Bus.
- **CLK Generator Block:**  
Generates 40MHz (two phases), and 26.6MHz clock using 160MHz master clock.
- **Real Time Controller (RTCL):**  
The TRIG cyclical Real Time Control is done by SH4 RISC processor. SH4 is a one of MID BUS agent through SH-PCI bridge.
- **PCI - PCI Bridge:**  
It Bridges between Mid bus and host side PCI bus by using i960RP. Mid bus is basically compliant to Compact PCI. Primary side PCI is connected to Host PC through PCI cable and PC21P which is mounted on PCI slot of PC-motherboard.
- **Image Data Transferring:**  
It receives image data from COMSO, and send them to Host side. Data is buffered when receiving on COMSO data bus. After buffered, data is stored and handled on Local side of i960. And DMA function of i960RP perform data transferring to host PC memory.
- **Peripheral Control:**  
The SH4 or i960RP also performs other functions like safety observation, HV Control and so on

5-6-2-2 THI Board (integrated on FEC 2277093-9)

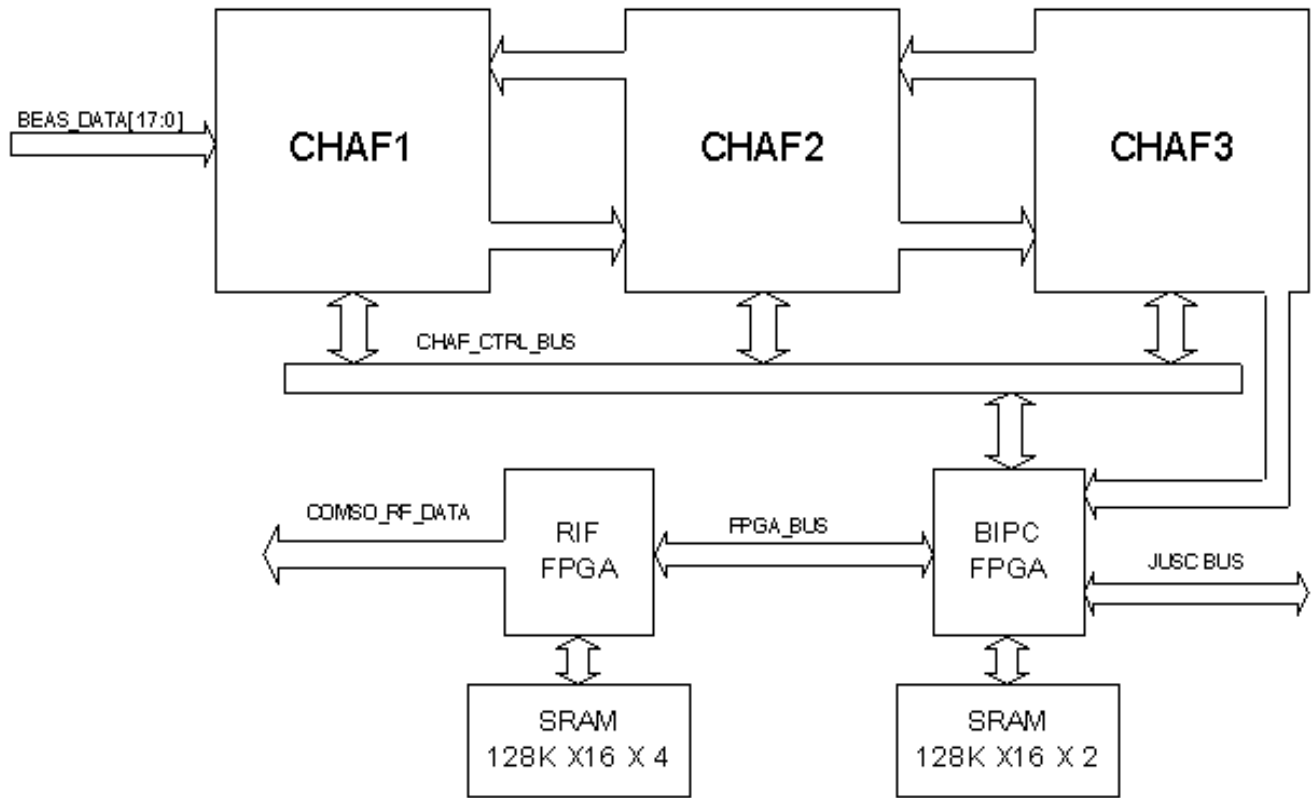


Figure 5-18

THI board gives an improved axial resolution and contrast feature.  
THI is implemented using CHAF ASIC.

5-6-2-3 PC2IP Board

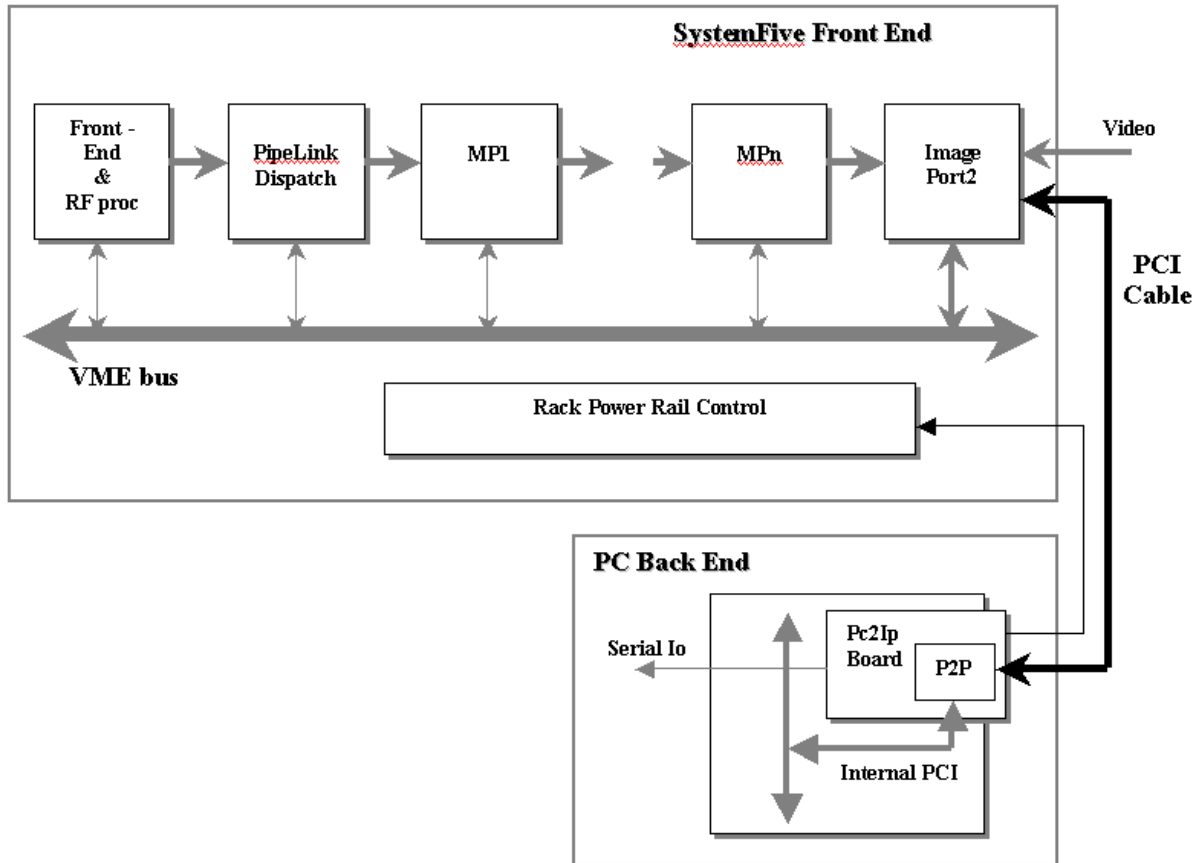


Figure 5-19

The PC2IP acts a means for communication between FEC and the BEP.  
It is implemented using an Intel I960 IC.

### 5-6-3 CPU/Back End Processor

#### 5-6-3-1 PC BOX

The PC Box contains:

- CPU, Mother Board, AGP Video Card and LAN Board
- ATX Power Supply
- HDD
- CD R/W
- ECG (Option)

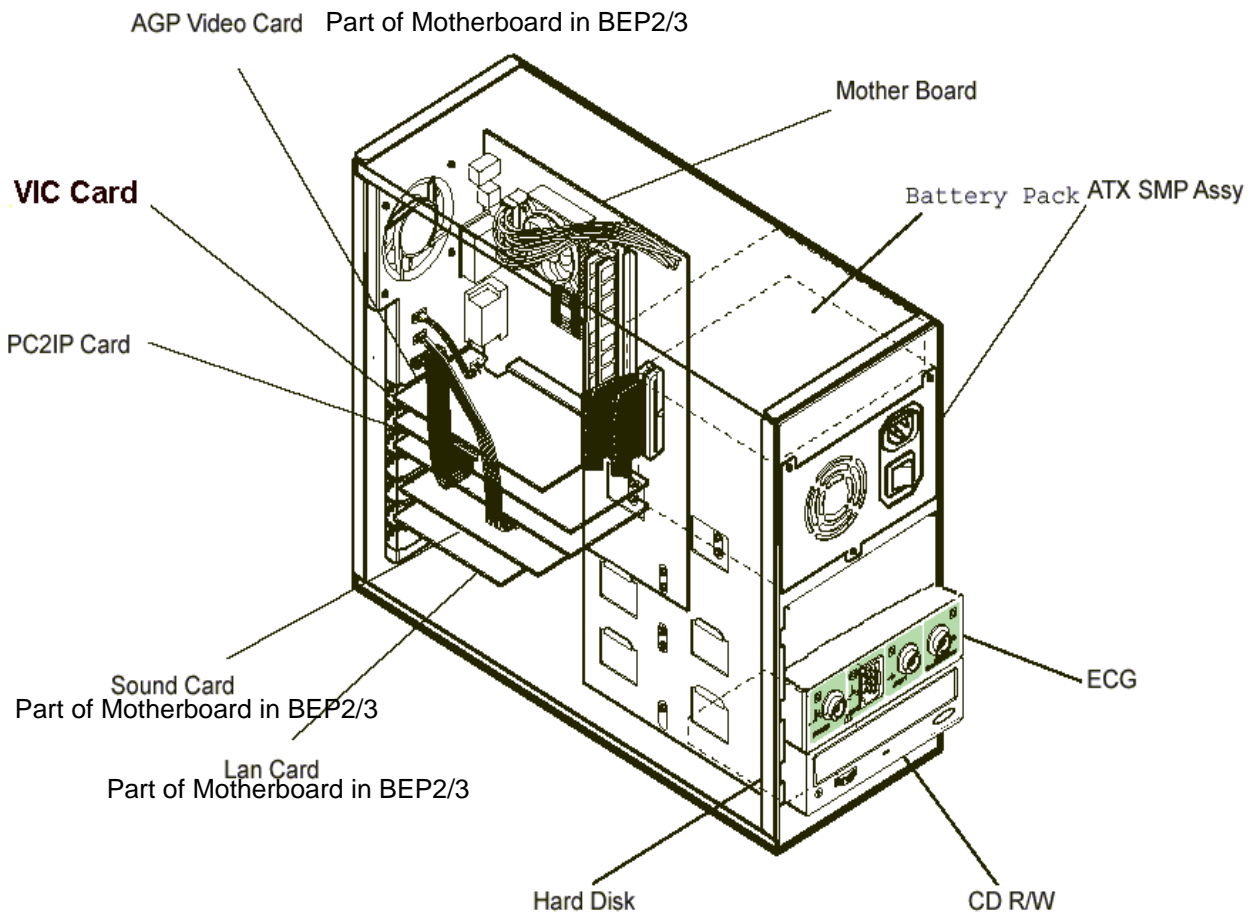


Figure 5-20 PC Box

**5-6-3-2 Rear Panel**

The Rear Panel Assy interconnects external signals and power with the LOGIQ™ 3 system.

**Safety**

- Rear Panel Fuses

**Table 5-3 Rear Panel Fuse Specification**

Assembly	Power Voltage Rating (V)	Peripheral Current Rating (A)	Trip Time	Reset Time
Rear Panel	100	5.0	1 hour max. @ 5.4A, 25 degree C	60 seconds
Rear Panel	115	5.0	1 hour max. @ 5.4A, 25 degree C	60 seconds
Rear panel	230	3.0	1 hour max. @ 3.5A, 25 degree C	60 seconds

- Electrical Isolation  
The rear-panel's Insite (modem) interface is electrically isolated from the system's internal circuit. The isolator's dielectric strength should be 500VAC RMS or higher within 1 minute (in compliance with IEC60601-1-1).

**Printer (Camera) Remote Control Interface**

The Rear-panel has two remote control interface terminals for B/W and color printers.

**Table 5-4 Camera (Printer) Remote Control Interface Specifications**

	Level (V)	Active Polarity	Retention Time
Color camera (shutter) control	H:2.0/L:0.8	L	60 msec
B/W camera (printer) control	H:2.0/L:1.0	L	800 msec

**Section 5-7  
Mechanical Descriptions**

**5-7-1 Monitor**

- Tilt: 10° forwards and backwards
- Swivel: 90° From mean position

## Section 5-8 Air Flow Control

### 5-8-1 Air Flow Distribution

The four air flow passes allow the scanner to be cooled down as below.

- Pass A (Bottom right > PC Box > Rear upper left) for PC Box cooling.
- Pass B (Front lower left > Filter > LV unit > Rear lower left) for HV unit cooling.
- Pass C (Bottom left > Scan Box Assy > Rear upper right) for Scan Box Assy cooling.
- Pass D (Bottom left > Filter > Nest Assy > Rear upper right) for Nest Assy cooling.

### 5-8-2 Filters

The scanner contains one filter located below the Front Bumper Between Two Wheels.

### 5-8-3 Fans

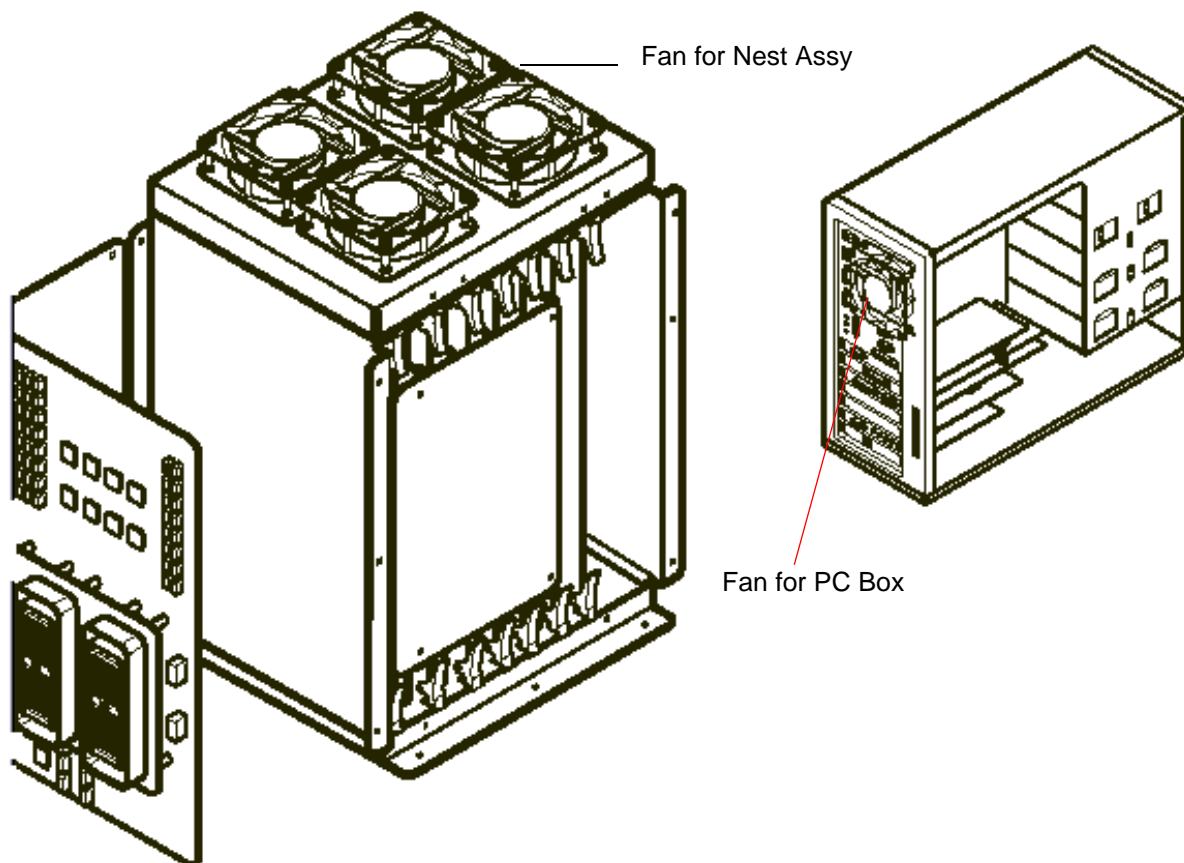


Figure 5-21 Fans

The scanner contains the five fans at the following positions for producing an air flow.

- One fan: On the PC Box for air flow pass A
- Four fans: At the top of the NEST Assy for air flow pass D

## Section 5-9 Common Service Platform

### 5-9-1 Introduction

The Service Platform contains a set of software modules that are common to all PC backend ultrasound and cardiology systems. This web-enabled technology provides linkage to e-Services, e-Commerce, and the iCenter, making GE's scanners more e-enabled than ever. The Common Service Platform will increase service productivity and reduce training and service costs.



## 5-9-2 Global Service User Interface (GSUI)

### 5-9-2-1 Internationalization

The user interfaces provided by the service platform are designed for GE personnel and as such are in English only. There is no multi-lingual capability built into the Service Interface.

### 5-9-2-2 Service Login

Select the wrench icon in the status bar at the bottom of the scan display screen. This icon links the user to the service login screen.

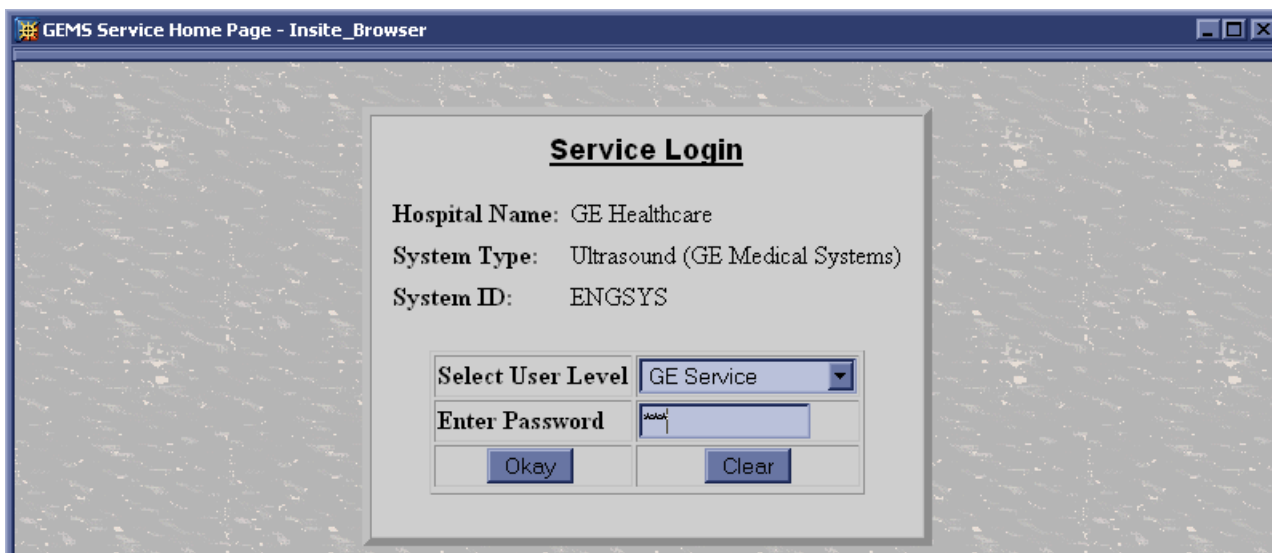


Figure 5-22 Login Screen for Global Service Interface

### 5-9-2-3 Access / Security

The service interface has different access and security user levels. Each user is only granted access to the tools they are authorized for their use.

NOTE:

Table 5-5 User Level Access

User Level	Access Authorization	
Operator	Authorized access to specified diagnostics, error logs and utilities. Same acquisition diagnostic tests as GE Service.	uls
Administrator		uls
External Service		gogems

NOTE: For a GE Field Engineer, the password changes at specific intervals. Access with the password listed to the service key.

Every access request, whether successful or not, will be logged into a service access log that is viewable to authorized users.

### **5-9-3 Service Home Page**

The navigation bar at the top of the screen allows the user to select from several tools and utilities.

### 5-9-4 Error Logs Page

From the Error Logs page the Log Viewer displays four categories with pull-down sub-menus and an Exit selection. The Service Interface allows scanner logs to be viewed by all service users.

The Filter Error log is not available to customer level analysis.

The log entries are color-coded to identify the error level severity at a glance

Table 5-6 Log Entry Key

Severity	Error Level	Color Code
1	Information	Green
2	Warning	Blue
3	Error	Red

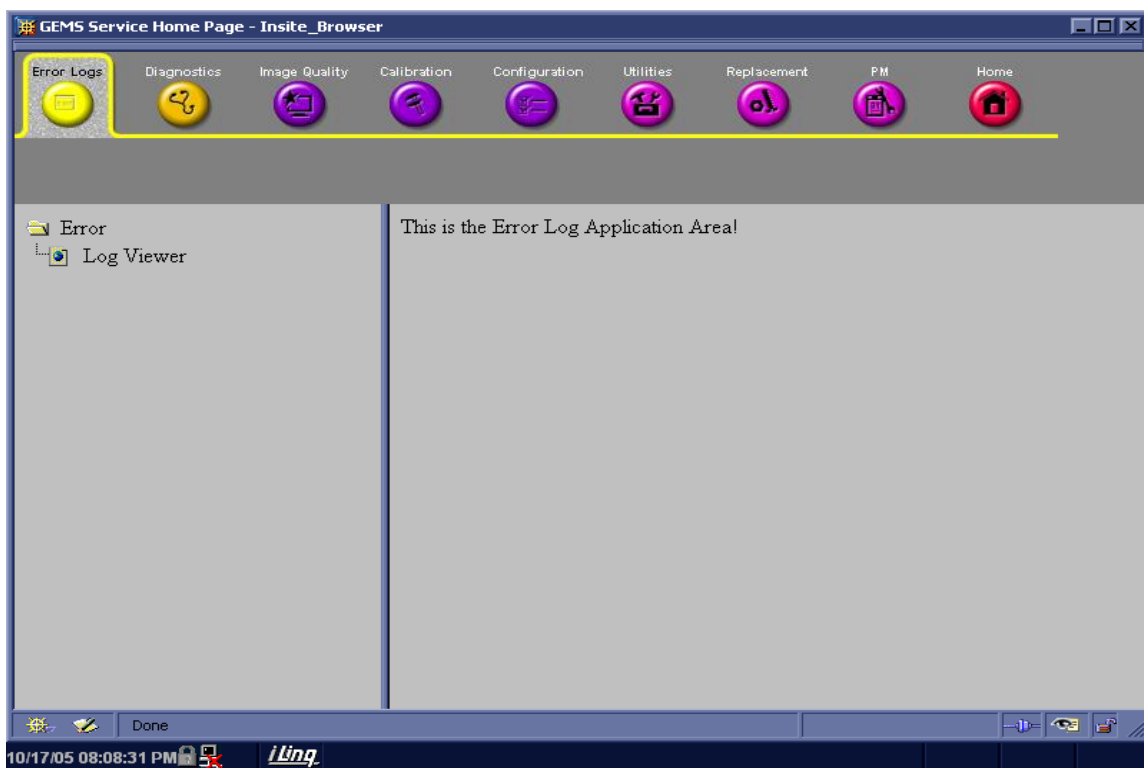


Figure 5-23 Log Viewer/Logs/Log Entries

#### 5-9-4-1 Logs

The three sub-menus of the Logs category are System, Informatics and Temperature.

*NOTE:* [Figure 5-23 on page 31](#) Provides a graphical example of the log entries for the **System Logs**.

Log table headings for the different logs are as follows:

- **System**

Log entry headings include Time Stamp; Error Level; Package; and Error Message.

- **Informatics**

Log entry headings include TimeStamp, Revision, PtID, PtDOB, PtSex, PtWeight, PtHeight, ExamID, Exam Category, ExamCurDate, and ExamStartTime.

- **Temperature**

Log entry headings include Time Stamp; Error Level; Package; Upper FEC Sensor; and Lower FEC Sensor.

5-9-4-2 Utilities

The two sub-menus of the Utilities category are Plot Log and Plot Page.

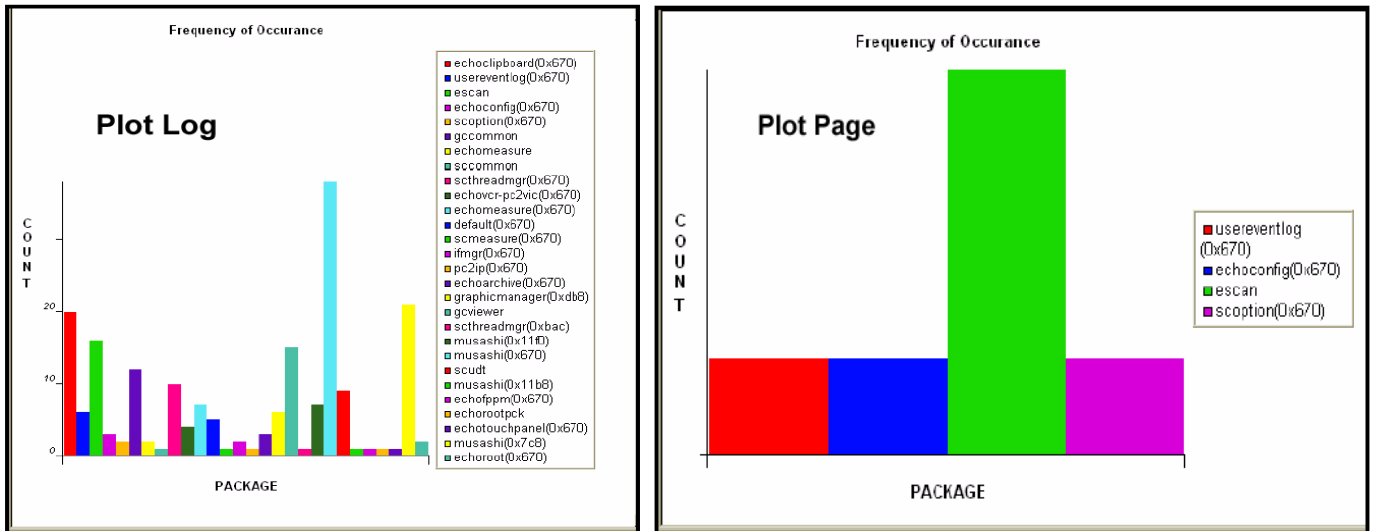


Figure 5-24 Utilities Sub-Menus

- Plot Log**  
 Allows for the color coded plot of all Log contents with the package on the 'x' axis and incident count on the 'y' axis.
- Plot Page**  
 Allows for the color coded plot of all Page contents with the package on the 'x' axis and incident count on the 'y' axis.

5-9-4-3 Search

On the **Text Search** sub-menu of the Search category, users enter case-sensitive text they wish to find. This filter field works well for filtering the Sys log file for the word fail.



Figure 5-25 Search Category

5-9-4-4 Exit

The sub-menu, **Exit Log Viewer**, returns the user to the Service Desktop home page.

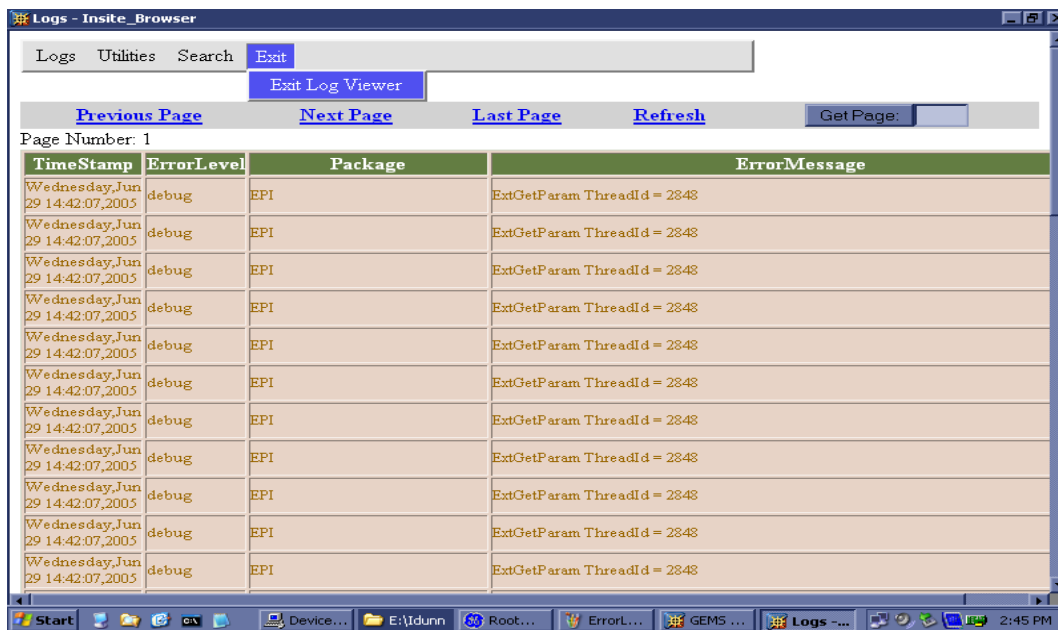


Figure 5-26 Exit Log Sub-Menu

## 5-9-5      **Diagnostics**

Detailed *Diagnostic* information is found in Chapter 7 Diagnostics/Troubleshooting.

### 5-9-5-1      **Diagnostics Execution**

Diagnostic tests are executable by both local and remote users. The Service Platform provides top-level diagnostic selection based on the user's level and login access permissions. Remote access will require disruptive diagnostic permissions to run Acquisition diagnostics.

### 5-9-5-2      **Diagnostic Reports**

Diagnostic tests return a report to the Service Platform. The platform retains the report and allows for future viewing of the diagnostic logs.

### 5-9-5-3      **Proactive Diagnostics**

A system of self-monitoring is largely supported with the integration of *iLinq*. The scheduler, executive, user interfaces, and some of the proactive diagnostic functions are provided by *iLinq*. Other tasks will need to be provided by the product team.



### 5-9-6 Image Quality

The Image Quality page is intended to contain tools for troubleshooting image quality issues.



Figure 5-27 Image Quality Page

### 5-9-7 Calibration

The Calibration page is intended to contain the tools used to calibrate the system



Figure 5-28 Calibration Page

## 5-9-8 Configuration

The Configuration page is used to setup various configuration files on the system.

The Service Platform is the access and authorization control for remote access to the configuration subsystem.

The enable/disable of software options can be done from this Configuration page.



Figure 5-29 Configuration Page

## 5-9-9 Utilities

The Utilities page contains several miscellaneous tools.

## 5-9-10 Replacement

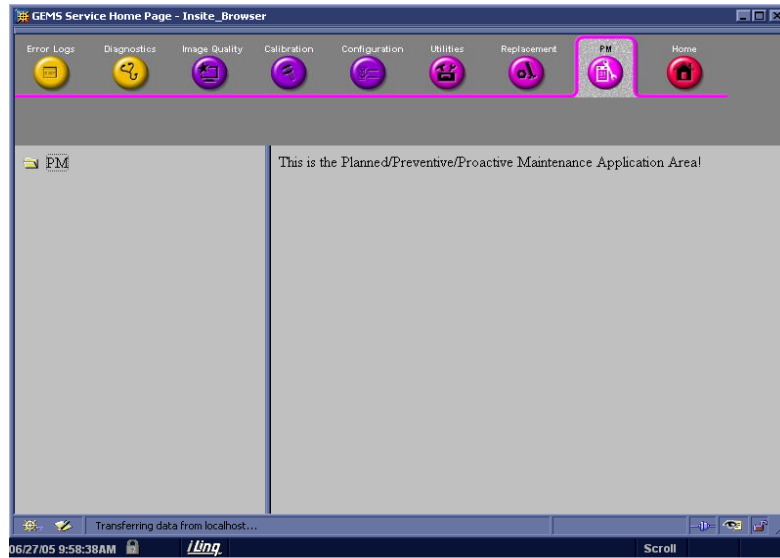
The Replacement page intended to contain the tools used to track replacement parts used in the system.



Figure 5-30 Part Replacement Page

## 5-9-11 PM

The **PM** page is intended to contain the tools used in periodic maintenance of the system.



**Figure 5-31 Planned Maintenance Page**

# Chapter 6

## Service Adjustments

### Section 6-1 Overview

#### 6-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 6

This chapter describes how to test and adjust the mechanical capabilities of a scanner that may be out of specification. Although some tests may be optional they should only be performed by qualified personnel.

Table 6-1 Chapter 6 Contents

Section	Description	Page Number
6-1	Overview	6-1
6-2	Regulatory	6-1
6-3	Power Supply Adjustments	6-1
6-4	Monitor Adjustment	6-9

### Section 6-2 Regulatory

Verify, where applicable, that any regulatory information or tests required by national law are present and accounted for, and any regulatory tests required by national law are performed *and* documented.

### Section 6-3 Power Supply Adjustments

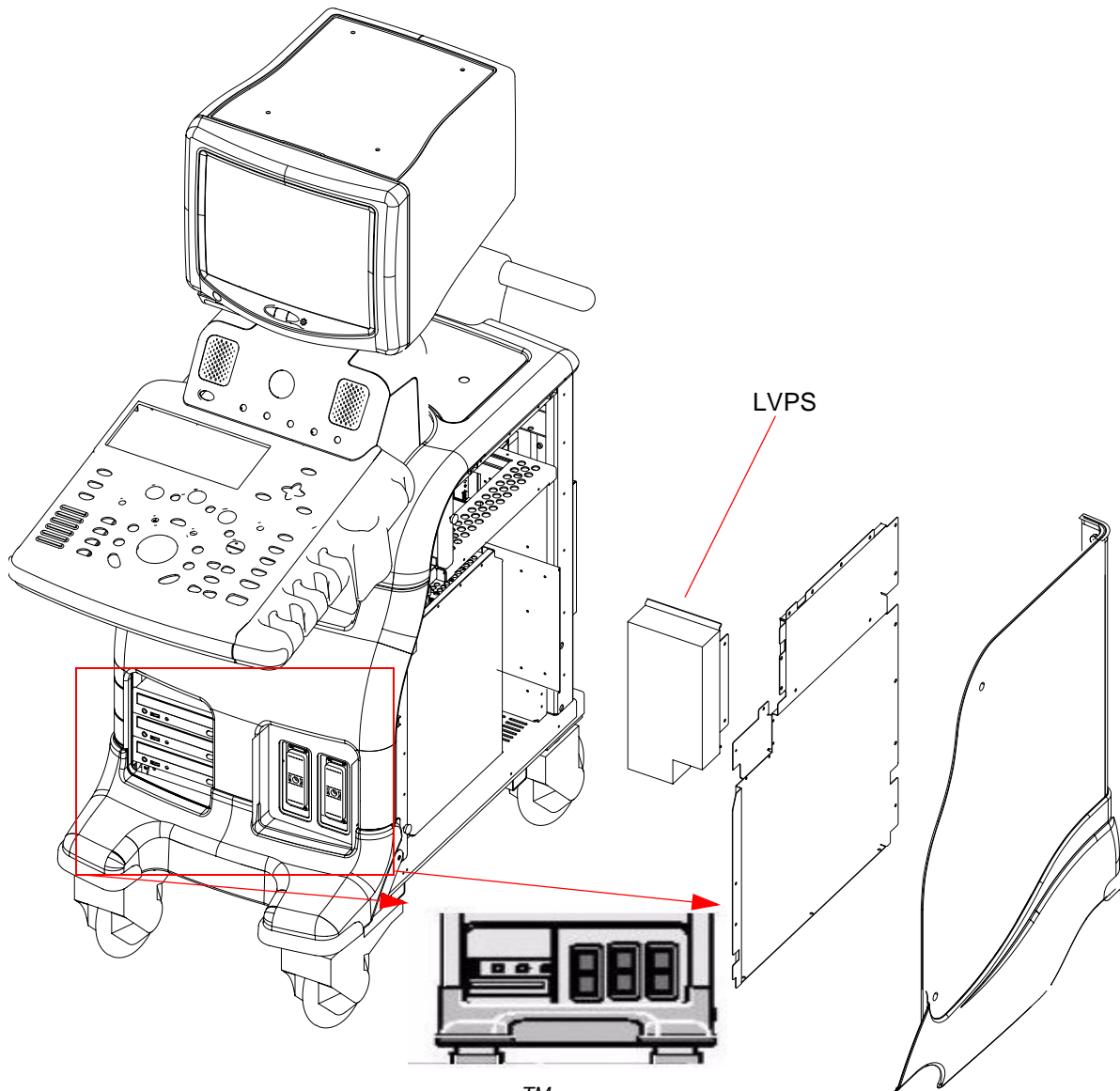
This system contains three power supply modules; HV unit, LV unit, and ATX PS. However, the LV unit only can be adjusted.

- 1.) Power ON. Wait for about 30 seconds to warm up the console.
- 2.) For each of the VR's, connect a DVM to the appropriate place shown.
- 3.) Verify that the voltages are as shown in the table 6-3 on the test points in the Transmit and Recieve Board..

#### 6-3-1 Access to Adjustments for LV Power Supply

- 1.) Remove the left side cover.
- 2.) Remove the LV unit cover.
- 3.) Remove the screws, then pull out the LV unit Assy with the cables connected.

Please ensure that the Voltages at the Test points on the Recieve board and FEC are as per



The LOGIQ™ 3 Expert will have  
3 Probe Ports as seen here

**Figure 6-1 LV Power Supply**

Specifications given in [Table 6-2](#). If needed, Please re-adjust the potentiometers located on the LVPS as per the specifications given in [Table 6-2](#).

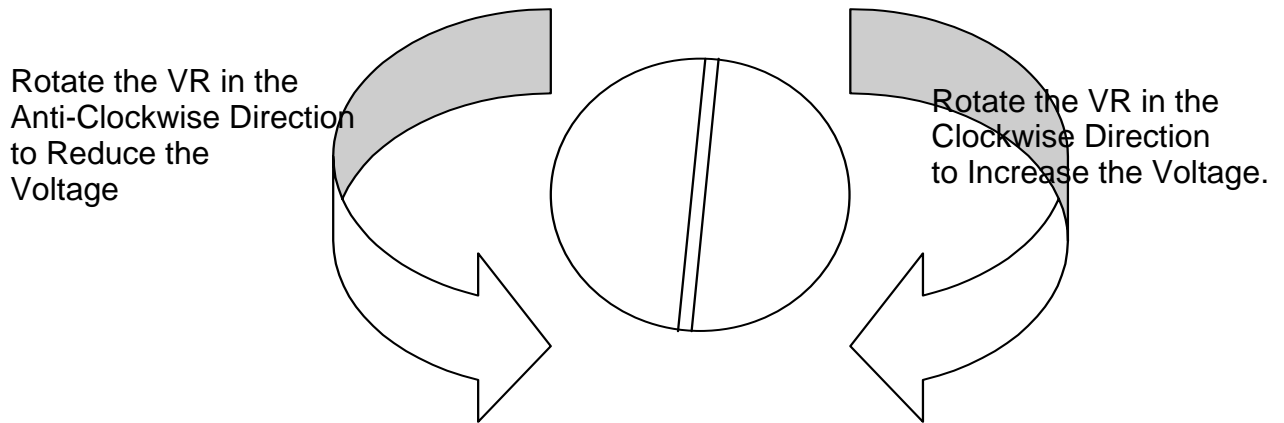
**Table 6-2 DC Output Specification for LV Unit**

VR (Potentiometer on LVPS)	Specifications	PCB Name	Test Point
VR1	3.3V +/- 34mV	FEC	D_3_3V - Figure 6-3
VR2	5V +/- 100mVany	FEC	D5V - Figure 6-4
VR3	5V +/- 100mV	RXB	P5VA - Figure 6-5
VR4	-5 V +/- 100mV	RXB	N5VA - Figure 6-6

Refer to the Figures mentioned in [Table 6-2](#) for the exact location of the test points on the boards.

Refer to Figure 6-7 for the location of the VR potentiometers on the LVPS.

Refer to the Figure 6-2 for instructions on how to vary the voltage.



**Figure 6-2 VR Adjustment on the LVPS**

**NOTE:** *The Potentiometers are very sensitive. Please be very careful at the time of adjusting the VRs as any extreme changes to the voltages will damage the Front End Boards.*

**6-3-1-1 Location of the test points.**

The following figures show the Test points for the various Potentiometers on the LVPS.

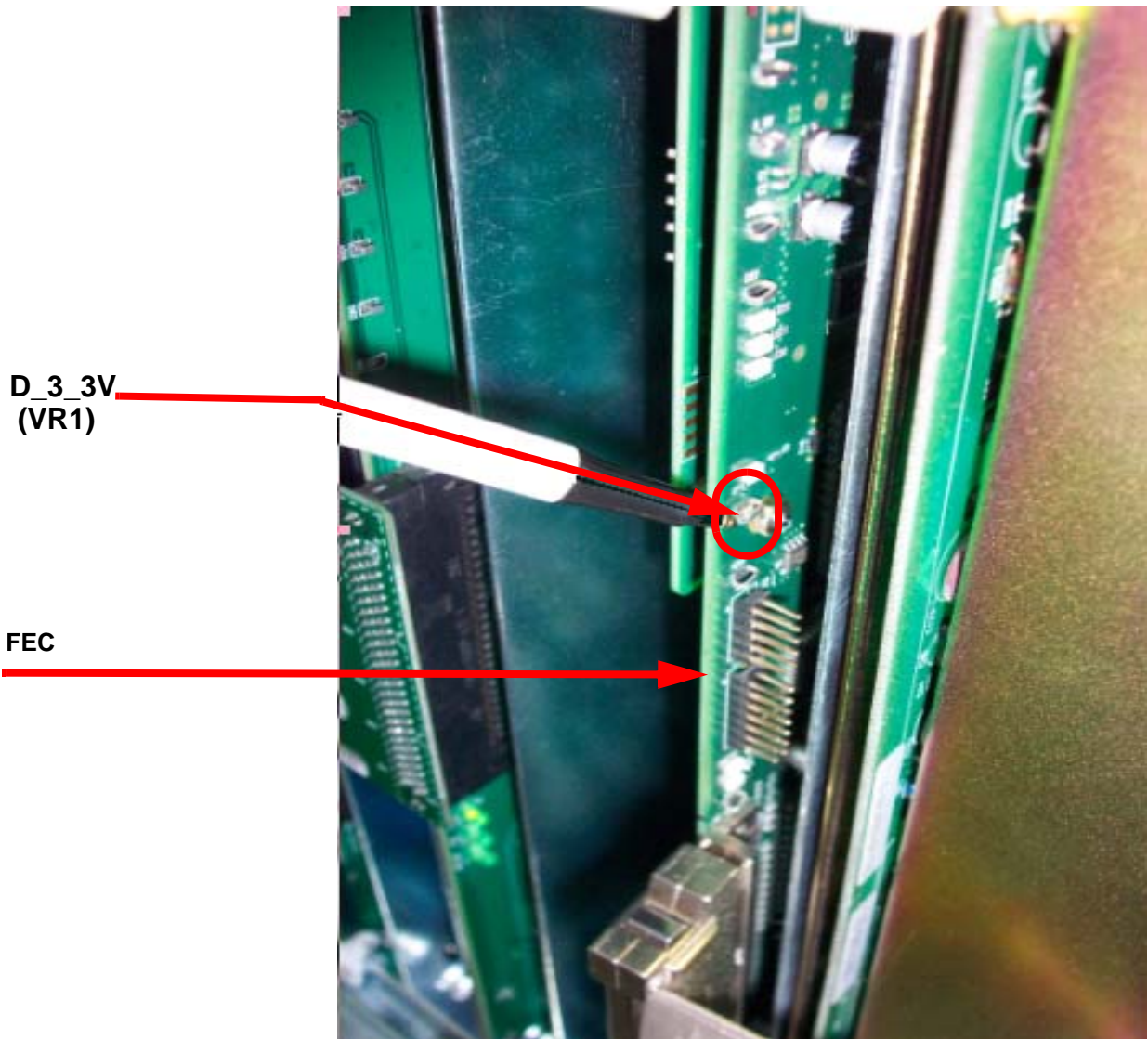


Figure 6-3 Test Point for VR1 - D\_3\_3V on the FEC



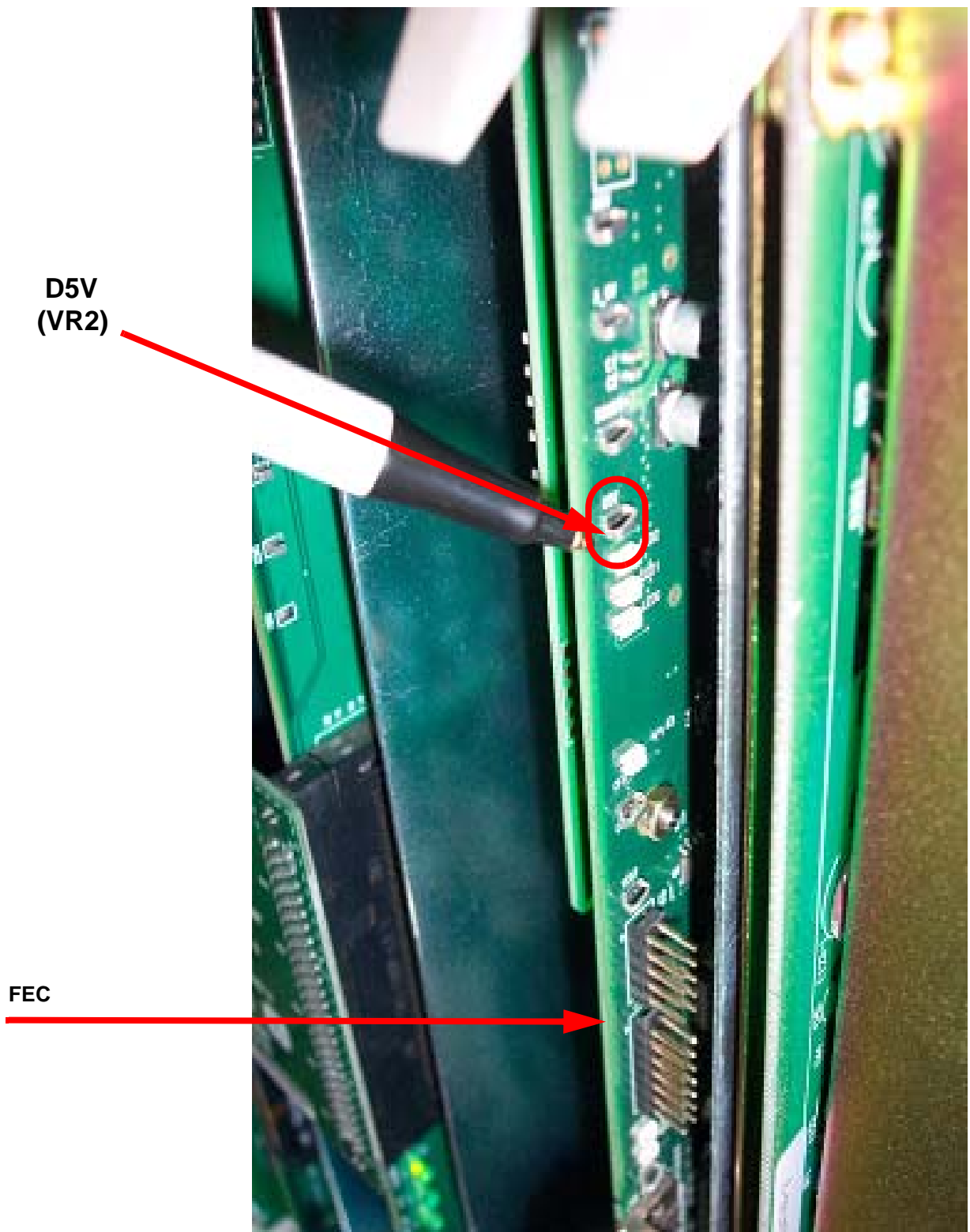


Figure 6-4 Test Point for VR2 - D5V on the FEC

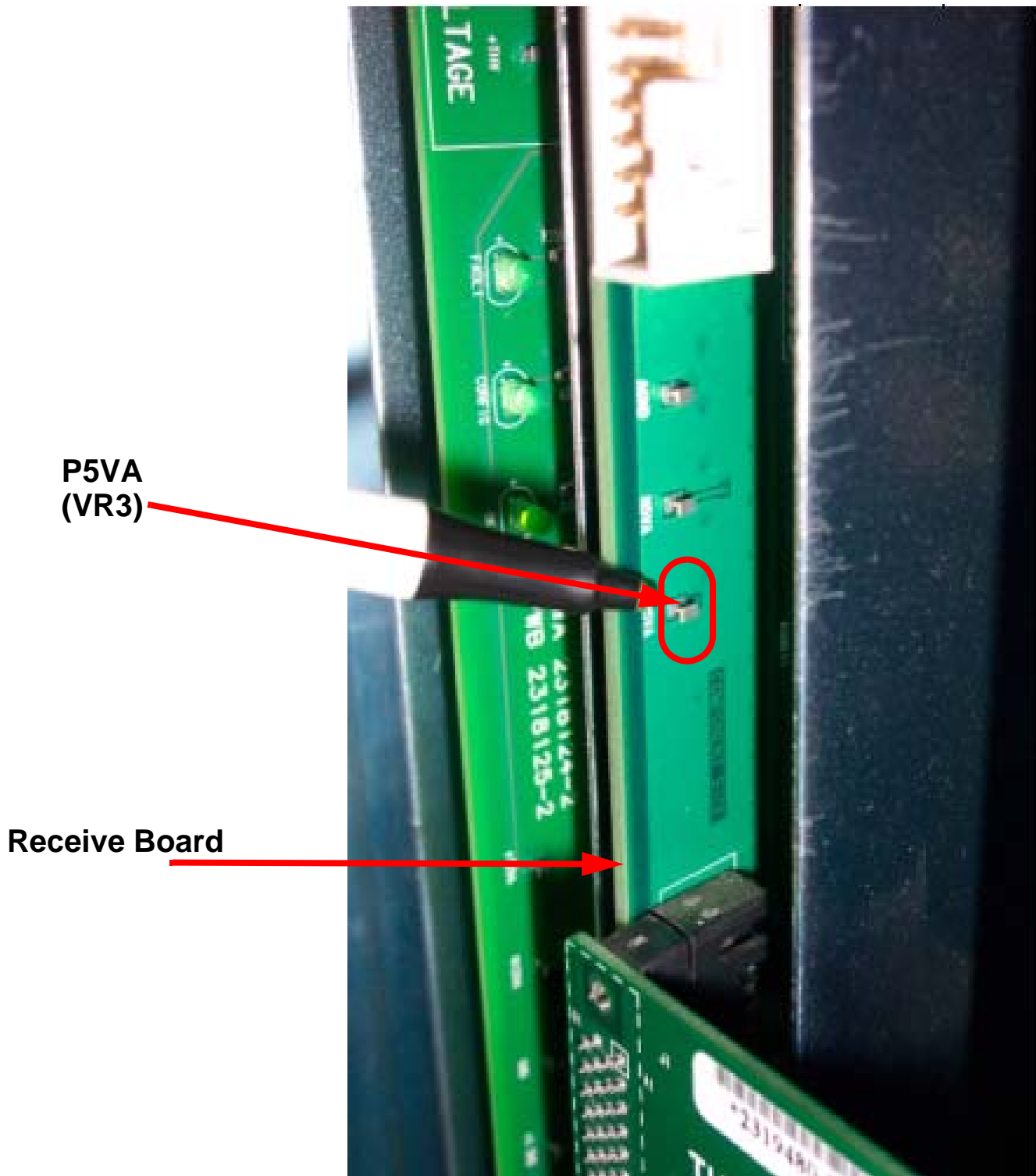


Figure 6-5 Test Point for VR3 - P5VA on the RXB

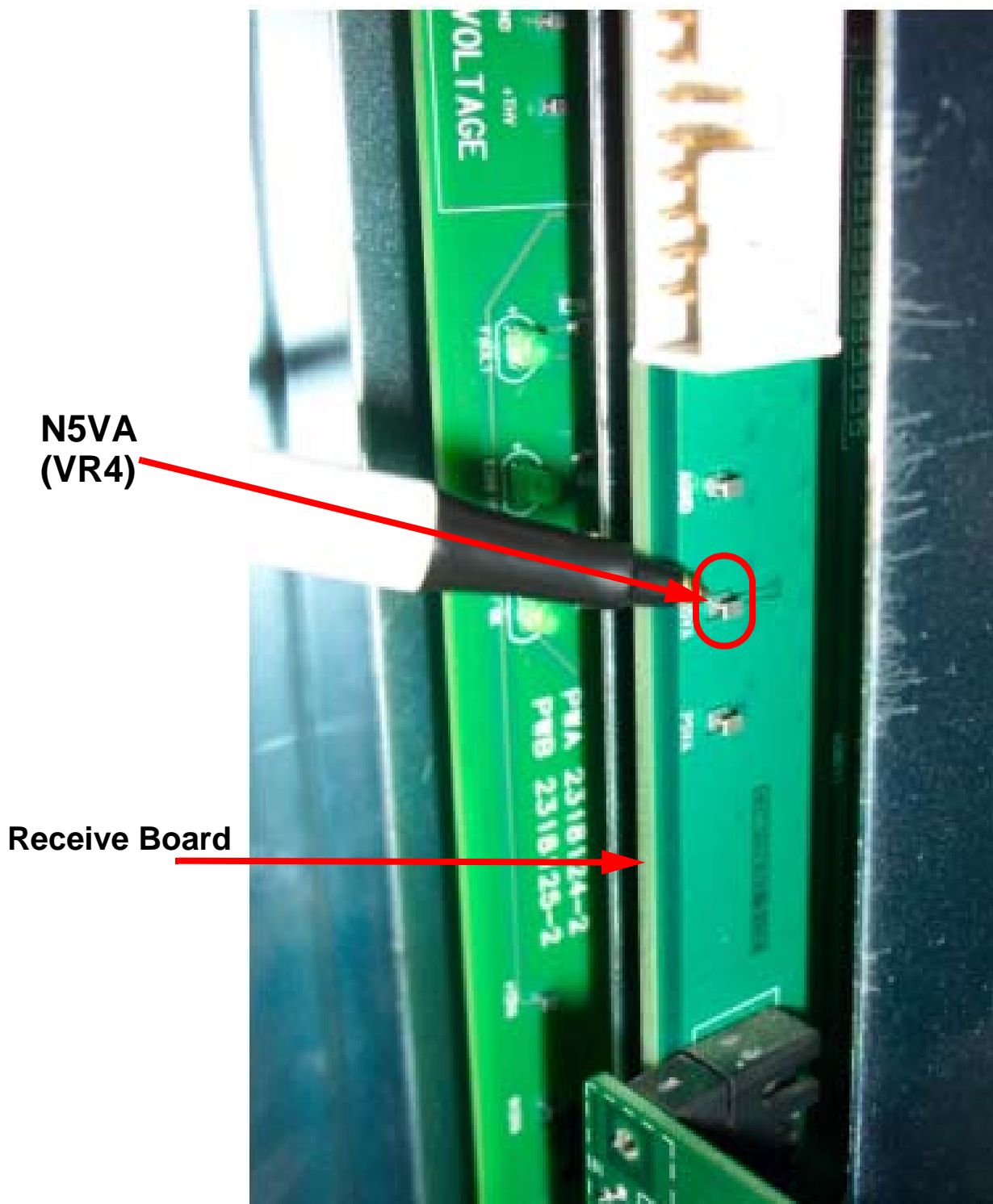


Figure 6-6 Test Point for VR4 - N5VA on the RXB

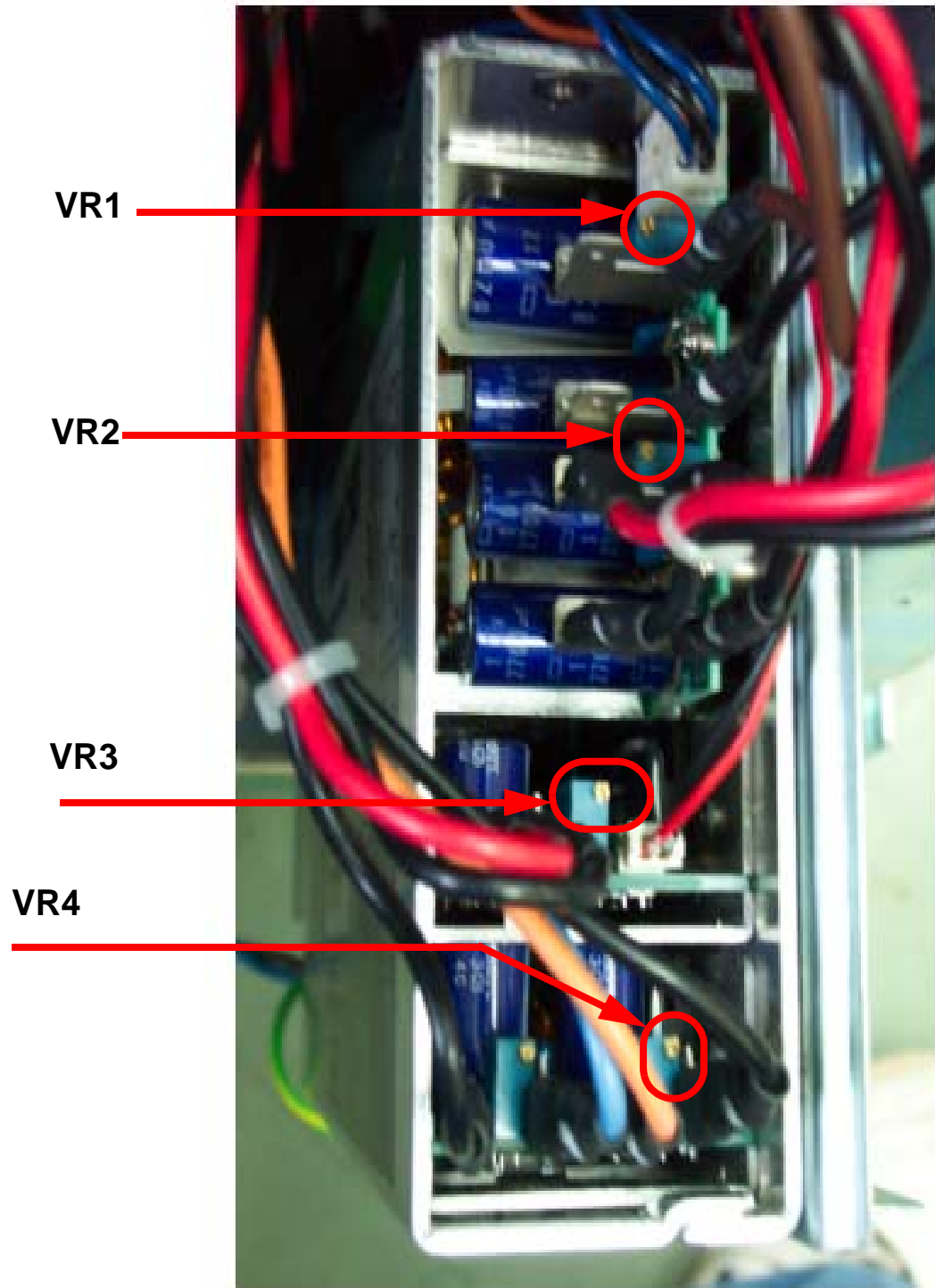


Figure 6-7 Locations of the VR Potentiometers on the LVPS ( As Seen From Top)

## Section 6-4 Monitor Adjustment

This helps to adjust the settings of the Contrast and the Brightness on the CRT Monitor suitably.

The Monitor Adjustment button is displayed as shown.

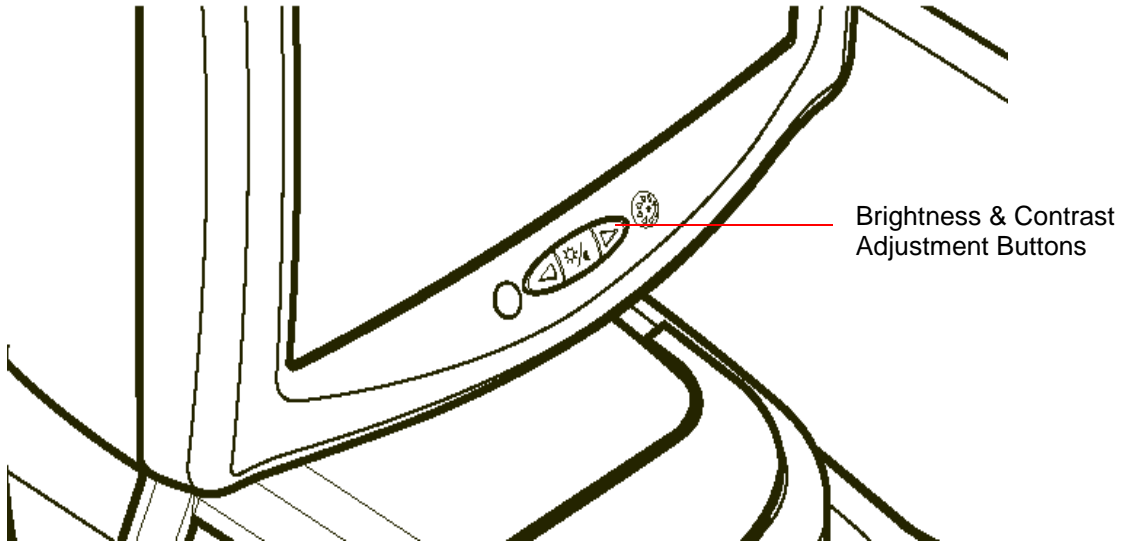


Figure 6-8 Monitor Adjustment

- 1.) Press The Toggle Button for contrast & brightness. Confirm that the Contrast (or brightness) indicator is displayed on the monitor. If the brightness is displayed, press the toggle button again.
- 2.) Press the adjustment button (+/2/>) to increase contrast (or brightness)
- 3.) Press the Adjustment button (-/2/<) to decrease contrast (or brightness).  
The amount of contrast (or brightness) is shown on a slide bar on the screen. Refer the following table for the setting.

Table 6-3 Contrast and Brightness Recommended Setting

Room Condition	Monitor Adjustment	
	Contrast	Brightness
Dark room	50	40
Dim room	60	35
Bright room	70	30
room for Cardiology	80	20

Record the final brightness and contrast settings and leave this information with the system. Generally speaking, do not change the controls once they have been set, the display becomes the reference for the hard copy device(s).

*After readjusting the monitor's Contrast and Brightness, readjust all preset and peripheral settings.*

The Procedure for the Calibration of the Monitor is given in [section 6-4-1 on page 10](#).

### 6-4-1 Re-calibration the Monitor.

- 1.) Power on the system and boot into the imaging mode.
- 2.) Press the **Utilities** button on the front panel and enter the utilities mode as shown in Figure 6-9



Figure 6-9 Utilities Menu

3.) Select the **Test Patterns** Menu as seen shown in the Figure 6-10.

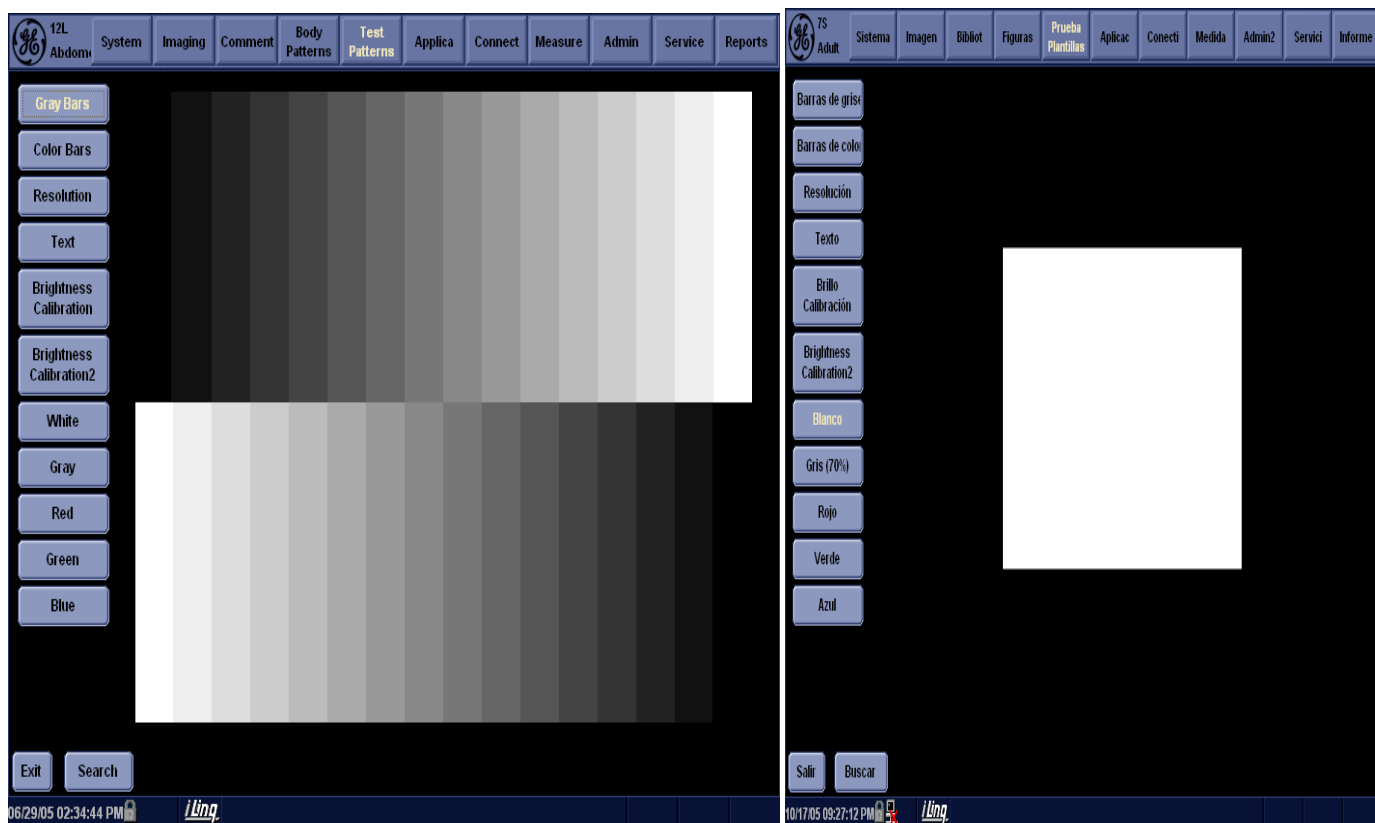
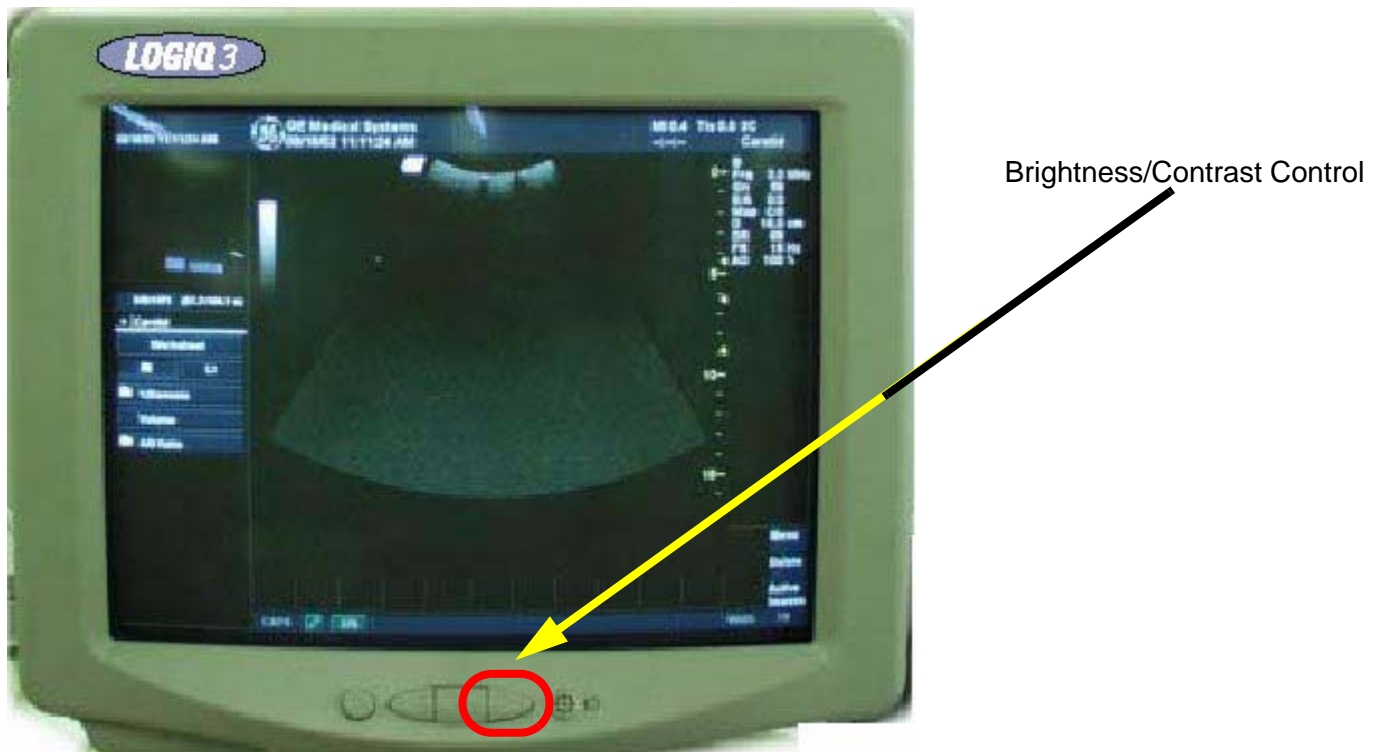


Figure 6-10 Test Pattern Menu

4.) From the Test patterns menu, select the menu **White** as seen in Figure 6-10.

- 5.) Locate the Brightness/Contrast button on the monitor bezel as shown in Figure 6-11.



**Figure 6-11 Brightness/Contrast Control**

- 6.) Press and hold the Brightness/Contrast button on the monitor (as shown in Figure 6-11 above) for approximately 3 to 4 seconds.
- 7.) A menu will appear on the screen.
- 8.) Press the right arrow 3 times to the RGB icon (**COLOR TEMP**) and press the Brightness/Contrast button once to select it.
- 9.) Now press right arrow 2 times to **CALIBRATION** and press Brightness/Contrast button to select it.
- 10.) This will begin the Calibration process during which the monitor will cycle through various colors and will end with the message "**IT HAS COMPLETED...**" which will only display for a short time and then disappear. Wait for this message to appear. During the Calibration Process, do not operate any key or the pointer of the system or the monitor Calibration process will not complete accurately.

This completes the Monitor Calibration of the LOGIQ™ 3 system.



# Chapter 7

## Diagnostics/Troubleshooting

### Section 7-1 Overview

#### 7-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 7

This section describes how to setup and run the tools and software that help maintain image quality and system operation. Very basic host, system, and board level diagnostics are run whenever power is applied. Some Service Tools may be run at the application level. However most software tests are required.

**Table 7-1 Contents in Chapter 7**

Section	Description	Page Number
7-1	Overview	7-1
7-2	Gathering Trouble Data	7-2
7-3	Screen Captures	7-4
7-4	Diagnostics	7-8
7-5	Common Diagnostics	7-11
7-6	Service Notes	7-12

#### 7-1-2 Diagnostic Procedure Summary

Although Diagnostics can be run in any order, the *Bottom-up Confidence-Building Order* is outlined in this section:

- Provides a framework from which overall diagnostic testability can be determined.
- Provides a top-level model that describes the confidence-building aspect of the diagnostics.
- Provides a logical step-by-step approach to system check-out and fault isolation.

There are two levels of diagnostic: board-level and system level.

- Board-level diagnostics are intended to test functionality of a single circuit board.
- System-level diagnostics are intended to test functionality on more than one circuit board.

Unused system components (board or signals) for each diagnostic test are drawn in gray (ghosted).

**NOTE:** *In this document, the Host includes all hardware upstream of the PCI cable. The diagnostics in this chapter do NOT test anything upstream of the PCI cable. Therefore, any upstream hardware or software must be functional before running these diagnostics.*

## Section 7-2 Gathering Trouble Data

### 7-2-1 Overview

There may be a time when it would be advantageous to capture trouble images and system data (logs) for acquisition through remote diagnostics (InSite) or to be sent back to the manufacturer for analysis. There are different options to acquire this data that would give different results.

### 7-2-2 Collect Vital System Information

The following information is necessary in order to properly analyze data or images being reported as a malfunction or being returned to the manufacturer:

Product Name = LOGIQ™ 3 Expert / PRO / B-W

The screenshot shows the 'About' screen in the LOGIQ 3 System Utility. The top navigation bar includes 'System', 'Imaging', 'Comment', 'Body Patterns', 'Test Patterns', 'Applica', 'Connect', 'Measure', 'Admin', 'Service', and 'Reports'. Below this, there are buttons for 'General', 'System Imaging', 'System Measure', 'Backup/Restore', 'Peripherals', and 'About'. The 'About' screen is divided into three main sections: 'Software', 'System Image', and 'Patents'. The 'Software' section contains: Copyright © 2004, General Electric Company; Software Version R4.0.0D; Software Part Number 5133166; Build View BT05\_L3View; Build Date Thu Jun 16 22:10:32 2005. The 'System Image' section contains: Image Part Number 5120166RevB; Image Date 2005-06-13 15:00. The 'Patents' section contains a list of patent numbers: 4,472,972, 4,475,400, 5,230,340, 5,398,216, 5,467,770, 5,827,189, 5,840,032, 5,865,750, 5,882,309, 5,935,074. A note states: 'Features of this product are covered by one or more pending patent applications and by one or more of the U.S. or international patents'.

From the *Utility>System>About* screen:

#### Applications Software

- Software Version
- Software Part Number

#### System Image Software

- Image Part Number
- Image Date

### 7-2-3 Collect a Trouble Image with Logs

If the system should malfunction, press the Alt-D keys simultaneously. This will collect a screen capture of the image monitor, system presets and the following logs:

- Keyboard Shadow Log
- Error Logs
- Crash Log
- Power Supply
- Temperature

*NOTE:* Formate CD before using 'ALT-D'

*NOTE:* Power Supply are not currently being updated by the LOGIQ™ 3.

This Alt-D function is available at all times.

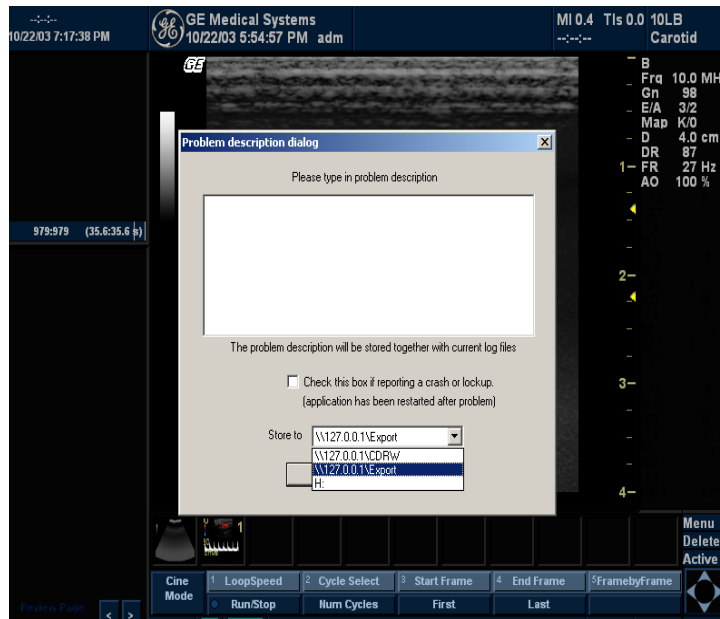


Figure 7-1 ALT-D Dialog Box

When Alt-D is pressed, a menu box appears that allows for:

- A place to enter a description of the problem
- A choice to store to a pre-formatted MOD (H: drive), CD-RW or to the *Export* directory D: drive (for remote viewing through InSite).

*NOTE:* You **MUST** select H: or CD-RW as the destination device if it is to be different than the default *Export* directory on the hard drive. Choose the H: drive which is the MOD or the CD-RW.

The subsequent file is compressed and time stamped. The screen capture is a bitmap which eliminates the possibility of artifacts from compression.

## Section 7-3 Screen Captures

There may be times when the customer or field engineer will want to capture a presentation on the screen so it may be recovered by the OnLine Center through InSite. This is accomplished by first saving the image(s) to the clipboard using a Print Key.

The P4 key is the factory default print key to accomplish a secondary screen capture. However, the default is for the video area only or the customer may have customized the P4 Key function. Therefore, screen capture should involve the following steps:

- 1.) Check and record any custom settings for the Print4 button.
- 2.) Set the Print4 button to Whole Screen, Secondary Capture.
- 3.) Capture the required screens to the Hard Drive, MOD or CD-R.
- 4.) Restore the Print4 button to it's original settings.

### 7-3-1 Check and Record the P4 Key Function

Check the function of the Print 4 Key in the event that the customer may have made some custom settings.

- 1.) Select *Utility* from the keyboard.
- 2.) Select *Connect* from the Utilities Menu.
- 3.) Select the *Button* tab on the Connect screen.
- 4.) In the PhysicalPrintButtons field, select Print4.

The Connect->Button Screen will be displayed like the one shown in [Figure 7-2 on page 4](#) .

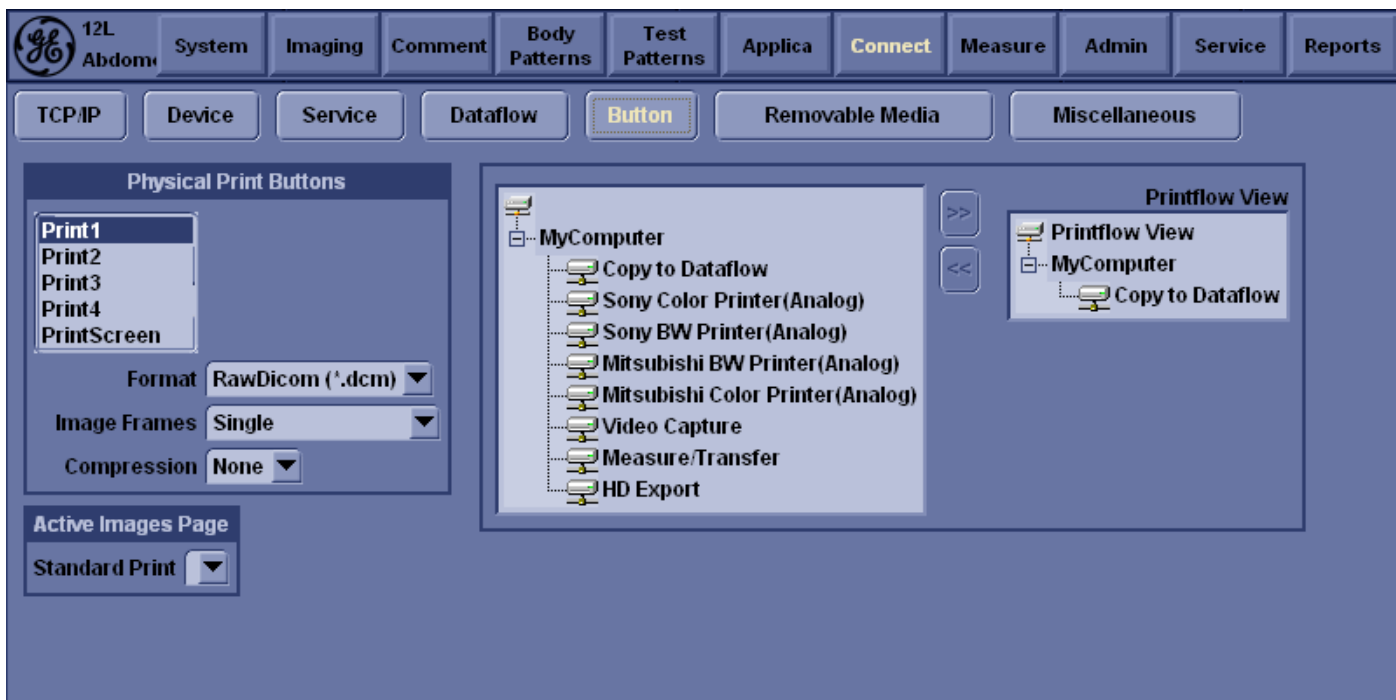


Figure 7-2 Buttons Set Up Screen

P4 is the factory default Screen Capture Key. If it is not set to Whole Screen or Screen Capture, as shown in [Figure 7-2](#), proceed to step 5 to record the customer's custom settings.

### 7-3-1 Check and Record the P4 Key Function (cont'd)

- 5.) In the *Destinations* section, record the service that is displayed. The destinations list displays the following information:
  - \* Name: user defined during service configuration
  - \* Type: the type of service
  - \* Destination Device: the device for which the service was configured
  - \* Dir: direction: output, input, or both (I+O)
- 6.) In the *Image generated* section, record the parameters related to the service.

### 7-3-2 Setting the P4 Key to Screen Capture

If the P4 Key is not set to screen capture:

- 1.) While on the Connect screen, with the Buttons tab displayed, go to the drop down selection menu in the *Destinations* section.
- 2.) From the drop down menu select *CopyToWflow\_01>Image to Buffer>MyComputer>Out*.
- 3.) Ensure that the *Image generated* section for capture Area is set to Whole Screen, secondary Capture and No Image Compression.
- 4.) The P4 Key should now be set up for whole screen capture, sending the screens to the image buffer (clipboard).

### 7-3-3 Capturing a Screen

The following is a generic process to capture any screen from the scanner:

- 1.) Navigate to and display the image/screen to be captured.
- 2.) Press **P4**. This will place a snapshot of the screen on the "clipboard" displayed at the bottom of the scan image display.

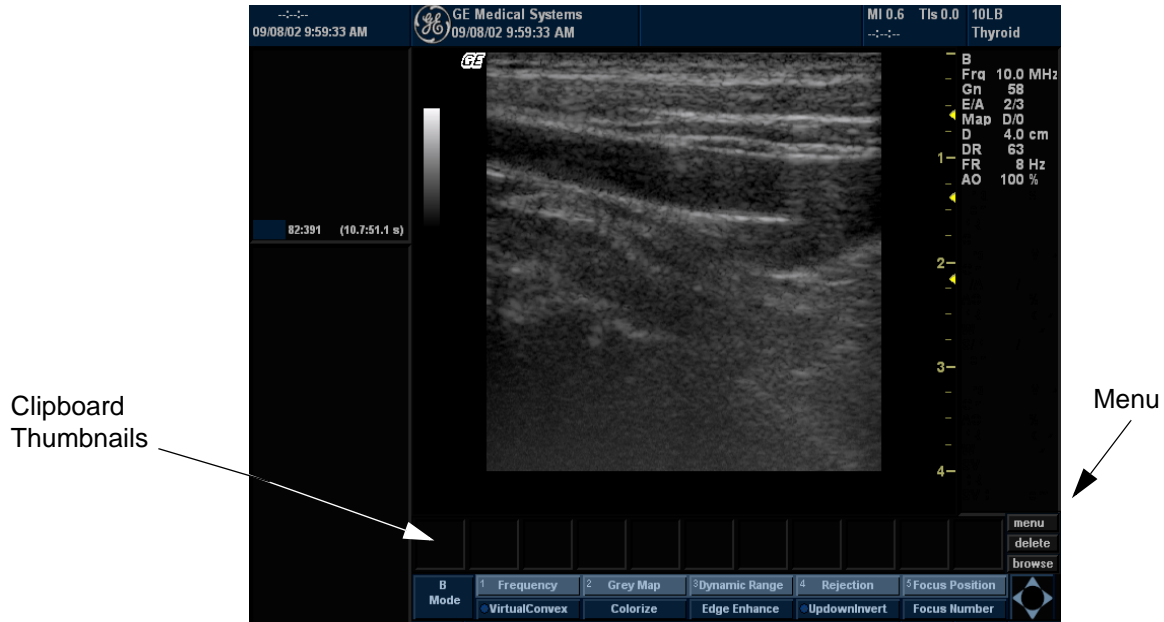


Figure 7-3 Select Image to Capture

- 3.) Highlight the snapshot to be stored to the system hard drive, MOD or CD-R.
- 4.) Select Menu on the right side of the image screen, then highlight and select SAVE AS.



Figure 7-4 Menu > Save As

### 7-3-3 Capturing a Screen (cont'd)

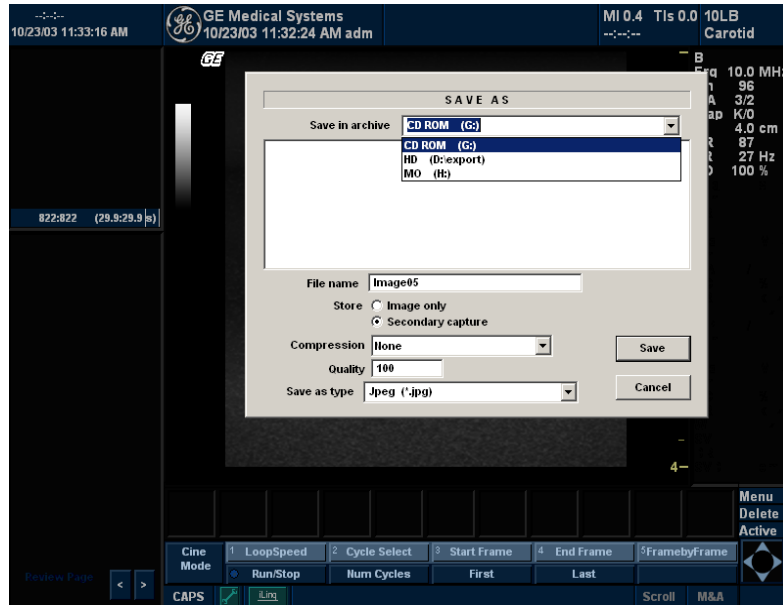


Figure 7-5 Save Dialog Box

- 5.) A Save dialog box will be opened. Choose *d:\export* folder as the archive location to save the image on the hard disk, MOD or CD-R.

### 7-3-4 Reset the P4 Key to Customer's Functionality

If the customer had programmed the P4 Key to a function other than screen capture, restore that functionality recorded in [section 7-3-1 on page 4](#). Refer to [Figure 7-2](#).

- 1.) Select *Utility* from the NTPUI.
- 2.) Select *Connect* from the Utilities Menu.
- 3.) Select the *Button* tab on the Connect screen.
- 4.) In the *PhysicalprintButtons* field, select Print4.
- 5.) In the *Destinations* section, select the service(s) recorded in [step 5](#), Section [7-3-1](#). The destinations list displays the following information:
  - \* Name: user defined during service configuration
  - \* Type: the type of service
  - \* Destination Device: the device for which the service was configured
  - \* Dir: direction: output, input, or both (I+O)

**NOTE:** Only output services can be associated to the print keys.

- 6.) In the *Image generated* section, select the parameters related to the service recorded in [step 6](#), Section [7-3-1](#).

## Section 7-4 Diagnostics

As described in Chapter 5 - Components and Functions (Theory), the overall service platform uses a web-based user interface (UI) to provide access to common service components.

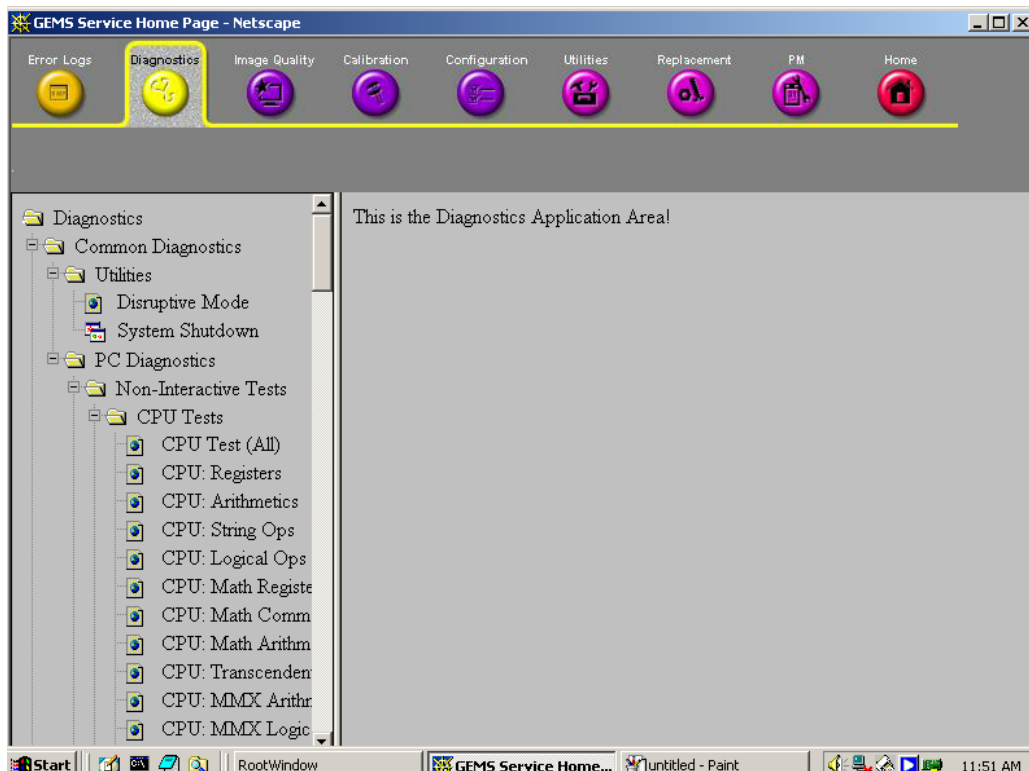
The Diagnostic home page displays a listing of test categories consisting of Common Diagnostics and LOGIQ™ 3 Diagnostics. Expand the desired main category to select groups or individual tests.

Acquisition Diagnostics is one of three main headings under the GSUI Diagnostics Tab.

### 7-4-1 Serviceability

- 1.) -Latest Service Platform Integrated for R4xx base.
- 2.) -Boot-up into Simulation mode w/o FEC
- 3.) -Latest WinXP with iLinq and InSite
- 4.) -Improved Documentation of PM Procedure
- 5.) -Improved Service Diag and Operator Interface
- 6.) -Total ALT+D (log file) size < 5MB
- 7.) -No new Service tool.
- 8.) -PC Doctor - compatible with XP
- 9.) -System Network Information
- 10.) -Customer notification (indication that service is logged to system - disruptive mode)
- 11.) -Service presets related to iLinq introduced.
- 12.) -Enter Service Menu using Utility/Service. 'Wrench' disabled.





**Figure 7-6 User Acquisition Diagnostics**

Individual selections run diagnostics and return status information identifying any problems.

When you select a test to run, the display changes as shown in [Figure 7-7 on page 10](#).

1.) Instructions Frame

- Displays either a test-specific text or the default instructions.

2.) Status Frame

- Initially displays the last known status for a selected diagnostic. Once the diagnostic starts, the frame displays the "current" status of all test results.
- The Status Frame also contains the user interface elements used for Diagnostic Control and Operator Feedback.

3.) Execute Button

- This switch has two modes - each with appropriate text:
- Execute - to start the diagnostic
- Abort - to stop a diagnostic

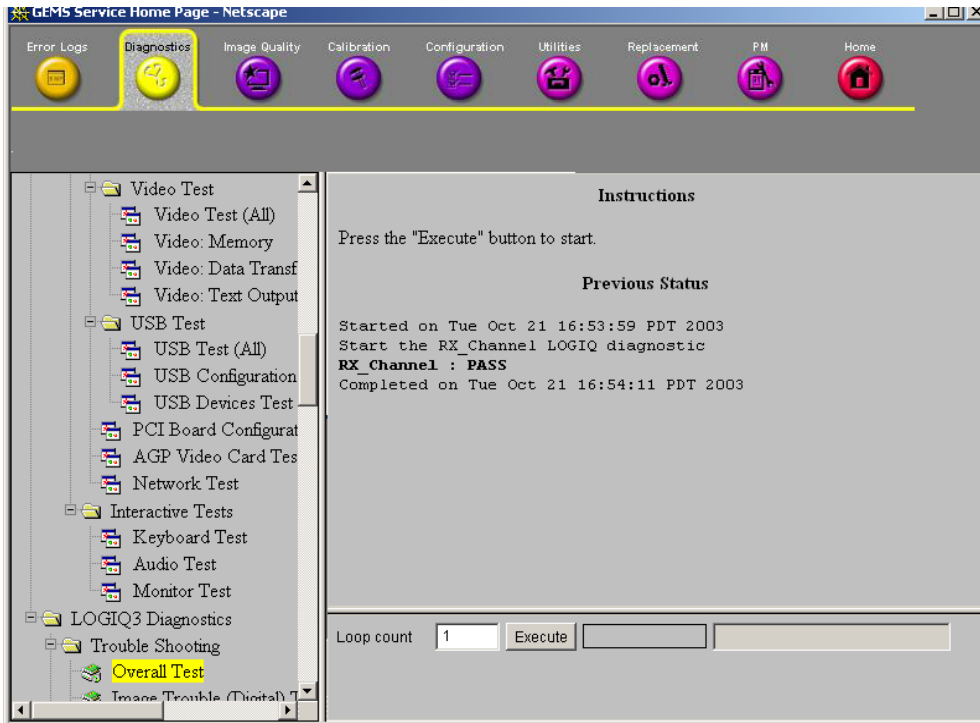


Figure 7-7 Diagnostic Selected

- 4.) Loop Count
  - This is an editable text field that will only accept numeric values of 4 digits or less. When the switch is configured as an "execute" switch and pressed, the loop count field will be queried to determine the number of times to execute the diagnostic.
- 5.) Progress Indicator
  - Displays a graphical progress indicator for the user.
- 6.) Short Text Message
  - Displays brief messages about the test's progress during execution.
- 7.) Status Frame Background Color
  - Initially gray, the Status Frame background color changes upon completion of a diagnostic to indicate completion status.
  - Code Status Fail = Red
  - Code Status Pass = Green
  - Code Status Executing = Yellow
  - Code Status neither Pass nor Fail (Example: Aborted) = Gray (default color).

## Section 7-5 Common Diagnostics

### 7-5-1 Utilities

Table 7-2 Utilities Mode

Items	Descriptions
Disruptive	<b>Enable:</b> The disruptive diagnostic mode is ON and the other PC connected to the scanner via network can operate the scanner remotely for troubleshooting.
System Shut Down	N/A

### 7-5-2 PC Diagnostics (Non-Interactive Tests)

The non-interactive or interactive PC Diagnostic tests are automatically executed only by clicking the following menu. The test log, displayed at the status frame, reports all diagnostic test results, the testing time, and testing date.

#### 7-5-2-1 CPU Tests

#### 7-5-2-2 Hard Drive Tests

#### 7-5-2-3 Memory Tests

#### 7-5-2-4 CD-ROM Drive Tests

#### 7-5-2-5 Video Test

#### 7-5-2-6 USB Test

#### 7-5-2-7 PCI Board Configuration Test

#### 7-5-2-8 Keyboard Test

#### 7-5-2-9 Audio Test

## Section 7-6 Service Notes

Table 7-3 Service Notes

Service Note Number	Description	Reference Page
SN-70411	Daylight Saving Time(DST)- New Dates	Refer to 7-6-1
SN-73092	Preventive Maintenance for LOGIQ3 Monitor	Refer to 7-6-2
SN-73090	Additional System Serial Sticker Label Location	Refer to 7-6-3
SN-73084	Keyboard Knobs	Refer to 7-6-4
SN-73082	Introduction Of FMI 73068/70/71	Refer to 7-6-5
SN-73081	Logiq 3 Win XP Systems with S/W R.4.0.0 - Inclusion of Base and Application Software CDs inside the System	Refer to 7-6-6
SN-73080	LOGIQ™ 3 - Introduction of Improved Keyboard Assembly	Refer to 7-6-7
SN-73078	BIOS Settings	Refer to 7-6-8
SN-73077	PC2IP Driver installation on BEP 2 System with PC2IP II board	Refer to 7-6-9
SN-73075	Introduction of New Receive Board	Refer to 7-6-10
SN-73074	Introduction of FMI 73066-Monitor MCU Replacement and Brightness HV adjustment	Refer to 7-6-11
SN-73073	China power cord	Refer to 7-6-12
SN-73064	CWD OPTion kit usage fr L3	Refer to 7-6-13
SN-73061	Replacement Of Logiq 3 Hardware FRU	Refer to 7-6-14
SN-73058	Various Boards Used On the Logiq 3	Refer to 7-6-15
SN-73056	Various Boards Used On the Logiq 3	Refer to 7-6-16
SN-73055	Intermittent Hang Issues Related to the FEC	Refer to 7-6-17
SN-73053	Backup and Restore Process in Logiq 3	Refer to 7-6-18
SN-73051	Monitor Signal Issues	Refer to 7-6-19
SN-73050	Profer way to enter Maintenance mode on Logiq 3	Refer to 7-6-20
SN-73049	Hard ware ID Generation on the ACI Board	Refer to 7-6-21
SN-73048	Preset Restore	Refer to 7-6-22

## 7-6-1 SN-70411:Daylight Saving Time (DST) - New Dates

### PROBLEM:

#### Issue 1:

DST start and end dates have changed in some countries.

#### Issue 2:

The automatic Daylight Saving Time feature in Microsoft Windows products may no longer run on the correct date, causing the system's time to be incorrect.

### CAUSE:

Some countries have changed their start and end dates for DST.

### SOLUTION:

Access Microsoft website <http://support.microsoft.com/kb/928388> to determine if the system's location site is affected.

#### Issue 1:

Adjust the system time manually at the start of DST and again at the conclusion.

#### Issue 2:

If the system relies on the automatic DST feature in Microsoft Windows, turn off the feature and then set the correct system time. Adjust the system time manually at the start of DST and again at the conclusion of DST.

Image Vault only: FMI 77203 for Image Vault 4.2 will be released in April. The upgrade involved with this FMI installs a Microsoft patch to address ongoing Daylight Saving Time changes. After the FMI is applied, the Image Vault will automatically update the system time on the correct date. Therefore, in November (and ongoing DST time periods), there will be no need to manually adjust the system time.

**NOTE:** *For all products, whenever you install or reinstall application software, or perform a complete or partial base image load, confirm that the date and time are set correctly and that the Windows automatic DST feature is off, if applicable.*

## FOR ALL LOGIQ 3 PRODUCTS,

To turn off the automatic DST feature and set the system time:

- 1.) Press Utility and then select System -> General.
- 2.) Select Date/Time.
- 3.) On the Date and Time Properties screen, select the Time Zone tab.
- 4.) Uncheck the Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving changes checkbox, and select Apply.
- 5.) Select the Date & Time tab.
- 6.) Set the proper time for the system's location and select OK.
- 7.) On the System screen, select Save.

## TO CHECK OR SET THE SYSTEM TIME:

- 1.) Press Utility and then select System -> General.
- 2.) Select Date/Time.
- 3.) On the Date and Time Properties screen, select the Date & Time tab.
- 4.) Set the proper time for the system's location and select OK.
- 5.) On the System screen, select Save.

## 7-6-2 Sn 73092: Preventive Maintenance Of LOGIQ 3 Monitor

### APPLIES TO:

All LOGIQ 3 Systems beginning with serial number 28365WS5 and higher.

### PROBLEM:

Color Tinge issue found on the LOGIQ 3 Monitor. The color tinge (reddish, greenish, or bluish) may be seen across the entire screen or in some regions of the screen.

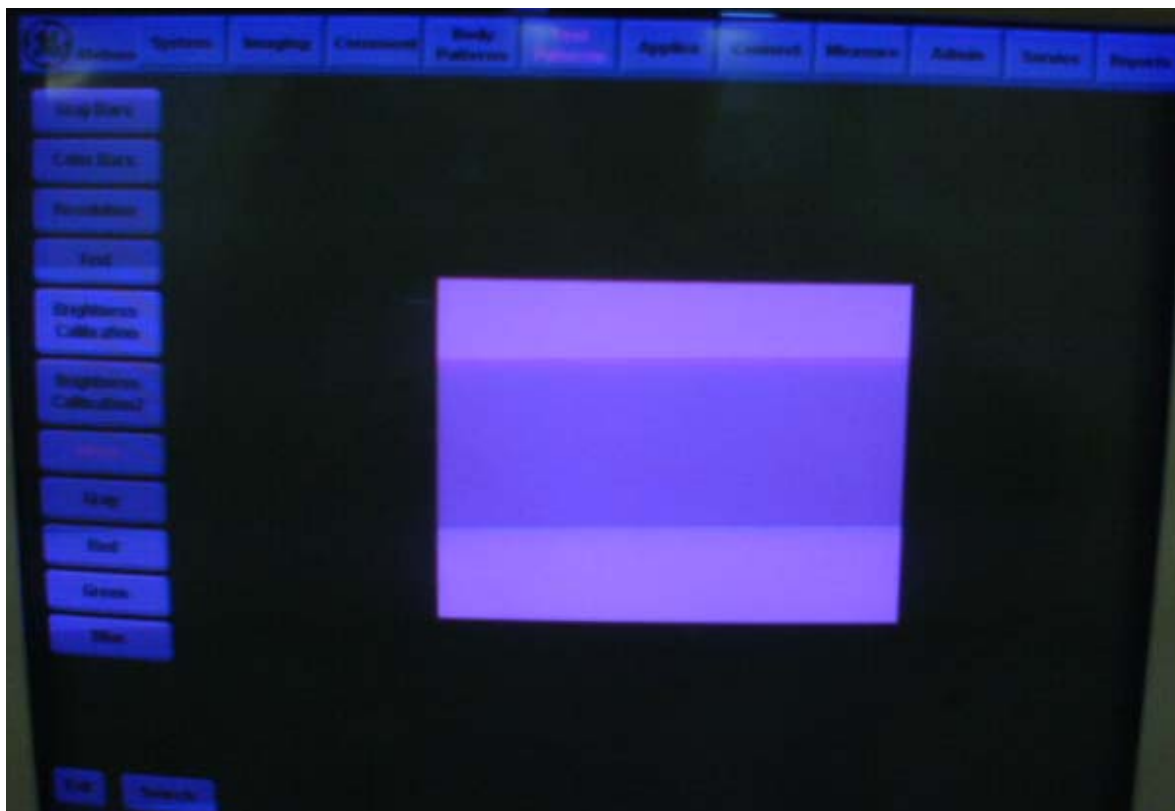


Figure 7-8 Color tinge Issue in LOGIQ 3 Monitor

### CAUSE:

Polarization of Monitor Magnetic field due to external Magnetic field effect.

**SOLUTION:**

Degaussing and Calibration of the monitor in "**Factory settings mode**" resolves the issue mentioned in the "**PROBLEM**" section. Follow the below process to "**Degauss and Calibrate**" the monitor as part of the Preventive Maintenance(or as part of service corrective action).

Step:1.)Power on the Logiq 3 system. Wait for the system to boot to the scan screen.

Step:2.)Press "**Utility**" Button.

Step:3.)Select "TestPatterns" tab.

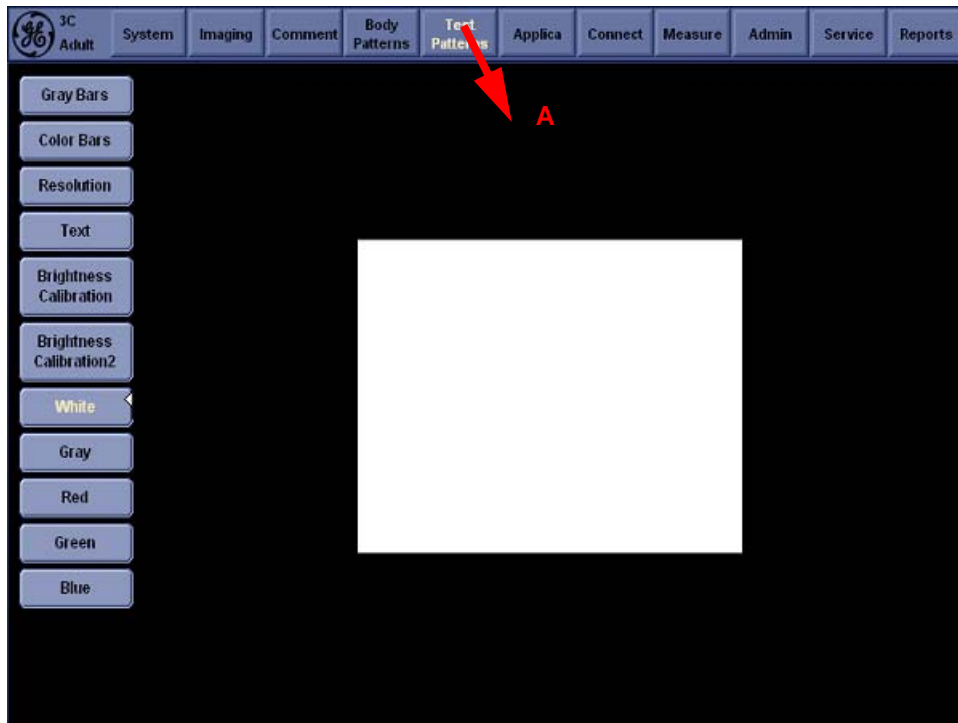


Figure 7-9 TestPatterns Tab Selection

A- Test Patterns Tab



Step:4.)Move the track ball pointer over the left hand column of tabs and select "White" test pattern button. Slowly move the trackball pointer away from the "White" test pattern button so as to not accidentally select another test pattern, and move the pointer off the screen completely so the pointer is not visible.

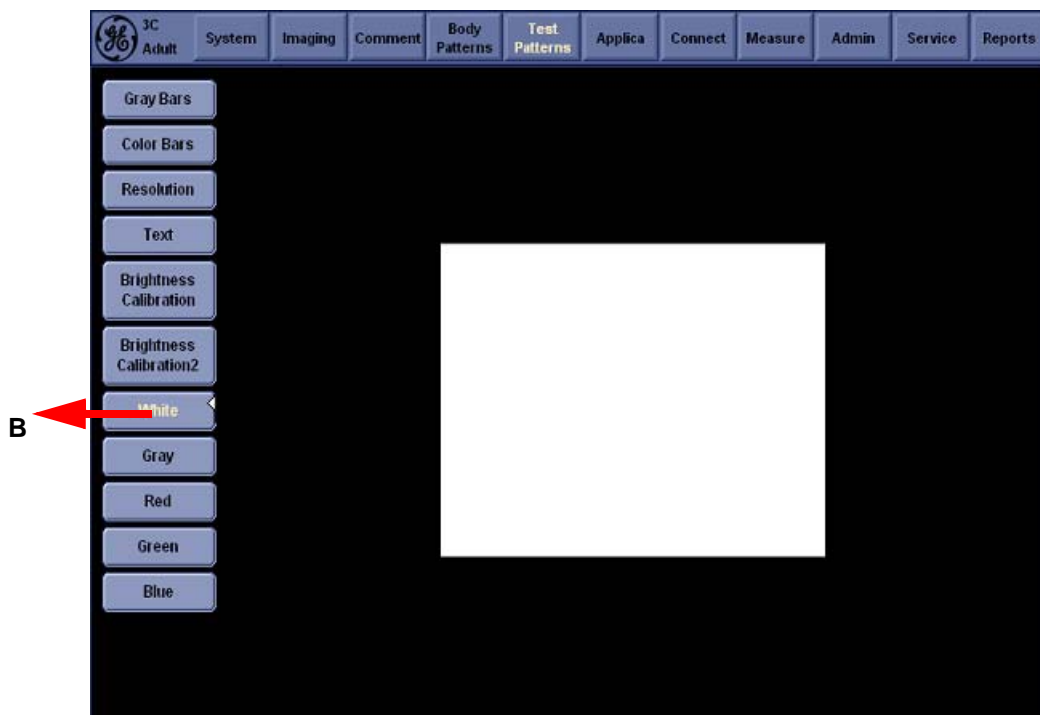


Figure 7-10 WhitePatterns Selection

B- White button

Step:5.)On the Monitor front please find 3 keys shown in Fig7-50. Press "2" key shown in fig 7-50, which is the menu key, and keep pressing it for 9 seconds to display factory settings on the screen.

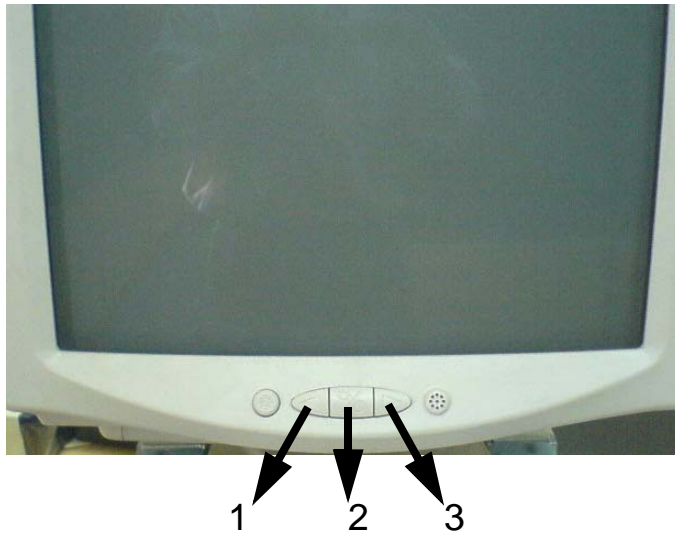


Figure 7-11 Factory Settings Menu Selection

1-Left Key	2-Menu Key	3-Right Key
------------	------------	-------------



1

Figure 7-12 FACTORY Settings Windows

1- Factory Settings window
----------------------------

**NOTE:** Please hold the "2- Menu Key" as shown in Figure 7-50 to display Factory settings window[DARK BLUE WINDOW] as shown in Figure 7-51 on the screen.

Step:6.)Select "**DEGAUSS**" from "**Factory Settings Window**" by using Left/Right Menu keys and then press "**2-Menu Key**" to start "**DEGAUSS**" operation.



Figure 7-13 Settings Windows

1- DEGAUSS Item
-----------------

Step:7.)Repeat step 5 to display "**Factory Settings window**".  
Step:8.)Select "**RGB**" by using Left/Right keys.  
Step:9.) Press "Menu Key" to display "RGB Menu".  
Step:10.)Select "**CALIBRATION**" by using Left/Right Menu keys.  
Step:11.) Press "Menu Key" to start "calibration" process.

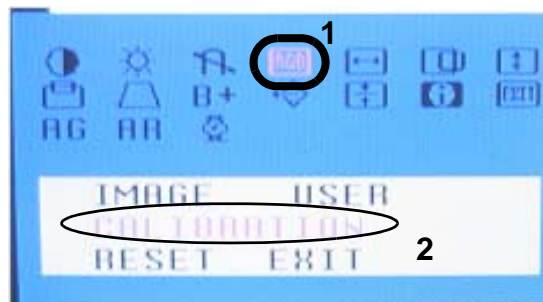


Figure 7-14 Settings Windows

1- RGB Item	2- CALIBRATION Item
-------------	---------------------

Step:12.)Calibration process takes few minutes. Please wait without activating the system or keyboard.



Figure 7-15 Settings Windows

Step:13.) Repeat "Step 5" to display "FACTORY SETTINGS Window". Select "RECALL" by using "Left/Right Menu Key" and then press "Menu key" to start "Recall" operation.



Figure 7-16 Settings Windows



Step:14.)Reboot the system.

Step:15.)Check whether the color tinge issue is resolved. If not contact OLC for further help to resolve the issue.

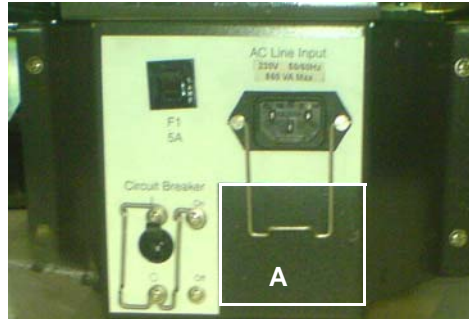
### 7-6-3 Sn:73090 Location Of the Logiq 3 System Additional Label with Serial Number information

#### APPLIES TO:

All LOGIQ3 systems having Serial No.42402WS8 or above.

#### PROBLEM:

System Serial Number Label is not found on the transformer. Refer below figure for the location of the system serial number label on transformer.



**Figure 7-17 System Serial Number Location On Transformer**

A.) System Serial Number Label Location on transformer

#### CAUSE:

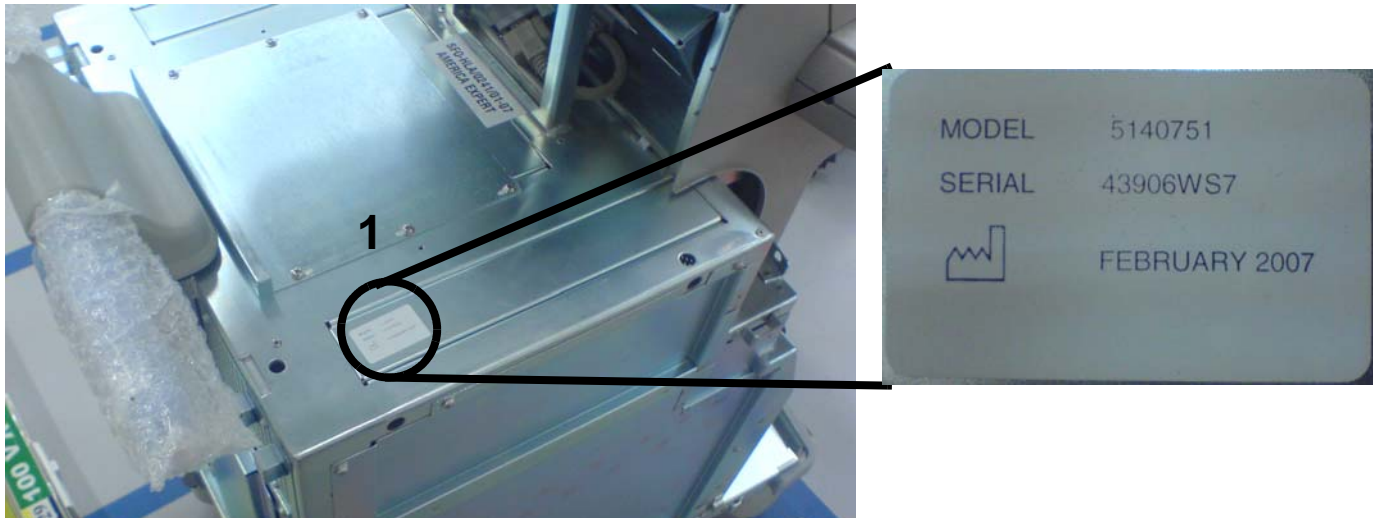
The System Serial Number sticker is not legible due to transit damage or due to replacement of the transformer.

#### SOLUTION:

If the issue mentioned in the **PROBLEM** Section is observed, Follow the below process to find additional system serial number sticker:

- 1.) Remove Right Cover.
- 2.) Remove Left Cover.
- 3.) Remove Rear Cover.
- 4.) Remove Front Bumper.
- 5.) Remove Front Cover.
- 6.) Remove Top Cover.

- 7.) It is possible now to see the serial number sticker on the chassis. Please find the serial number sticker on top of the chassis.



**Figure 7-18 Additional serial Number Sticker Location On The Chassis**

1. System Serial Number Sticker Location on top of the chassis

- 8.) Replace all the covers in the order of reversal.

**NOTE:** Please refer Service Manual(5122546) for Removal and Replacement of the covers.

## 7-6-4 Sn73084-Keyboard Knobs

### APPLIES TO:

All LOGIQ 3 Systems with loose or broken Keyboard knobs.

### PROBLEM:

Plastic knobs on LOGIQ 3 System keyboard break or become loose in fitting.

### SOLUTION:

Use Appropriate Knobs to replace the Knobs which are found defective on the keyboard.

### PROCEDURE:

The Knobs are available as Part of the kit(Part Number: 5155334), Please Order the Part ( 5155334) and Replace appropriate defective Knob.

This kit consists three types of knobs:

- 1.) Large size plastic knobs used for Imaging Modes and Gain control
- 2.) Medium size plastic knob used for 'Depth' function
- 3.) Small size plastic knob used for NTPUI functions, Body pattern, Zoom and Speaker functions



**7-6-5 Sn 73082:** Introduction of FMI 73068, FMI 73070, FMI 73071

**APPLIES TO:**

All LOGIQ™ 3 systems with S/W 2.2.X and having the issues noted in the PROBLEM section.

**PROBLEM:**

- 1.) Failure of Export and/or Move function while copying/moving patient data on to a CD.
- 2.) Spanish Report Translation errors - appearing in Portuguese & English.
- 3.) Windows Network vulnerability: MS05-011, MS05-019, MS05-043, MS05-051.
- 4.) 10 Image Report Template not getting printed in the correct format.

**SOLUTION:**

- 1.) The issues mentioned in PROBLEM section are resolved by upgrading the LOGIQ™ 3 system with S/W R2.2.X to **R4.0.X** by using **FMI 73068** or **FMI 73070**.

Refer table 1-1 to order appropriate FMI kit.

System Type	Serial Number	BEP Identification	Required FMI	FMI Kit to Order
LOGIQ™ 3 systems(S/W 2.2.X) with BEP2 or BEP3	<b>Above 3055WS1</b>	Not Required	FMI 73068	Kit Part Number: 5162505
LOGIQ™ 3 systems(S/W 2.2.X) with BEP2 or BEP3.	<b>Below 3055WS1</b>	Refer <b>Step 3</b>	FMI 73068	Kit Part Number: 5162505
LOGIQ™ 3 systems(S/W 2.2.X) with BEP1.	<b>Below 3055WS1</b>	Refer <b>Step 3</b>	FMI 73070	Kit Part Number: 5167186

**Table 7-1 Order Appropriate FMI Kit**

- 2.) If the customer requires prior Patients' data and Images be retained on the hard drive after the upgrade, the FE may order FMI 73071 Kit(Part Number: 5184450). FMI 73071 Kit consists of USB Hard disk as a tool to support the execution of FMI 73068 or FMI 73070.
  - USB HDD can not be used with R2xx software (not supported).
  - The system should be first upgraded to R4.0.X (C: partition only).
  - Only in the event of "Unable to create new patient" after the upgrade, the USB HDD is needed to backup patient data. The Ez Backup, Ez Backup with Move or the Export functions can be used.
  - After the data is backed up, a full base system s/w reload ( re-ghost) should be performed. For more information, please follow FMI instructions(Part Number: 5162506).
  - The USB HARD DRIVE is provided to the field as a tool, and it shouldn't be left at the customer site.

**NOTE:** The Imaging presets for the 4.0.X version of software are optimized for better Image Quality. The existing 2.2.X **Imaging presets are not compatible with the 4.0.X version** of software that is installed in the system as part of this FMI. For any specific customer requirement for preset optimization, seek support from Application specialist.



3.) Identification of LOGIQ™ 3 BEP (Back End Processor) at the site:

- Power "ON" the system.
- Press "Utility"->Click on "System"->Click on "About", the following screen appears on the screen.

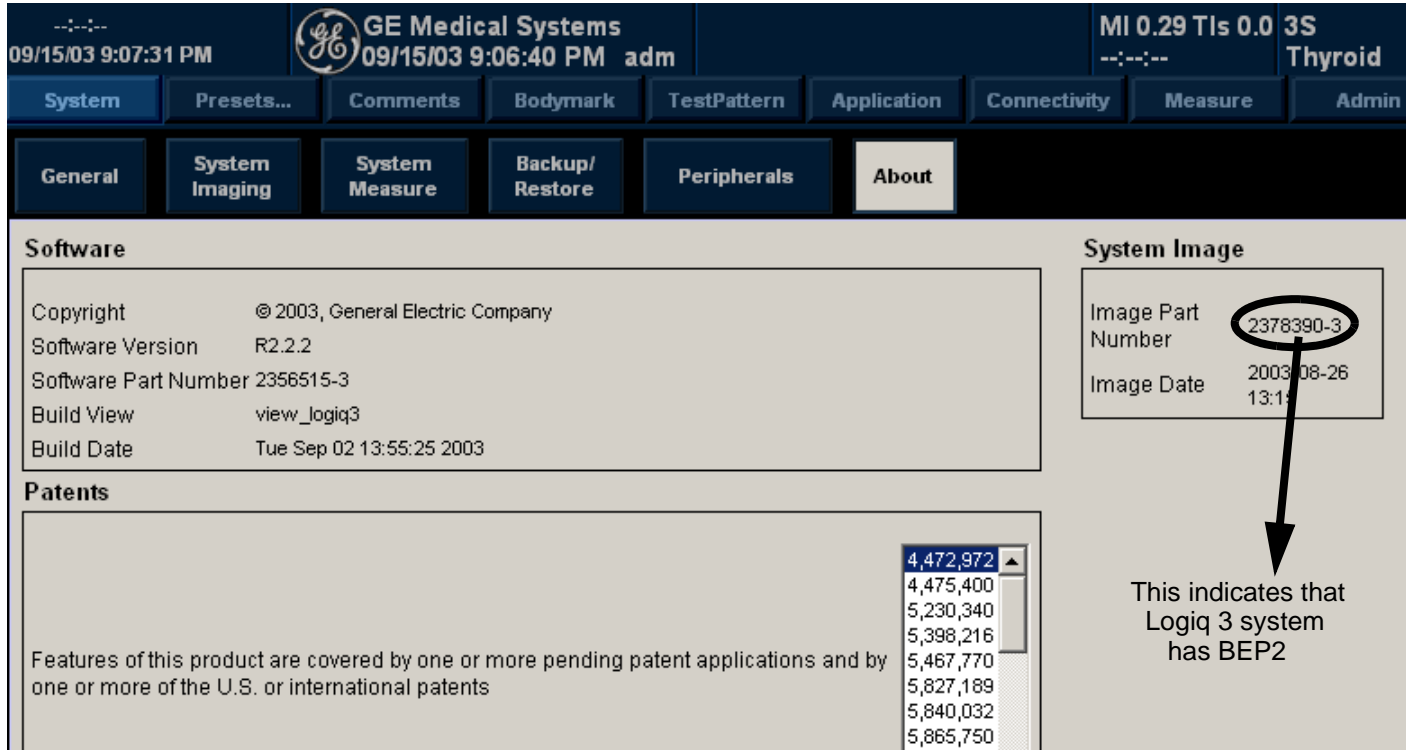


Figure 7-19 About Screen in LOGIQ™ 3 S/W2.2.X

- Identify the BEP Type by using the below Table and order appropriate FMI Kit (By Table 1-1).

Image Part Number	BEP Type
2356514-X	BEP1
2378390-X	BEP2
5124775-X	BEP3

The Field Service Engineer(executing the FMI 73068 or FMI 73070) is strictly advised to order the **FMI 73071 Kit ONLY ONCE**.The Same FMI 73071 Kit needs to be used for executing the FMI 73068 or FMI 73070 subsequently at other sites.

4.) Execute the FMI 73068 or FMI 73070:

- Refer FMI Instructions (Part Number: 5162506) for FMI 73068 or FMI 73070 execution.

## 7-6-6 Sn73081-Logiq 3 Win XP Systems with S/W R.4.x.x - Inclusion of Base and Application Software CDs inside the System

### APPLIES TO:

Logiq 3 Win XP Systems with S/W R 4.0.0 (Logiq 3 Expert/Logiq 3 Pro/Logiq 3 B-W).

### PROBLEM:

Missing software CDs with the Logiq 3 System during Installation or during repairs.

### SOLUTION:

Starting from Logiq 3 BT05 System S.No.33314WS6 , the Base and Application software CDs are enclosed in a CD pouch attached to the keyboard back cover **under the monitor**.

### PROCEDURE:

- 1.) Remove two caps (a,b) .Remove two screws (1,2) using "-" Stub B screw driver or a Coin.Lift the Keyboard rear cover up and pull backwards to remove, Refer the figures below(**from Figure 1 to figure 4**).
- 2.) Find the Base and Application CDs inside the CD pouch attached in the Keyboard back cover.Use the Software CDs for loading the relevant software.
- 3.) After completing the s/w re-load, the CDs should be put back into the pouch(**Refer Figure 5**) and close the Keyboard back cover.(**Refer Figure 6**).

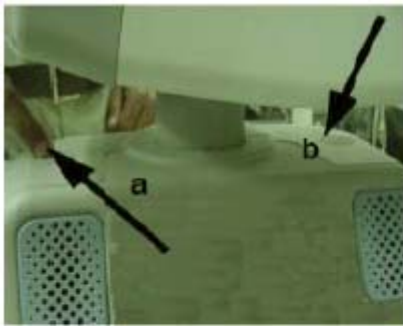


Figure 1

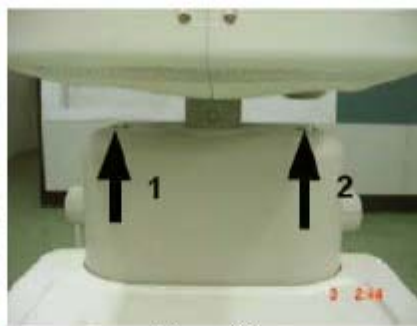


Figure 2



Figure 3



Figure 4



Figure 5



Figure 6

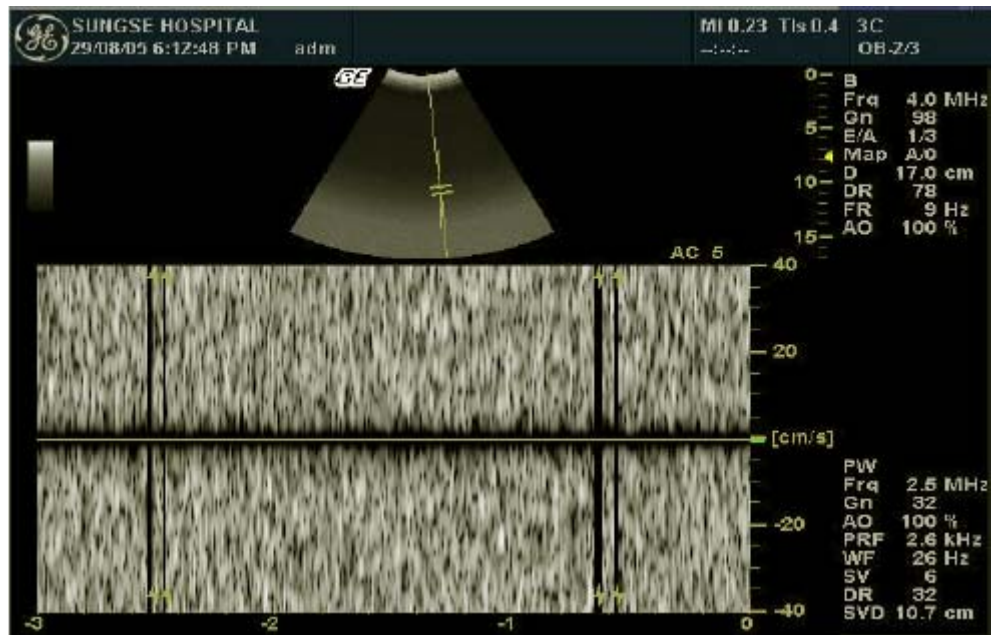
## 7-6-7 Sn73080-LOGIQ™ 3 - Introduction of Improved Keyboard Assembly

### APPLIES TO :

LOGIQ™ 3 Systems having the Problems Mentioned below.

### PROBLEM:

Doppler Spectrum break or/ and Doppler audio break due to keyboard malfunctioning in PWD Mode, without user intervention(without the user changing any controls like PRF, TGC, Depth or moving the trackball).



### CAUSE:

Intermittent TGC output due to improper contact between U2 IC and its socket on the keyboard PWA.

### SOLUTION:

Replace the Existing Keyboard assembly with the new FRU Keyboard(Part Number:2319549-3).

## 7-6-8 Sn73078- BIOS Settings

### APPLIES TO:

LOGIQ 3 Systems with the Problems Mentioned in the PROBLEM Section of this Service Note.

### PROBLEM:

Problems observed in Logiq 3 systems mentioned below:

- 1.) System Performance Slowdown
- 2.) Blue screen during system operation
- 3.) Slow Transition time
- 4.) Slow Bootup/Booting stops.
- 5.) USB A Drive appear in F3 Menu even when no USB Device is connected.

### SOLUTION:

1. Ensuring that the Bios Settings are correct.

Refer to the Table below for Procedure to ensure that the BIOS settings are correct.

**Table 7-2 Procedure to ensure BIOS settings**

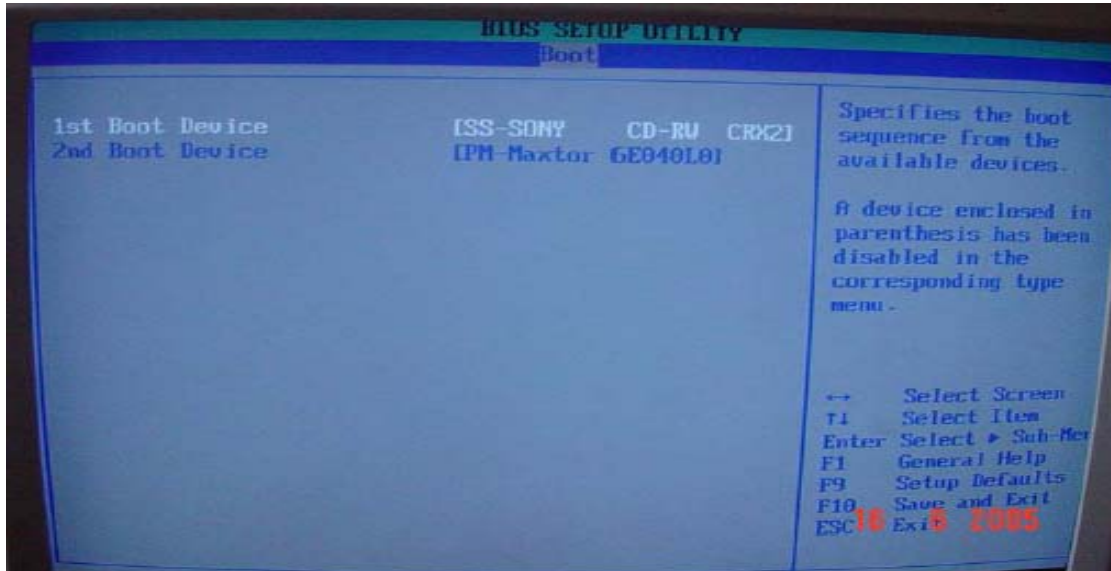
System Type	Change the Bios Settings
LOGIQ 3 System(With S/W Ver 2.X.X)	Refer <a href="#">section 7-6-8-1 on page 29</a>
LOGIQ 3 BT'05 System (With S/W Ver 4.X.X)	Refer <a href="#">section 7-6-8-2 on page 32</a>

**PROCEDURE:**

**7-6-8-1 BIOS settings for Logiq 3 Systems (with S/W version 2.X.X ) are as follows:**

- 1.) During Boot Up, Press F2 to enter SetUp Screen.
- 2.) Enter the Password as “dhruva”
- 3.) Under “Exit”.
- 4.) Enter “**Boot**” tab, Under “**Boot Disk Priority**”,select **CD RW** as the First Boot device as in [Figure 7-20 on page 29](#) and the **Hard disk** as the Second Boot Device

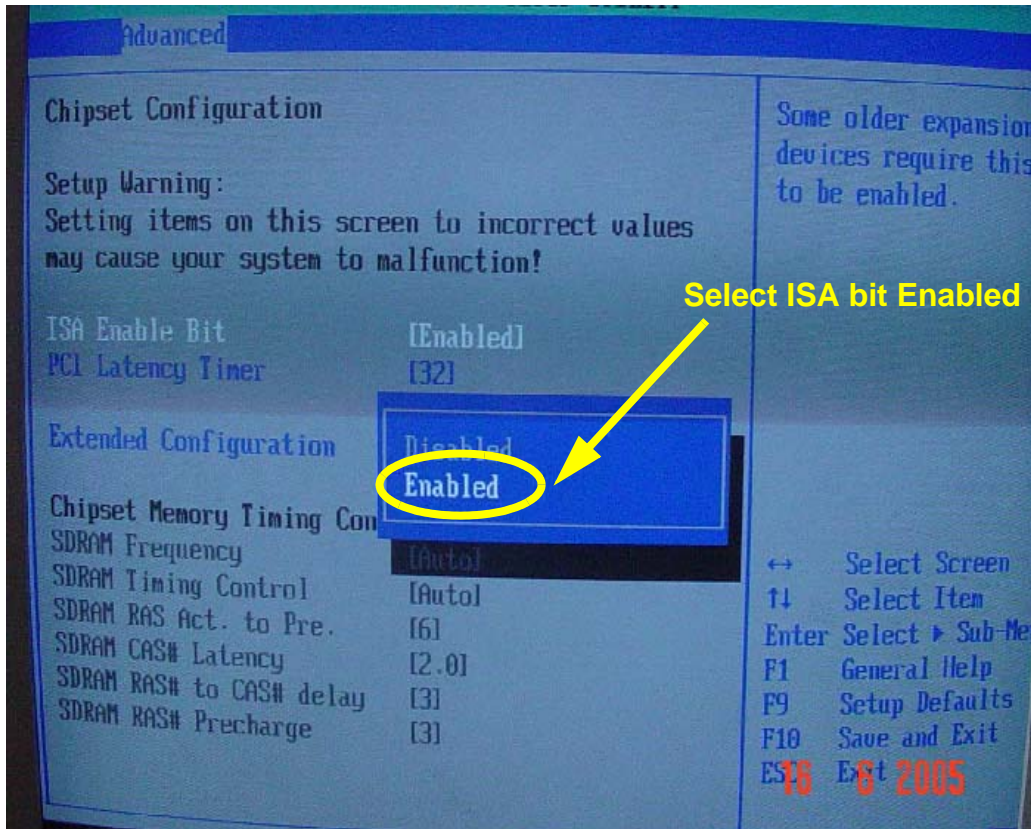
**Figure 7-20 1 st Boot Device CD R/W**



- 5.) Press ESC

- 6.) Under "Advanced" --> "Chipset Configuration" tab, Go To ISA Enable bit . Press Enter and Select "Enabled", as in Figure 7-21 on page 30

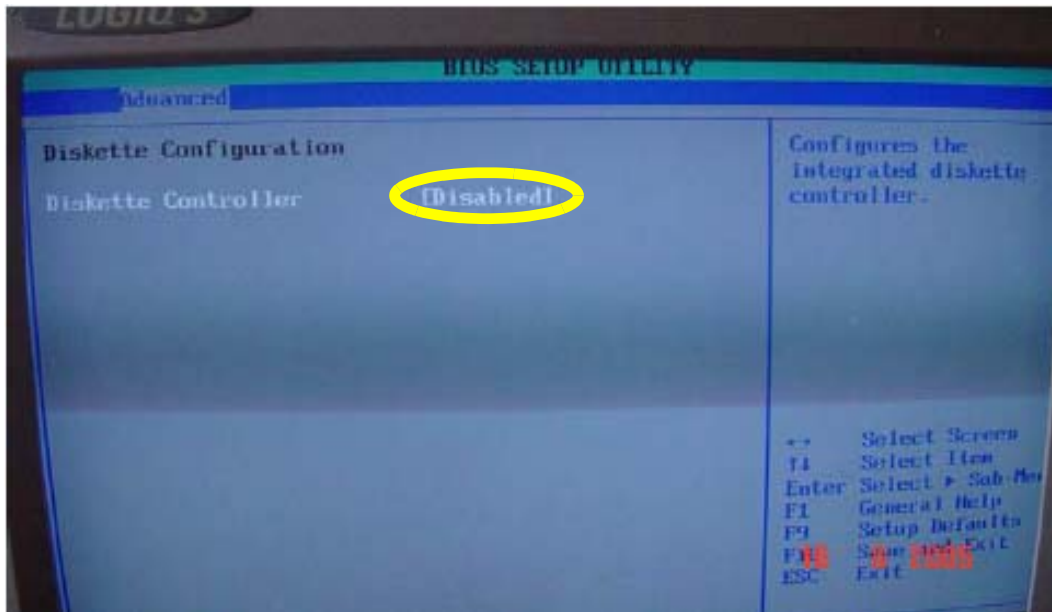
Figure 7-21 Enable ISA bit



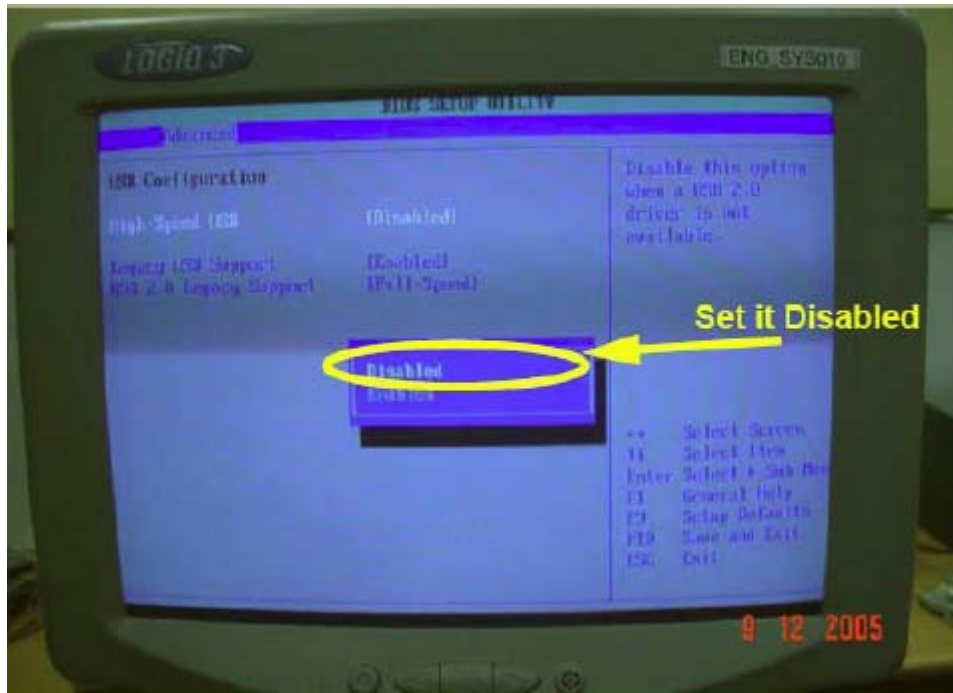
- 7.) Press 'ESC'

- 8.) Under "Advanced" --> "Diskette Configuration" tab, Go To Diskette Controller. Press Enter and Select "Disabled", as in Figure 7-22 on page 31

Figure 7-22 Disable Diskette Controller



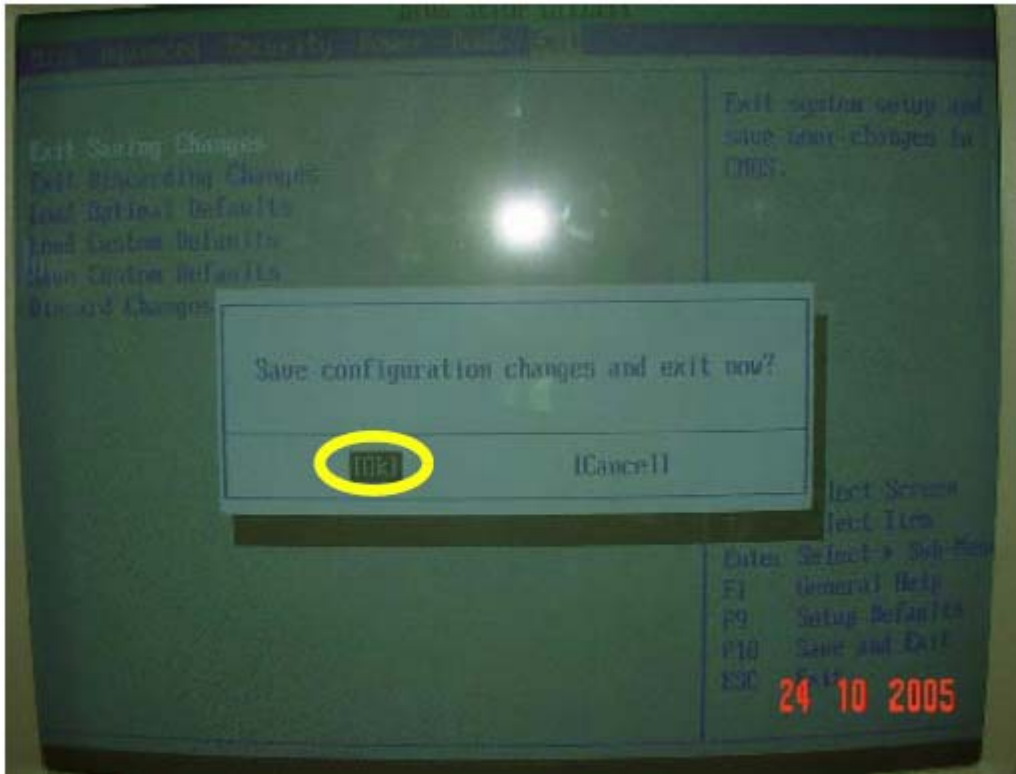
- 9.) Press 'ESC'  
10.) Under "Advanced" --> "USB Configuration" tab, go to "High-Speed USB" and set it to Disabled .



- 11.) Press **ESC**  
12.) Press "**F10**".  
13.) Popup Screen appears on the screen.

14.) Click on "OK" to Save all the changes and exit as per [Figure 7-23 on page 32](#)

**Figure 7-23 Save changes before Exiting BIOS**



15.) Reboot the System..

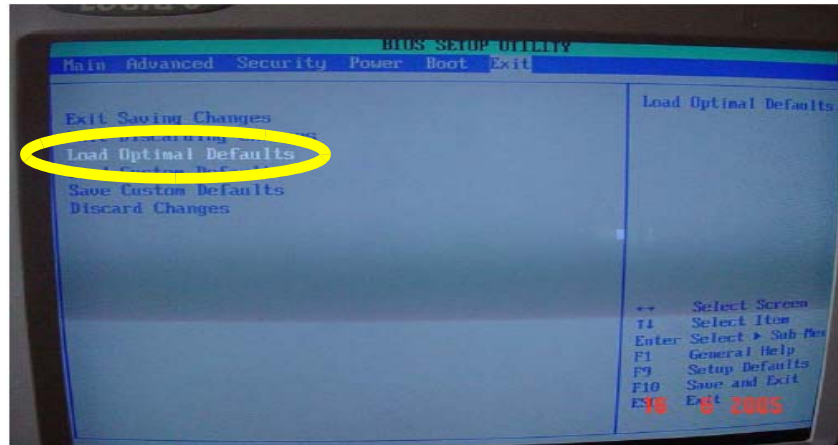
**7-6-8-2 BIOS settings for Logiq 3 BT'05 Systems (with S/W version 4.X.X) are as follows:**

- 1.) During Boot Up, Press F2 to enter SetUp Screen.
- 2.) Enter the Password as "dhruva"
- 3.) Under "Exit", go to the "Load Optimal Default Parameters" and press "Enter" Ref. [Figure 7-24 on page 33](#)



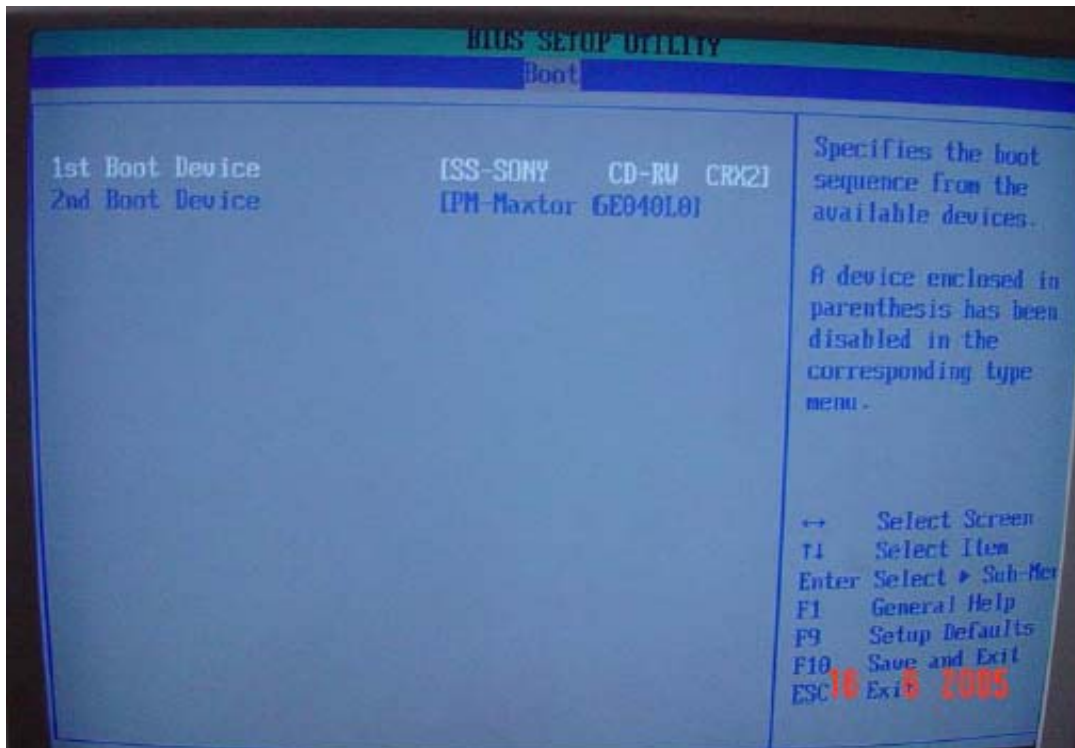
- 4.) pop up screen appears on the screen ,Click on OK.

Figure 7-24 Load Optimal Default Settings



- 5.) Press **ESC**
- 6.) Enter "**Boot**" tab, Under "**Boot Disk Priority**",select **CD RW** as the First Boot device as in Figure 7-25 on page 33 and the **Hard disk** as the Second Boot Device

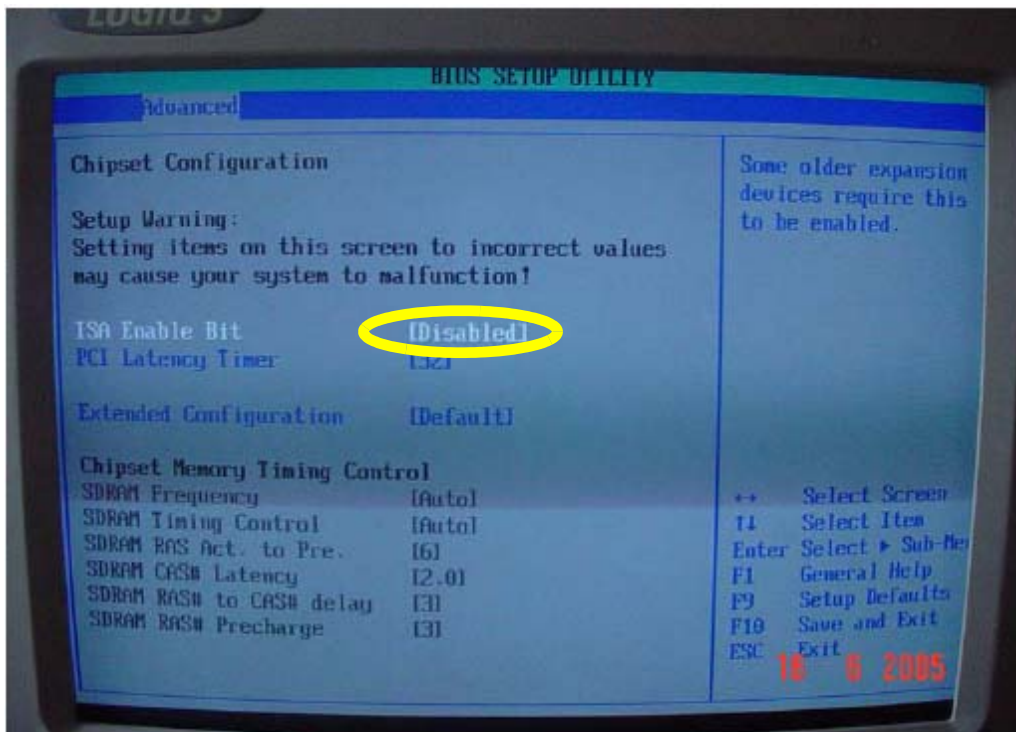
Figure 7-25 1 st Boot Device CD R/W



- 7.) Press **ESC**

- 8.) Under “Advanced” --> ”Chipset Configuration” tab, Go To ISA Enable bit . Press Enter and Select “Disabled”, as in Figure 7-26 on page 34

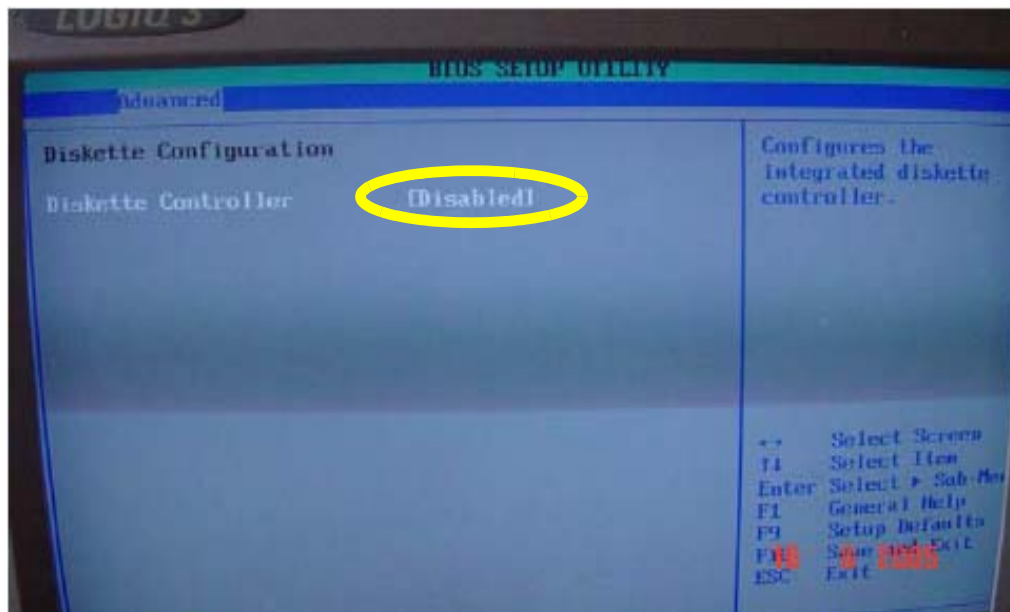
Figure 7-26 Disable ISA bit



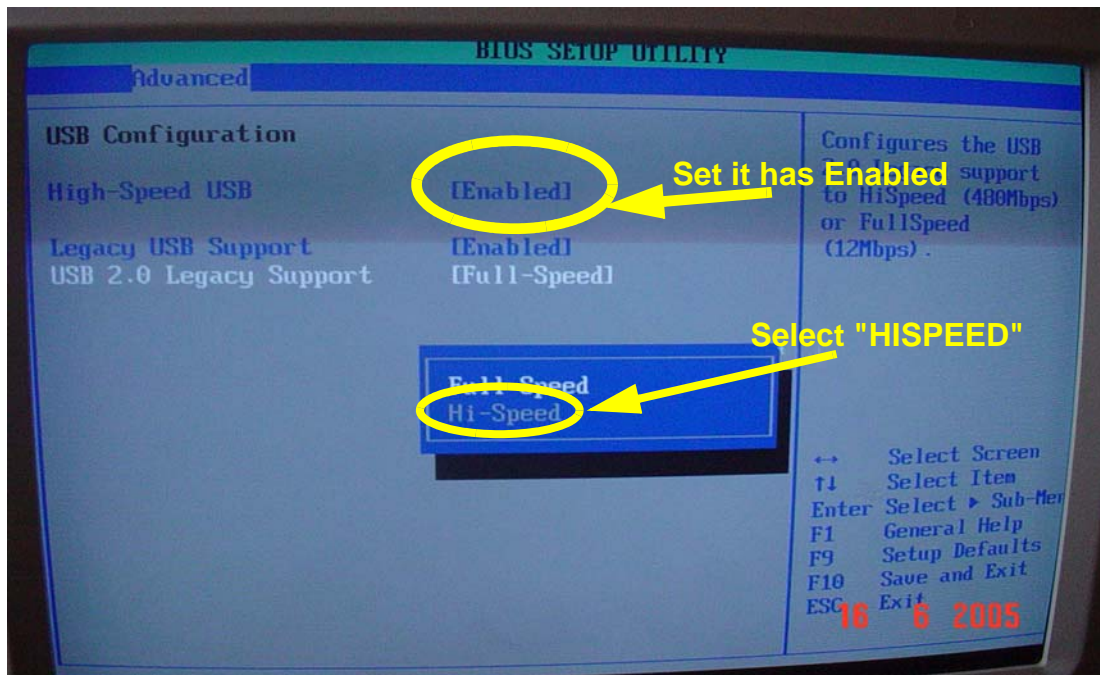
- 9.) Press ‘ESC’

- 10.) Under "Advanced" --> "Diskette Configuration" tab, Go To Diskette Controller. Press Enter and Select "Disabled". as in Figure 7-27 on page 35

Figure 7-27 Disable Diskette Controller



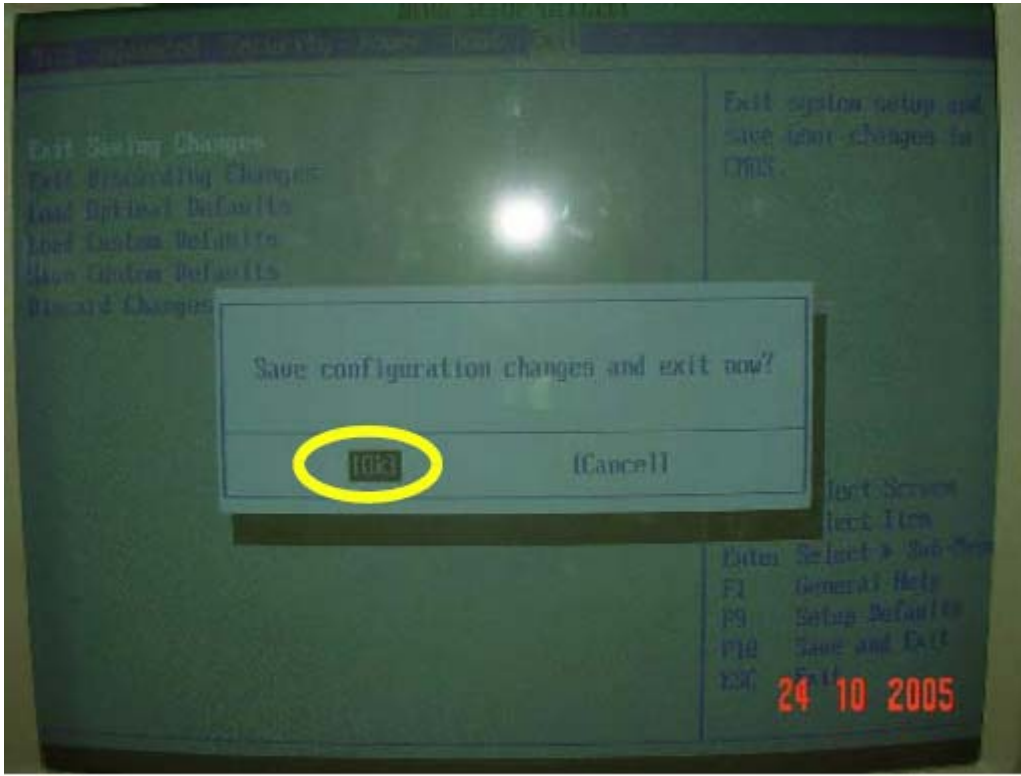
- 11.) Press 'ESC'
- 12.) Under "Advanced" --> "USB Configuration" tab, Under "2.0 Legacy Support" ,Set the USB speed to "HiSpeed"



- 13.) Press **ESC**
- 14.) Press "**F10**".
- 15.) Popup Screen appears on the screen.

16.) Click on "OK" to Save all the changes and exit as per [Figure 7-28 on page 36](#)

**Figure 7-28 Save changes before Exiting BIOS**



17.) Reboot the System.

### 7-6-9 Sn73077-PC2IP Driver installation on BEP 2 System with PC2IP II board

#### APPLIES TO:

This Service Note applies to the LOGIQ 3 Systems with BEP 2 while loading the base softwares shown below.

**Table 7-3 Base Software Part numbers for L3 Systems**

Base Software	Part Number	Revision
Expert	5120162	Rev 2
Pro	5140647	Rev 2
B/W	5140659	Rev 2

#### PROBLEM:

PC2IP drivers are not installed automatically when the base software version 4.0.0 is installed. The System displays the error screen shown below when the system is rebooted after loading the Base software and prior to loading of application software.



**SOLUTION:**

Follow the instructions given in the PROCEDURE section of this service note to install the PC2IP driver on the system.

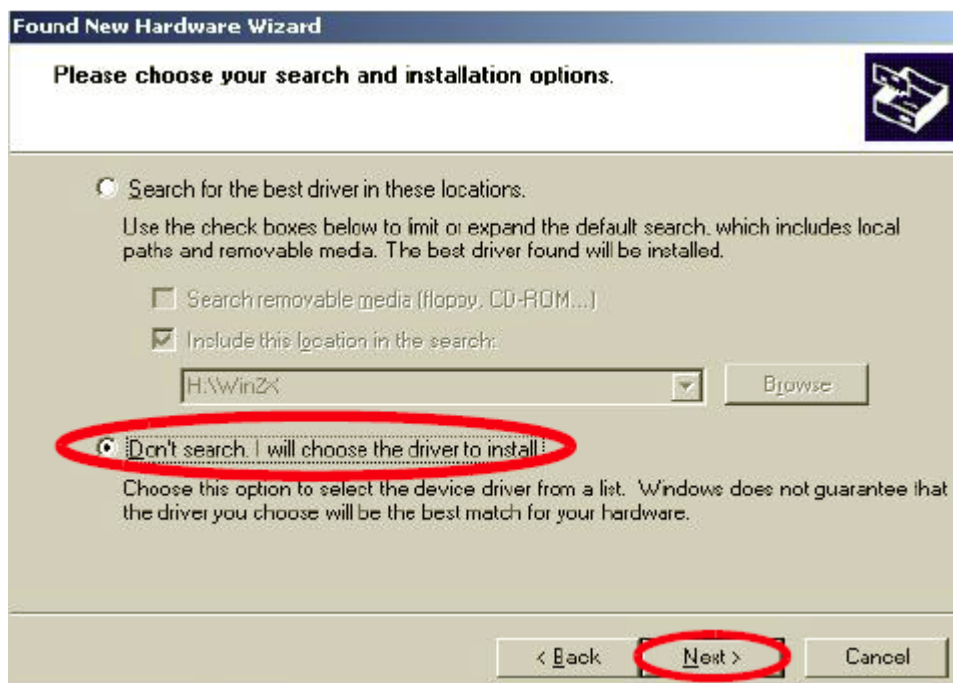
**PROCEDURE:**

Follow the instructions below to install the PC2IP driver for the system.

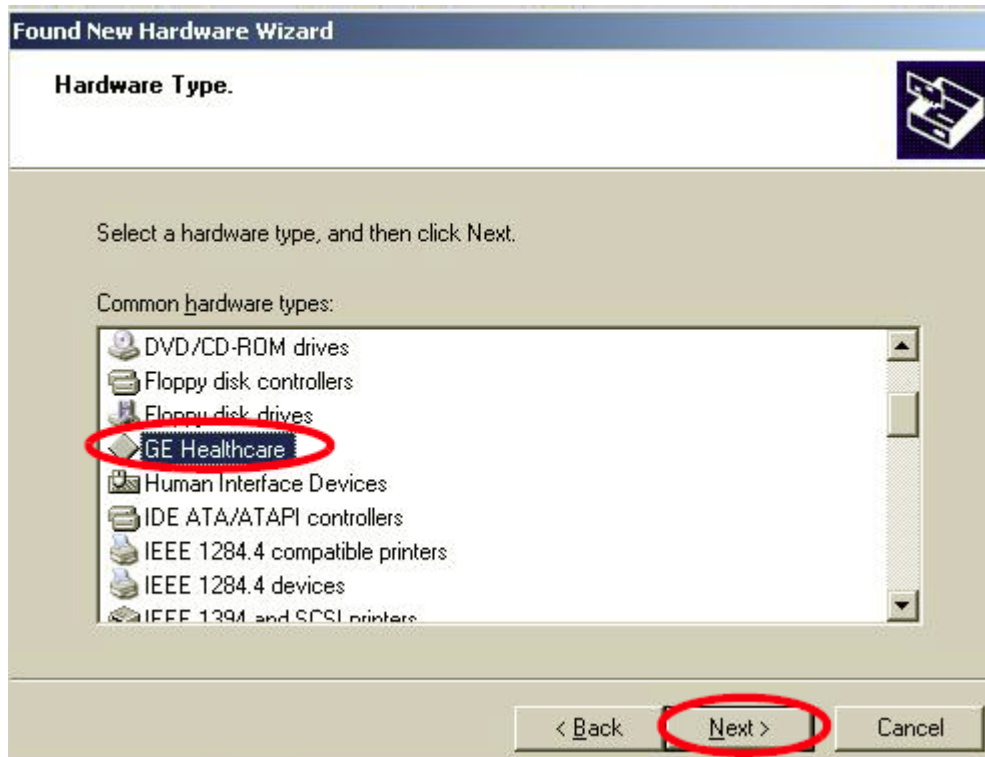
- 1.) Select the option as shown in the below figure and select "Next".



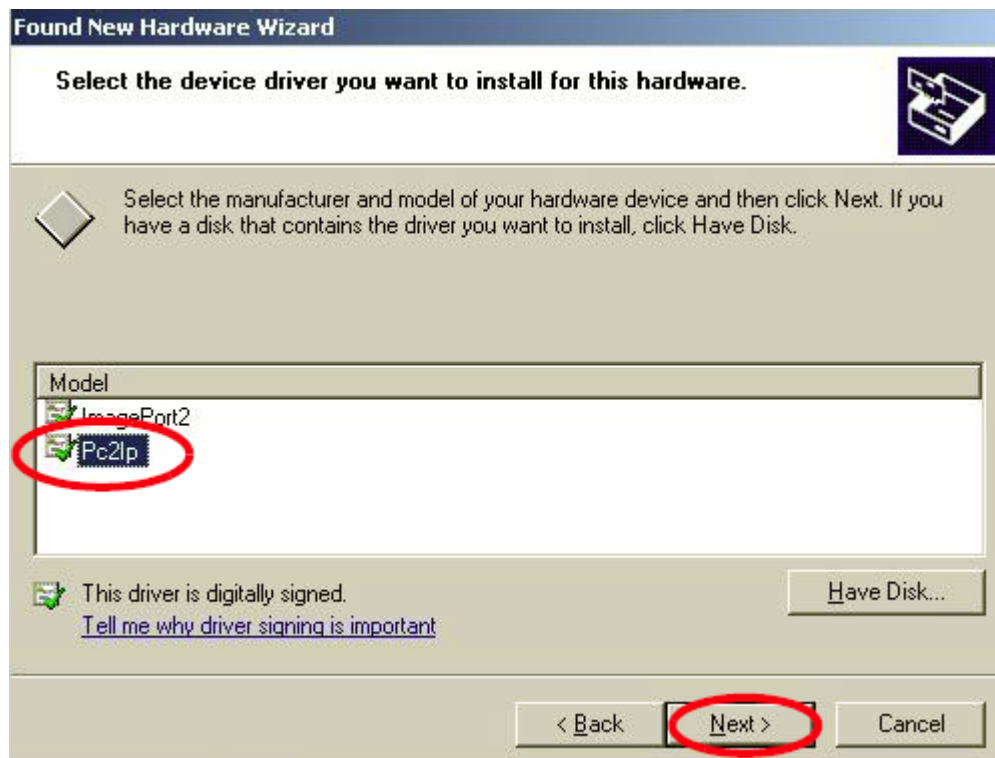
- 2.) Select the option as shown in the below figure and select "Next"



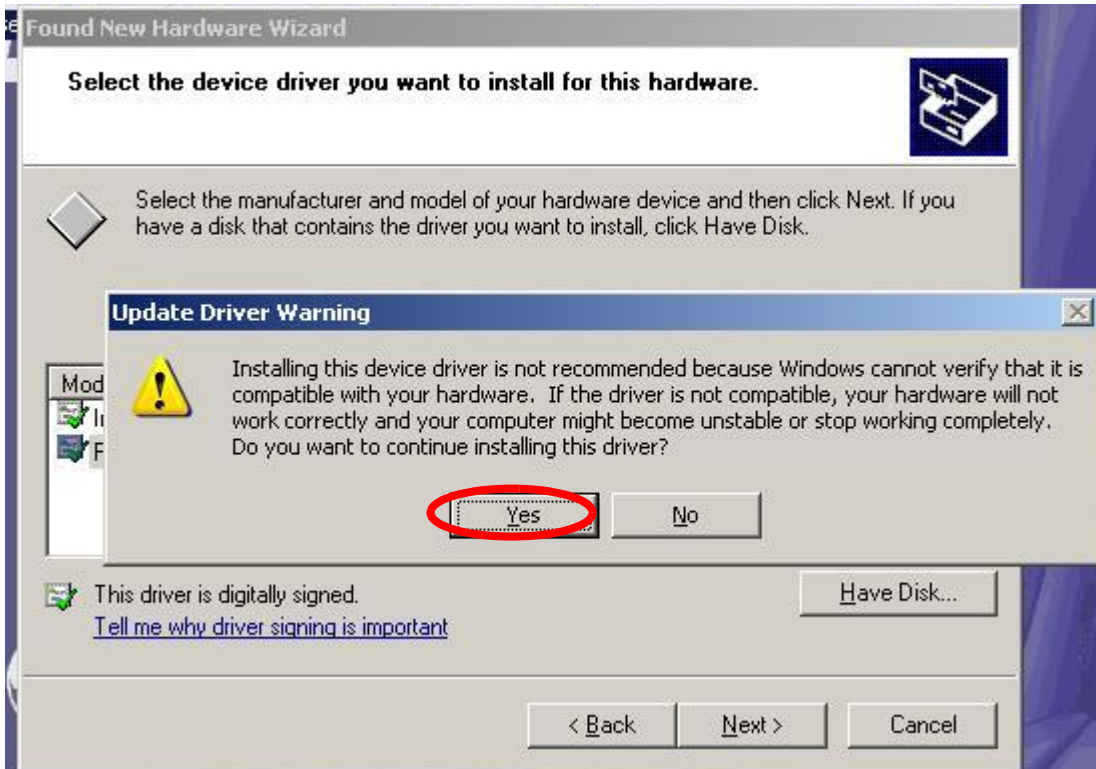
3.) Select "GE Healthcare" and then Select "Next"



4.) The below figure appears on the screen. Select "Pc2lp" and then press "Next"



5.) Update Driver Warning dialog box appears on the screen, Press "Yes" to proceed.

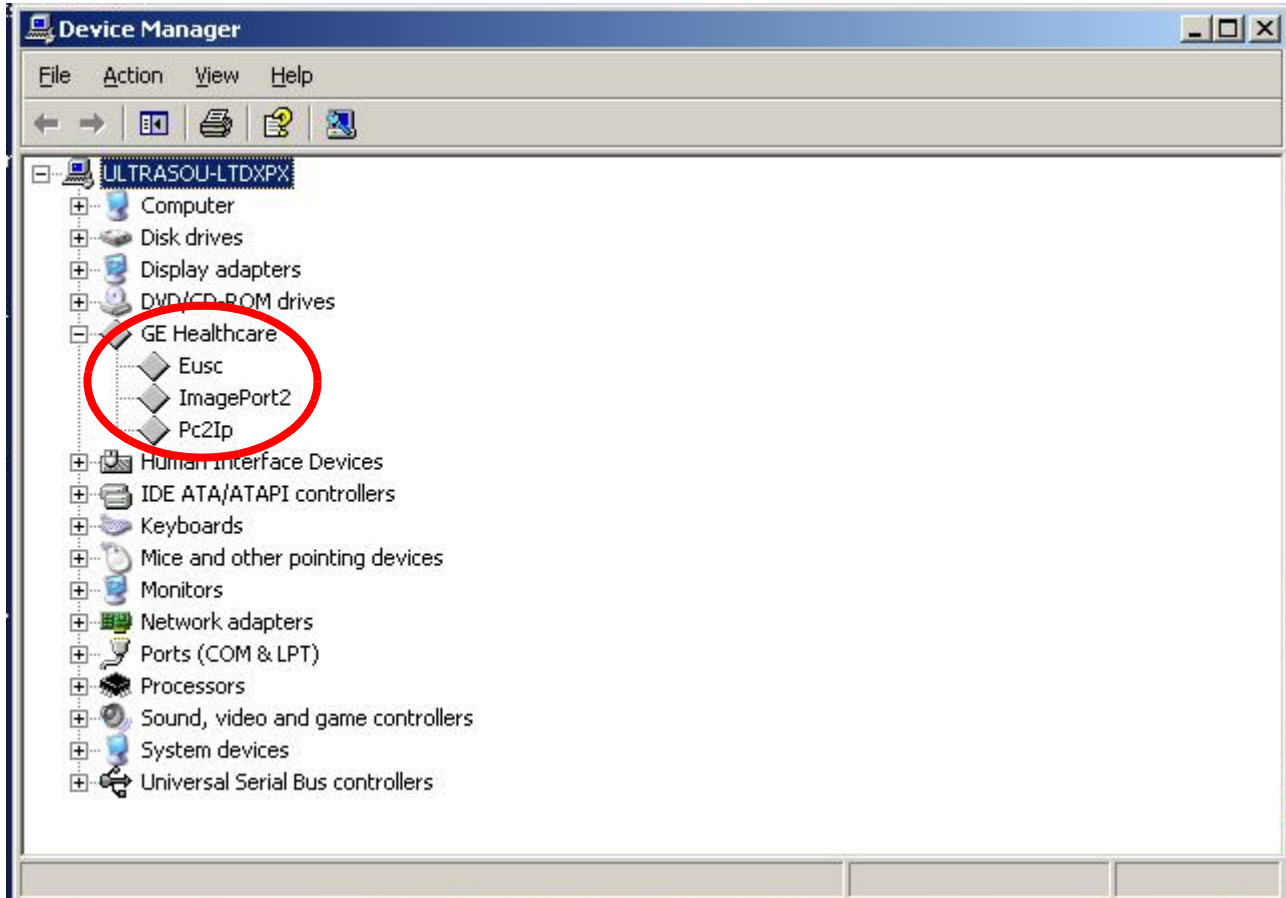


6.) The below figure appears on the screen press "Finish" to complete the process of Installation.





- 7.) To check whether the drivers are installed, goto the device manager by double clicking the shortcut for device manager on the desktop. Collapse the GEHealthcare option as shown in the Picture below and check if all the 3 image ports are appearing under this option.



If all the image ports are present in the GEHealthcare component, the PC2IP driver is now installed in your system. Now, Proceed with installation of the application software.

## 7-6-10 Sn73075-Introduction of New Receive Board

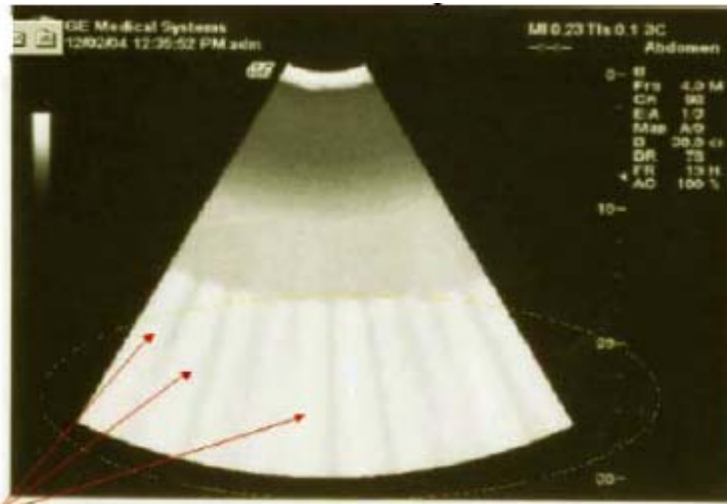
### APPLIES TO :

Logiq 3 Systems with Noise in the Far field of the Image Area .

### **PROBLEM:**

White Band/Streak/Noise/Artifact in the Far Field of the Image Area.

The figure below shows this far field artifact on the Image area.



White artifacts in far field

**CAUSE:**

Oscillations of the VCA Chip on the Receive Board at lower temperature in Receive Board, PN 2318122-2.

**SOLUTION:**

Replace the existing Receive Board with the new improved Receive Board FRU, Part Number: 2318122-3.

## 7-6-11 Sn73074:Introduction of FMI 73066-Monitor MCU Replacement and Brightness HV adjustment

### **APPLIES TO :**

LOGIQ 3 Systems with Monitors having the following Serial Number Range:

MON-03-0001 ~ MON-03-1480	MON-04-0719 ~ MON-05-0999
MON-04-0001 ~ MON-04-0718	

### **PROBLEMS:**

#### 1.) **Brightness fluctuation**

Sudden brightness changes when monitor brightness is adjusted.

Right after adjusting the brightness, display suddenly turns dark or bright. Brightness may change during normal usage even without any user intervention.

#### 2.) **Color tinge**

Monitor display is a little bluish, greenish, or reddish.

One of primary colors(R, G, B) have been decreased beyond the auto compensation range of internal circuit.

### **NOTICE:**

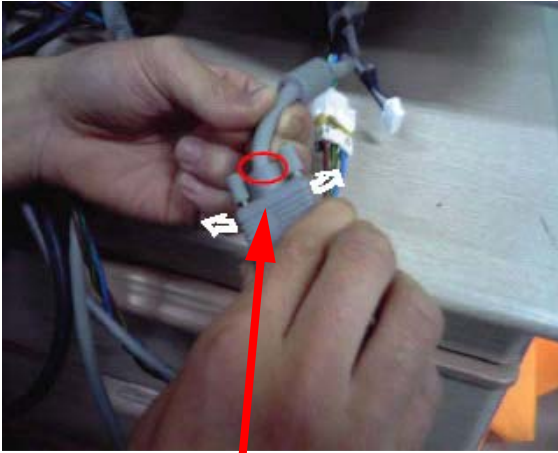
**If one of Red, Green, or Blue color is completely gone, it may not be a color tinge problem. Check the signal cable connection from BEP to monitor.**

### **IMPORTANT NOTE:**

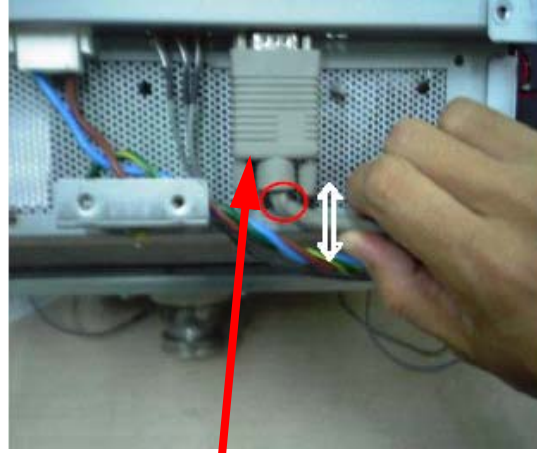
#### **Procedure to Isolate whether the Color Tinge is due to internal cable of the Monitor:**

Switch on the LOGIQ 3 system. Manipulate the cables as indicated below, while looking at the monitor.

- 1.) If there is no change in the Monitor color while performing this, it indicates that this issue is associated with the monitor. In this event refer FMI 73066 Instructions for further actions.
- 2.) **If the color changes while performing the cable manipulation, repeat the same to confirm that there is an issue with the cable internal to the monitor. In this event, the monitor will need replacement since this cable cannot be replaced in the field.**



VGA Connector 1



VGA Connector 2

**NOTE:** " VGA cable connector 1 can be seen when the Keyboard Rear cover is removed and VGA Connector 2 is connected to the monitor and can be seen on removal of Monitor Covers "

**NOTICE**

If these issues are not resolved by executing this FMI, Replace monitor with the latest version of the monitor (PN: 2319551-5).

**Guidelines for determining the Applicability of the FMI**



Monitor Part Number is displayed here.

Monitor Serial Number

The part number is 2319551-X, where X indicates the version of the monitor

The FMI Kit **5159437** comprises of 2 MCU(MICOM) versions. The MICOM should be selected depending on the part number of the monitor. Please refer to the table below for MICOM selection with respect to the Monitor Part Number.

<b>Monitor Part Number</b>	<b>MCU version</b>
2319551-1, 2319551-2, 2319551-3	WIP02A.F0508
2319551-4	WIP02B.F0508

**SOLUTION:**

The problems mentioned in the section “PROBLEMS” can be resolved by executing the FMI 73066 (Kit Part Number: 5159437) as mentioned in the FMI instructions 5159456. Please read the instructions carefully before execution of the FMI.

## 7-6-12 Sn73073-Introduction of FMI 73069 for CHINA

### APPLIES TO:

All LOGIQ 3 systems installed in China after Jan 1st, 2003 and manufactured before 1st April, 2005.

### PROBLEM:

- 1.) The Power cord shipped with the LOGIQ 3 systems to China during the above period are not complying with the new Chinese Regulatory requirements.
- 2.) The Hardcopy of the Chinese Manuals given to the customers did not contain the SFDA Registration number and the Product registration number.

### CAUSE:

- 1.) To Comply with Chinese Regulatory Requirements pertaining to the use of CCC marked (both the plugs and the Cable) Power Cord.
- 2.) To provide the customer with the hardcopy of Manuals in Chinese as per Chinese regulatory requirements.

### SOLUTION:

The above-mentioned problems will be resolved by the execution of the FMI-73069. The FMI Kit comprises of the Power cord with the Plug, Socket and the Cable having CCC mark. This Power cord hence complies with Chinese regulatory requirements. The FMI kit assembly with the chinese manuals will be completed at GE Healthcare, China.

For detailed procedure of the FMI execution, Refer to the FMI instructions (PN:5149669) provided in the FMI kit. Place Orders for the Kit (PN:5149657) to GE Healthcare China.

For any clarifications on the FMI, please contact the Pole OLC/ Zheng, Xue\_Hua / Bah, ChewYin for support. For urgent help, contact Zheng, Xue\_Hua at 8621-5257 4640 ext.64131.

## 7-6-13 Sn73064-CWD Option Kit Usage for LOGIQ™ 3

### APPLIES TO:

All LOGIQ™ 3 Systems.

**NOTE:** *Ignore All previous Service notes regarding CWD Option Kit, including Service Note 73043A. This Service Note preceeds all other service notes with respect CWD Option Kit.*

### PROBLEM:

Usage of the various CWD Kits for LOGIQ™ 3

### SOLUTION:

**NOTE:** *The CWD Upgrade has to be performed on systems with software version R2.2.1 and Above only. If the software on the system is of version lower than R2.2.1, please perform the FMI 73060 on the system before performing the CWD upgrade.*

Refer to the system serial number and the table below for the selection of the proper kit.

Pole	System Serial Number	Kit to be used	System Serial Number	Kit to be used
Europe	5115WS1 and onwards	2365752(H41722LY)	Below 5115WS1	2401844(H41742LM)
Australia	3508WS9 and onwards	2365752(H41722LY)	Below 3508WS9	2401844(H41742LM)
China and Hong Kong	4279WS6 and onwards	2365752(H41722LY)	Below 4279WS6	2401844(H41742LM)
Japan	3442WS1 and onwards	2365752(H41722LY)	Below 3442WS1	2401844(H41742LM)
Korea	2795WS3 and onwards	2365752(H41722LY)	Below 2795WS3	2401844(H41742LM)
Singapore	5247WS2 and 5361WS3 onwards	2365752(H41722LY)	Below 5361WS3 except 5247WS2	2401844(H41742LM)
Americas	All Systems	2401844(H41742LM)		

**Table 7-4 Selection of the CWD Kit**



**CAUTION** The Kit 2401844 contains the Transmit board 2 (2318124-2). If this board is not used, then on activating the CWD mode, the Probe will become very hot, which may result in injury. This will also permanently damage the probe if the system is operated in such a way.

**7-6-14 SN-73061:Replacement of LOGIQ™ 3 Hardware FRU**

**APPLIES TO:**

All LOGIQ™ 3 Systems.

**PROBLEM:**

Change of FRUs and Introduction of New FRUs.

**SOLUTION:**

New FRUs Introduced.

**7-6-14-1 Change of FRUs.**

The following FRUs have changed.

Old Part Number	Old Part Description	New Part Number	New Part Description	Reason For Change	Compatibility
2332968	RPA Fuse 3A for LOGIQ 3	5117766	2Amps Thermal Circuit Breaker	Changed for Regulatory Complainace	Forward and Backward
2318126	DBF Board for LOGIQ 3	5129931	DBF2 Board for LOGIQ 3	Productivity	Forward and Backward. This FRU includes Software R2.2.2, which is needed for the new DBF board
2277105	HVPS Assy for LOGIQ 3	2390954-2	DBHV Power Supply for LOGIQ 3	Localization of Power supply	Forward and Backward
2319551-3	Monitor Assembly for LOGIQ 3	2319551-4	Monitor Assembly for LOGIQ 3	Change in MICOM software	Forward and Backward
2361975-4	BEP2 Assy for LOGIQ 3	5126610	BEP3 Assy for LOGIQ 3	Obsoloscense of BEP2	Forward and Backward
2318124-2	Transmit board pcb for LOGIQ 3	2318124-3	Transmit board pcb for LOGIQ 3	Solution for Diagnostics error Implemented - TX_TPG2 Error Resolved.	Forward and Backward

**Table 7-5 Change of FRUs**



**7-6-15 SN-73058:Various Boards Used the LOGIQ™ 3**

**APPLIES TO:**

All LOGIQ™ 3 Systems

**PROBLEM:**

This service note is to inform the field of the various existent variations of the major components of the LOGIQ™ 3 in the field.

This table will be updated every time a new part variant is released.

SI. NO	Description	Part Number	Variation Number	Var 2	Var 3	Var 4
1	Transmit Board for USA Model (H41702LH / 2327754)	2318124	-			
2	Transmit Board for all other models other than USA	2318124	2	CWD support added		
3	Receive Board	2318122	2	Diagnostics issue (Channel failure error) solved		
4	DBF Board	2318126	-			
5	Front End Controller Assy	2277093	6	FEC - 4  First Release for L3	FEC - 5  CWD support added	FEC - 6  Intermittent hang issues solved , Fixes the HW id error
6	Back plane Board	2318120	3	CWD connectors	CWD noise	
7	Raide board Assy- part of option kit	2288838	4		Initial release	Coded harmonics for L5
8	CWD board Assy- part of option kit	2401834	-			
9	Connector Board	2318128	2	3rd Probe port support		
10	HVPS Assy	2277105	2	Initial release		
11	ACI PCB Assy	2319490	-	Inrush current limit		
12	Rear Panel Interface board assy	2319484	-			
13	Key board	2319549	2	Reverse capacitor polarity		
14	BEP assy	2361975	4	Intel motherboard	Supermicro with R 202	Intel with R 202
15	LVPS Assy	2319545	-			
16	Rear Panel Assy (100/115V)	2383299	-			
17	Rear Panel Assy (230V)	2319547	-			
18	Front Panel Assy	2383298	-			
19	Transformer Assy	2342032	-			
20	Monitor assy	2319551	-			
21	Base System Software load Image Rel 2.0.1	2378390	3			
22	Application Software Rel 2.0.2	2356515	3	R 202. VC7 software	R 203. TI and Probe temp fix	
23	Patch Software Rel 2.0.3	2401921	-			
24	TSB # 1 Board Assembly	2319492	-			
25	RFC board Assembly	2319480	-			
26	RFC2 board Assembly only with CWD	2379706	-			
27	Front Panel Assembly	2383298	-			

**7-6-16 SN-73056:Back Plane Board and Continuous Wave Doppler Board FRUs**

**APPLIES TO:**

All LOGIQ™ 3 Systems

**PROBLEM:**

In Some LOGIQ™ 3 Systems, If Continuous Wave Doppler Option is Installed, during the Pulse Wave Doppler Operation with a liner probe, some noise lines will be seen in the image. This will happen only on systems where the CWD board is 2379704.

**SOLUTION:**

To Correct this issue, the CWD board and the Back Plane Board have been re-designed. The existing CWD Board and BPB will have to be replaced. This New CWD Board is available as a FRU.

As the Design change involves both the CWD and the BPB board, both will have to be replaced. The Single Part FRU that has both these boards is the 2405514.

Also, if the BPB - 2318120-2 fails, then it has to be replaced by 2318120-3, available as a part of the FRU - 2328381-3.

If CWD is Installed in systems with BPB 2318120-2, the CWD also has to be changed, as the old CWD board will not function with the Old BPB 2318120-2.

The above mentioned replacements are given in the Matrix below.

SL No	Defective Board	Other Board Present	Replace with FRU GPN#
1	CWD - 2379704	BPB - 2318120 -2	2405514
2	CWD - 2401834	BPB - 2318120 -3	2401834
3	BPB - 2318120 -2	CWD - 2379704	2405514
4	BPB - 2318120 -3	CWD - 2401834	2328381-3

**7-6-17 SN-73055:Intermittent Hang Issues Related to the FEC.**

**APPLIES TO:**

This issue will affect all LOGIQ™ 3 Systems having Serial Numbers prior to those listed below.

**Table 7-6    Effected Systems Serial Numbers**

Model	GPN#	Serial Number
Europe	2327752	5115WS1
China	2327749	4279WS6
USA	2327754	5569WS9
Japan	2327748	3442WS1

**PROBLEM:**

The Issues seen are one or more of the Following

- 3.) In Systems with the FEC-4, some systems may show intermittent Hang issues. This can be confirmed by Physically checking the version of the FEC board. The Board Part Number will be as seen in the figure below - [Figure 7-29 on page 51](#)



**Figure 7-29    Checking the FEC-4 Part number**

- 4.) The systems will show a message asking to enter the Option keys. The Hardware Id Shown in this screen will be different from the actual Hardware Id on the system. A sample box can be seen in [Figure 7-30 on page 52](#) below.

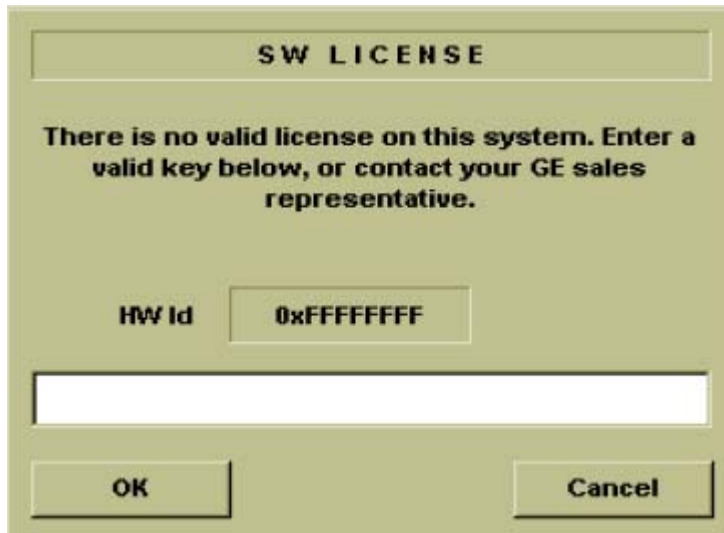


Figure 7-30 Asking For Option Keys

In such cases, The FEC U5 Eprom will have to be replaced.

**SOLUTION:**

- 1.) If the FEC version for Problem 1 is FEC -4, the The FEC has to be replaced by a FEC -6.
- 2.) The Correct Hardware ID can be checked in the following way. In Start\Run, Type in "d:\L3\_Drivers\SH\_Tools\PC2IPIIC\_ACI.exe", as shown in [Figure 7-31 on page 52](#) below.

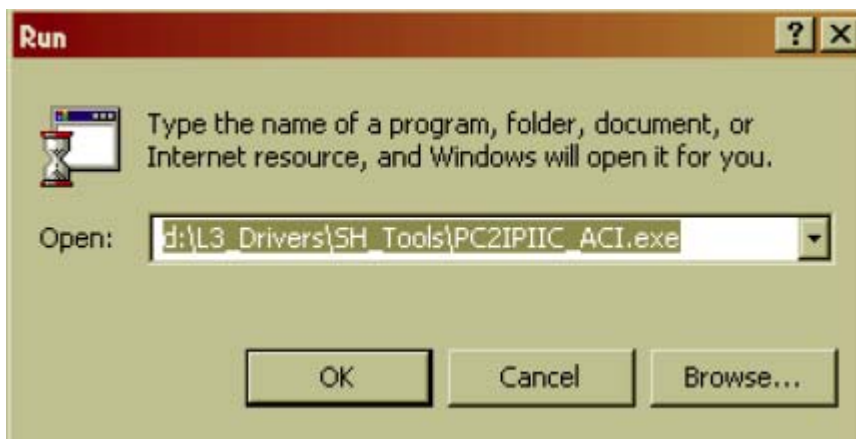
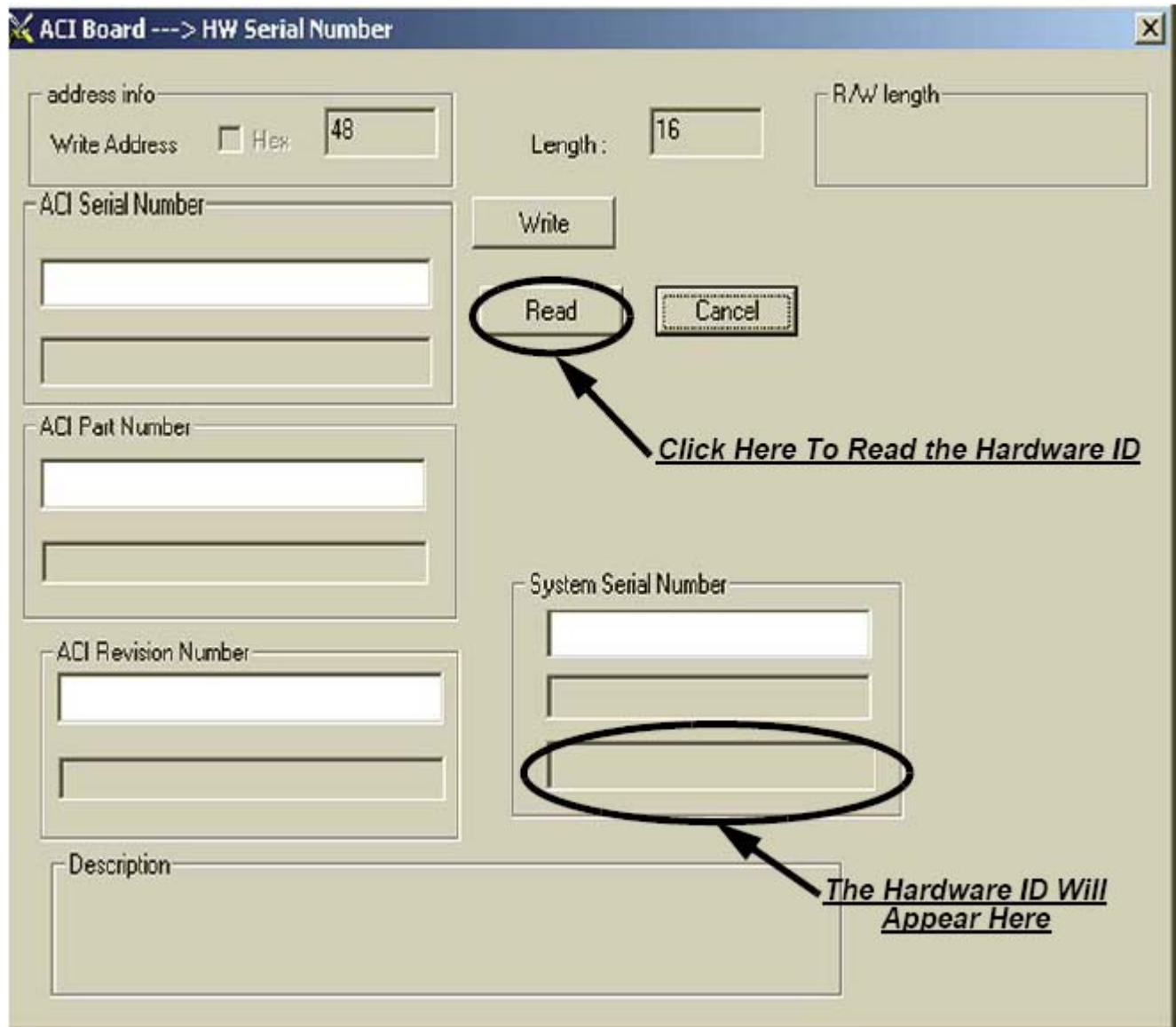


Figure 7-31 Selecting the tool.

This will bring a screen as shown below. THE Hardware ID can be checked as shown in the screen as shown in [Figure 7-32 on page 53](#) below



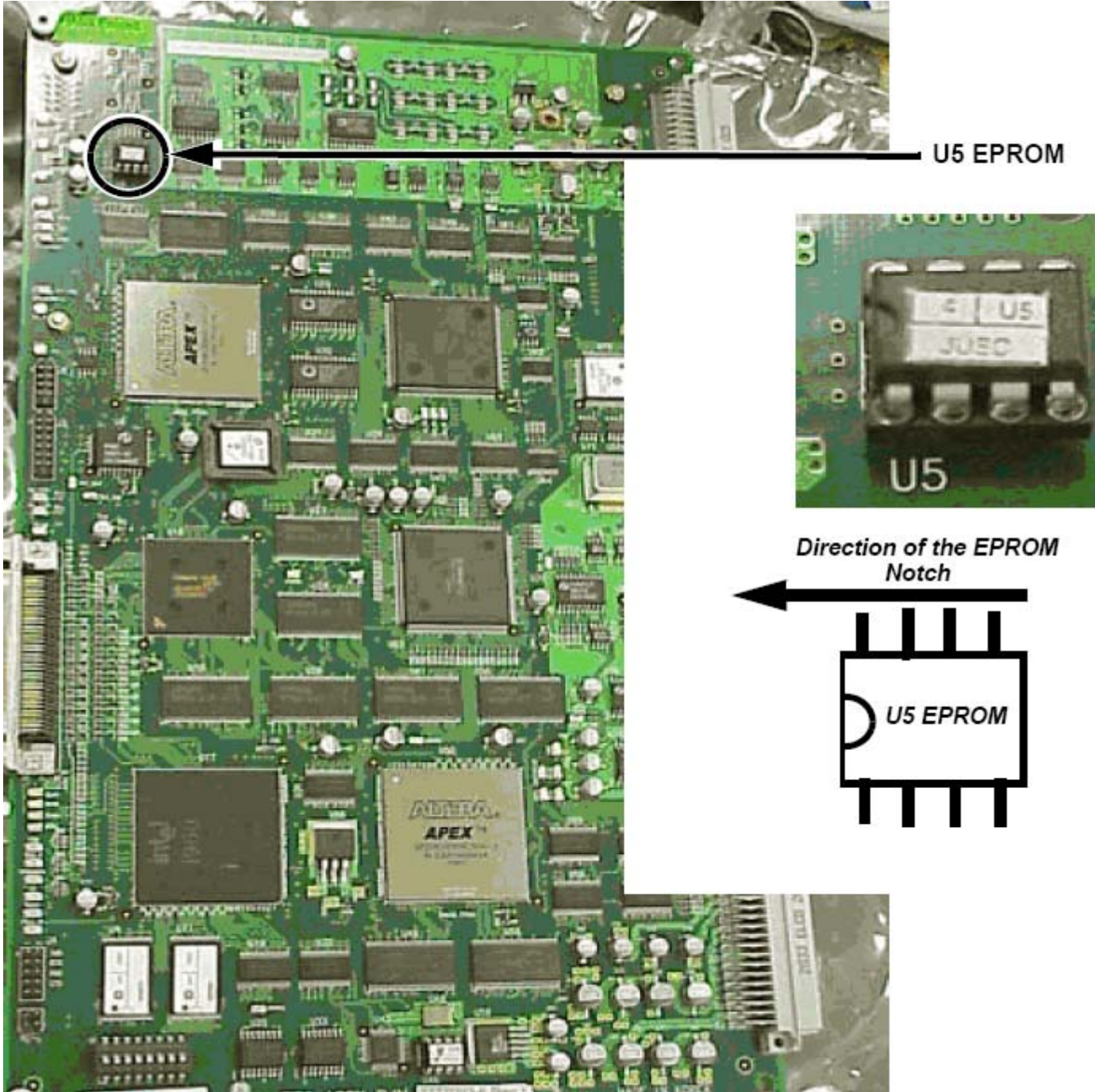
**Figure 7-32** Checking the Hardware ID

If the Hardware ID appearing in [Figure 7-32 on page 53](#) does not match the Hardware ID in [Figure 7-30 on page 52](#) , then the U5 EPROM will have to be replaced. This replacement process is given below.

## MODIFICATION PROCEDURE

**WARNING: - TAKE PROPER ESD PRECAUTIONS OR THE BOARD OR THE COMPONENTS MAY GET PERMANENTLY DAMAGED.**

- 1.) Locate the U5 EPROM on the FEC Board as shown in [Figure 7-33 on page 54](#) .



**Figure 7-33 Location and Orientation of the U5 EPROM**

- 2.) Replace These EPROMs With the Latest Version of the EPROM, Rev4. The New version of the EPROM is shown in [Figure 7-33 on page 54](#) above

3.) These EPROMs can be obtained from the following People in the various service regions.

**Table 7-7 Contact Persons**

<b>Sl. No</b>	<b>Pole</b>	<b>Contact Person</b>
1	Americas	Anna Shikhman
2	Europe	Chris Auer
3	Japan	Takatoshi Kumagai
4	China	Pei Feng Cheng (William Cheng)
5	SEA	William KM On
6	India	Shilpa M. K.

## 7-6-18 SN-73053:BACK UP AND RESTORE PROCESS IN LOGIQ™ 3

### APPLIES TO:ALL LOGIQ™ 3 SYSTEMS

#### 7-6-18-1 Back up Process

#### 7-6-18-2 Formatting Media

- 1.) In the imaging mode, ensure that the back up media, a MOD or a Writable CD is inserted in its Drive.
- 2.) in the imaging mode, go to Utilities\Connectivity\Tools as shown in the figure below. Select the appropriate media from the Dropdown list as shown.
- 3.) Fill in a label name for the media. Then, click on FORMAT.

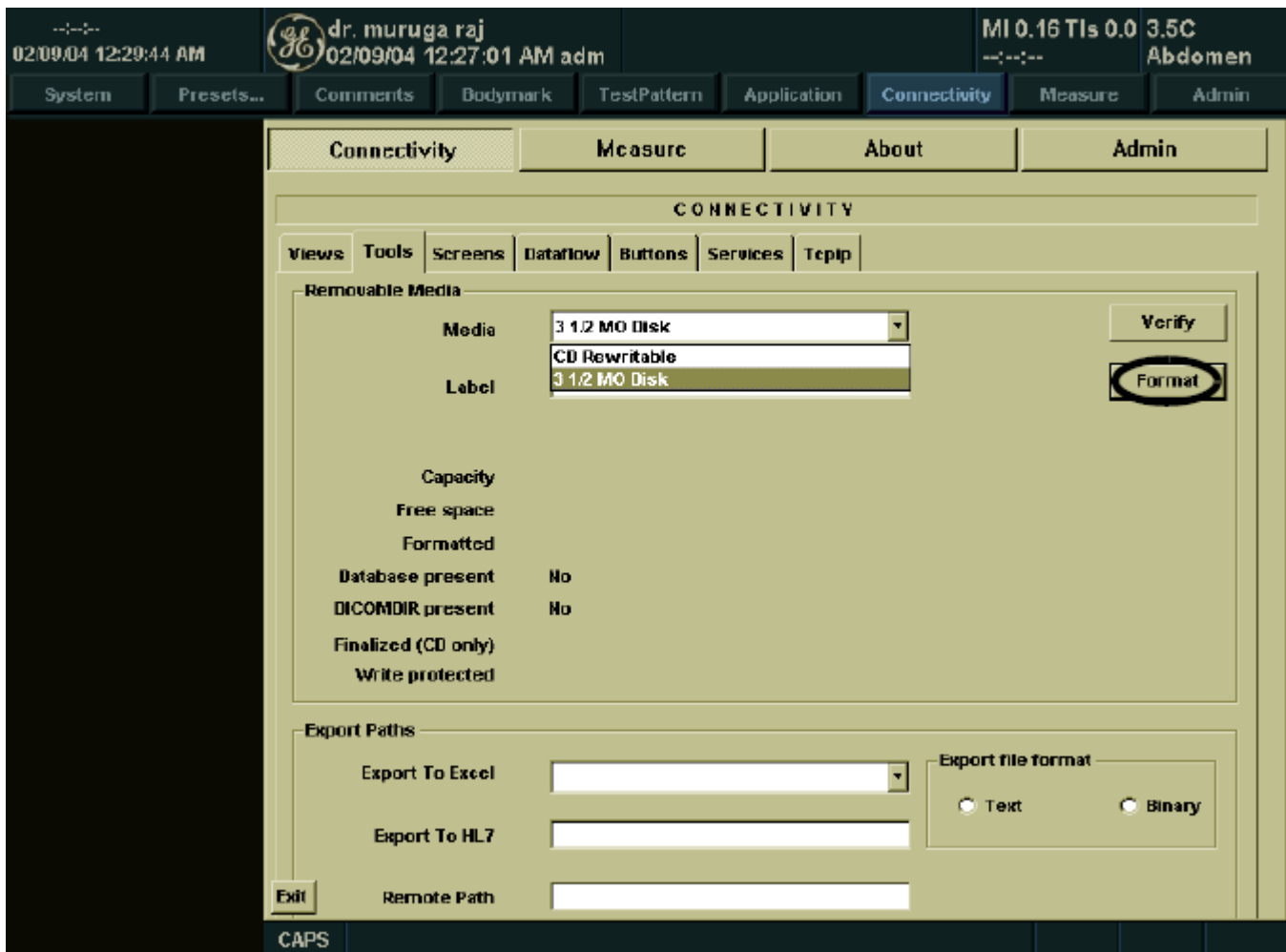


Figure 7-34 Formatting the Media

#### 7-6-18-3 Taking a Backup

- 1.) Insert the media in its Drive.
- 1.) In the imaging mode, go to Utilities\System\Backup/Restore
- 2.) Select on "User Defined Configuration" as shown.



3.) Then Click on Backup.

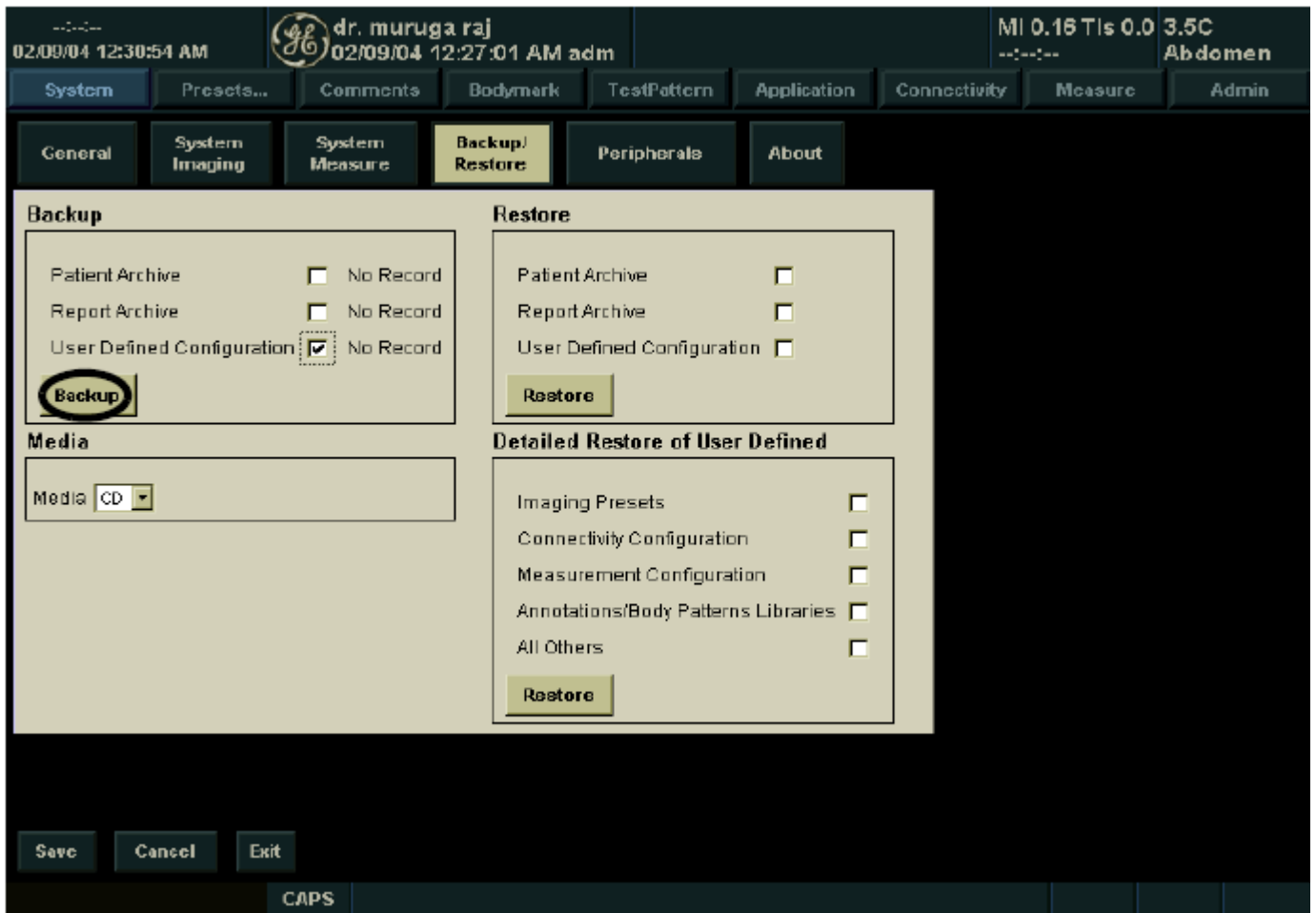


Figure 7-35 Backup Process

#### 7-6-18-4 Restore Process

- 1.) Insert the media in tis Drive.
- 2.) In the imaging mode, go to Utilities\System\Backup/Restore
- 3.) Select "User Defined Configuration"

4.) Click on Restore.

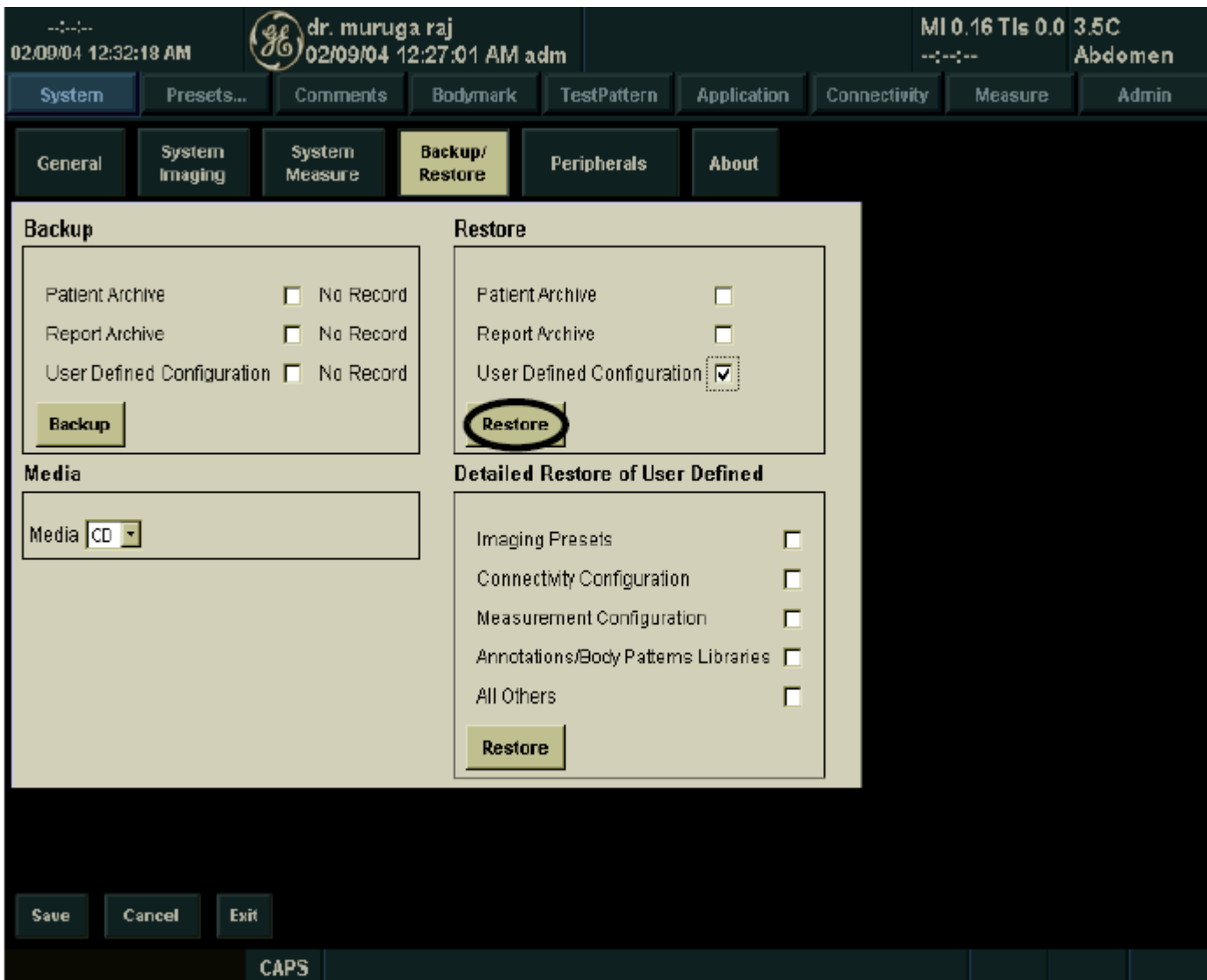


Figure 7-36 Restore Process

## 7-6-19 SN-73051:Monitor Signal Issues

### APPLIES TO:ALL LOGIQ™ 3 SYSTEMS

#### PROBLEM:

There will not be any image on the monitor, but it will give a message saying "Input Frequency Out Range" or "No signal"

#### SOLUTION:

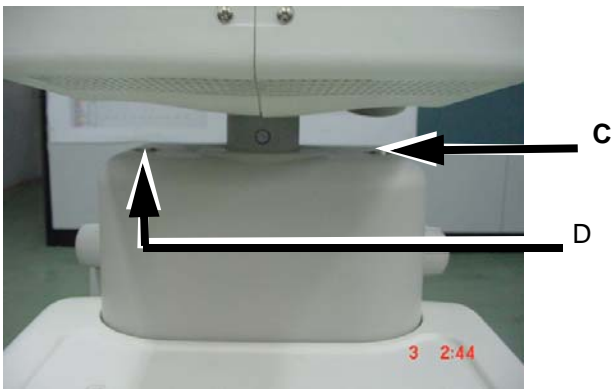
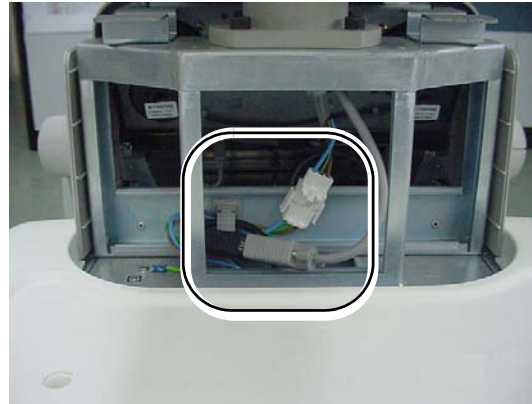
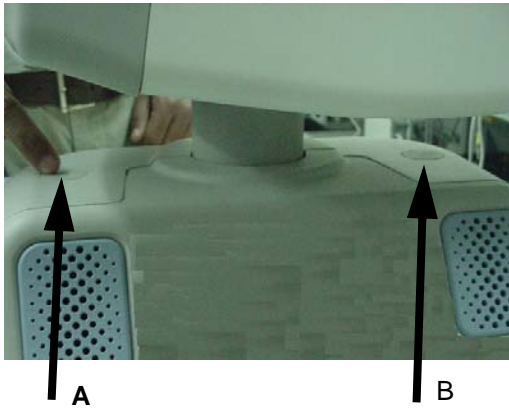
This is an issue with the improper seating of the monitor cables from the BEP to the Monitor.

This can be resolved by reseating the monitor cables.

The process is shown below.

- 1.) Locate and remove the two screw caps at positions A and B.
- 2.) Remove the two screws at positions C and D using a coin or a " - " Screw driver.
- 3.) Lift and remove the Keyboard Rear Cover.
- 4.) Locate the two connectors as shown in the [Figure 7-37 on page 60](#) .
- 5.) Open these connectors and reconnect them to the system.
- 6.) Open the Rear cover and the Rear EMI cover.
- 7.) Locate the Monitor Cable from the BEP as shown and reseal this cable also.

8.) Reassemble all components in the order of removal.



Monitor Cable  
from BEP



Figure 7-37 Reseating Monitor Cable.

## 7-6-20 SN-73050: Maintenance Mode in LOGIQ™ 3

### APPLIES TO: ALL LOGIQ™ 3 SYSTEMS

#### PROBLEM:

It is possible to use the Key Sequence "Ctrl+Alt+Del" with the Service Dongle to go to Maintenance Mode. This is a wrong Process to go to maintenance mode and can cause system data corruption.

#### SOLUTION:

It is best to use the Service Dongle with the following process to go to the maintenance mode.

- 1.) In the imaging mode, to go to the Maintenance mode, insert the Service Dongle and then press "Ctrl+Alt+R" keys
- 2.) Click on "Yes" as shown in the figure below.

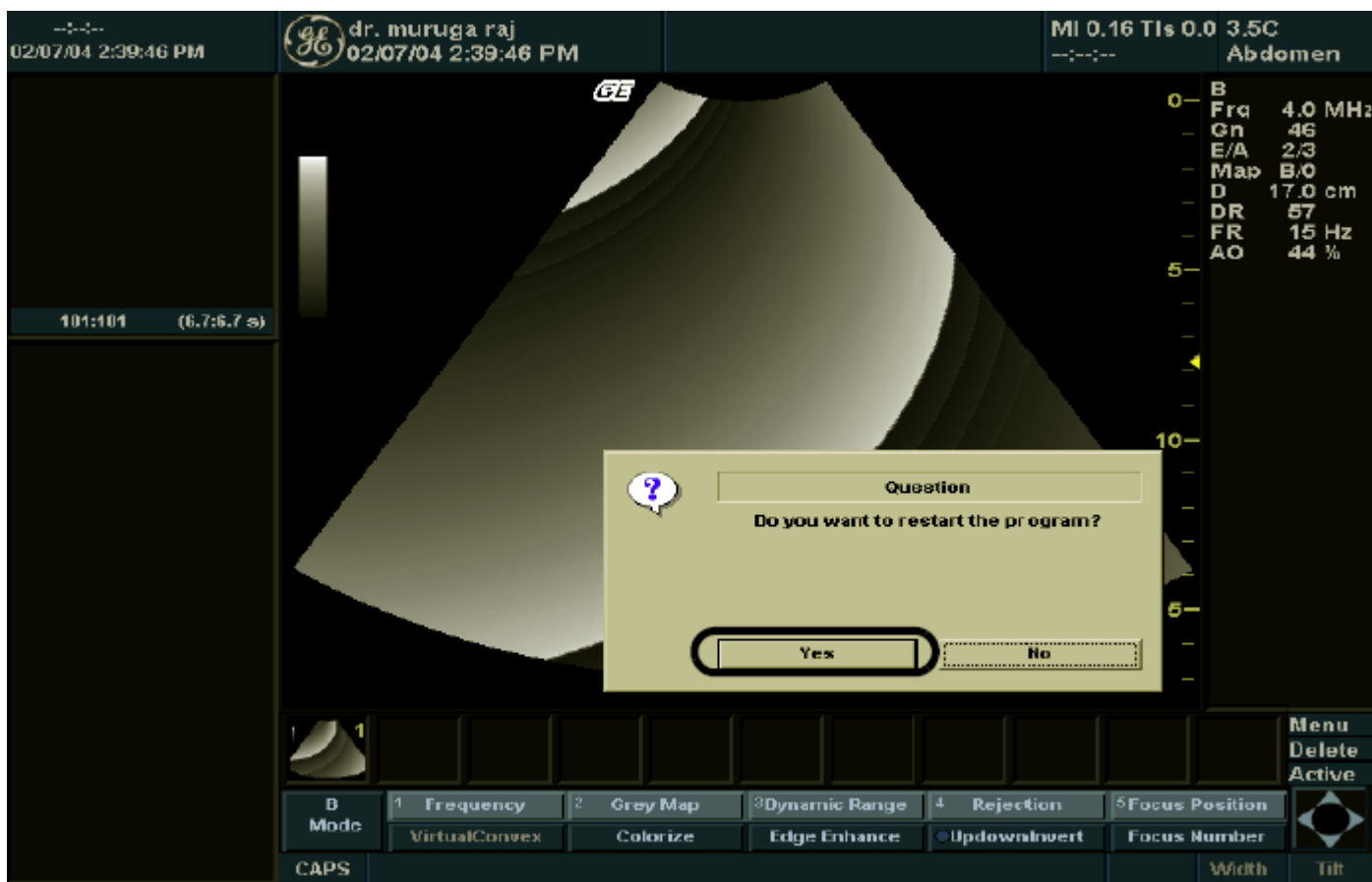


Figure 7-38 Log Off Screen

- 3.) Now, Enter the service password and enter the maintenance mode.

## 7-6-21 SN-73049:Hardware ID Generation on the ACI board.

### APPLIES TO:ALL LOGIQ™ 3 SYSTEMS

#### PROBLEM:

When we do an ACI Replacement, if we do not do the following steps, the system will pop up a window asking for the Option Keys. Also, as this is a Case sensitive process, improper case usage will cause this problem.

#### SOLUTION:

- 1.) Before Replacing the ACI Board, start the system and go to the Utilities\Admin\System Admin Tab
- 2.) There, note down the system Serial Number as shown. Please note the proper case of the characters, i.e. if the serial number has Characters in the lower case, please note it in the lower case only.

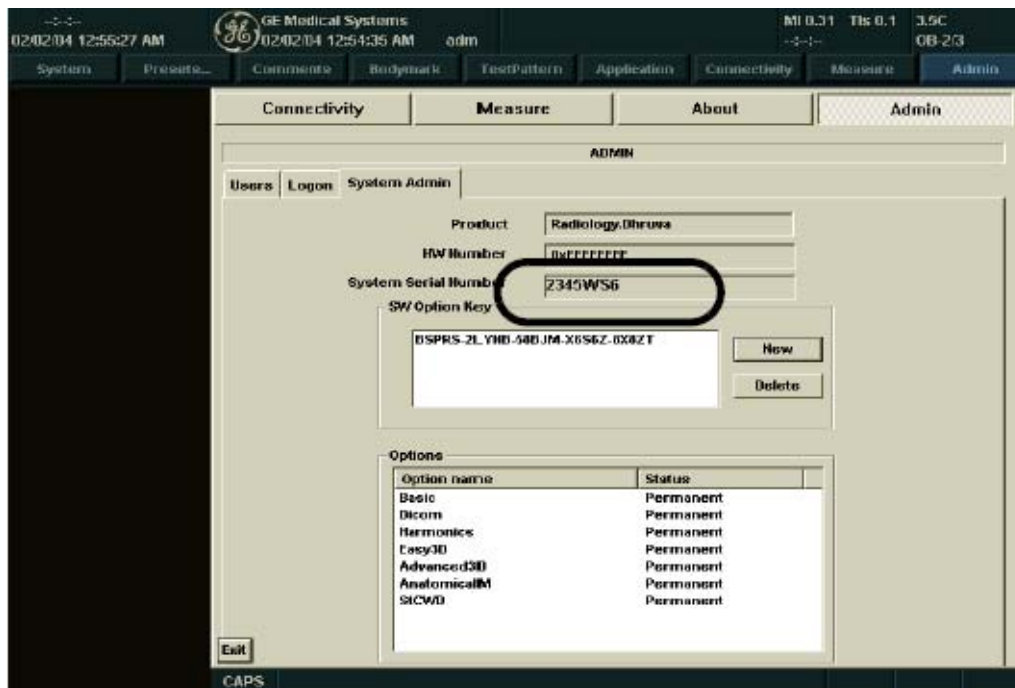


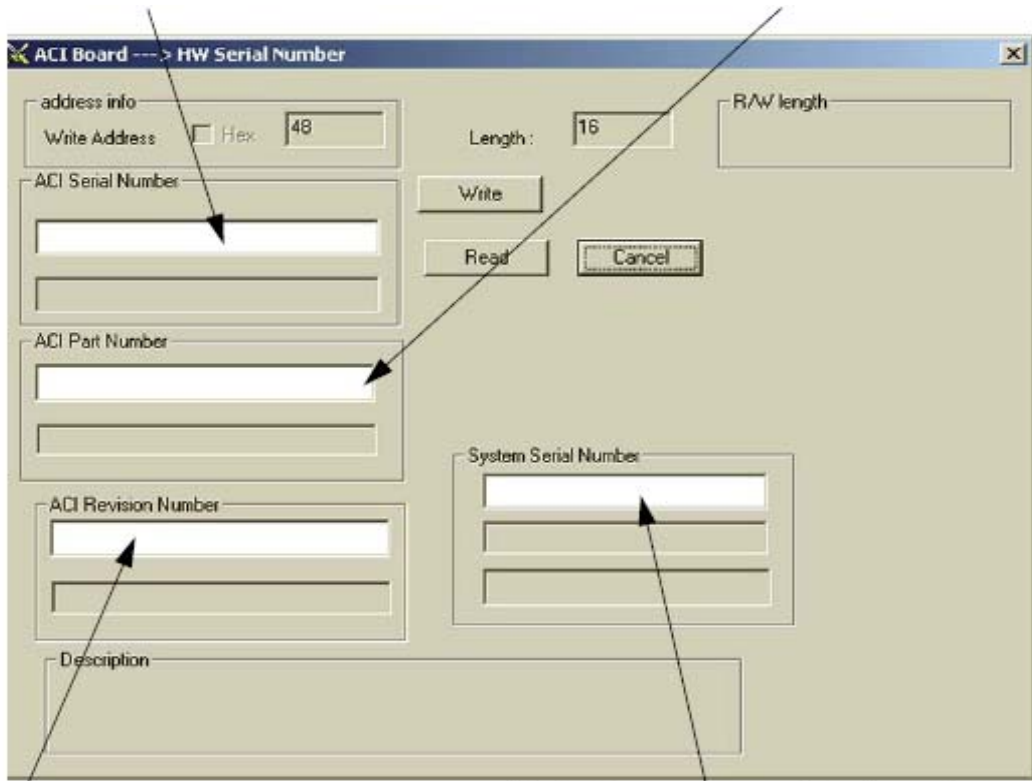
Figure 7-39 Location of the Serial Number

- 3.) After replacement of ACI PCB restart the system.
- 4.) Go to Maintenance Mode.
- 5.) Click on My Computer Icon.
- 6.) Double Click on D:\L3\_Drivers\SH\_Tools\PC2IPIIC\_ACI

7.) The following Screen Appears.

Key in ACI Board Serial No. As labeled on the ACI Board - Example of the SI# ACIU503E010001

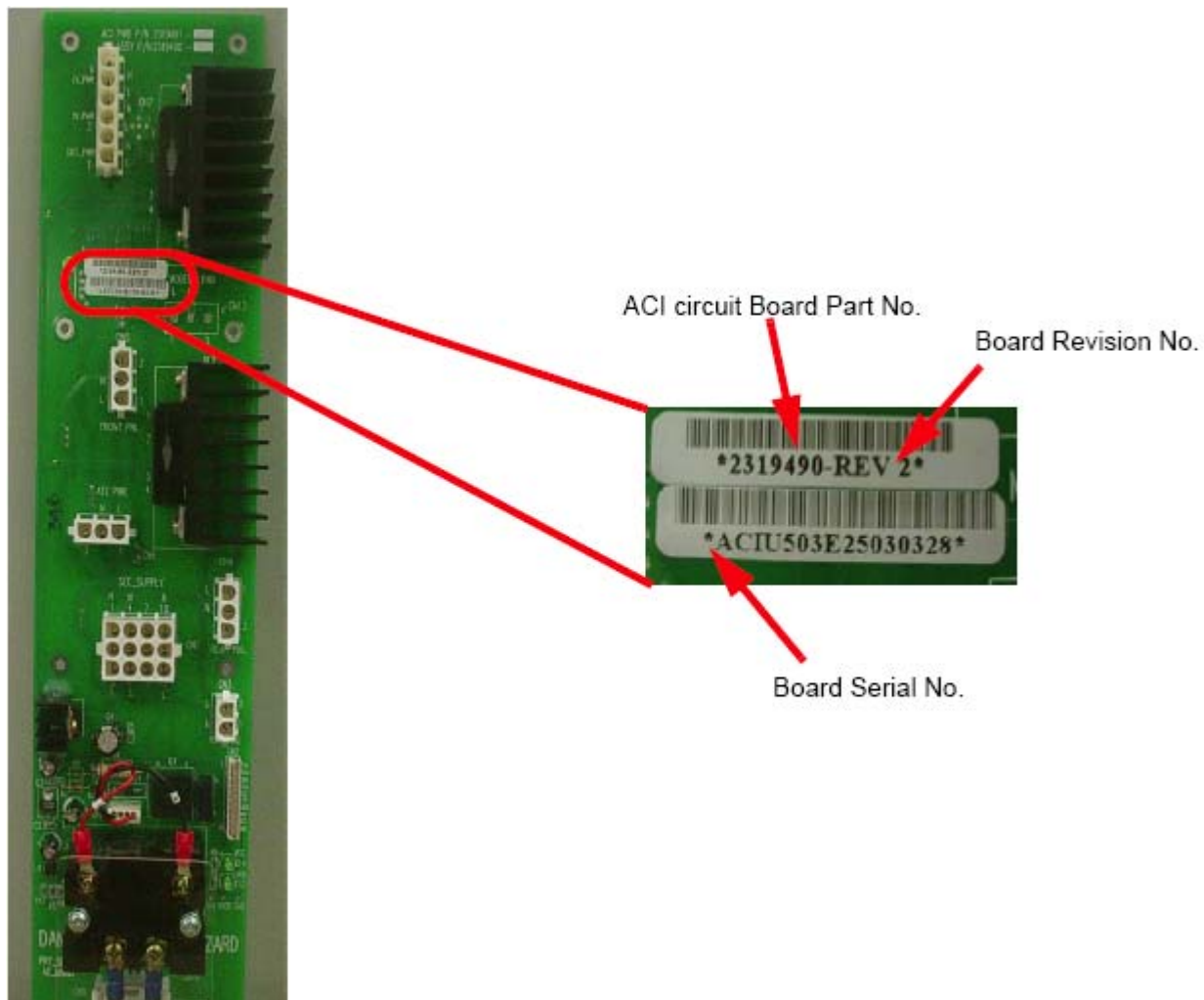
Key in ACI Part No. as labeled on the board- Example - 2319490



Key in ACI Part Rev No. as labeled on the board- Example - REV1

Key in the System Serial Number as in the Rating Plate affixed at rear of system in Transformer Assy Example - 2974WS4

Figure 7-40 ACI Board H/W Serial Number Screen



**Figure 7-41 ACI Board**

- 8.) After entering the system serial #, ACI serial #, ACI Part # and ACI Rev#, Click on Write
- 9.) Hardware ID is generated, close the window.
- 10.) Shut down the system and restart the system in the normal mode. Start Echolader and ensure that system boots properly to image screen and check Basic B- Mode Functions.



**7-6-22      SN-73048:Preset Restore**

**APPLIES TO:ALL LOGIQ™ 3 SYSTEMS**

**PROBLEM:**

If the Backup of a customers data is made on one system and if this data is restored on a completely different system, then on rebooting this, system, it will ask for the Software Option Keys.

This is standard behaviour.

When we make a backup of data on one system, the option keys of that system also get stored on the Backup CD. When this data is restored on a completely different system, the restore process will overwrite the existing option keys and replace them with the option keys of the original system. On rebooting any system, a check of the option key against the System serial number is done. For the system on which the restore was done, this data will not match as the option keys are for the system on which the backup was done. This causes the system to ask for the option keys.

**SOLUTION:**

A possible solution is being looked for in the next software release.

**PROBLEM:**

On restoring the Presets made on the software version R1.2.0 on a system with software R2.0.0 and above, it system will ask for Option Keys.

**SOLUTION:**

The presets backed up on the R1.2.0 systems should not be restored on systems with software versions R2.0.2 and later

This page was intentionally left blank.

---

# Chapter 8

## Replacement Procedures

### Section 8-1 Overview

#### 8-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 8

This chapter describes replacement procedures for the following modules and subsystems.

Section	Description	Page Number
8-1	Overview	8-1
8-2	Monitor	8-3
8-3	Keyboard	8-10
8-4	Mechanicals	8-23
8-5	I/O Interfaces	8-50
8-6	PCB	8-57
8-7	Power Block	8-76
8-8	Software Loading Procedure	8-85
8-9	Base Load Software Load	8-89
8-10	Loading Application Software After a Base Image Load	8-100
8-12	Upgrading Application Software	8-111
8-11	Installing Option Software	8-115

**Table 8-1 Contents in Chapter 8**

#### 8-1-2 Returning/Shipping Probes and Repair Parts

Equipment being returned must be clean and free of blood and other infectious substances.

GEMS policy states that body fluids must be properly removed from any part or equipment prior to shipment. GEMS employees, as well as customers, are responsible for ensuring that parts/equipment have been properly decontaminated prior to shipment. Under no circumstance should a part or equipment with visible body fluids be taken or shipped from a clinic or site (for example, body coils or an ultrasound probe).

The purpose of the regulation is to protect employees in the transportation industry, as well as the people who will receive or open this package.

**NOTE:** *The US Department of Transportation (DOT) has ruled that “items that were saturated and/or dripping with human blood that are now caked with dried blood; or which were used or intended for use in patient care” are “regulated medical waste” for transportation purposes and must be transported as a hazardous material.*



**WARNING** *ONLY QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL SHOULD REMOVE ANY COVERS OR PANELS. ELECTRICAL HAZARDS EXISTS AT SEVERAL POINTS INSIDE. BECOME THOROUGHLY FAMILIAR WITH ALL HAZARDOUS VOLTAGES AND HIGH CURRENT LEVELS TO AVOID ACCIDENTAL CONTACT*



**CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

## Section 8-2 Monitor

### 8-2-1 Monitor Assy (FRU No. 100)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Monitor Assy.

#### 8-2-1-1 Tools

- Coin / "-" Screw Driver

#### 8-2-1-2 Needed Manpower

- 2 persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-2-1-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#) .

#### 8-2-1-4 Removal procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-1 on page 8-3](#) .

- 1.) Remove the [See "Keyboard Rear Cover \(FRU No. 308\)" on page 36](#).
- 2.) Remove 2 connectors from the monitor (between CN601 & CN602 and VGA Connection).
- 3.) Unscrew the rotation stopper screw using coin or '-' screw driver.
- 4.) Lift the Monitor Assy upward.



**WARNING** *The weight of the monitor is approximately 20 kg. Two person are needed in the next step.*

#### 8-2-1-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

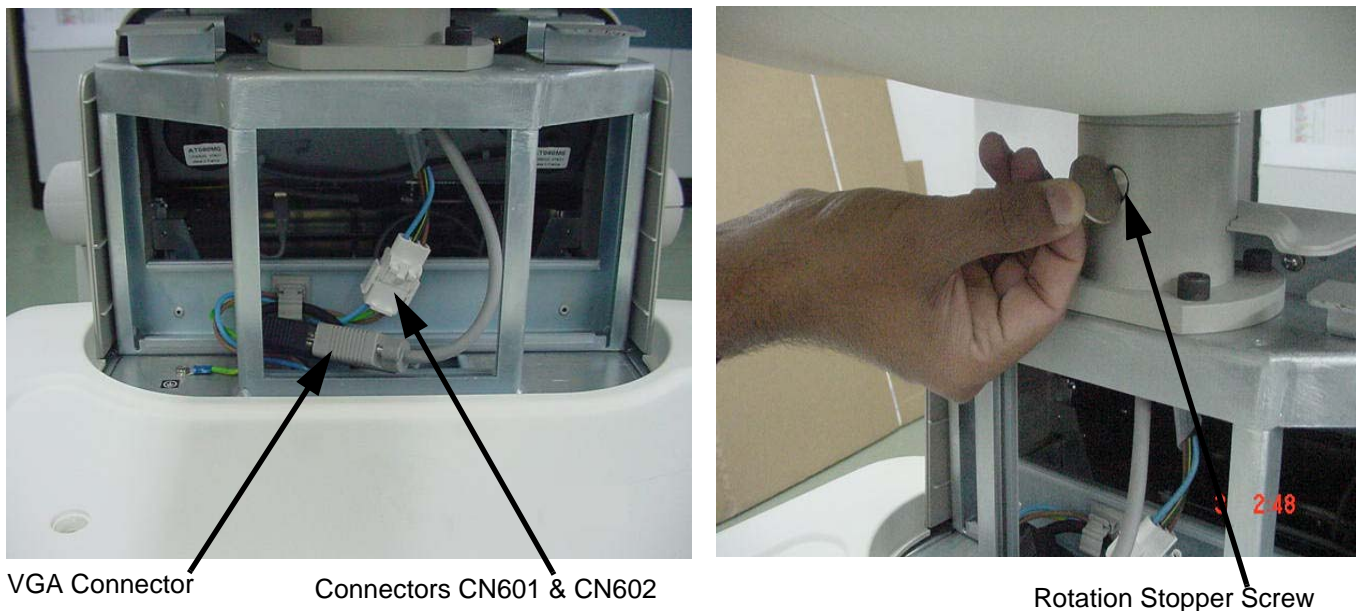


Figure 8-1 MONITOR ASSY DISASSEMBLY

## 8-2-2 Monitor Cover Left (FRU No. 101)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove the Monitor Cover Left.

### 8-2-2-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers, Stub B

### 8-2-2-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-2-2-3 Preparations

- Shut down the System and switch off the Circuit breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#) .

### 8-2-2-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-2 on page 8-4](#) .

- 1.) Remove 2 screws (a,b) from left cover.
- 2.) Remove [See “Keyboard Rear Cover \(FRU No. 308\)” on page 36](#).
- 3.) Rotate Monitor to Right 90°, Use Stub B screwdriver to remove the screw (c) in the bottom.
- 4.) Remove the [See “Task Lamp \(FRU No. 106\)” on page 9](#).
- 5.) Remove the Monitor Cover Left by pulling backwards.

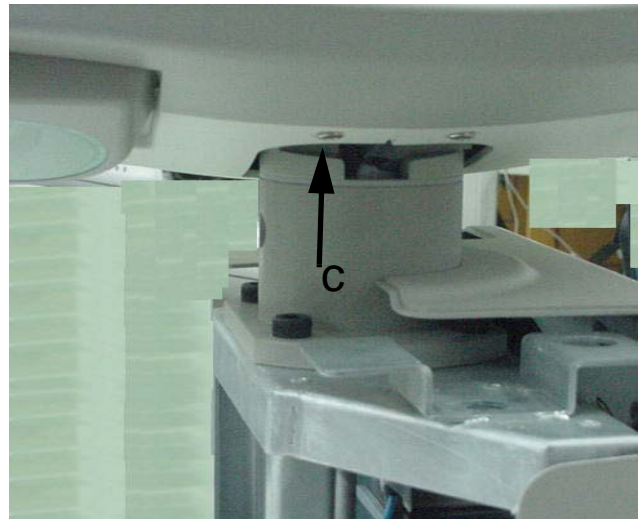
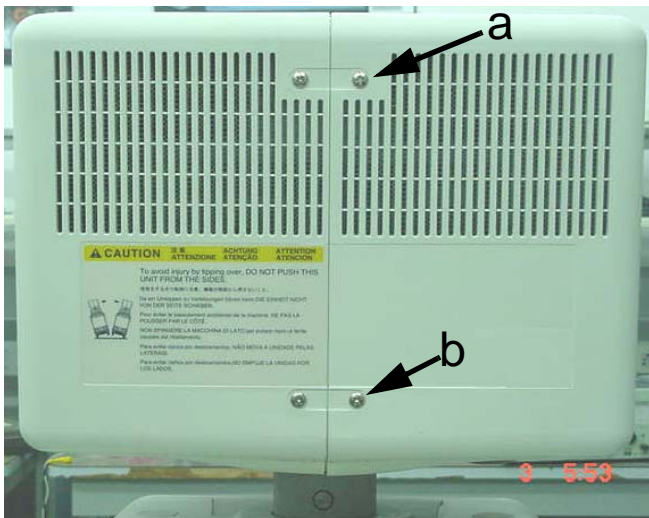


Figure 8-2 Monitor Cover Left

## 8-2-3 Monitor Cover Right (FRU No. 102)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove the Monitor Cover Right.

### 8-2-3-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers, Stub B

### 8-2-3-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-2-3-3 Preparations

- Shut down the System and switch off the Circuit breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#) .

### 8-2-3-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-3 on page 8-5](#) .

- 1.) Remove 2 screws (a,b) from monitor right cover.
- 2.) Remove [See “Keyboard Rear Cover \(FRU No. 308\)” on page 36](#).
- 3.) Rotate Monitor to left 90°, Use Stub B screwdriver to remove the screw (c) in the bottom.
- 4.) Remove the Monitor Cover right by pulling backwards.

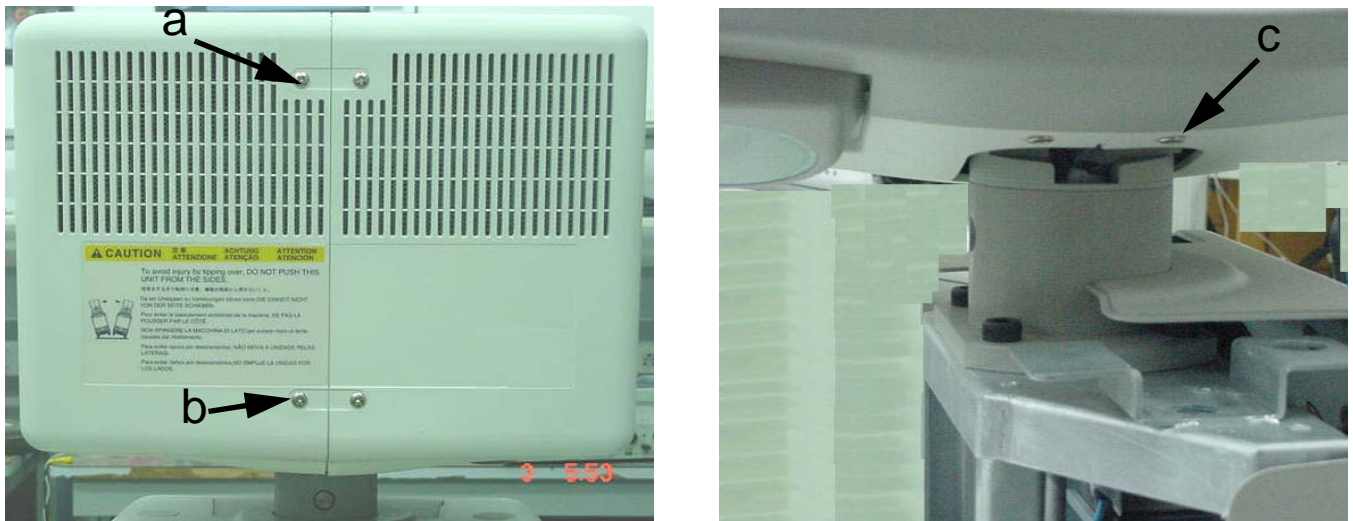


Figure 8-3 Monitor Cover Right

## 8-2-4 Monitor Cover Top (FRU No. 103)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove the Monitor Cover Top.

### 8-2-4-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-2-4-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-2-4-3 Preparations

- Shut down the System and switch off the Circuit breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#) .

### 8-2-4-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-4 on page 8-6](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See "Monitor Cover Right \(FRU No. 102\)" on page 5](#).
- 2.) Slide the monitor cover top to right side and remove.

Slide the monitor top to right side  
and remove



Figure 8-4 Monitor Cover Top



## 8-2-5 Monitor Cover Front (Bezel) (FRU No. 104)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove the Monitor Cover Front (Bezel).

### 8-2-5-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-2-5-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-2-5-3 Preparations

- Shut down the System and switch off the Circuit breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#) .

### 8-2-5-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-5 on page 8-7](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “Monitor Cover Left \(FRU No. 101\)” on page 4](#).
- 2.) Remove [See “Monitor Cover Right \(FRU No. 102\)” on page 5](#).
- 3.) Remove [See “Monitor Cover Top \(FRU No. 103\)” on page 6](#).
- 4.) Loosen 2 Screws (a, b) from right side & 2 Screws (c,d) from left side.
- 5.) Pull the Monitor Cover front
- 6.) Disconnect Monitor Switch Cable Assembly.

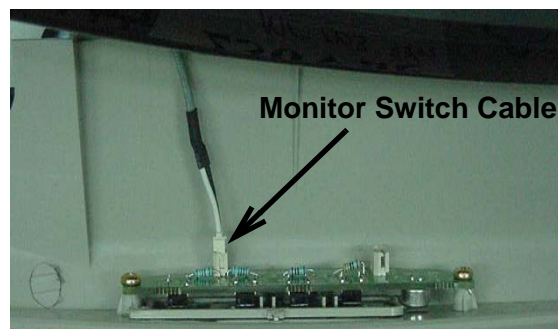
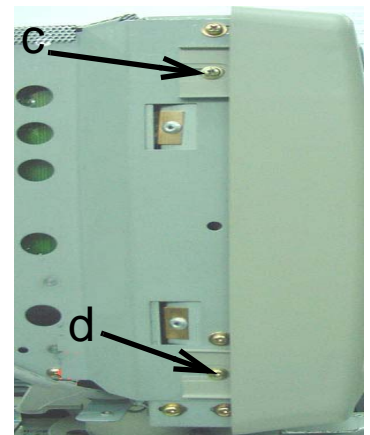
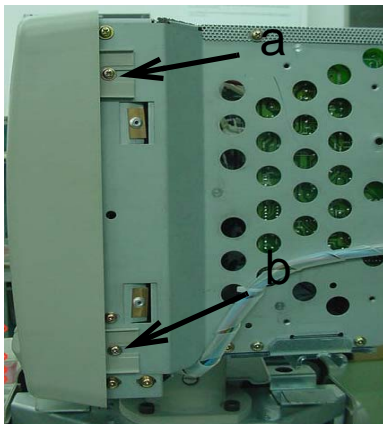


Figure 8-5 Monitor Cover Front

## 8-2-6 Monitor Switch (S/W) Assy (FRU No. 105)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Monitor S/W Assy.

### 8-2-6-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-2-6-2 Needed Manpower

- 1person, 10 minutes + travel

### 8-2-6-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-2-6-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-6 on page 8-8](#)

- 1.) Remove the [See "Monitor Cover Front \(Bezel\) \(FRU No. 104\)" on page 7.](#)
- 2.) Unscrew two screws (1-2).
- 3.) Remove the Monitor S/W Assy.

### 8-2-6-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

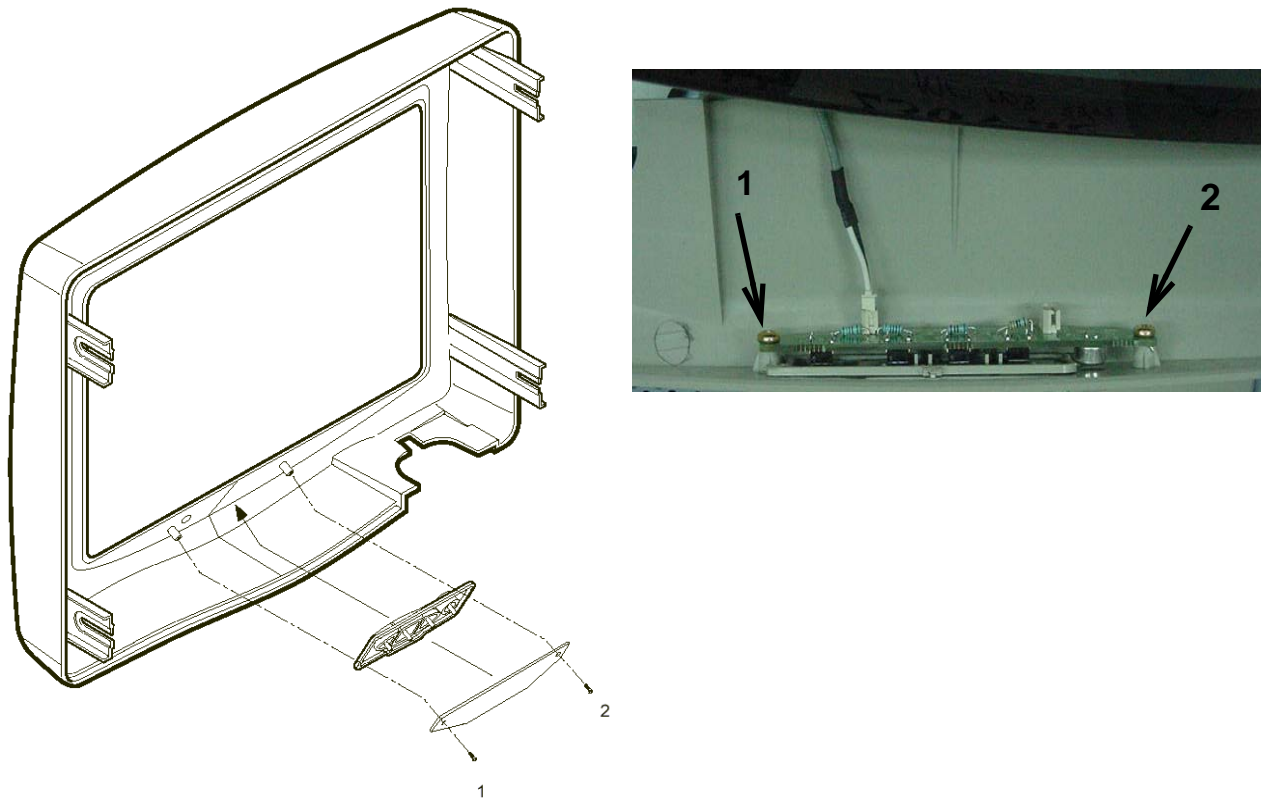


Figure 8-6 Monitor Switch Assy

## 8-2-7 Task Lamp (FRU No. 106)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Task Lamp.

### 8-2-7-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers, Stub B

### 8-2-7-2 Needed Manpower

- 1person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-2-7-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-2-7-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-7 on page 8-9](#)

- 1.) Remove the [See "Keyboard Rear Cover \(FRU No. 308\)" on page 36.](#)
- 2.) Rotate CRT by 90° left.
- 3.) Unscrew two screws (a, b) using Stub B screwdriver.
- 4.) Unthread the task lamp and remove.

### 8-2-7-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

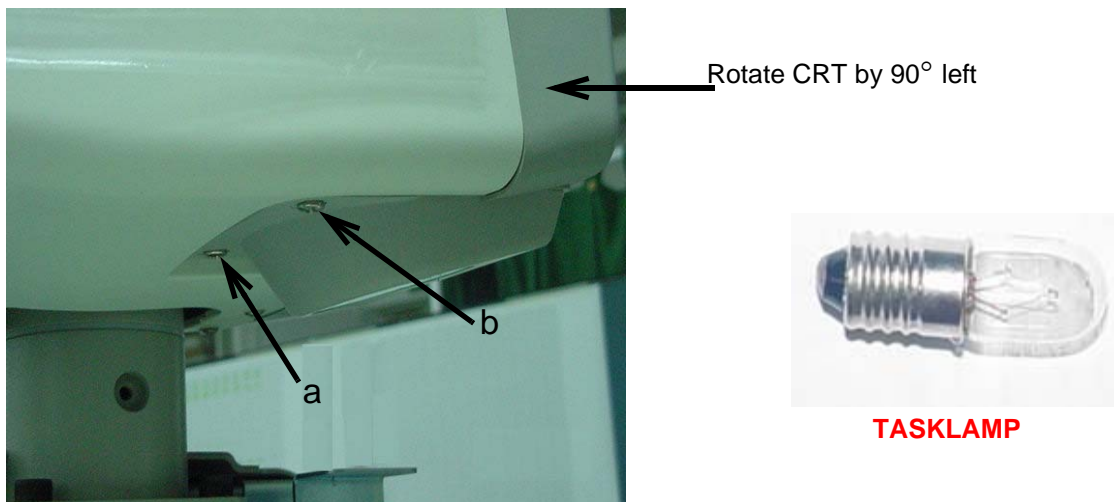


Figure 8-7 Task Lamp

## Section 8-3 Keyboard

### 8-3-1 Keyboard Assy (FRU No. 200)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard Assy

#### 8-3-1-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-3-1-2 Needed Manpower

- 1person, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-3-1-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Circuit Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-3-1-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-8 on page 8-11](#) .

- 1.) Remove the [See "Probe Holder \(FRU No. 201\)" on page 12](#).
- 2.) Unscrew two screws (g, h) fixing VGP tray.
- 3.) Slide out the tray. If VGP is Fixed, disconnect the VGP cables from front panel.
- 4.) Unscrew five screws (a, b, c, d, e). loosen 1 screw (f)
- 5.) Lift the Keyboard Up
- 6.) Disconnect the Three USB cables (1,2, 5), one 26 Pin cable(3),
- 7.) Remove Keyboard Assy.

#### 8-3-1-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

8-3-1 Keyboard Assy (FRU No. 200) (cont'd)

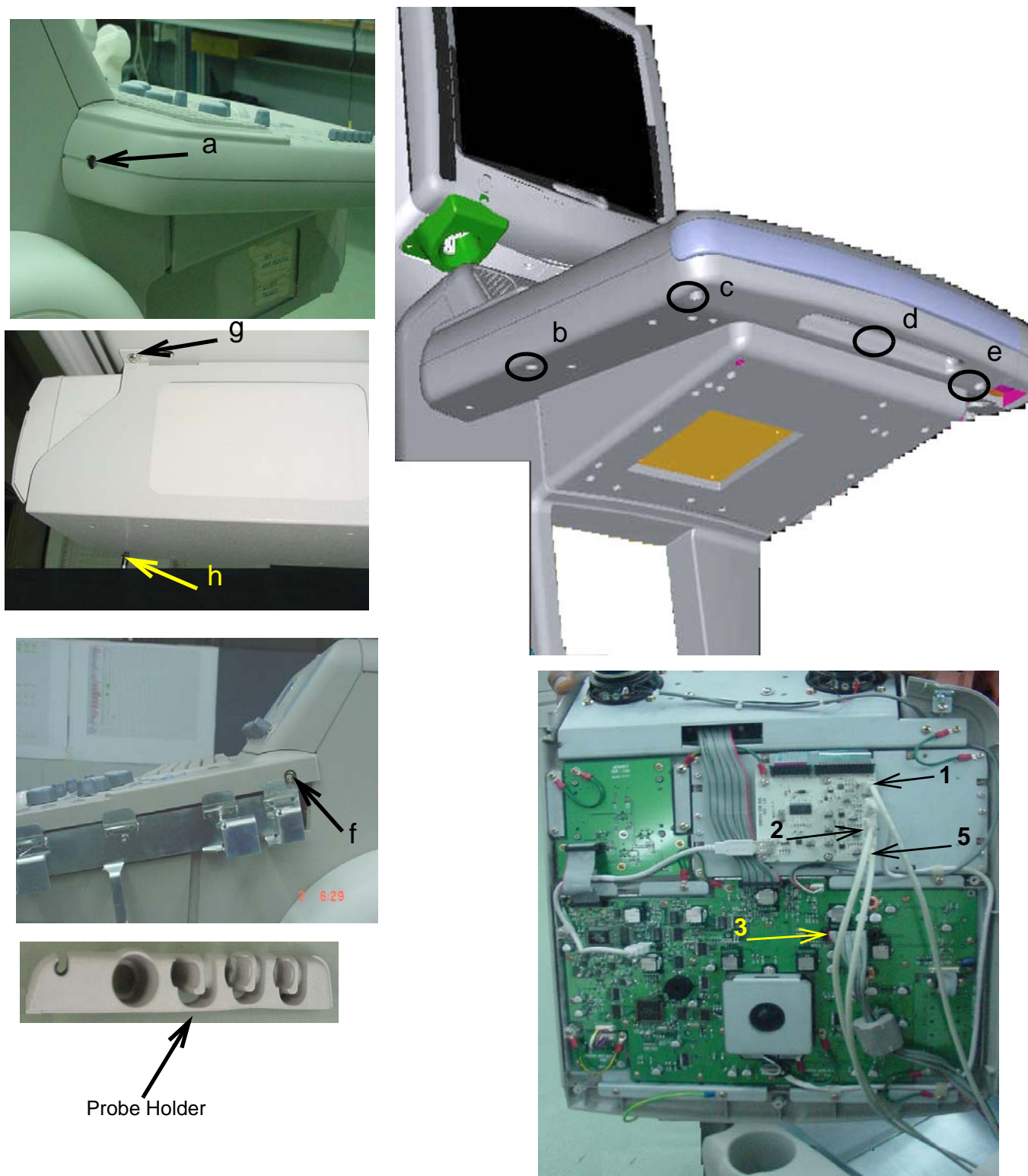


Figure 8-8 Keyboard Assembly

## 8-3-2 Probe Holder (FRU No. 201)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Probe Holder

### 8-3-2-1 Tools

- None

### 8-3-2-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 5 minutes + travel

### 8-3-2-3 Preparations

- Remove Probes from the Holder & the connector, place it in a safe place.

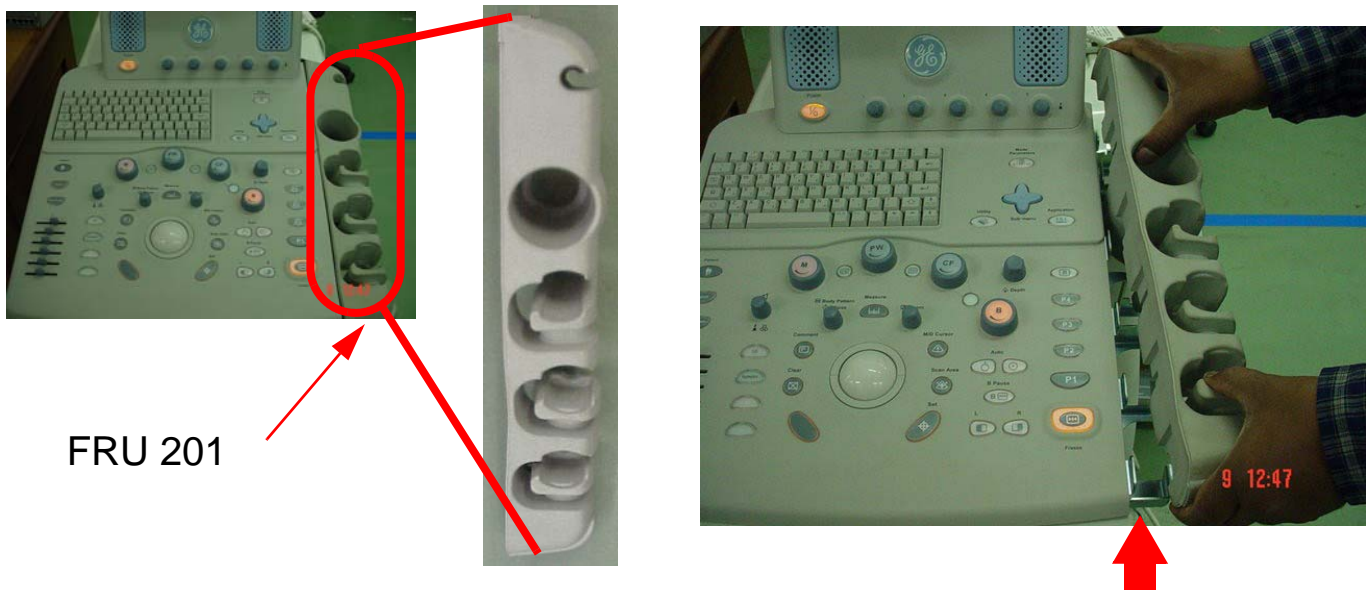
### 8-3-2-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-9 on page 8-12](#) .

- 1.) Disconnect Probes and remove from the probe holder.
- 2.) Lift the Probe Holder from the Bracket.

### 8-3-2-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal



FRU 201

Figure 8-9 Probe Holder



**CAUTION** Place the Probes back in the Probe Holder.

### 8-3-3 Speaker Pair

**Purpose:** This Instruction describes the Removal and Replacement of the Speaker Pair.

#### 8-3-3-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers and standard Engineer's Tool Kit.

#### 8-3-3-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 30 minutes + travel

#### 8-3-3-3 Preparations

Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear

#### 8-3-3-4 Removal Procedure



**Figure 8-10 Speaker Pair**

- 1.) Remove 8 screws (1-8), Indicated With in the *section 8-10*
- 2.) Remove Speaker Pairs from the system.

#### 8-3-3-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Replace Defective Speaker Pair with new Speaker Pair(2319526)
- 2.) Refix 8 screws (1-8).
- 3.) Refix The Key Board Assy.
- 4.) Refix Probe Holder.

### 8-3-4 Keyboard TGC Assy (FRU No. 202)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard TGC Assy

#### 8-3-4-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-3-4-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-3-4-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-3-4-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Disassemble the [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Place the Keyboard Assy on a Table
- 3.) Remove TGC cap from the Keyboard Assy
- 4.) Remove cable A
- 5.) Remove four screws (a-d)

#### 8-3-4-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

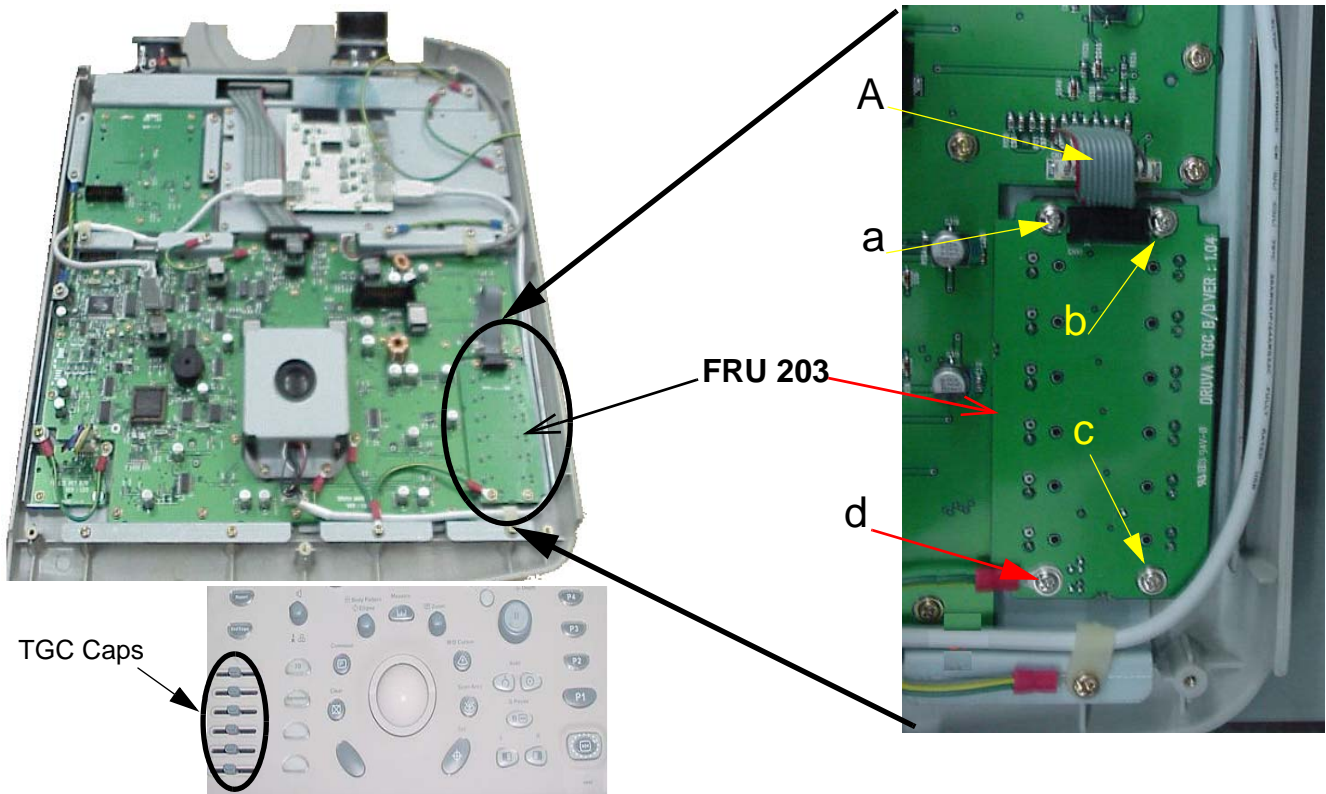


Figure 8-11 TGC Assembly



## 8-3-5 HUB PCB Assy (FRU No. 203)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the HUB PCB Assy.

### 8-3-5-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-3-5-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-3-5-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-3-5-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Disassemble the [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Remove Cables (C1, C2, C3, C4) from the HUB PCB Assy.
- 3.) Remove cable (C5) which is running over the HUB PCB to remove screw d.
- 4.) Unscrew four screws (a, b, c,d). Screw d not shown in the figure.
- 5.) Remove the HUB PCB Assy.

### 8-3-5-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

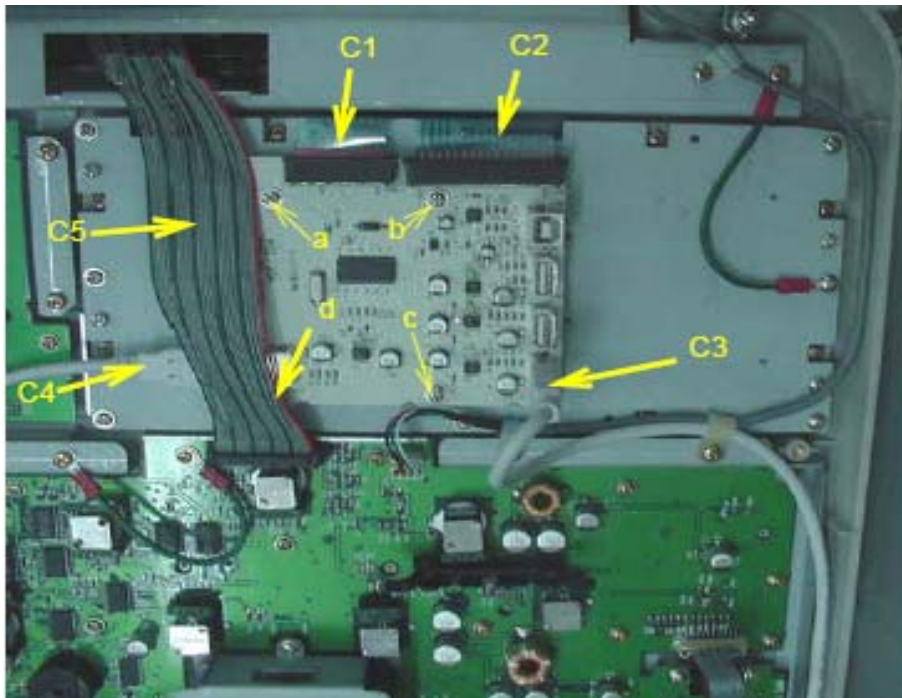


Figure 8-12 HUB PCB Assy

## 8-3-6 A/N Keyboard Assy (FRU No. 204)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the A/N Keyboard Assy.

### 8-3-6-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-3-6-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-3-6-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-3-6-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Disassemble the [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See "HUB PCB Assy \(FRU No. 203\)" on page 15.](#)
- 3.) Unscrew five screws (a, b, c,d, e).
- 4.) Unscrew one screw (f) along with GND cable (C1)
- 5.) Remove A/N Keyboard Assy.

### 8-3-6-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

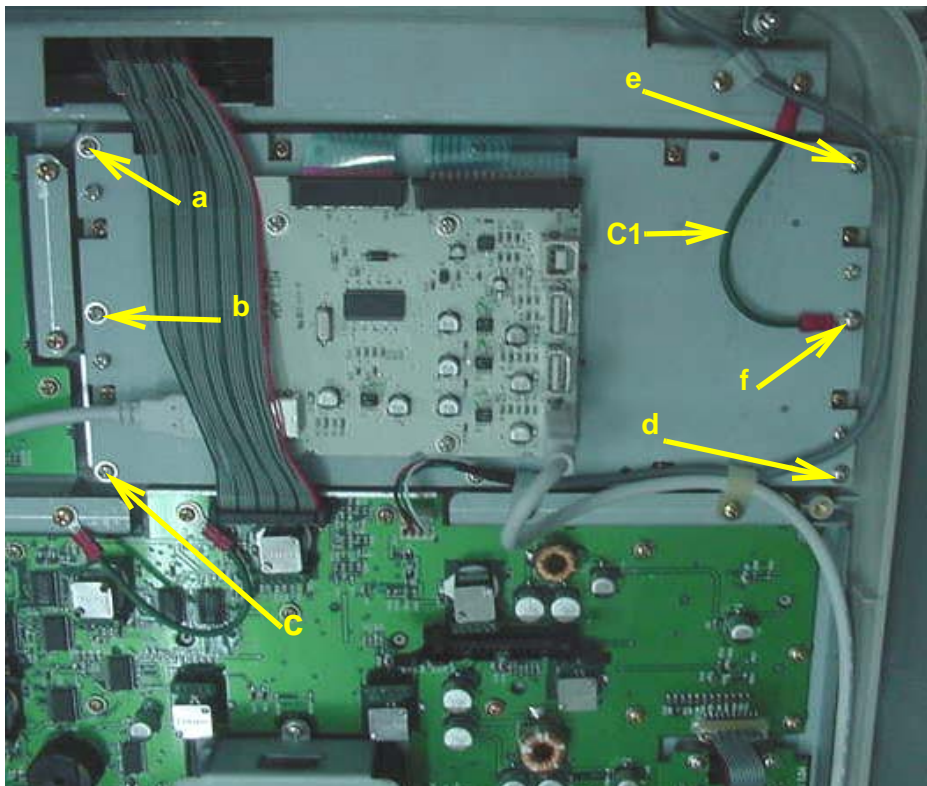


Figure 8-13 A/N Keyboard Assy

### 8-3-7 Keyboard Trackball Assy (FRU No. 205)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard Trackball Assy.

#### 8-3-7-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-3-7-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-3-7-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-3-7-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Remove See ["KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Unscrew two screws (a, b)
- 3.) Unscrew one screw (c) along with GND cable.
- 4.) Remove cable (C1) from the Trackball.
- 5.) Remove the Trackball.

#### 8-3-7-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

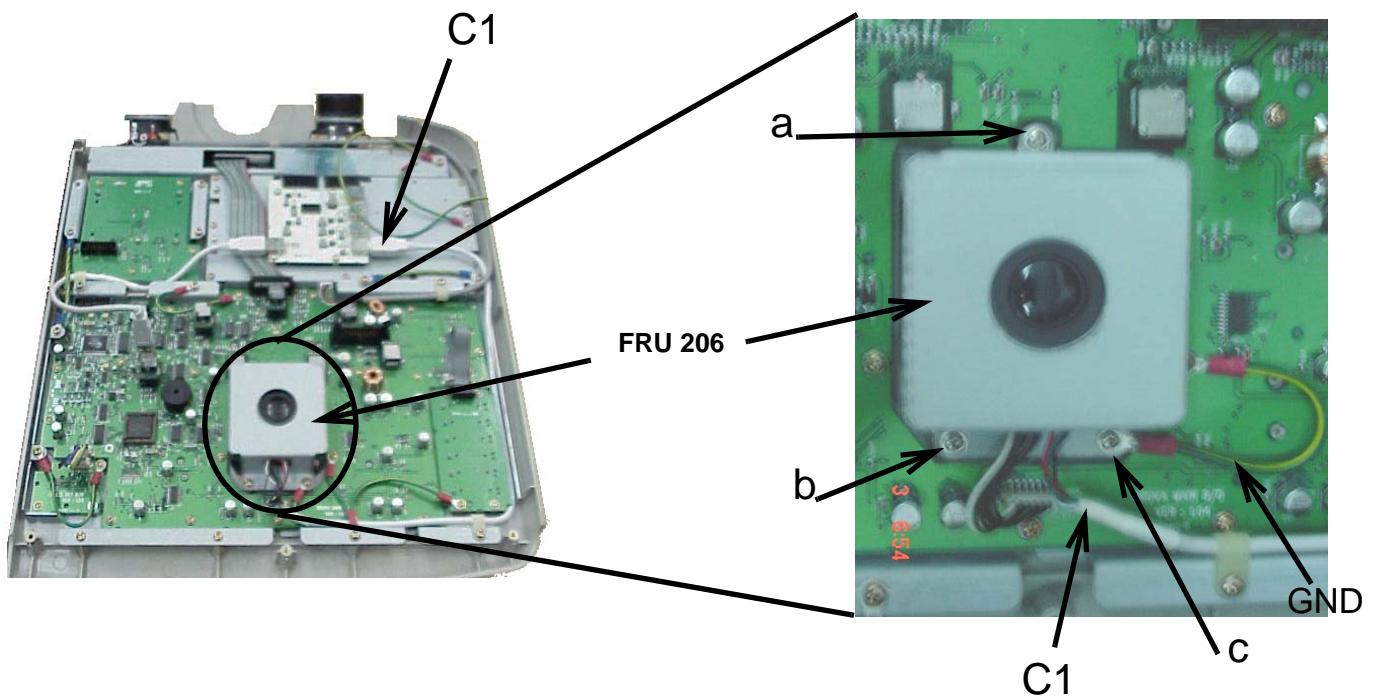


Figure 8-14 Keyboard Trackball Assy

### 8-3-8 Keyboard - Freeze Key Assy (FRU No. 206)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard - Freeze Key Assy

#### 8-3-8-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-3-8-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-3-8-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-3-8-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Remove [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Disconnect Cable C1 from Freeze PCB
- 3.) Unscrew three screws (a, b & c). While remove screw (a) remove GND cable (C2)
- 4.) Remove Freeze Key Assy

#### 8-3-8-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

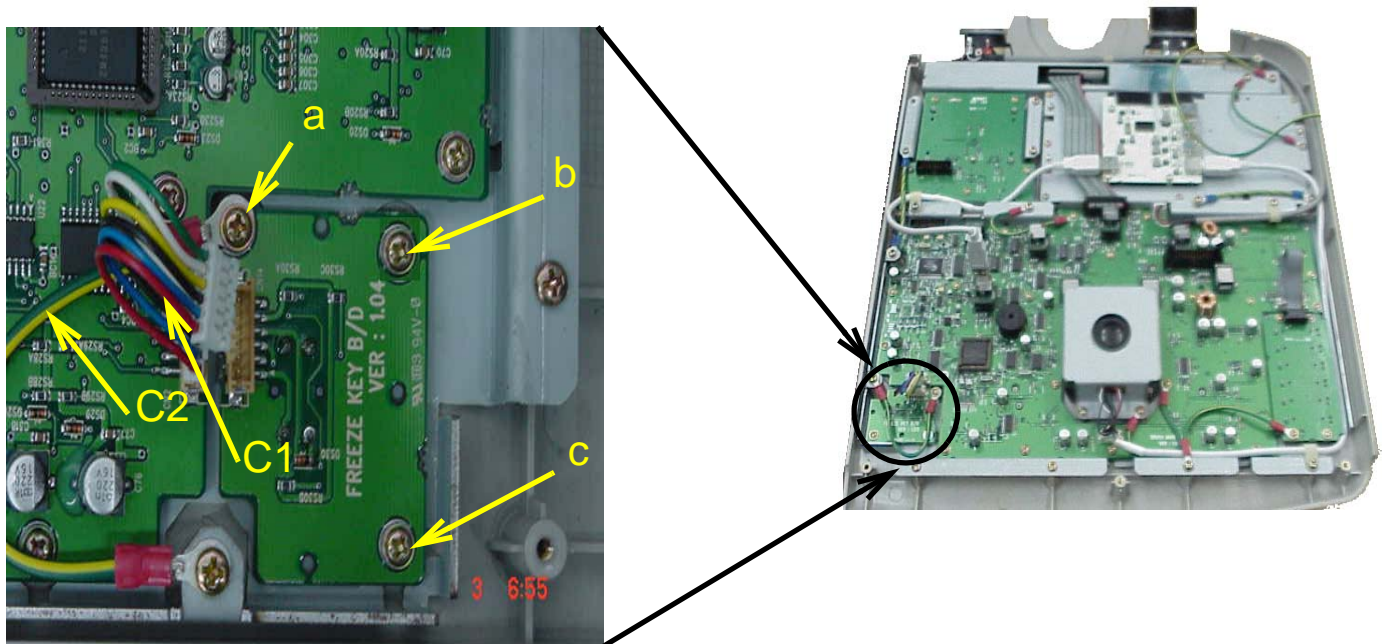


Figure 8-15 Keyboard - Freeze Key Assy

## 8-3-9 Power switch and Encoder PCB Assy (FRU 207).

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard -Power switch and Encoder PCB Assy

### 8-3-9-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-3-9-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-3-9-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-3-9-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Remove [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Unscrew Four screws (a, b, c & d).
- 3.) Disconnect Cable C1 from KBD
- 4.) Remove the 5 Caps
- 5.) Remove nine screws (a-i) and pull out Power Switch & Encoder PCB Assy.

### 8-3-9-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

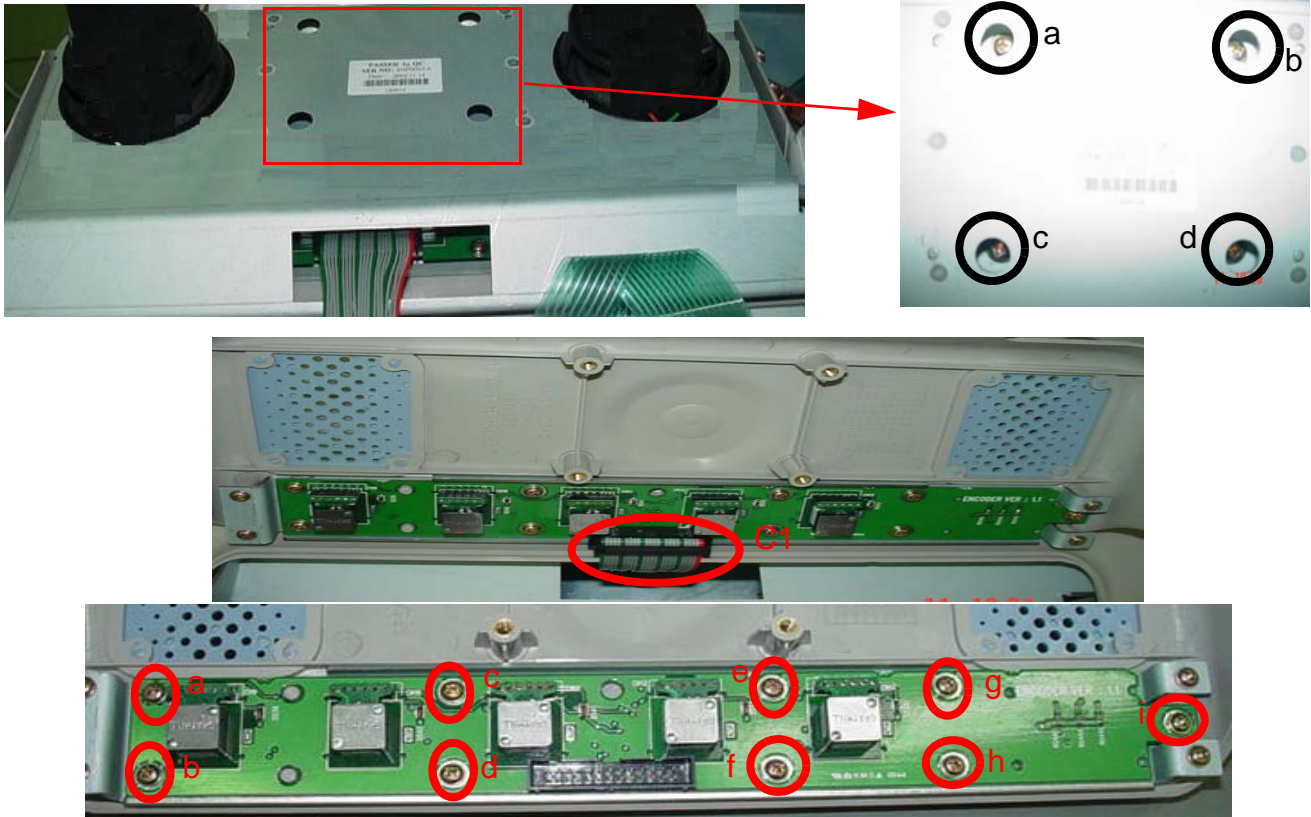


Figure 8-16 Keyboard - Power switch and Encoder PCB Assy

## 8-3-10 Keyboard Power Cable (FRU 208).

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard Power Cable

### 8-3-10-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-3-10-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-3-10-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-3-10-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Remove [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Disconnect Cable C1 from KBD
- 3.) Remove the [See "Rear EMI Cover" on page 39.](#)
- 4.) Disconnect the other end of the Cable C1 from RPI Board.
- 5.) Pull out the Cable from the system.

### 8-3-10-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

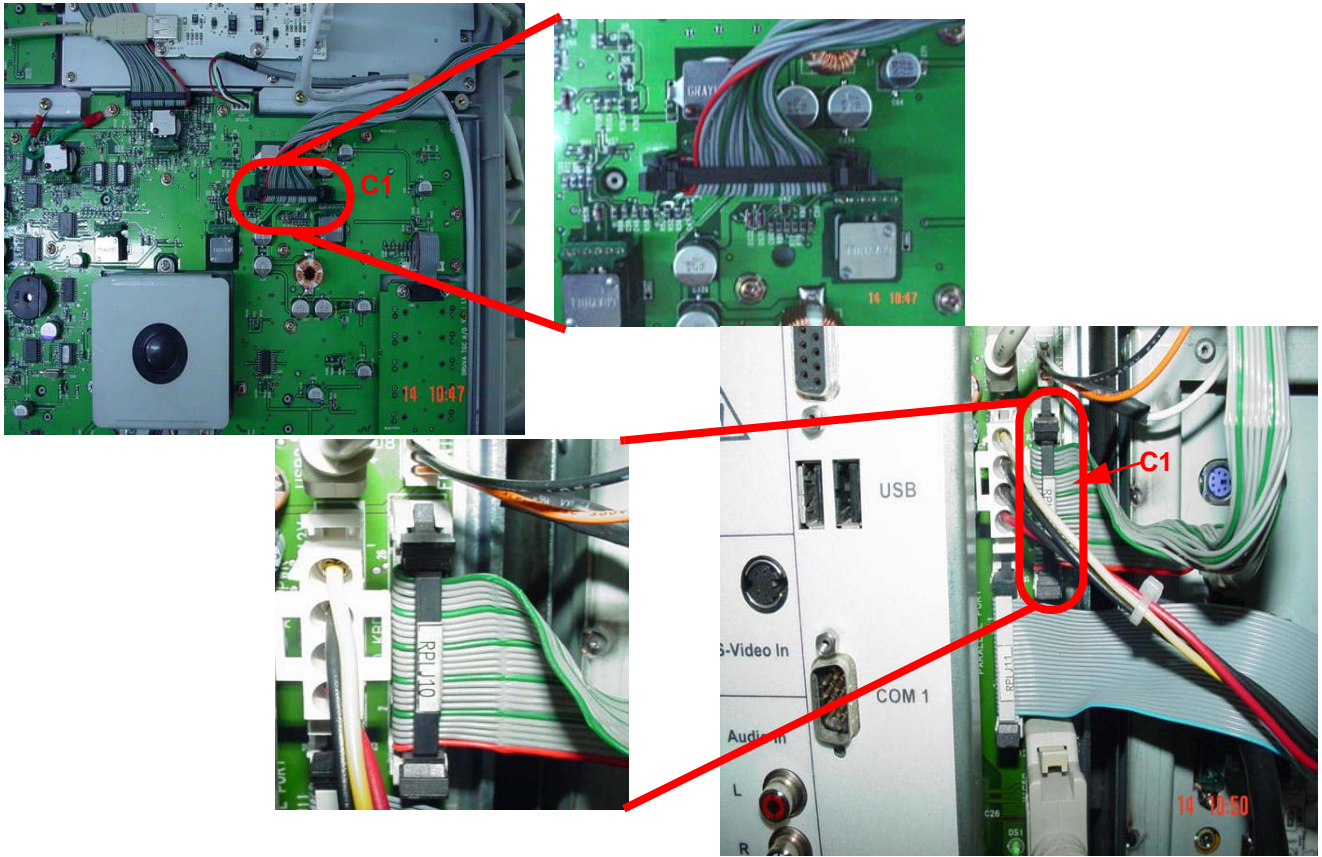


Figure 8-17 Keyboard - Power Cable



## Section 8-4 Mechanicals

### 8-4-1 Right Cover (FRU No. 300)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Right Cover.

#### 8-4-1-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-4-1-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-4-1-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-4-1-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#) .

- 1.) Unscrew six screws (1-6).
- 2.) Remove the Right Cover in the direction as shown in the Figure below.

#### 8-4-1-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

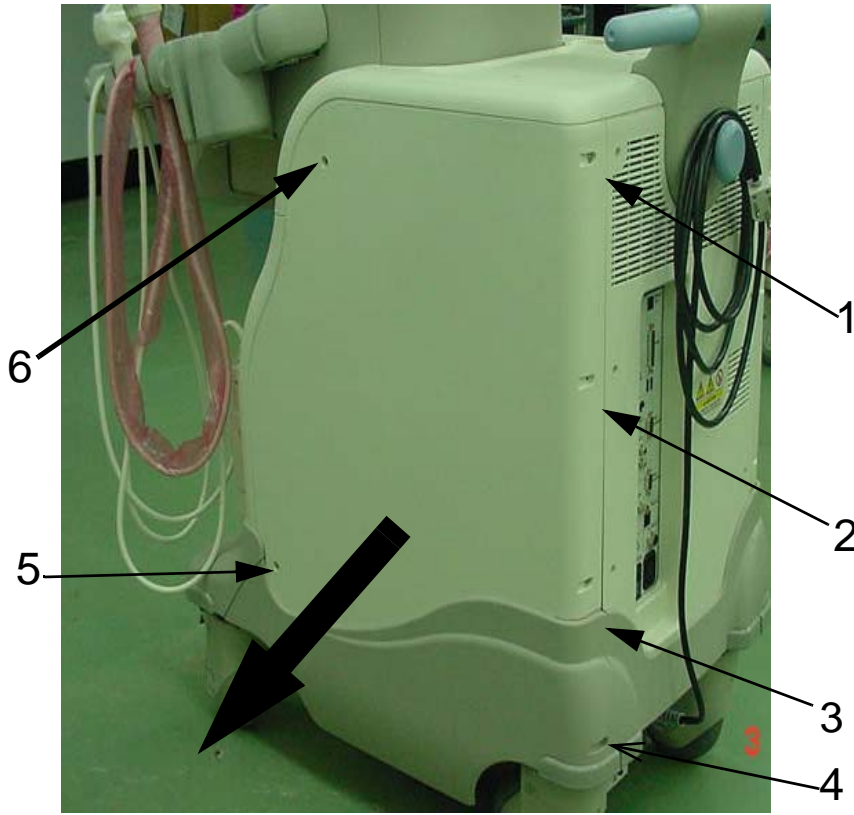


Figure 8-18 Right Cover

## 8-4-2 Left Cover (FRU No. 301)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Left Cover.

### 8-4-2-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-2-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-2-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-2-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)

- 1.) Unscrew 6 screws (1-6).
- 2.) Remove the Left Cover in the direction as shown in the figure below.

### 8-4-2-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.



A. After removing the screws(1-6), then remove the left cover in the direction of arrow.

Figure 8-19 Left Cover

## 8-4-3 Rear Cover (FRU No. 302)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Cover.

### 8-4-3-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-3-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-3-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-3-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-20 on page 8-26](#) .

- 1.) Unscrew six screws (1-6).
- 2.) Lift and remove the Rear Cover.

### 8-4-3-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

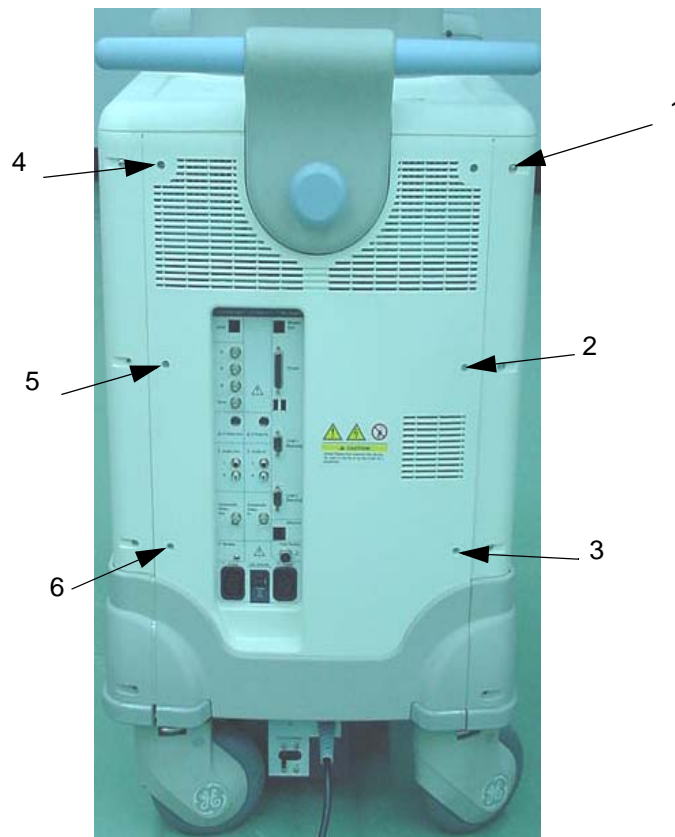


Figure 8-20 Rear Cover

## 8-4-4 Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT, refer to 8-4-5 "Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT" on page 8-28

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Bumper.

### 8-4-4-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-4-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-4-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in 4-3-1-3 on page 4-4

### 8-4-4-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to Figure 8-21 on page 8-27 .

- 1.) Remove See "Right Cover (FRU No. 300)" on page 23.
- 2.) Remove See "Left Cover (FRU No. 301)" on page 25.
- 3.) Unscrew four screws (a, b, c, d).
- 4.) Lift the Front Bumper at sides, Press in the Middle of Front Cover to remove the front bumper

### 8-4-4-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

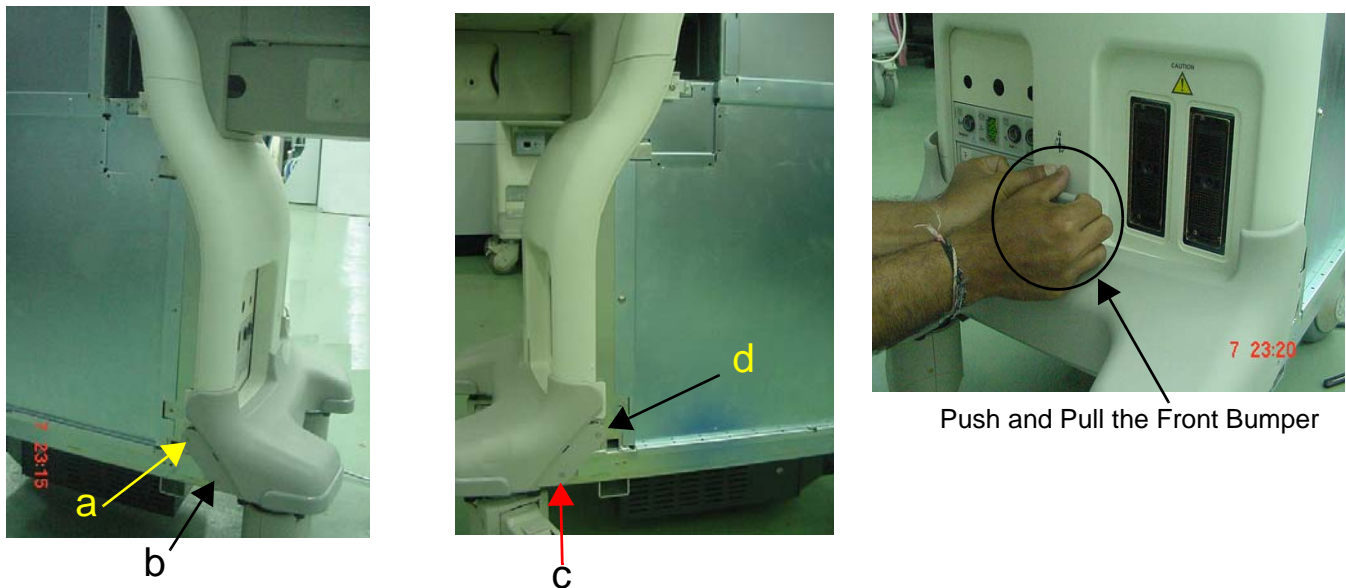


Figure 8-21 Front Bumper

## 8-4-5 Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 PRO and LOGIQ™ 3 Black and White, refer to 8-4-4 "Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 8-27

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Bumper.

### 8-4-5-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-5-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-5-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in 4-3-1-3 on page 4-4

### 8-4-5-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to Figure 8-21 on page 8-27 .

- 1.) Remove Right Cover. See "Right Cover (FRU No. 300)" on page 23.
- 2.) Remove Left Cover. See "Left Cover (FRU No. 301)" on page 25.
- 3.) Unscrew four screws (a, b, c, d).
- 4.) Lift the Front Bumper at sides, Press in the Middle of Front Cover to remove the front bumper

### 8-4-5-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal



Figure 8-22 Front Bumper

## 8-4-6 Front Rubber Bumper Left (FRU No. 311)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Bumper Left.

### 8-4-6-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-6-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-6-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-6-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-25 on page 8-31](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)” on page 23.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See “Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)” on page 25.](#)
- 3.) Remove [See “Front Bumper \(FRU No. 303\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White” on page 27.](#)
- 4.) Remove Front Bumper Left.

### 8-4-6-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal



Figure 8-23 Front Bumper Left

## 8-4-7 Front Rubber Bumper Right (FRU No. 312)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Bumper Right.

### 8-4-7-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-7-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-7-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-7-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-25 on page 8-31](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See "Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)" on page 23.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See "Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)" on page 25.](#)
- 3.) Remove [See "Front Bumper \(FRU No. 303\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 27.](#)
- 4.) Remove Front Bumper Right.

### 8-4-7-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal



Figure 8-24 Front Bumper Right



## 8-4-8 Front Cover (FRU No. 304) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 Expert, refer to [8-4-8 "Front Cover \(FRU No. 304\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White" on page 8-31](#)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Cover.

### 8-4-8-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-8-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-8-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-8-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-25 on page 8-31](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See "Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)" on page 23.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See "Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)" on page 25.](#)
- 3.) Remove [See "Front Bumper \(FRU No. 303\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 27.](#)
- 4.) Unscrew two screws (a, b, c, d)
- 5.) Remove Front Cover.

### 8-4-8-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

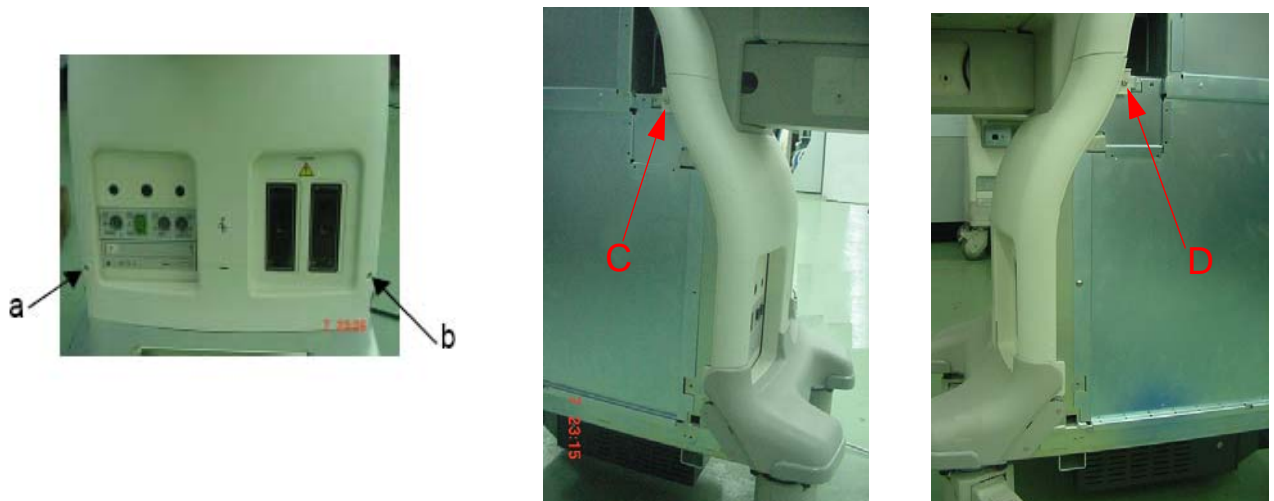


Figure 8-25 Front Cover

## 8-4-9 Front Cover (FRU No. 304) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 PRO and LOGIQ™ 3 Black and White, refer to 8-4-8 "Front Cover (FRU No. 304) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White" on page 8-31

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Cover.

### 8-4-9-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-9-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-9-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in 4-3-1-3 on page 4-4

### 8-4-9-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to Figure 8-25 on page 8-31 .

- 1.) Remove See "Right Cover (FRU No. 300)" on page 23.
- 2.) Remove See "Left Cover (FRU No. 301)" on page 25.
- 3.) Remove See "Front Bumper (FRU No. 303) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 27.
- 4.) Unscrew two screws (a, b, c, d)
- 5.) Remove Front Cover.

### 8-4-9-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

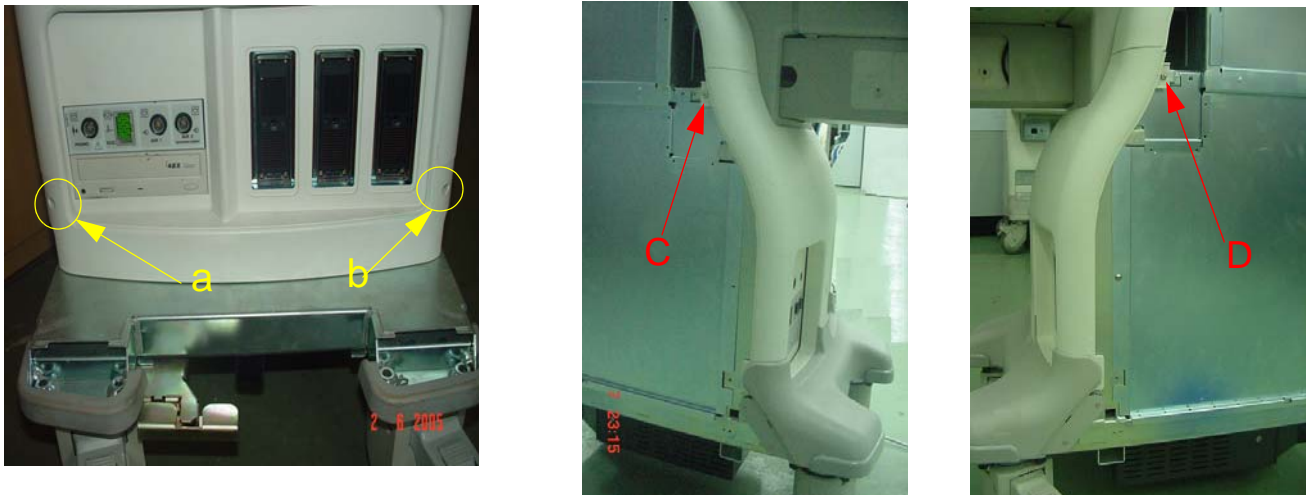


Figure 8-26 Front Cover

## 8-4-10 Top Cover (FRU No. 305)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Top Cover.

### 8-4-10-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-10-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-10-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-10-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-27 on page 8-33](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)” on page 23.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See “Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)” on page 25.](#)
- 3.) Remove [See “Rear Cover \(FRU No. 302\)” on page 26.](#)
- 4.) Remove [See “Front Cover \(FRU No. 304\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White” on page 31.](#)
- 5.) Remove [See “Keyboard Rear Cover \(FRU No. 308\)” on page 36.](#)
- 6.) Unscrew four screws (1-4).
- 7.) Pull Up the Top Cover to remove.

### 8-4-10-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

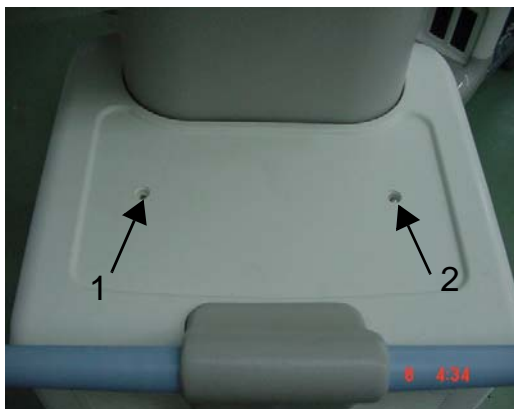


Figure 8-27 Top Cover Disassembly

## 8-4-11 Keyboard Bottom Cover (FRU No. 306)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard Bottom Cover.

### 8-4-11-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-11-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 30 minutes + travel

### 8-4-11-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-11-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-28 on page 8-34](#) .

- 1.) Remove the [See "KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)" on page 10.](#)
- 2.) unscrew four screws (a, b, c, d) fixing VGP support Tray



**CAUTION** Hold the VGP Support Tray below the Keyboard bottom from falling down.

- 3.) Unscrew eight screws (1-8).
- 4.) Remove the KBD Bottom Cover.

### 8-4-11-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

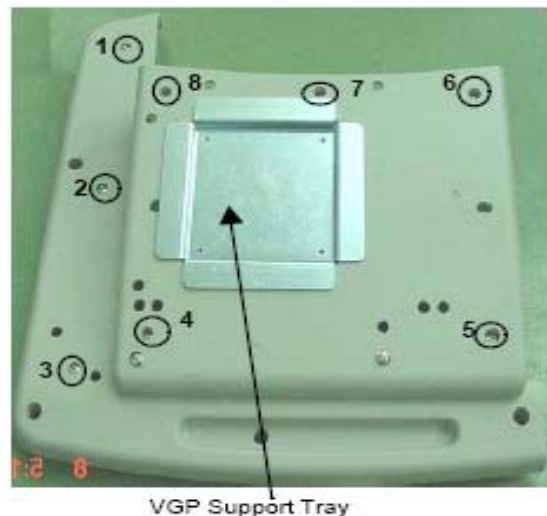
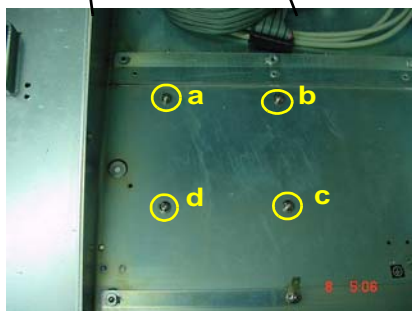
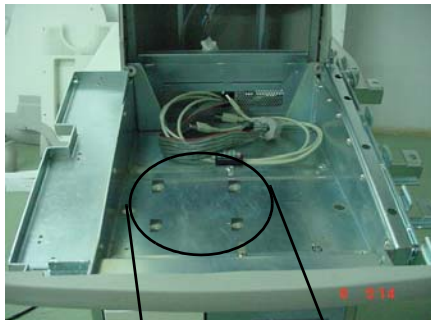


Figure 8-28 Keyboard Bottom

## 8-4-12 Keyboard Bumper (FRU No. 307)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard Bumper.

### 8-4-12-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-12-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-12-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-12-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-4-12 on page 8-35](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “KeyBoard Assy \(FRU No. 200\)” on page 10.](#)
- 2.) Unscrew four screws (a,b,c &d) from the Keyboard bottom.
- 3.) Remove KeyBoard Bumper.

### 8-4-12-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

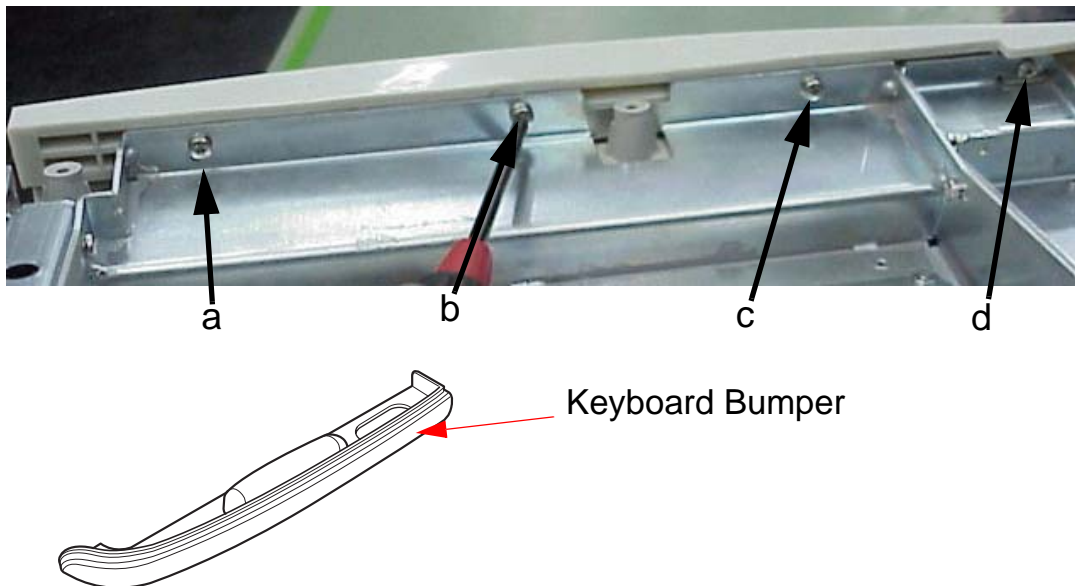


Figure 8-29 Keyboard Bumper

### 8-4-13 Keyboard Rear Cover (FRU No. 308)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Keyboard Rear Cover

#### 8-4-13-1 Tools

- Coin/ "-" Stubby screwdrivers

#### 8-4-13-2 Needed Manpower

- 1persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-4-13-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-4-13-4 Removal Procedure

- 1.) Remove two caps (a,b).
- 2.) Remove two screws(1,2) using coins / "-" Stub B screwdrivers
- 3.) Lift the Keyboard Rear cover Up and pull backwards to remove.

#### 8-4-13-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

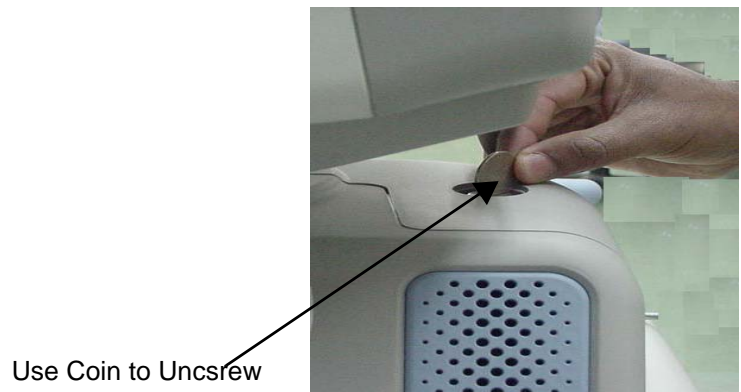
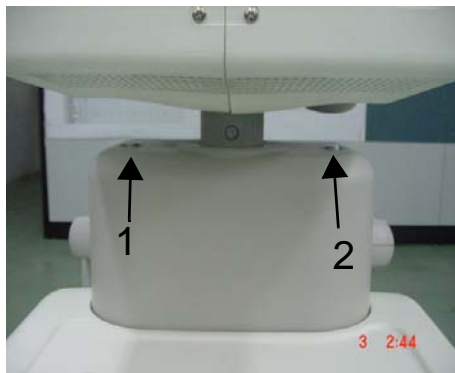
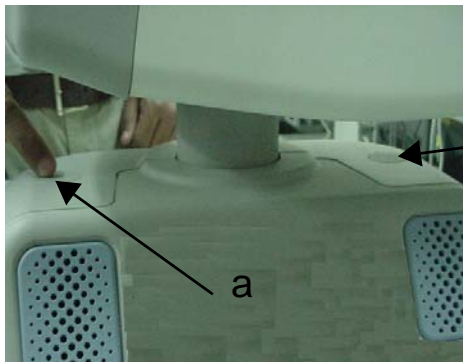


Figure 8-30 Keyboard Rear Cover

## 8-4-14 Left EMI Cover

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Left EMI Cover.

### 8-4-14-1 Tools

- Common phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-14-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-14-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-14-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-31 on page 8-37](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)” on page 25](#).
- 2.) Unscrew eight screws (1-8).
- 3.) Remove the Left EMI Cover.

### 8-4-14-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

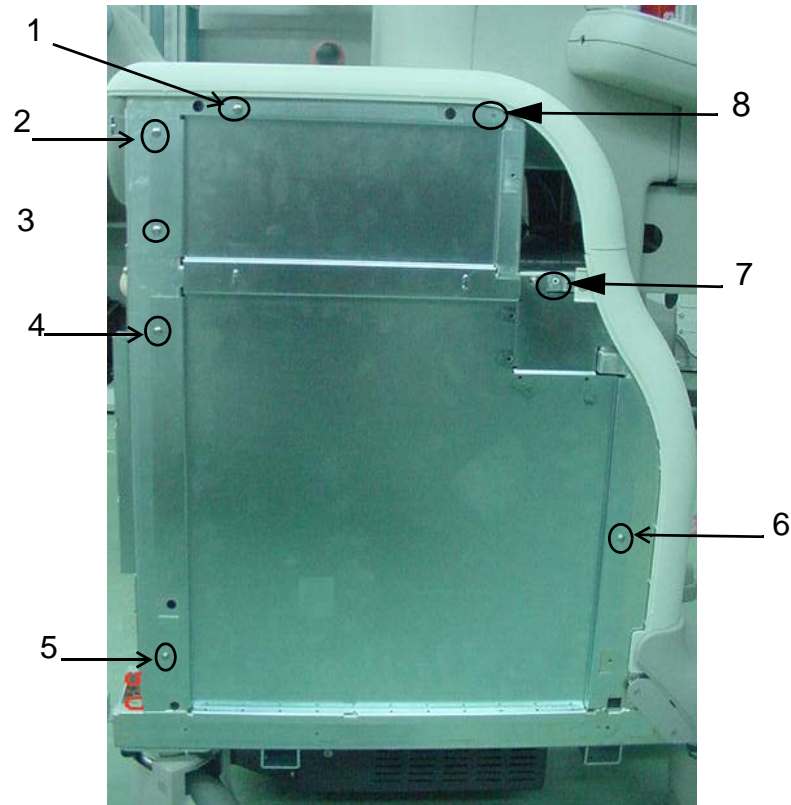


Figure 8-31 Left EMI Cover Disassembly

## 8-4-15 Right EMI Cover

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Right EMI Cover

### 8-4-15-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-15-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-15-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-15-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-32 on page 8-38](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)” on page 23](#).
- 2.) Unscrew eight screws (1-8).
- 3.) Remove the EMI Cover R.

### 8-4-15-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

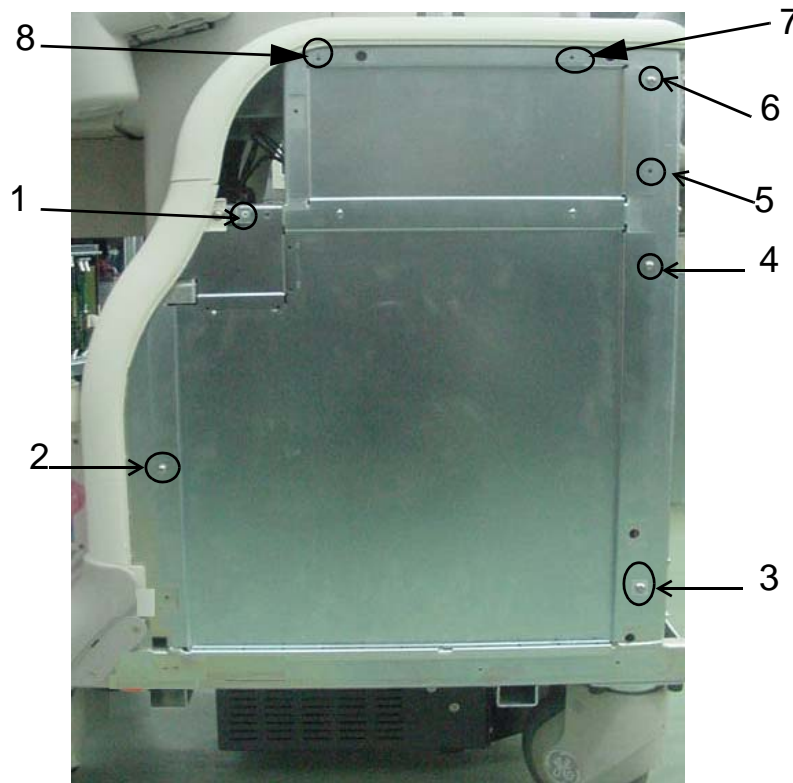


Figure 8-32 Right EMI Cover Disassembly



### 8-4-16 Rear EMI Cover

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear EMI Cover

#### 8-4-16-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-4-16-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-4-16-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-4-16-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-33 on page 8-39](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See “Rear Cover \(FRU No. 302\)” on page 26](#).
- 2.) Unscrew eight screws (1-10) holding the Rear EMI shield
- 3.) Remove the Rear EMI Shield.

#### 8-4-16-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

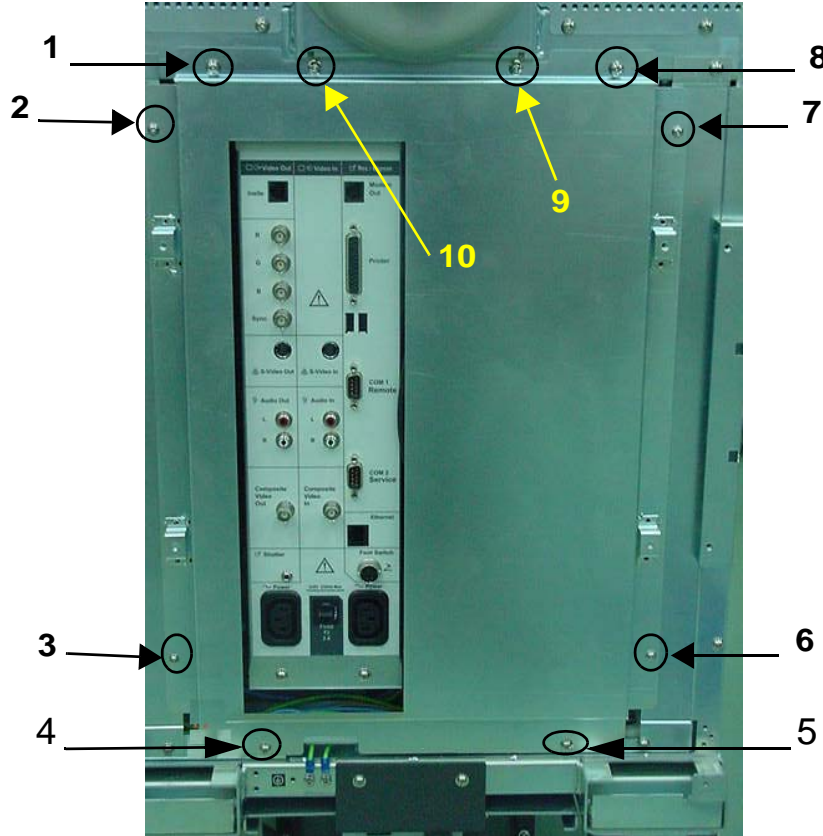


Figure 8-33 Rear EMI Cover Disassembly

## 8-4-17 Nest EMI Cover

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Nest EMI Cover

### 8-4-17-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-17-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-17-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-17-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-34 on page 8-40](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See "Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)" on page 23](#).
- 2.) Remove [See "Right EMI Cover" on page 38](#).
- 3.) Unscrew four screws (1-4) holding the Nest EMI Cover
- 4.) Remove the Nest EMI Cover.

### 8-4-17-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

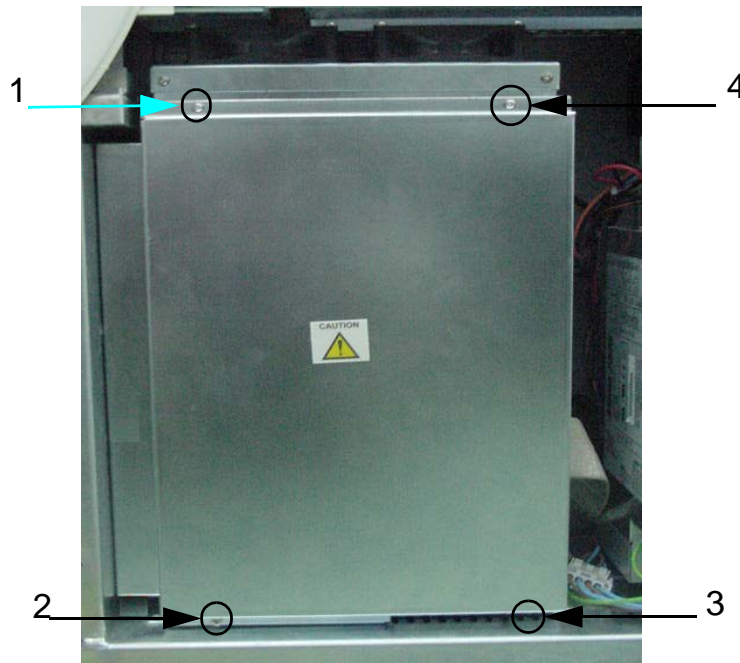


Figure 8-34 Nest EMI Cover Disassembly

## 8-4-18 Front EMI Cover for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White

*NOTE:* For LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT, refer to [8-4-19 "Front EMI Cover for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT" on page 8-43](#)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front EMI Cover

### 8-4-18-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-18-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-18-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-18-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-35 on page 8-42](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See "Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)" on page 23.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See "Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)" on page 25.](#)
- 3.) Remove [See "Front Bumper \(FRU No. 303\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 27.](#)
- 4.) Remove [See "Front Cover \(FRU No. 304\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White" on page 31.](#)
- 5.) Unscrew nine screws (1-9) holding the Front EMI Cover
- 6.) Remove the Front EMI Cover.

### 8-4-18-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

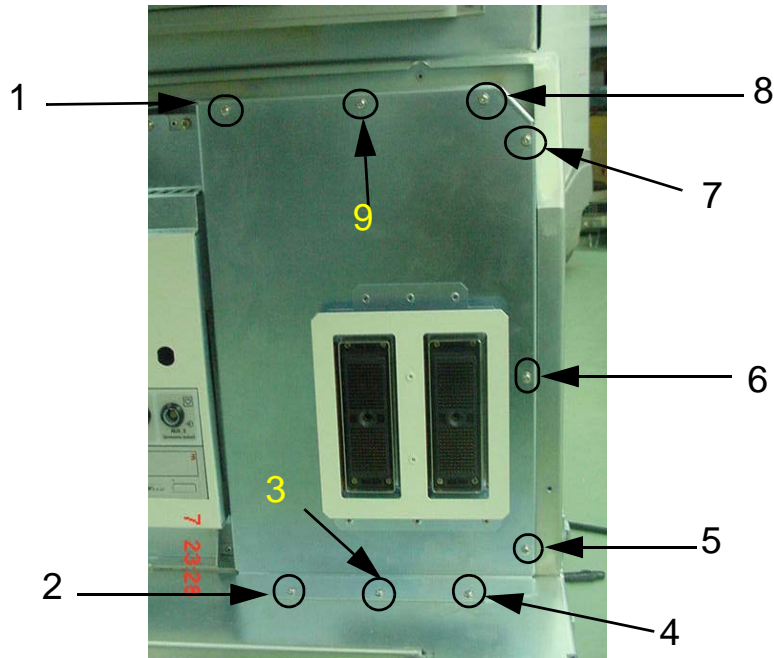


Figure 8-35 Front EMI Cover Disassembly

### 8-4-19 Front EMI Cover for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 PRO and LOGIQ™ 3 Black and White, refer to [8-4-18 "Front EMI Cover for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 8-41](#)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front EMI Cover

#### 8-4-19-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-4-19-2 Needed Manpower

- 1person, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-4-19-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-4-19-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-35 on page 8-42](#) .

- 1.) Remove [See "Right Cover \(FRU No. 300\)" on page 23.](#)
- 2.) Remove [See "Left Cover \(FRU No. 301\)" on page 25.](#)
- 3.) Remove [See "Front Bumper \(FRU No. 303\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 27.](#)
- 4.) Remove [See "Front Cover \(FRU No. 304\) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO / Black and White" on page 31.](#)
- 5.) Unscrew nine screws (1-9) holding the Front EMI Cover
- 6.) Remove the Front EMI Cover.

#### 8-4-19-5 Mounting procedure

Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

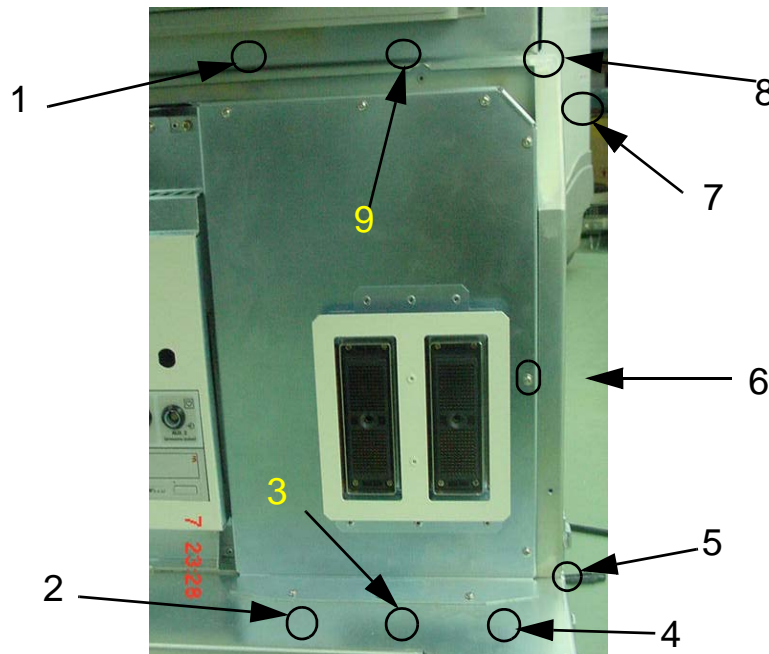


Figure 8-36 Front EMI Cover Disassembly

## 8-4-20 VGP Tray

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the VGP Tray.

### 8-4-20-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-20-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-20-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-2-1-5 on page 5](#)

### 8-4-20-4 Removal Procedure

- Refer to [Figure 8-23 on page 25](#).
- 1.) Unscrew Two screws (1-2). Screw (2) is not visible.
  - 2.) Slide the VGP Tray as shown by the arrow to remove. (If VGP is Fixed Remove VGP and connecting cables)

### 8-4-20-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

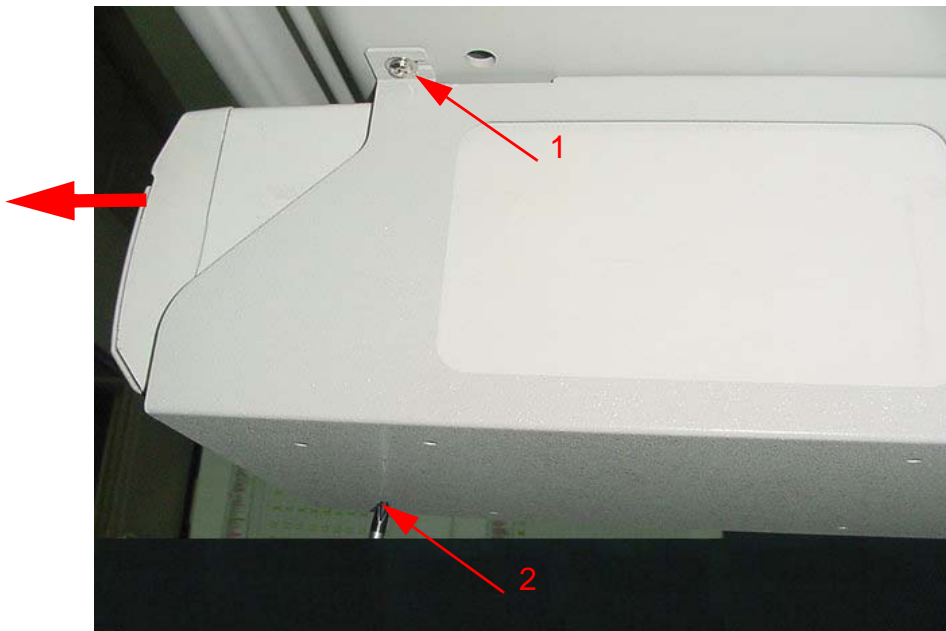


Figure 8-37 VGP Tray Disassembly

## 8-4-21 Handle Rod(FRU No. 400)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Handle.

### 8-4-21-1 Tools

- Nil

### 8-4-21-2 Needed Manpower

- 1person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-21-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-21-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-38 on page 8-45](#) .

2.) Unscrew Handle rods anticlockwise.

### 8-4-21-5 Mounting procedure

1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

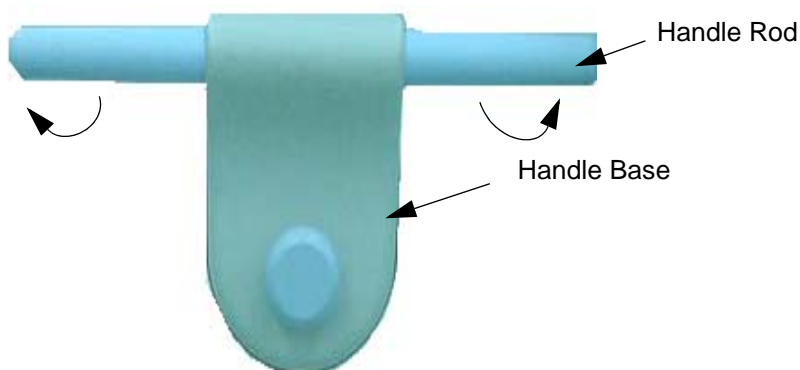


Figure 8-38 Handle Disassembly

## 8-4-22 Front Castor (FRU No. 401)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Castor.

### 8-4-22-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers
- Allen/Unbraco wrench

### 8-4-22-2 Needed Manpower

- 2 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-22-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-22-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-39 on page 8-46](#) .

- 1.) Place the wooden block below to lift the system
- 2.) Unscrew eight (8) hexagonal bolts (1-8).
- 3.) Remove the Front Castor.



**CAUTION** One Person should hold the system while removing & replacing the Castors

### 8-4-22-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

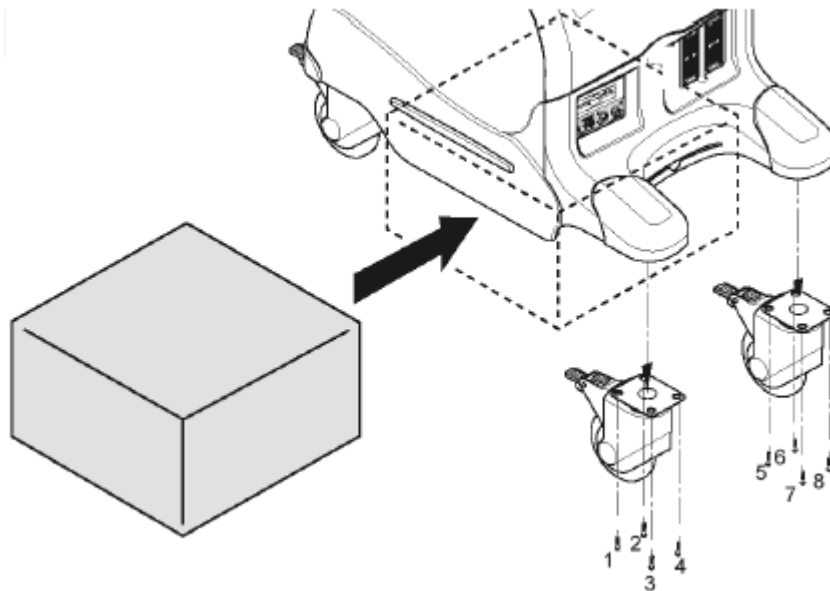


Figure 8-39 Front Castor Disassembly



## 8-4-23 Rear Castor (FRU No. 402)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Castor.

### 8-4-23-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers
- Allen/Unbraco wrench

### 8-4-23-2 Needed Manpower

- 2 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-23-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-23-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-40 on page 8-47](#) .

- 1.) Place the wooden block below to lift the system
- 2.) Unscrew eight hexagonal bolts (1-8).
- 3.) Remove the Rear Castor.



**CAUTION** One Person should hold the system while removing & replacing the Castors

### 8-4-23-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

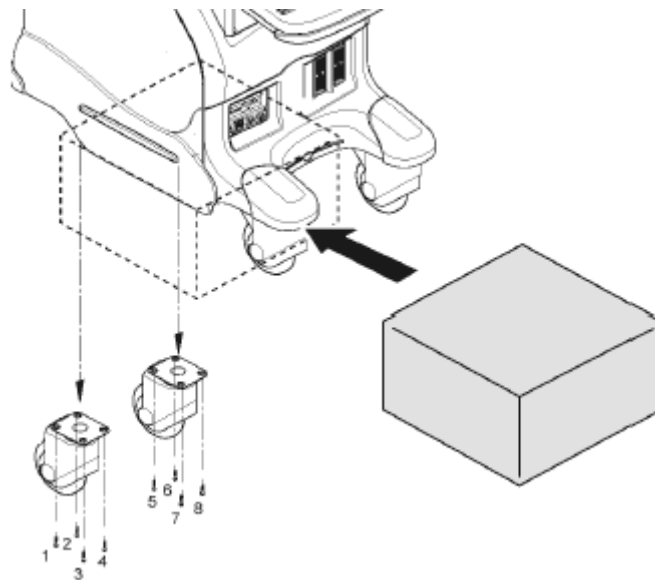


Figure 8-40 Rear Castor Disassembly

## 8-4-24 Air Filter (FRU No. 403)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Air Filter.

### 8-4-24-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-4-24-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 5 minutes + travel

### 8-4-24-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-24-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-41 on page 8-48](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Air Filter which is situated between Front Casters.

### 8-4-24-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

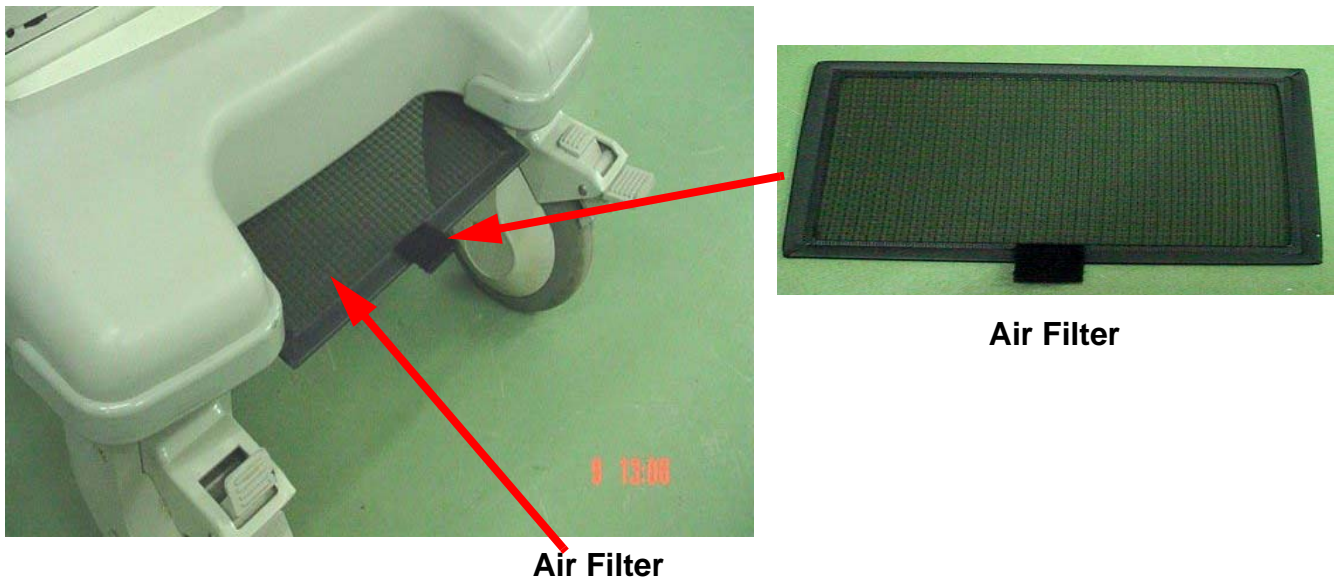


Figure 8-41 Air Filter

## 8-4-25 Card Cage Fan Assy (FRU No. 404)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Card Cage Fan Assy.

### 8-4-25-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


### 8-4-25-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-4-25-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-4-25-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** An electronic discharge may damage a component. Turn OFF power and wear the wrist strap before you remove circuit boards. Do not unplug the power cord to keep ground continuity.

- 1.) Remove the Right Cover (FRU No. 300). Refer to section [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#)
- 2.) Remove 1the Right EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-15 on page 8-38](#)
- 3.) Disconnect cable connecting the fan.
- 4.) Remove two screws (a,b) fixing the Fan Assy
- 5.) Pull out the Fan Assy.

### 8-4-25-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

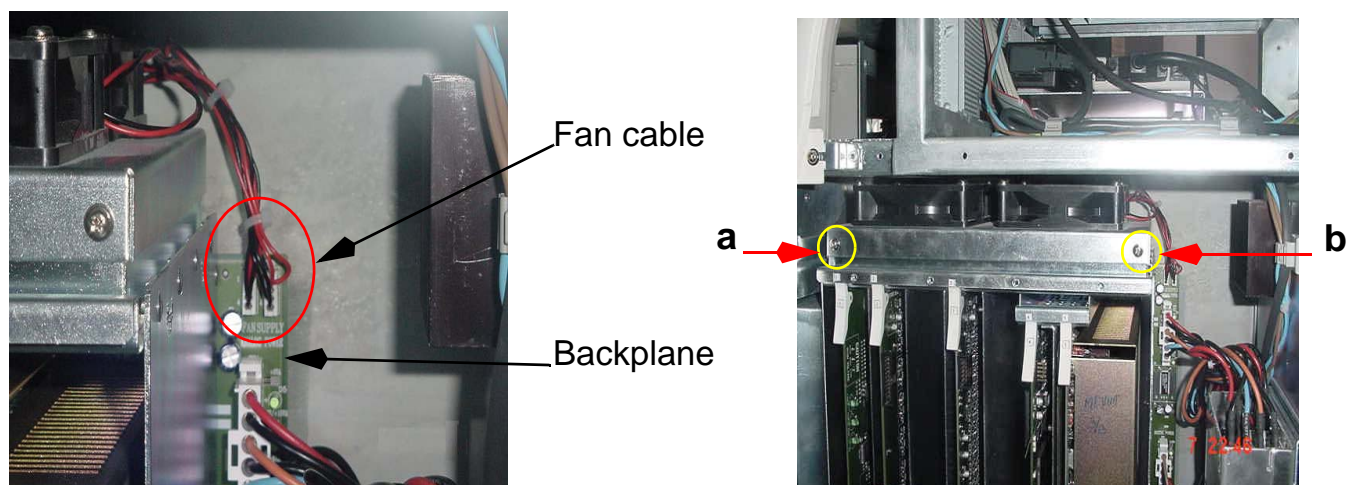


Figure 8-42 Fan Assembly

## Section 8-5 I/O Interfaces

### 8-5-1 Rear Panel Assy (FRU No. 500)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Panel Assy.

#### 8-5-1-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-5-1-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-5-1-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-5-1-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to section [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#)
- 3.) Unscrew four (4) screws (a, b, c,d) from the Rear Panel Assy.
- 4.) Remove two cable assy from ACI board and one from RPI board.
- 5.) Pull and Remove the Rear Panel Assy.

#### 8-5-1-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

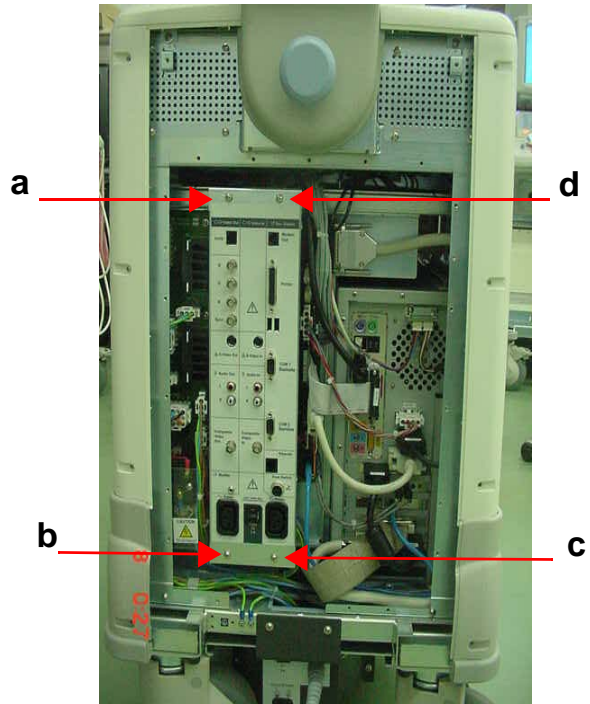


Figure 8-43 Rear Panel Disassembly

## 8-5-2 Rear Panel1 (RP1) Board (FRU No. 501)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Panel1.

### 8-5-2-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-5-2-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-5-2-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-5-2-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to section [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#)
- 3.) Remove Rear Panel (FRU No. 500). Refer to section [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#)
- 4.) Remove three screws (a,b,c).
- 5.) Pull Rear Panel1 (RP1) Board.

### 8-5-2-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

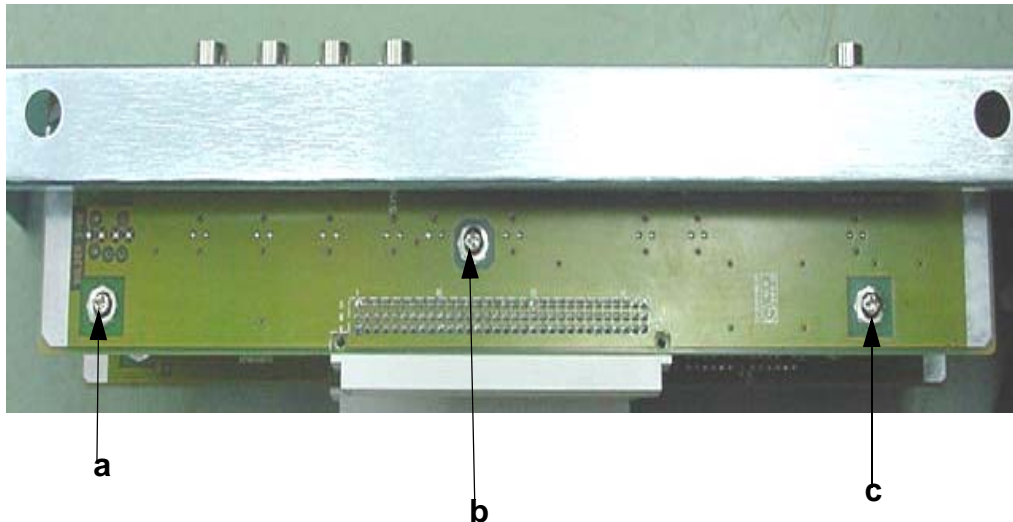


Figure 8-44 Rear Panel1 (RP1) Disassembly

### 8-5-3 Rear Panel2 (RP2) Board (FRU No. 502)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Panel2.

#### 8-5-3-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-5-3-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-5-3-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-5-3-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to section [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#)
- 3.) Remove Rear Panel (FRU No. 500). Refer to section [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#)
- 4.) Remove two stud screws(1-6) holding connectors Printer, COM1, COM2.
- 5.) Remove three screws (a,b,c).
- 6.) Pull Rear Panel2 (RP2) Board.

#### 8-5-3-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

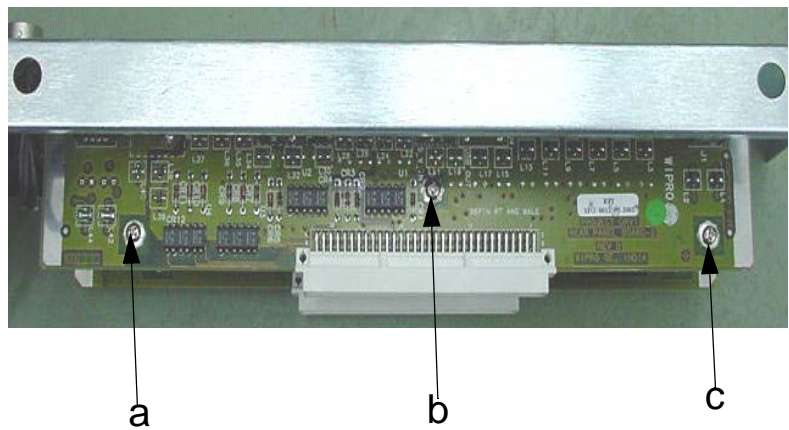
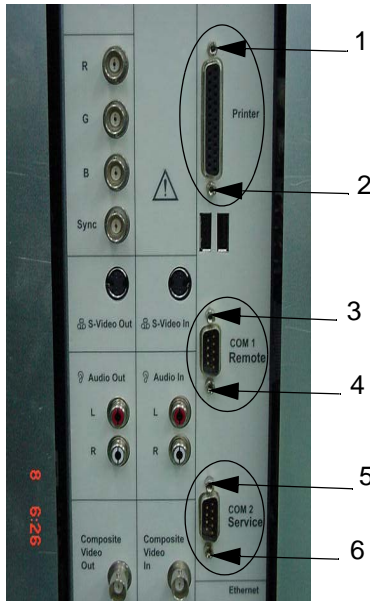


Figure 8-45 Rear Panel1 (RP1) Disassembly

## 8-5-4 Rear Panel Interface (RPI) Board (FRU No. 503)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Panel Interface.

### 8-5-4-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-5-4-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-5-4-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-5-4-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to section [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#)
- 3.) Remove Rear Panel (FRU No. 500). Refer to section [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#)
- 4.) Remove nine cables (a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j) connected to the RPI Board
- 5.) Remove eleven screws marked.
- 6.) Pull the RPI Board out.

### 8-5-4-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

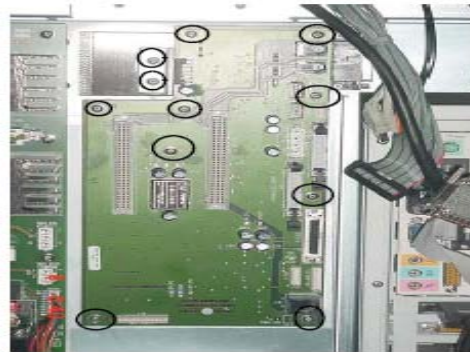
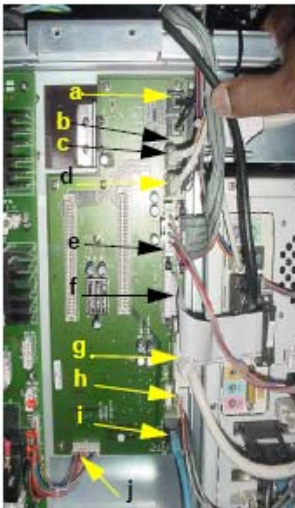


Figure 8-46 Rear Panel Interface Board (RPI) Disassembly



## 8-5-5 Front Panel (FRU No. 504)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Front Panel.

### 8-5-5-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-5-5-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-5-5-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-5-5-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#) .

- 1.) Remove Rear EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#) .
- 2.) Remove Left Side Cover.
- 3.) Remove Left EMI Cover.
- 4.) Remove Rear Left EMI Support bracket
- 5.) Disconnect interconnect cables.
- 6.) Remove VGP Tray. Refer [section 8-4-20 on page 44](#)
- 7.) Unscrew four screws (a,b,c,d)
- 8.) Pull and remove the Front Panel

### 8-5-5-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.



Figure 8-47 Front Panel Disassembly

## 8-5-6 Rear Panel Fuse (FRU No. 505)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Rear Panel Fuse.

### 8-5-6-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


### 8-5-6-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-5-6-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-5-6-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-64 on page 8-83](#) .

- 1.) Remove Rear Panel Assy (FRU No. 500). Refer to Section [8-5-1 on page 8-50](#)
- 2.) Remove two cables (a,b).
- 3.) Press and pull the Rear Panel fuse.

### 8-5-6-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

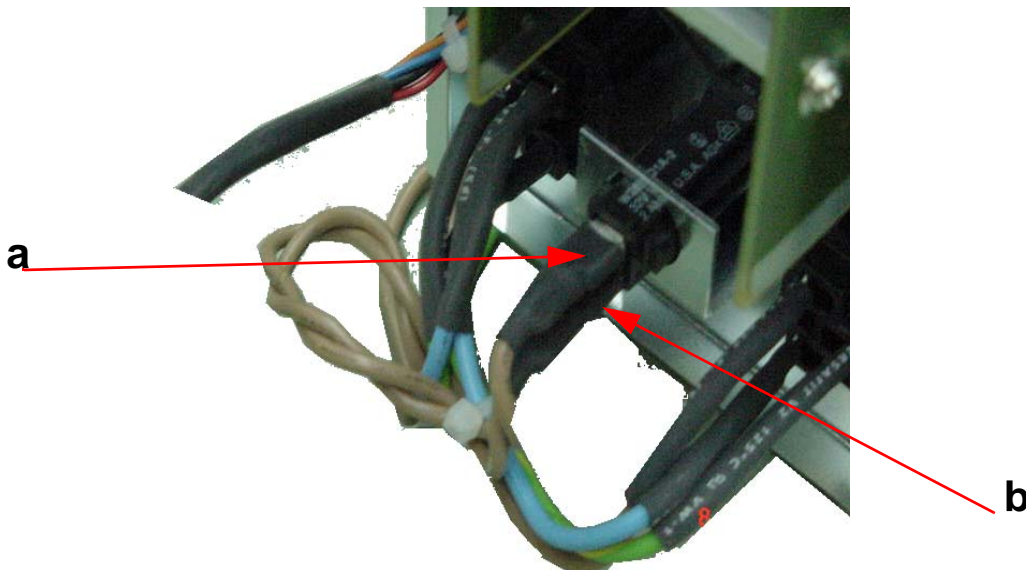


Figure 8-48 Rear Panel Fuse Disassembly

## Section 8-6 PCB

### 8-6-1 PCB Boards (FRU No. 601 ~ 605, 608, 609)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the PCB Boards.

#### 8-6-1-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-6-1-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 10 minutes + travel

#### 8-6-1-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-6-1-4 Removal Procedure



**CAUTION** An electronic discharge may damage a component. Turn OFF power and wear the wrist strap before you remove circuit boards. Do not unplug the power cord to keep ground continuity.

**Do not bend or flex the boards when mounting/dismounting each boards. Surface mount IC boards are very susceptible to damage from flex/torque.**

Refer to [Figure 8-49 on page 8-58](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Right Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Right EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-15 on page 8-38](#) .
- 3.) Remove the Nest EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-17 on page 8-40](#)
- 4.) Disconnect the PCI Cable if removing the FEC Assy or HVPS. Otherwise skip this step.
- 5.) Disconnect RFC connector board if removing RXB or DBF Assy. Otherwise skip this step.
- 6.) Move the upper and lower board ejector in the direction indicated by the arrow (1) in Figure B.
- 7.) Pull out the board in the direction indicated by the arrow (2) in Figure B, do not bend it.

#### 8-6-1-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

8-6-1 PCB Boards (FRU No. 601 ~ 605, 608, 609) (cont'd)

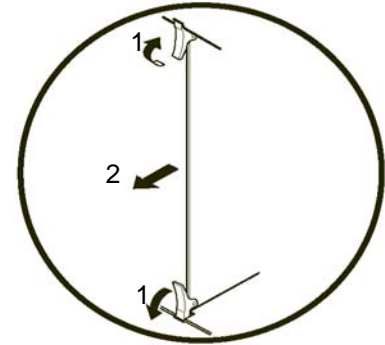
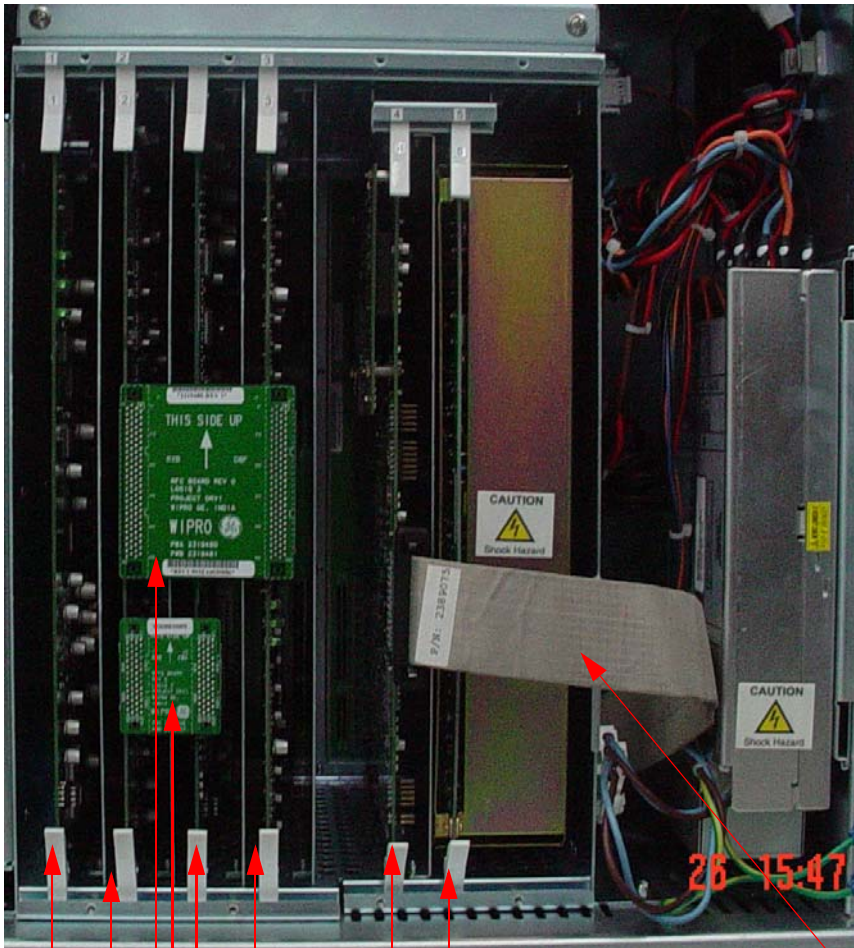


Figure B

SLOT	BOARD	FRU NO.
1	TXB	601
2	RXB	602
4	DBF	603
5	FEC	604
6	HVPS	605
-	RFC	608
-	PCI Cable	609

TXB  
 RXB  
 RFC  
 RFC2  
 CWD  
 DBF  
 FEC  
 HVPS

PCI Cable From PC to FEC

Figure 8-49 PCB Boards Disassembly

## 8-6-2 Connector Board Assy (FRU No. 606) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT, refer to [8-6-3 "Connector Board Assy \(FRU No. 606\) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT" on page 8-61](#)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Conn. Board Assy.

### 8-6-2-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-2-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-2-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-2-4 Removal Procedure



**CAUTION** An electronic discharge may damage a component. Turn OFF power and wear the wrist strap before you remove circuit boards. Do not unplug the power cord to keep ground continuity.

**Do not bend or flex the boards when mounting/dismounting each boards. Surface mount IC boards are very susceptible to damage from flex/torque.**

Refer to [Figure 8-50 on page 8-60](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No. 301). Refer to section [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 2.) Remove the Right Cover (FRU No. 300). Refer to section [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#)
- 3.) Remove the Front Bumper (FRU No. 303). Refer to section [8-4-4 on page 8-27](#)
- 4.) Remove the Front Cover (FRU No. 304). Refer to section [8-4-8 on page 8-31](#)
- 5.) Remove the Front EMI cover. Refer to section [8-4-18 on page 8-41](#)
- 6.) Unscrew four screws (1-4) from the connector board.
- 7.) Disconnect connector board assy.

### 8-6-2-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

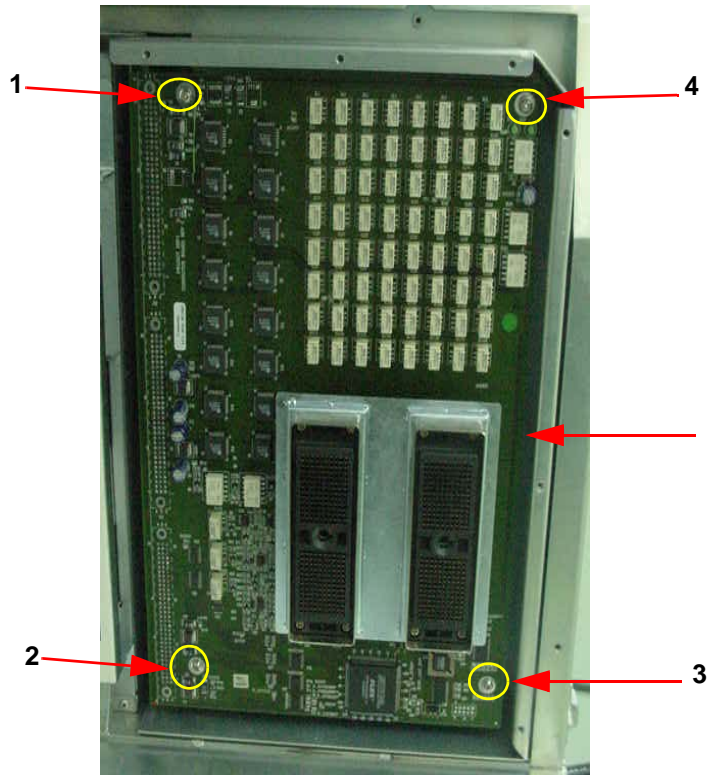


Figure 8-50 Connector Board Disassembly

## 8-6-3 Connector Board Assy (FRU No. 606) for LOGIQ™ 3 EXPERT

**NOTE:** For LOGIQ™ 3 PRO and LOGIQ™ 3 Black and White, refer to 8-6-2 "Connector Board Assy (FRU No. 606) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO/Black and White" on page 8-59

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Conn. Board Assy.

### 8-6-3-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-3-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-3-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in 4-3-1-3 on page 4-4

### 8-6-3-4 Removal Procedure



**CAUTION** An electronic discharge may damage a component. Turn OFF power and wear the wrist strap before you remove circuit boards. Do not unplug the power cord to keep ground continuity.

**Do not bend or flex the boards when mounting/dismounting each boards. Surface mount IC boards are very susceptible to damage from flex/torque.**

Refer to [Figure 8-50 on page 8-60](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No. 301). Refer to section [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 2.) Remove the Right Cover (FRU No. 300). Refer to section [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#)
- 3.) Remove the Front Bumper (FRU No. 303). Refer to section [8-4-4 on page 8-27](#)
- 4.) Remove the Front Cover (FRU No. 304). Refer to section [8-4-8 on page 8-31](#)
- 5.) Remove the Front EMI cover. Refer to section [8-4-18 on page 8-41](#)
- 6.) Unscrew four screws (1-4) from the connector board.
- 7.) Disconnect connector board assy.

### 8-6-3-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

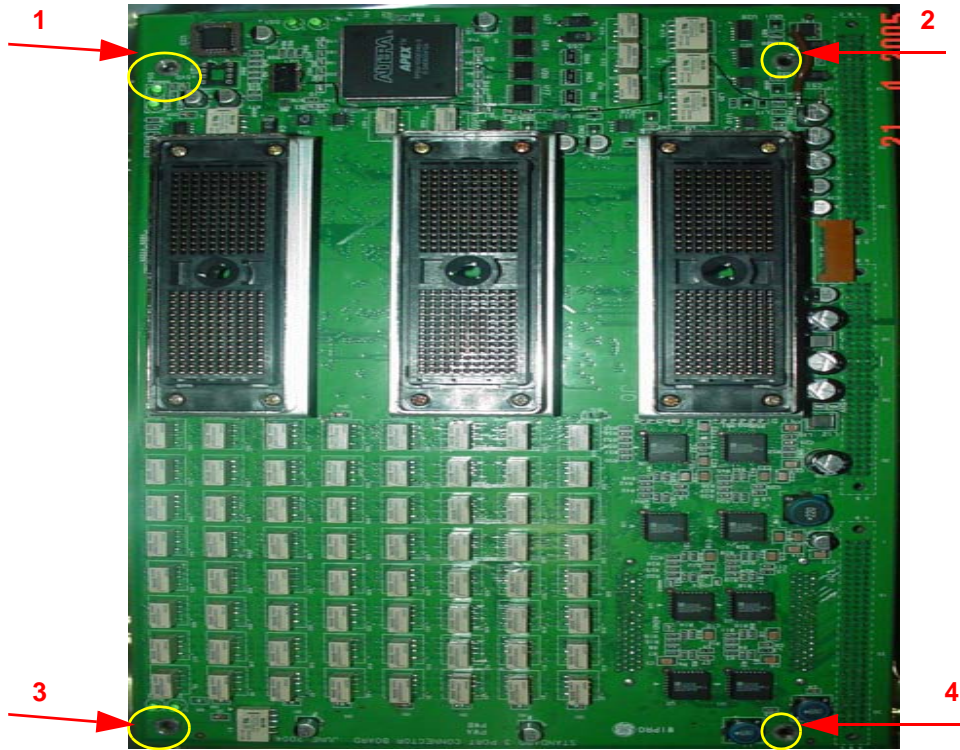


Figure 8-51 Connector Board Disassembly



### 8-6-4 Card Cage with Back Plane Board (FRU No. 607)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Card Cage with Back Plane Board.

#### 8-6-4-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-6-4-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-6-4-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-6-4-4 Removal Procedure



**CAUTION** An electronic discharge may damage a component. Turn OFF power and wear the wrist strap before you remove circuit boards. Do not unplug the power cord to keep ground continuity.

**Do not bend or flex the boards when mounting/dismounting each boards. Surface mount IC boards are very susceptible to damage from flex/torque.**

- 1.) Remove the Connector Board (FRU No.606). Refer to section [8-6-2 on page 8-59](#) .
- 2.) Remove the all Boards from the Card Cage (FRU NO. 601 to 605).
- 3.) Remove LVPS (FRU No. 801). Refer to section [8-7-2 on page 8-78](#)
- 4.) Disconnect all cable connected to the Backplane.
- 5.) Remove three screws (a, b, c) and four screws (1-4)
- 6.) Slide the Card cage to Right & Pull forward to remove the Card Cage with Backplane.

#### 8-6-4-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

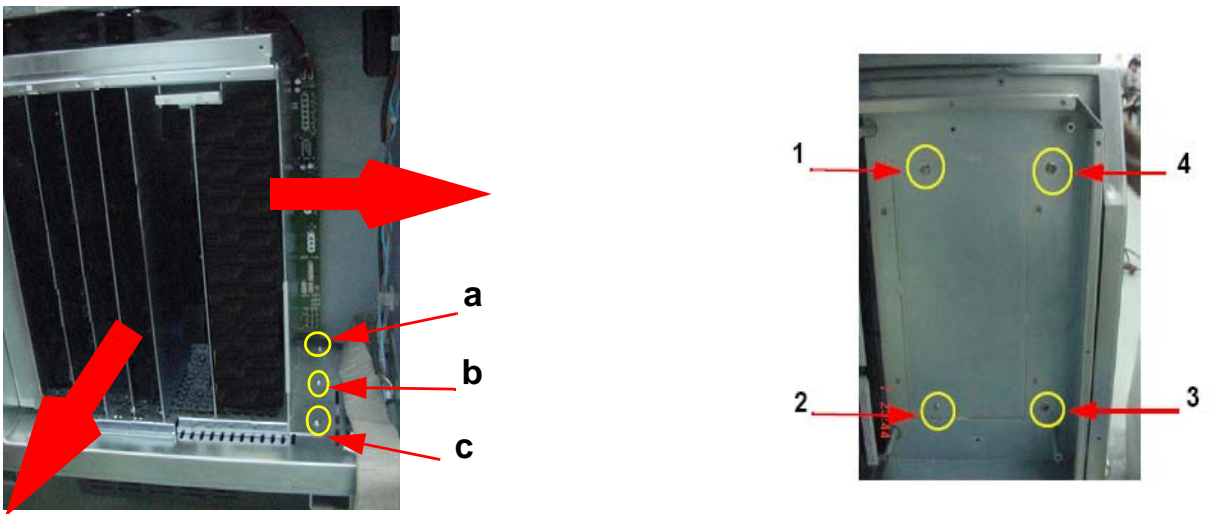


Figure 8-52 Card Cage with Backplane

## 8-6-5 BEP Assy (FRU No. 700)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Back End Processor (BEP) Assy.

### 8-6-5-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-5-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-5-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-5-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-53 on page 8-64](#).

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#).
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#).
- 3.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 4.) Unscrew four screws (1-4) to remove Rear Support Bracket
- 5.) Remove all Cables from the PC Rear Panel
- 6.) Unscrew 3 screws (a,b,c) from the PC Support Bracket
- 7.) Pull Forward to remove the BEP Assy.

### 8-6-5-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

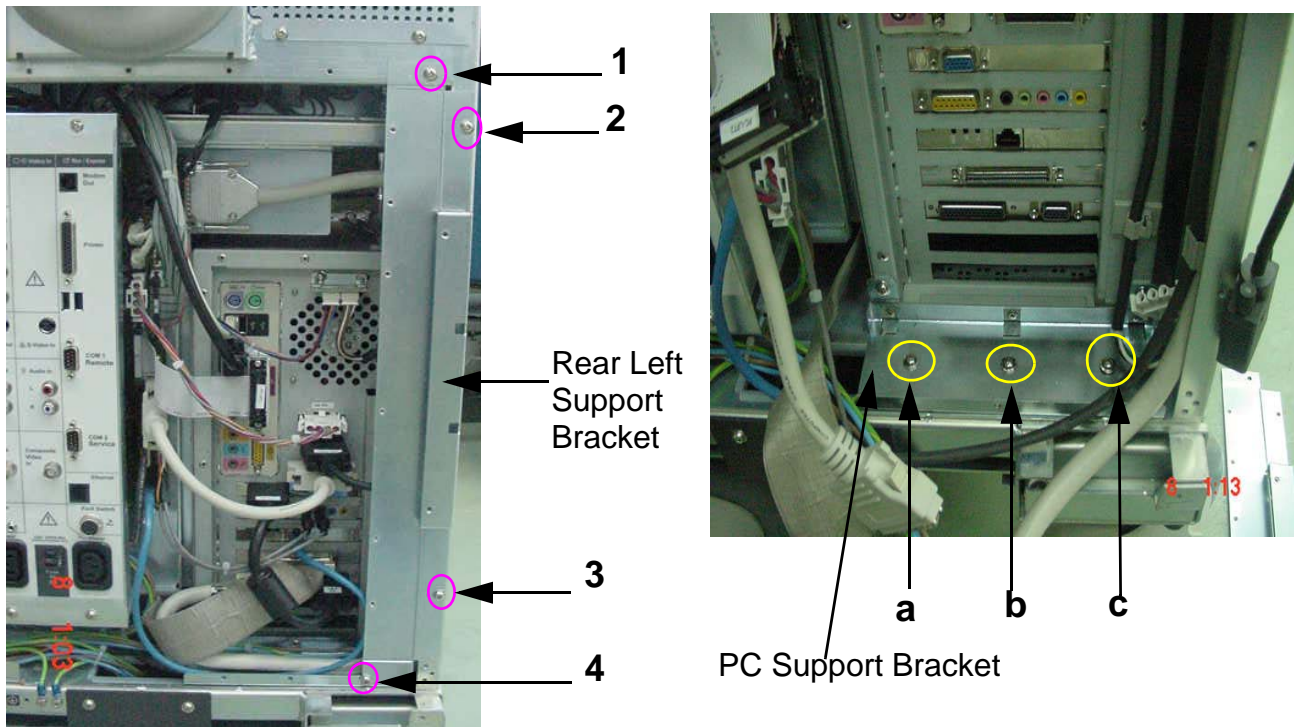


Figure 8-53 BEP Assy

8-6-5 BEP Assy (FRU No. 700) (cont'd)

8-6-5-6 BEP Assy Cable Identification

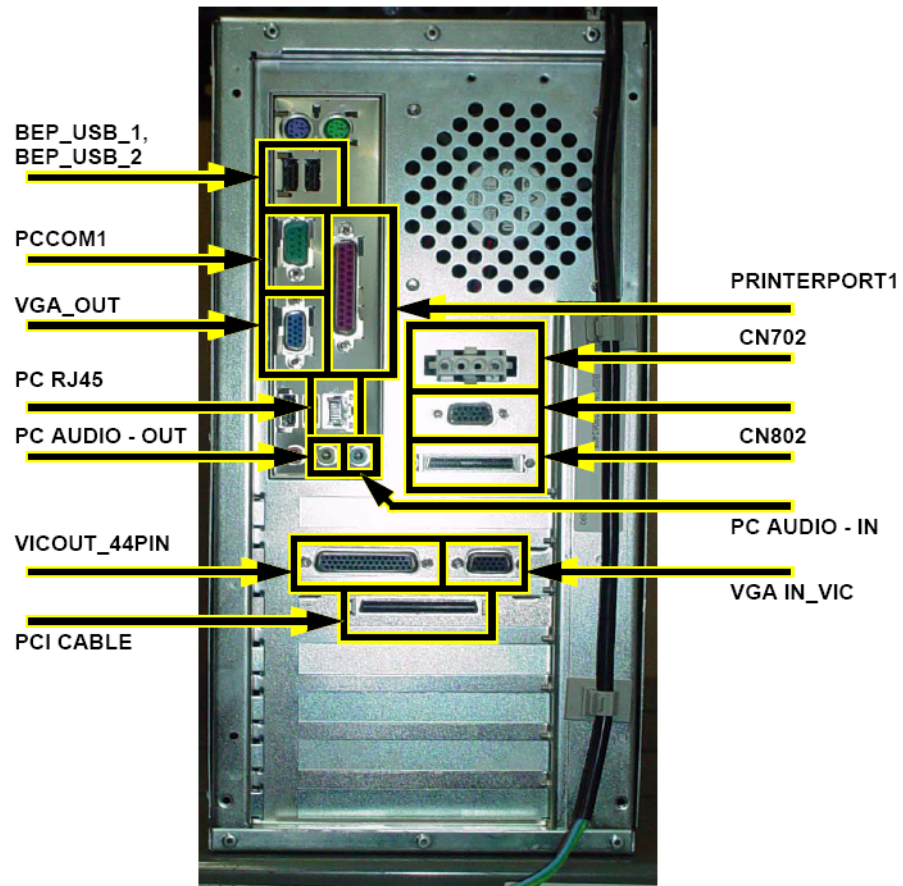


Figure 8-54 BEP Cable Identification



**CAUTION** BEP Assy contains battery above the ATX Power supply. Handle With care during Service & Replacements.

Disposal of Battery should follow local Environment Guidelines.

## 8-6-6 Hard Disc Drive (FRU no. 701)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Parts in the Back End Processor (BEP) Assy.

### 8-6-6-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-6-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-6-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-6-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-53 on page 8-64](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#) .
- 3.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 4.) Remove the BEP (FRU 700). Refer to [8-6-5 on page 8-64](#)
- 5.) Pull out the BEP Assy and place it on a flat surface.
- 6.) Unscrew the seven screws (1-7) and remove the side cover.
- 7.) Remove the FRC and the Power cable to the HDD (a, b) and the two screws (8, 9).
- 8.) Slide out the HDD mounting.
- 9.) Remove the two screws marked(10, 11 and 12, 13) on each side of the HDD mounting and remove the HDD.
- 10.) Replace this HDD.

### 8-6-6-5 Mounting Procedure

- 1.) Replace the parts in the order of removal

.8-6-5 Hard Disk Drive (FRU no. 702)(contd.)



Figure 8-55 HDD Replacement

## 8-6-7 Compact Disc Read Write Drive (FRU no. 702)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Parts in the Back End Processor (BEP) Assy.

### 8-6-7-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-7-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-7-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-7-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-53 on page 8-64](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#) .
- 3.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 4.) Remove the BEP (FRU 700). Refer to [8-6-5 on page 8-64](#)
- 5.) Pull out the BEP Assy and place it on a flat surface.
- 6.) Unscrew the seven screws (1-7) and remove the side cover.
- 7.) Remove the FRC and Power Cable to the CDRW (a, b).
- 8.) Unscrew the four screws (8-11) connecting the CDRW to the BEP cabinet.
- 9.) Pull forward and replace the CDRW.

### 8-6-7-5 Mounting Procedure

- 1.) Replace the parts in the order of removal.

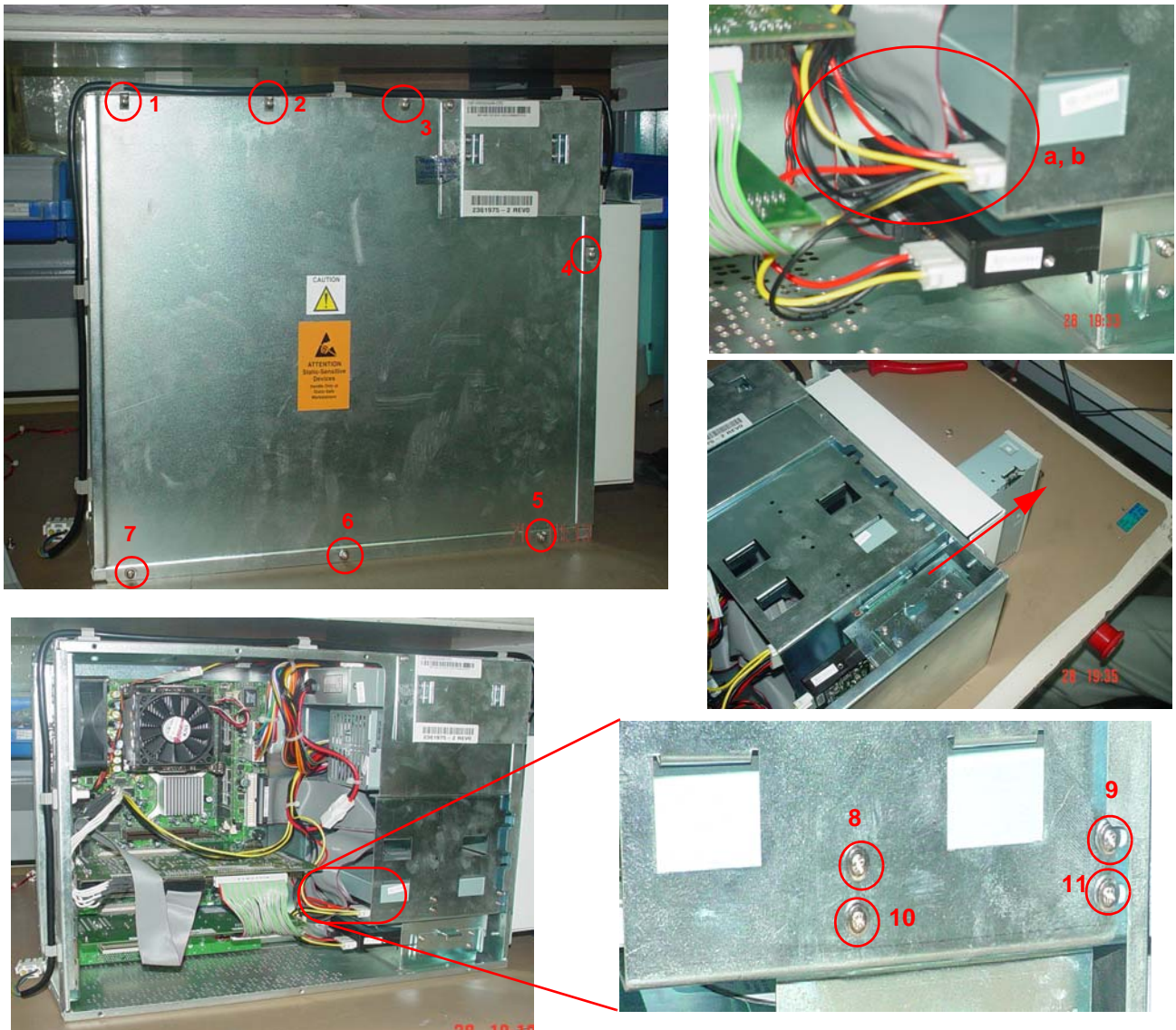


Figure 8-56 CDRW Replacement

## 8-6-8 BEP Power Supply (FRU no. 703)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Parts in the Back End Processor (BEP) Assy.

### 8-6-8-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-8-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-8-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-8-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-53 on page 8-64](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#) .
- 3.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 4.) Remove the BEP (FRU 700). Refer to [8-6-5 on page 8-64](#)
- 5.) Pull out the BEP Assy and place it on a flat surface.
- 6.) Unscrew the seven screws (1-7) and remove the side cover.
- 7.) Remove the cable connections as shown in the figures.
- 8.) Remove the BEP Front cover by removing the four indicated screws (8-11).
- 9.) Remove the cable from the cable clamp (a)
- 10.) Remove the seven screws, marked (12-18), attaching the power supply to the BEP and the four screws (19-22) attaching the battery to BEP.
- 11.) Replace the power supply and the battery.

### 8-6-8-5 Mounting Procedure

- 1.) Replace the parts in the order of removal.



2.) If replacement is done on BEP Ver1, close the PCI slot at the rear of the BEP.



Figure 8-57 BEP Power Supply Replacement

## 8-6-9 PCVIC PCB (FRU no. 704)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Parts in the Back End Processor (BEP) Assy.

### 8-6-9-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-9-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-9-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-9-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-53 on page 8-64](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#) .
- 3.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 4.) Remove the BEP (FRU 700). Refer to [8-6-5 on page 8-64](#)
- 5.) Pull out the BEP Assy and place it on a flat surface.
- 6.) Unscrew the seven screws (1-7) and remove the side cover.
- 7.) Unscrew the screw (8) of the PCVIC attaching it to the BEP.
- 8.) Remove the cables marked connecting to the PCVIC. Pull out the PCVIC.
- 9.) Replace this PCVIC using the new PCVIC

### 8-6-9-5 Mounting Procedure

- 1.) Replace the parts in the order of removal.

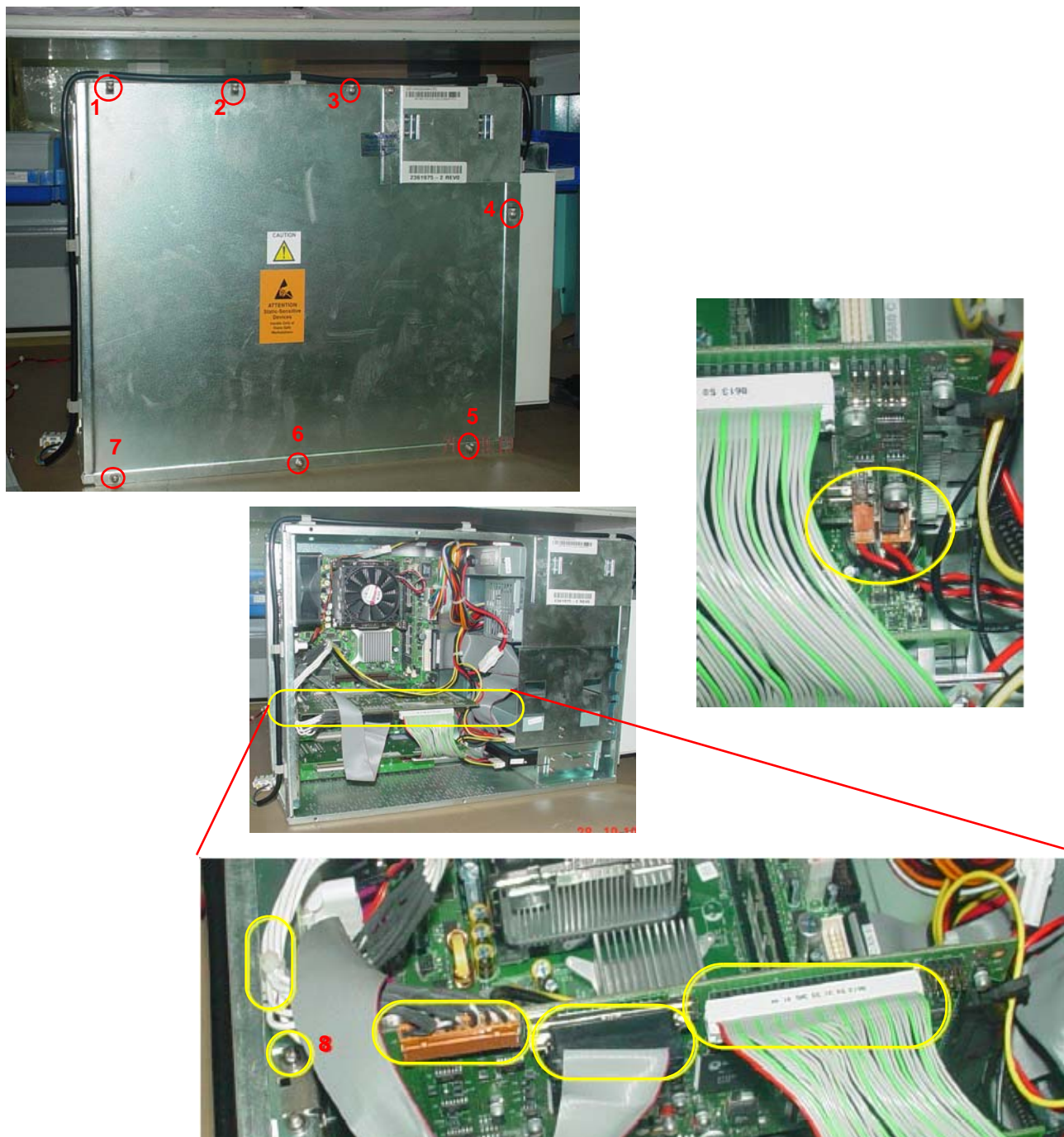


Figure 8-58 PCVIC Replacement

## 8-6-10 PC2IP PCB (FRU no. 706)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Parts in the Back End Processor (BEP) Assy.

### 8-6-10-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

### 8-6-10-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-6-10-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-6-10-4 Removal Procedure

Refer to [Figure 8-53 on page 8-64](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#) .
- 3.) Remove the Left Cover (FRU No.301). Refer to [8-4-2 on page 8-25](#)
- 4.) Remove the BEP (FRU 700). Refer to [8-6-5 on page 8-64](#)
- 5.) Pull out the BEP Assy and place it on a flat surface.
- 6.) Unscrew the seven screws (1-7) and remove the side cover.
- 7.) Unscrew the screw (8) and remove the cables marked. Pull out the PC2IP Card.
- 8.) Replace the PC2IP Card.

### 8-6-10-5 Mounting Procedure

- 1.) Replace the parts in the order of removal.

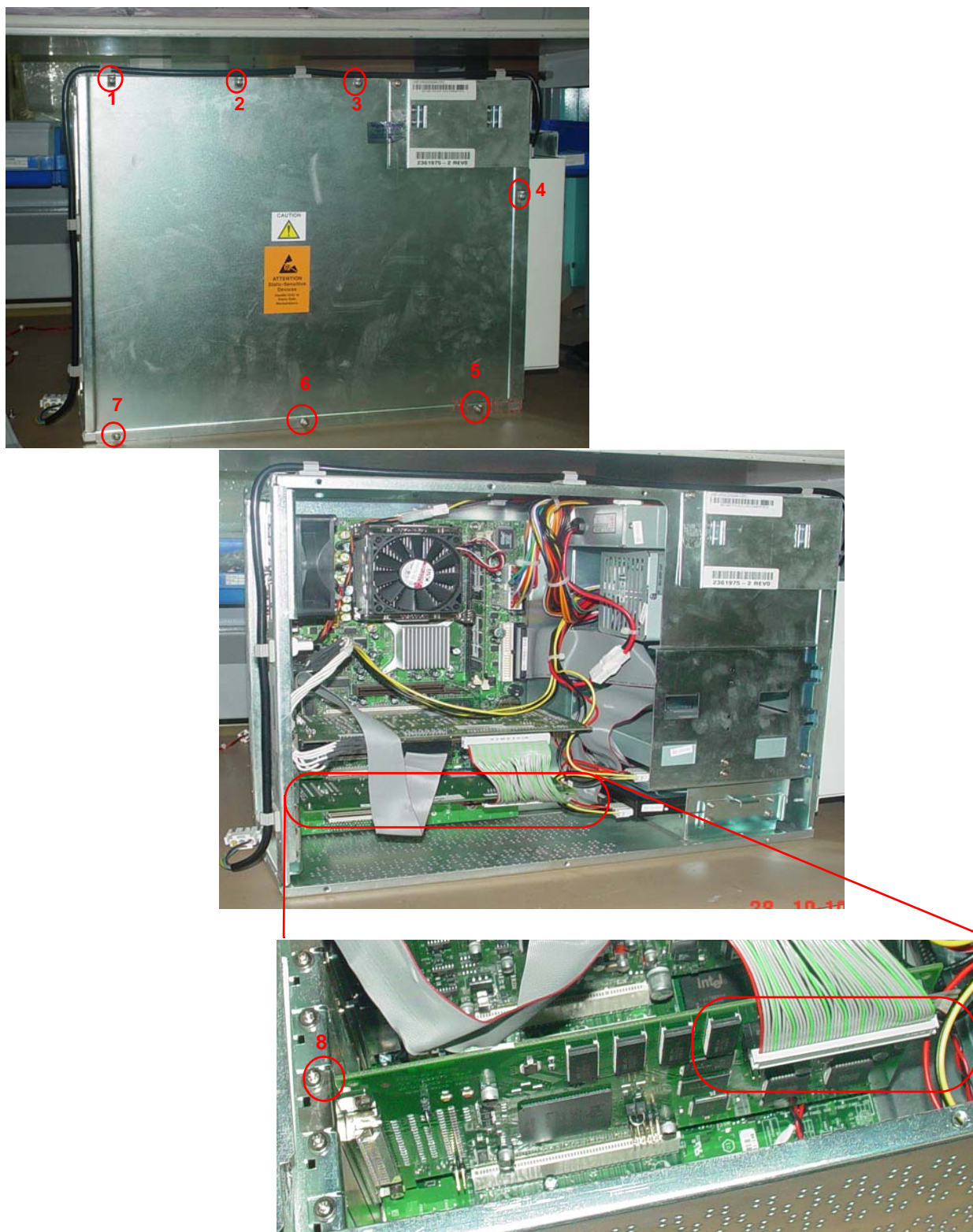


Figure 8-59 PC2IP Replacement

## Section 8-7 Power Block

### 8-7-1 Transformer Assy (FRU No. 800)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Transformer Assy.

#### 8-7-1-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


#### 8-7-1-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-7-1-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-7-1-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-60 on page 8-77](#) .

- 1.) Remove Rear cover (FRU No. 302). Refer to section [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#)
- 2.) Position the caster wheel straight
- 3.) Unscrew two screws (a,b)
- 4.) Remove GND cable(1)
- 5.) Remove two screws from the stopper plate
- 6.) Disconnect Cable Assy 13.
- 7.) Pull & Remove the Transformer Assy.

 **NOTICE** Replace Circuit Breaker and Noise Filter in case of transformer failure  
Refer Disassy procedure of Circuit Breaker and noise filter.

#### 8-7-1-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

8-7-1 Transformer Assy (FRU No. 800) (cont'd)

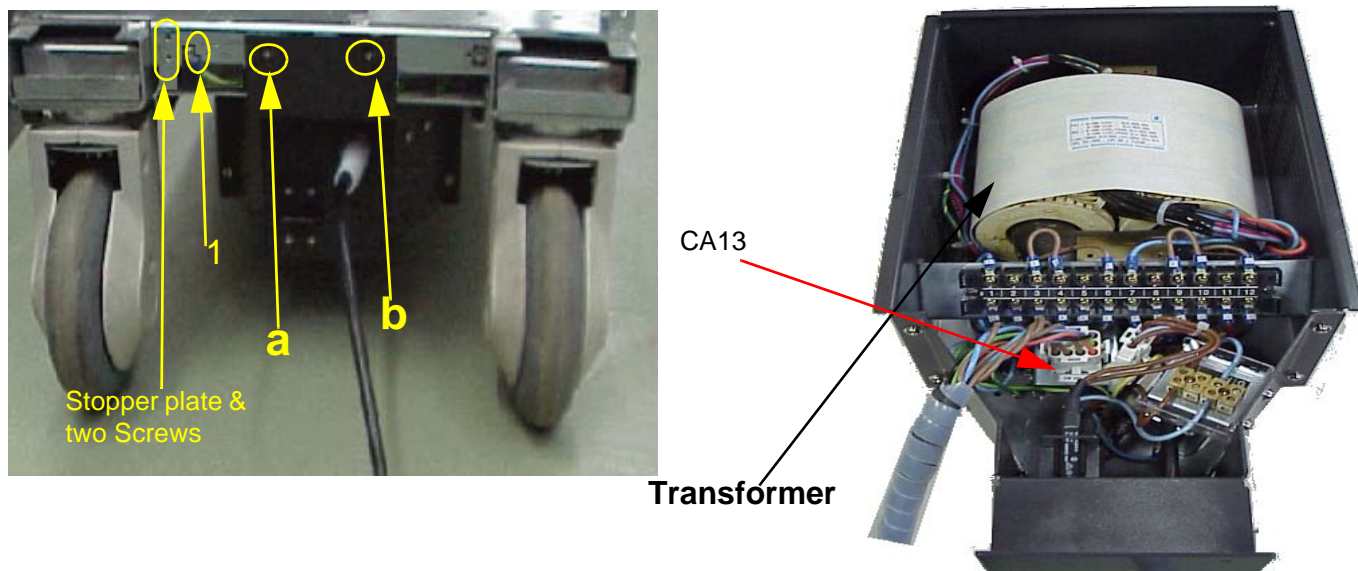


Figure 8-60 Transformer Assy Disassembly

## 8-7-2 LVPS Disassy (FRU No. 801)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the LVPS.

### 8-7-2-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


### 8-7-2-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-7-2-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-7-2-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-61 on page 8-79](#) .

- 1.) Remove Right Cover (FRU No. 300). Refer to section [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#)
- 2.) Remove Right EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-15 on page 8-38](#)
- 3.) Unscrew two screws (a,b).
- 4.) Remove two GND Wire (A, B) and disconnect Connectors 301 and 302.
- 5.) Disconnect the cables from the backplane. (CN36, CN29, CN31 and CN34).
- 6.) Disconnect from RPI to LVPS
- 7.) Slide out the LVPS.



8-7-2-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

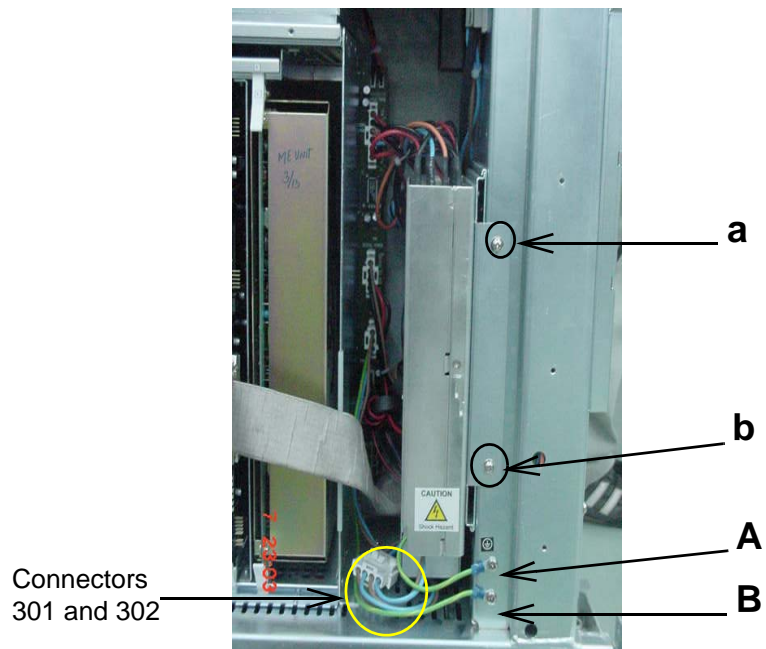


Figure 8-61 LVPS Replacement

## 8-7-3 AC Interface Board (ACI) (FRU No. 802)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the ACI Board.

### 8-7-3-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


### 8-7-3-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 persons, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-7-3-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-7-3-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-62 on page 8-81](#) .

- 1.) Remove the Rear Cover (FRU No.302). Refer to section [8-4-3 on page 8-26](#) .
- 2.) Remove the Right Cover (FRU No. 300). Refer to section [8-4-1 on page 8-23](#)
- 3.) Remove the Rear EMI Cover. Refer to section [8-4-16 on page 8-39](#)
- 4.) Remove Rear Right Support by removing four Screws (a, b, c, d)
- 5.) Disconnect eight cables (A - H)
- 6.) Unscrew eight screws (1-8)
- 7.) Remove the ACI Board.

8-7-3-5 Mounting procedure

Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal.

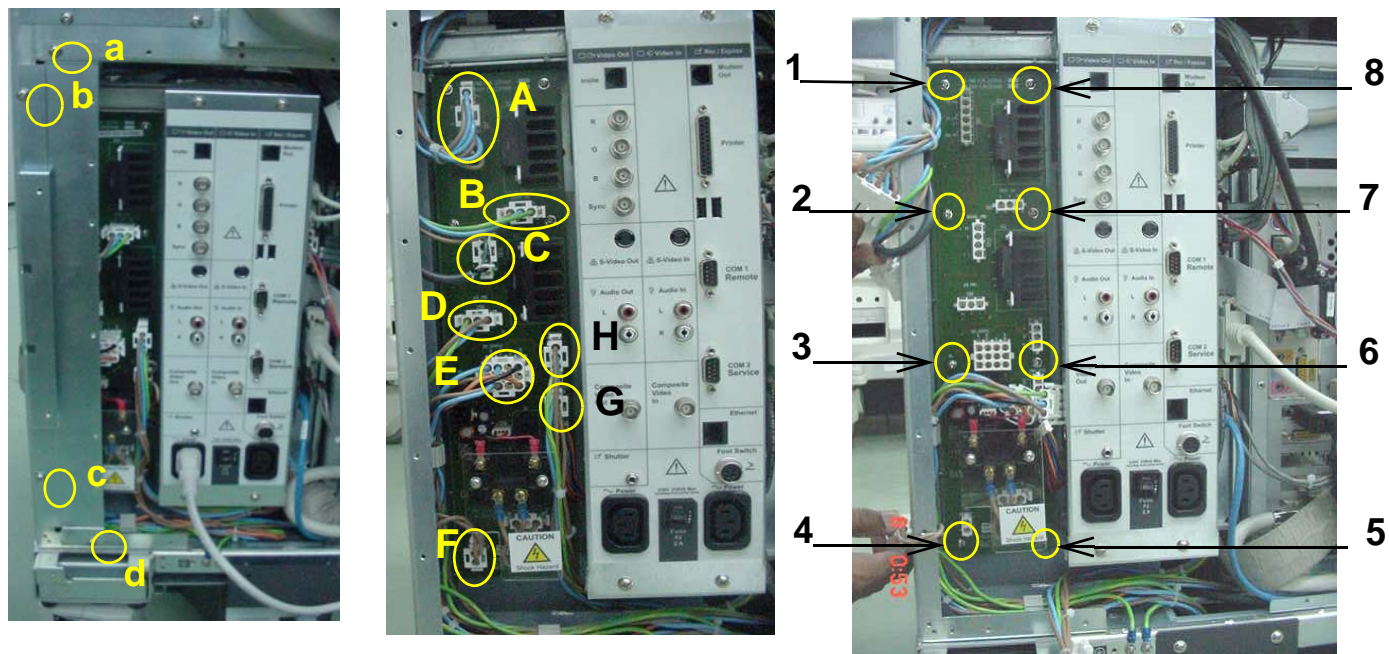


Figure 8-62 ACI Board Disassembly

## 8-7-4 Fuse (FRU No. 803)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Fuse.

### 8-7-4-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


### 8-7-4-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-7-4-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-7-4-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-63 on page 8-82](#) .

- 1.) Remove Transformer Assembly (FRU No. 800). Refer to [Section 8-7-1 on page 8-76](#)
- 2.) Pull two cables (a, b).
- 3.) Press the Fuse in the Direction shown by two arrows and pull the Fuse out.

### 8-7-4-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

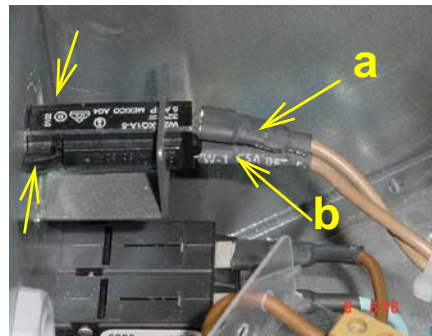
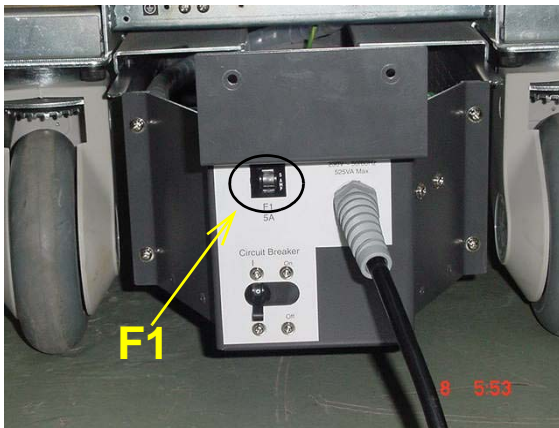


Figure 8-63 Fuse Disassembly

### 8-7-5 Circuit Breaker (FRU No. 804)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Circuit Breaker.

#### 8-7-5-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers

#### 8-7-5-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

#### 8-7-5-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

#### 8-7-5-4 Removal Procedure



**CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-64 on page 8-83](#) .

- 1.) Remove Transformer Assembly (FRU No. 800). Refer to Section [8-7-1 on page 8-76](#)
- 2.) Pull four cables (a, b, c, d). Cable a,b is light blue in color and Cable c,d is brown in color
- 3.) Unscrew four screws (1-4)
- 4.) Remove Circuit Breaker.

#### 8-7-5-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

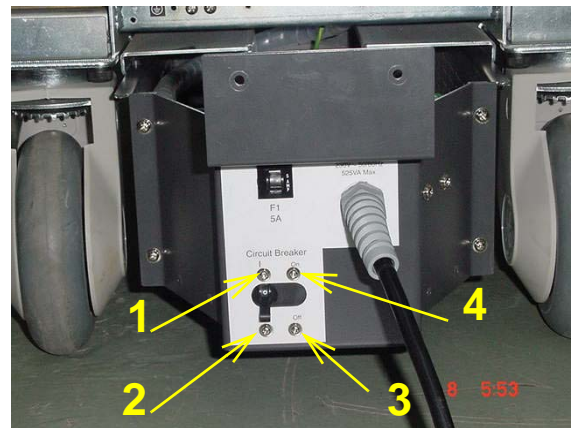
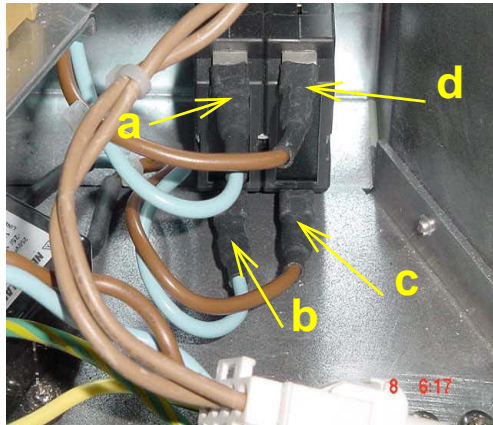


Figure 8-64 Circuit Breaker Disassembly



**CAUTION** Do not Interchange input (line) to output (load) cables.  
Cables a, d from Terminal block (Input) and Cables b,c to Noise Filter (Output).

## 8-7-6 Noise Filter(FRU No. 805)

Purpose: This is a description on how to remove and replace the Circuit Breaker.

### 8-7-6-1 Tools

- Common Phillips screwdrivers


### 8-7-6-2 Needed Manpower

- 1 person, 15 minutes + travel

### 8-7-6-3 Preparations

- Shut Down the System and switch off the Main Breaker at the rear as described in [4-3-1-3 on page 4-4](#)

### 8-7-6-4 Removal Procedure

 **CAUTION** Do not wear the ESD wrist strap when you remove a part of power supply unit. Turn OFF power and unplug the power cord before removing a part of power supply unit. However be sure to turn off power and wear the strap before you remove a circuit boards.

Refer to [Figure 8-64 on page 8-83](#) .

- 1.) Remove Transformer Assembly (FRU No. 800). Refer to Section [8-7-1 on page 8-76](#)
- 2.) Remove the 3 screws marked as “a, b, c” as seen in [Figure 8-65 on page 8-84](#)

### 8-7-6-5 Mounting procedure

- 1.) Install the new parts in the reverse order of removal

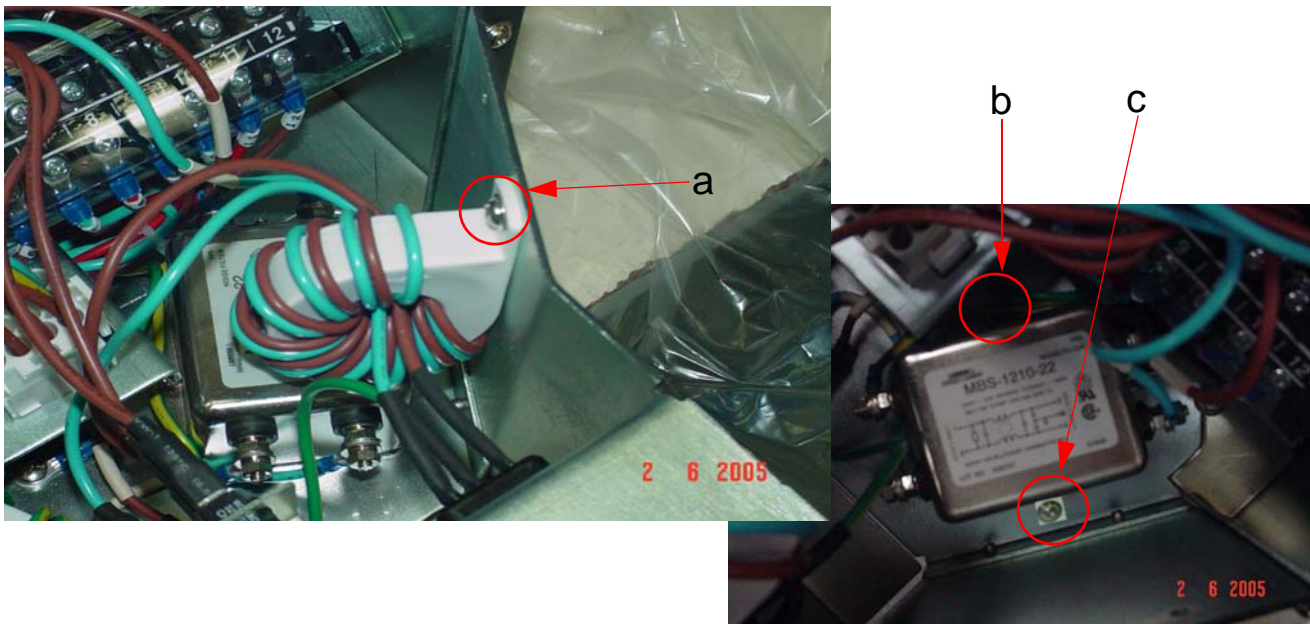



Figure 8-65 Noise Filter Disassembly

 **CAUTION** Do not Interchange input (line) to output (load) cables.  
Cables a, d from Terminal block (Input) and Cables b,c to Noise Filter (Output).

## Section 8-8 Software Loading Procedure

### 8-8-1 Installing Base System Software and Application Software

#### 8-8-1-1 General

This describes a full system software loading (Windows 2000 Operating System + Echoloader Application) procedure.

Use this instructions when:

- Performing the System Version-up (OS + Application)
- Replacing the HDD with a new one (OS + Application)



**CAUTION** Make sure that all images have been reconstructed and archived on the CD-R or MOD before performing Base System Software (OS) and Application software installation (Refer to Operator Manual). This procedure will re-initialize the hard disk, erasing all images and patient data.

A Software Loading procedure is outlined:

**Table 8-2 Software Loading Procedures**

Procedures		Prerequisite	Manpower (Approximately.)
1	Saving the Data (Using Utility Function)	a Blank CD-R or MOD	15 minutes
	Saving the Data (Using Window Explorer)		
2	Checking PC Box Type	None	5 minutes
3	Installing Base System Software (For Adapted/ XXXXXXX or later)	LOGIQ3 Base System Software Load Image CD-ROM	40 minutes
4	Installing Application Software	LOGIQ3 Application Software CD-ROM	20 minutes
5	Restoring the Data	None	10 minutes
6	Functional Checks	None	30 minutes
Total Manpower			2 h or 2h20m



**NOTICE** The “Saving the Data” procedure described above does NOT include the image back-up procedures.

**8-8-1-2 Saving the Data (Using Utility Function)**

Always use this back-up procedure.

1.) Format CD-R:

- a.) On the scan screen, touch **Utility**. The OPERATOR LOGIN window appears.
- b.) Change the User level to **Admin**, then enter **Password**. Then click on **Log on**.

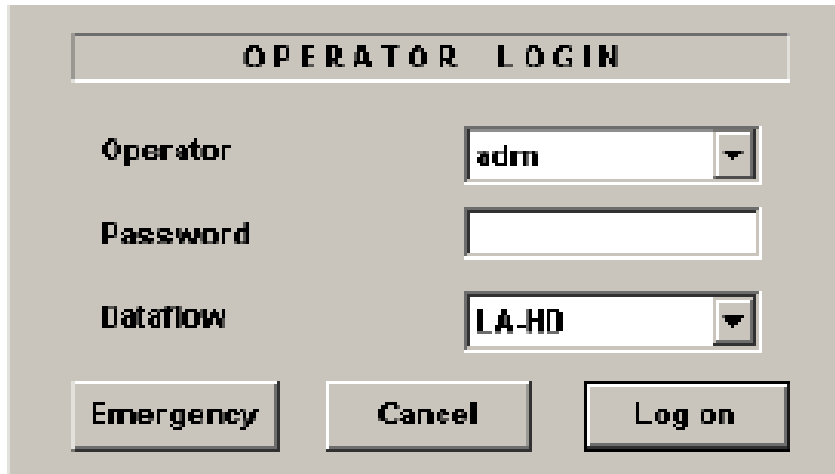


Figure 8-1 Operator LOGIN window

- c.) Select **Admin > Connectivity > Tools**.
  - d.) Insert a blank CD-R into the drive.
  - e.) Type a proper label name (e.x. 011201data), then click on **Format**.
  - f.) The warning message appears. Click on **OK**. The formatting procedure starts.
- 2.) Saving the user data:
- a.) Select **Admin > Backup**.
  - b.) Check the mark at the followings



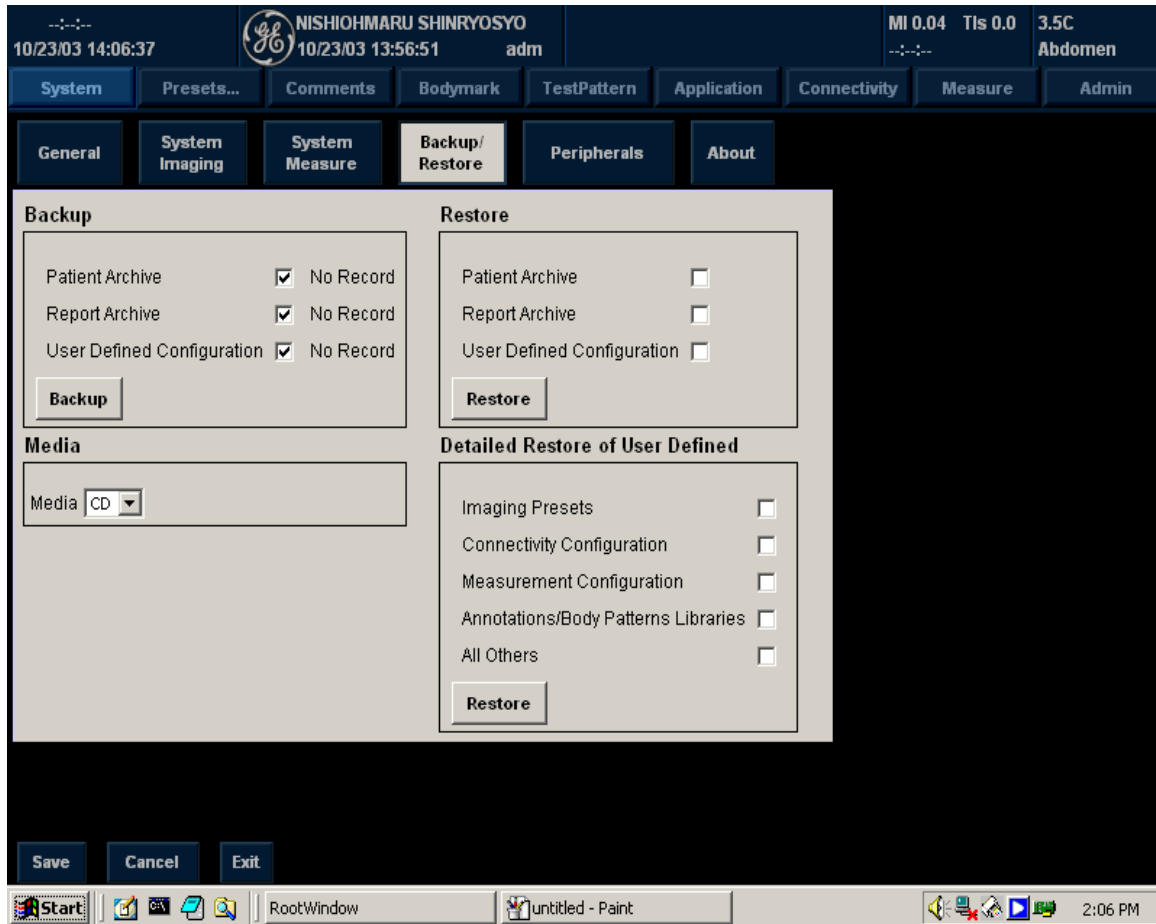


Figure 8-66 Backup Screen

- c.) Click on **Backup Now**.
- d.) The warning message appears. Click on **OK**. The back-up procedure starts.
- e.) Verify that “Finished, OK” appears in the Result column.
- f.) Press the eject button of the drive to eject the CD-R.
- g.) Write down the comment (e.x. 011201 data) on the surface of the CD-R using a soft felt-tip pen.

- 3.) Write down the following parameters:
  - a.) Select **Admin > Connectivity > tcpip**.

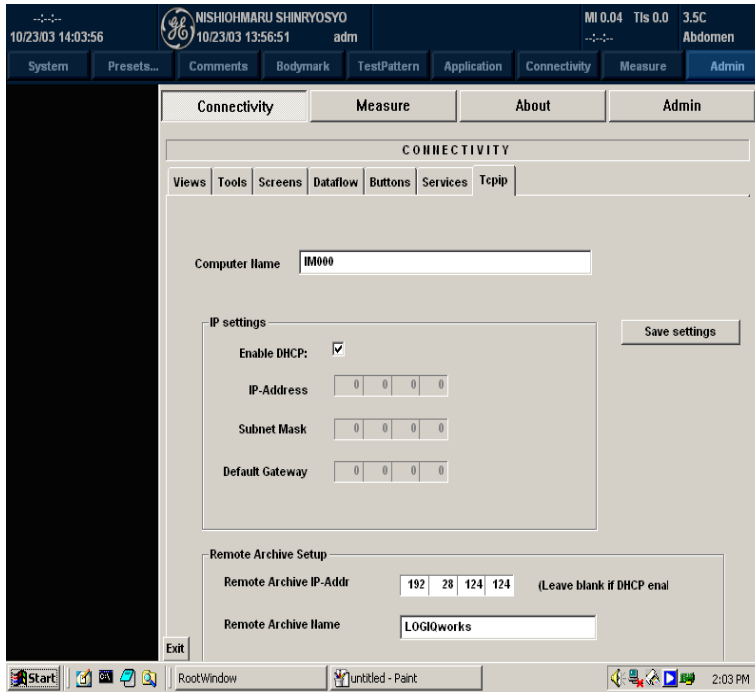


Figure 8-67 TCPIP Screen

- b.) Write down the followings:

Table 8-3 Writing Down the TCPIP Parameters

Items	Parameters
Computer Name	
IP Address	
Subnet Mask	
Default Gateway	

- 4.) Power OFF the scanner.
- 5.) The System Exit window appears. Click on **Shut down...**

## Section 8-9 Base Load Software Load

### 8-9-1 Manpower

One person,.5 hour + travel

### 8-9-2 Tools

None

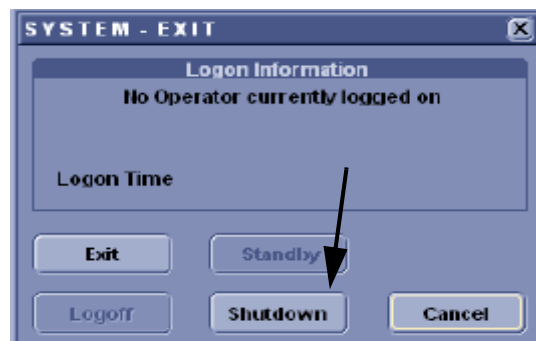
### 8-9-3 Preparations

- 1.) Back up any customer preset configurations if necessary.
- 2.) Export and patient exam files if necessary.

### 8-9-4 Base Load Software Load Procedure

*NOTE:* While we do not believe it is necessary, It would not hurt to disconnect the system from the network and remove all transducers.

- 1.) Insert the disk labeled “Base System Software Load Image” into the CDROM drive.
- 2.) Properly Turn Off the scanner. If necessary, hold down the button until the light goes amber.



**Figure 8-68 Shutdown Dialog Box**

- 3.) Turn on the scanner. You will see a screen showing Norton Ghost. This automatically loads a base set of software onto the hard disk. Let it run to completion (Approximately 10 minutes). A message will be displayed when the process is complete.

## 8-9-4 Base Load Software Load Procedure (cont'd)

The "Base System Software Load Image" process has successfully completed. You will now need to load the "Application Software" onto your system.

Please remove the CDROM from the drive, power cycle the system and then continue with the "Application Software" load procedure.

### Figure 8-69 Base

- 4.) Remove the CD-ROM

**NOTE:** Remove the CD-ROM from the drive; otherwise you will be repeating the Base System Software Load process.

- 5.) After removing the CDROM from the drive, properly turn off the scanner.
- 6.) Turn the scanner back on. It will now boot up and automatically log on (Base Load -10 or later) to start checking hardware and mapping disk drives. This is a normal and should be allowed to run to completion.

**NOTE:** While the script is running, several windows or dialog boxes will appear on the screen. Wait for the "System Settings Change" dialog box "Restart computer now" (approximately 3 minutes after the desktop). Do NOT touch the system during this process. Activating the keyboard, mouse or front panel could corrupt the installation.

**NOTE:** At times it may look like the system is unresponsive. PATIENCE! The process takes 3-4 minutes. Wait for the "Restart computer now" message to appear before activating the keyboard, mouse or front panel controls.

- 7.) When you get a message to reboot Windows, wait 15 seconds or until the hour glass disappears and select YES.

### 8-9-5 Optional Manual Drive Remapping

Although the Base System Image Software Load is automatic, if the drive remapping is not accomplished properly, the changes can be done manually.

- Follow the instructions in ["8-9-11 "Optional Procedure for Changing \(Re-mapping\) Drive Letters" on page 8-95](#) to check the drive mapping. If the mapping is not correct, complete the procedure.

### 8-9-6 Optional Manual Configurations

The Base Image Software Load is automatic. However, there are two configurations of LOGIQ 3 Back End Processors. On older or clinical systems you may need to perform some checks and windows may request that you perform certain actions. These checks and actions are described below.

- Any time you get a request to reboot Windows click OK, and let Windows reboot.

#### Check Sound Card Configuration

- Follow the instructions in [8-9-10 "Optional Check Devices" on page 8-93](#).

### 8-9-7 Loading Applications Software

- Follow the instructions in ["Section 8-10 "Loading Application Software After a Base Image Load" on page 8-100](#).
- .

### 8-9-8 Final System Setup

- Follow the instructions in ["8-9-8 "Final System Setup" on page 8-91"](#) procedure.

## 8-9-9 serialno.txt File Creation

With the exception of Demo Systems, if the system serial number is not set correctly the authorized options installed on the customer systems will not function.

Prior to the upgrade there is no way for the systems in the field to record the serial number of the system to the backplane. The *C:\serialno.txt* on the hard drive has been used to record the system serial number up to now.

As part of this FMI the backplane storage code is now available. After an Applications Software Upgrade, when the system is powered up, the *serialno.txt* file will be read from the hard drive and written to the backplane. This will all work well unless:

- A system Base Image Software was performed. In this case the serialno.txt file must be created and put back on the "C" drive.
  - \* Boot up the system with the service dongle attached to the USB port.
  - \* It will boot up into Windows.
  - \* Go to Start>Programs>Accessories>Notepad. Use Windows Notepad and type in the serial number of the system. Exactly as it is on the console rating plate. (i.e. **57493US2**)
  - \* Check the save path for this text file. Save the file **directly** to the "C:\\" drive as file name *serialno.txt*. It will **NOT** function if saved in any other location.
- There may be a rare case where the *serialno.txt* file does not contain the correct system serial number. If this is the case, repeat the previous steps to edit the serialno.txt file to the proper serial number,

*NOTE: If there is any doubt about the contents of serialno.txt, it should be checked before the application is first run, as once the serial number is written into the backplane it can only be changed with a diagnostic.*

The serialno.txt file writes it's information into the Backplane EEPROM. You must use the diagnostic utility to enter the Console Serial Number in the EEP-BP VPD Data.txt file.

## 8-9-10 Optional Check Devices

- 1.) On the desktop, right click on the MY COMPUTER icon, and select PROPERTIES.
- 2.) Select the Hardware tab, and then the DEVICE MANAGER. It may take up to a minute for the Device Manager screen to appear.

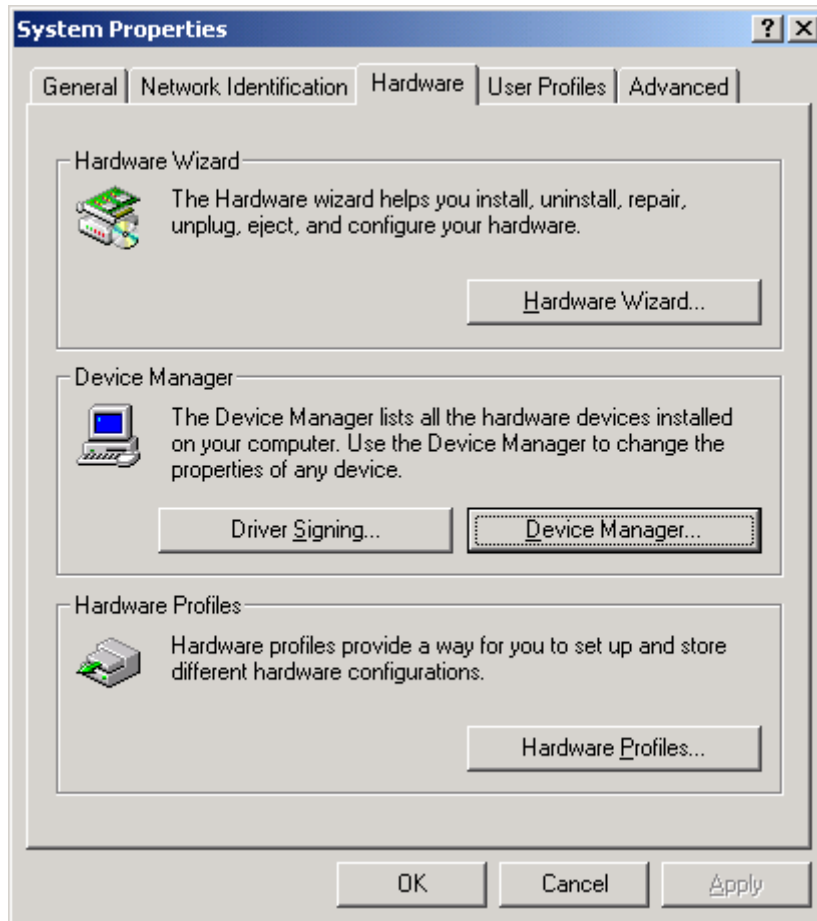


Figure 8-70 System Properties

### 8-9-10 Optional Check Devices (cont'd)

- 3.) Verify that the Device Manager appears as shown in [Figure 8-71](#). Your display may vary.
- 4.) You should see no devices with question marks or other icons, **except the VIA PCI Audio Controller (WDM)**. This one device will be shown as below with a red **X** through it.
- 5.) There are two audio controllers. The VIA PCI Audio Controller (WDM) is disabled so that the Doppler audio works correctly through the Creative Labs SB Live series sound card.

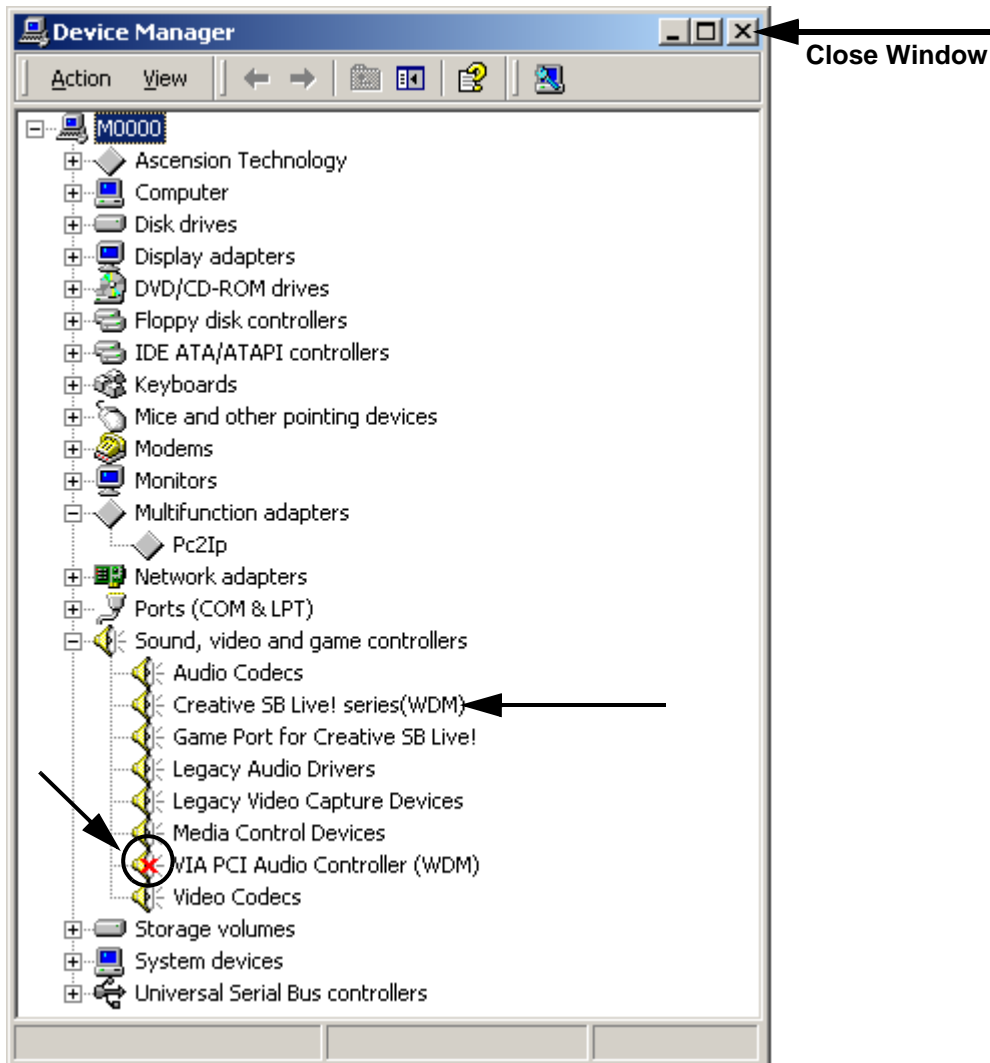


Figure 8-71 Device Manager

- 6.) Close the **Device Manager** window by selecting the close window X in the corner.
- 7.) Close the **System Properties** window by selecting the close window X in the corner.



### 8-9-11 Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters

An automated process was developed for this. It was implemented in Base Image Load -9 or later.

*NOTE: If you are using a Base Image Load of -8 or earlier, or the -9 and later Base Image Load fails to properly map the drives, proceed with manually assigning the proper drive letters.*

First check to see if you need to change the drive letters on the CDROM drive and the Magneto Optical drives – they **SHOULD** be G: and H: respectively.

Right-click on the “My Computer” icon on the Windows desktop. Select “Manage” you should see a screen like [Figure 8-72](#).

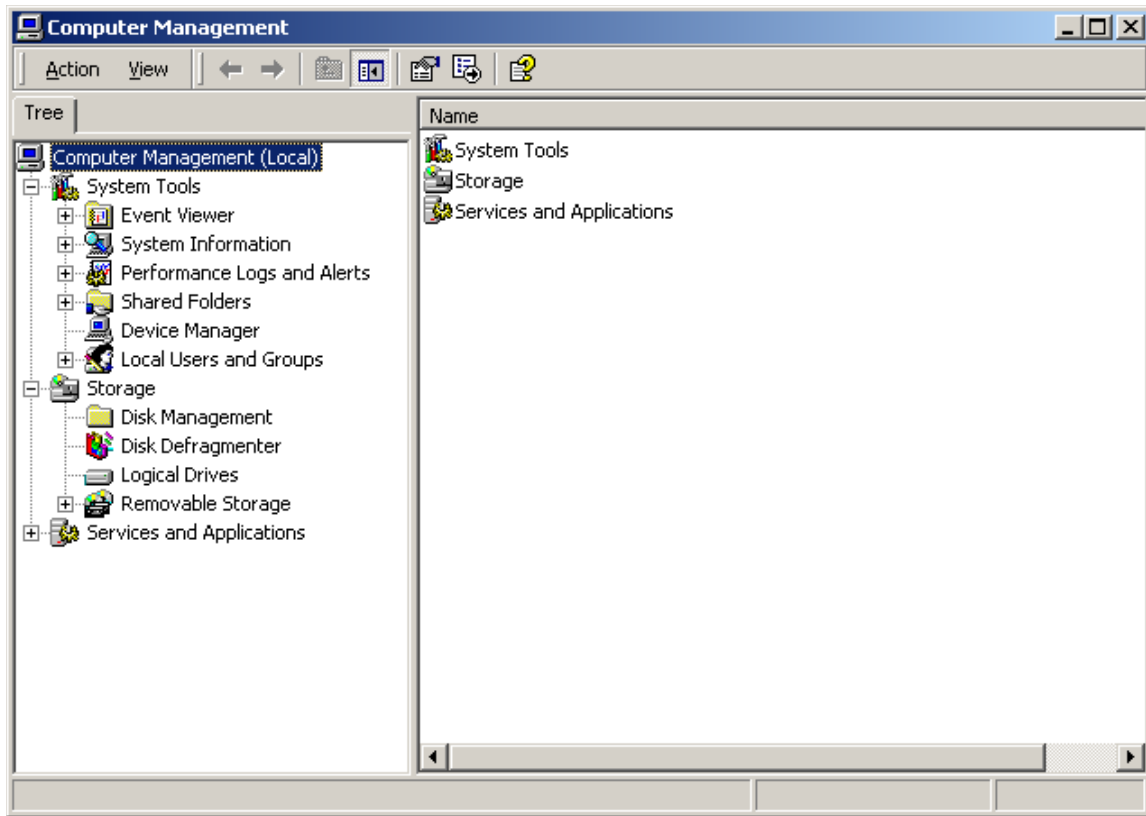


Figure 8-72 Computer Management

Click on the “Disk Management” icon on the left side of the screen under “Storage”. You’ll see this screen like [Figure 8-73](#).

### 8-9-11 Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters (cont'd)

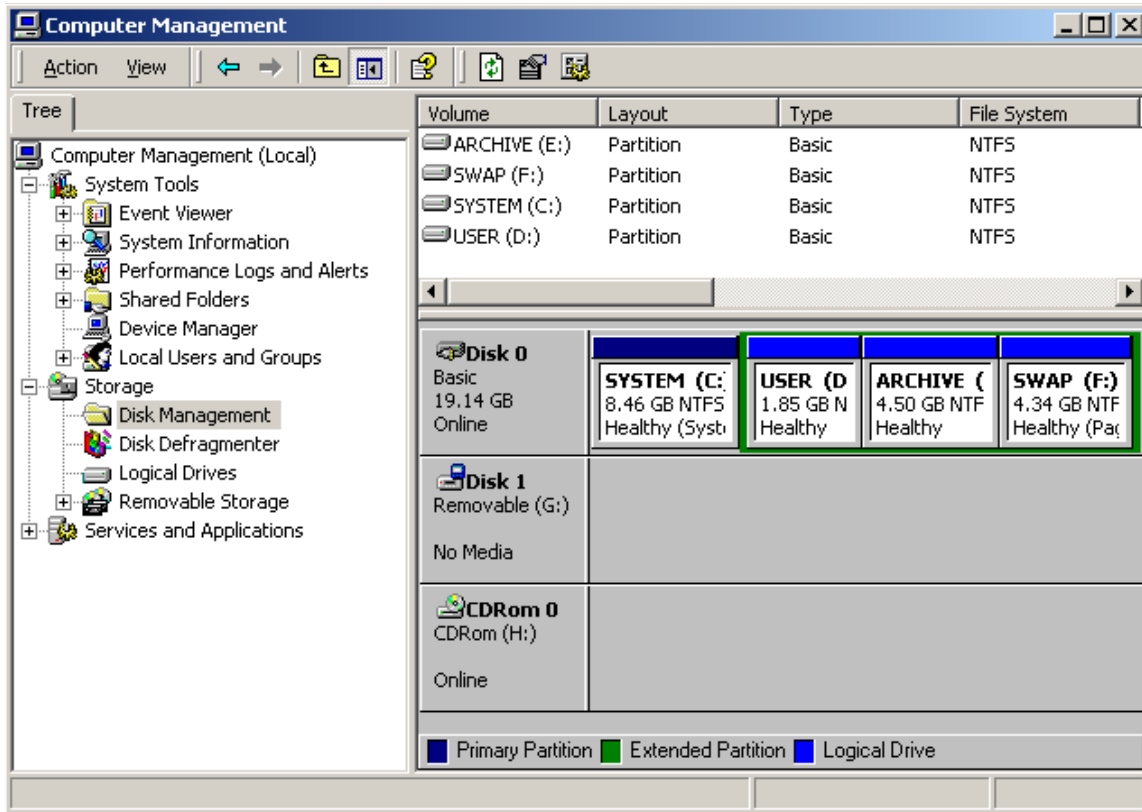
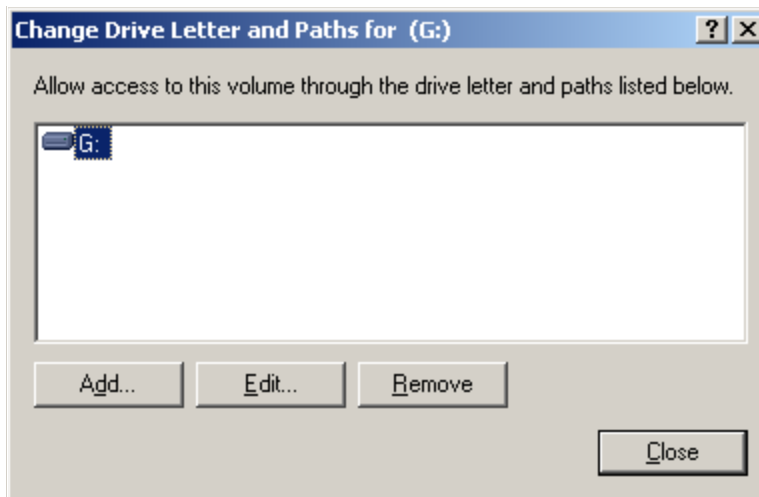


Figure 8-73 Disk Management

Notice that “Disk 1 Removable” is shown as drive letter “G:” and “CD-ROM 0” is shown as drive letter “H:” - **These are incorrect drive letters.** This procedure will show you how to change them to the proper designations which is the reverse of how they are now.

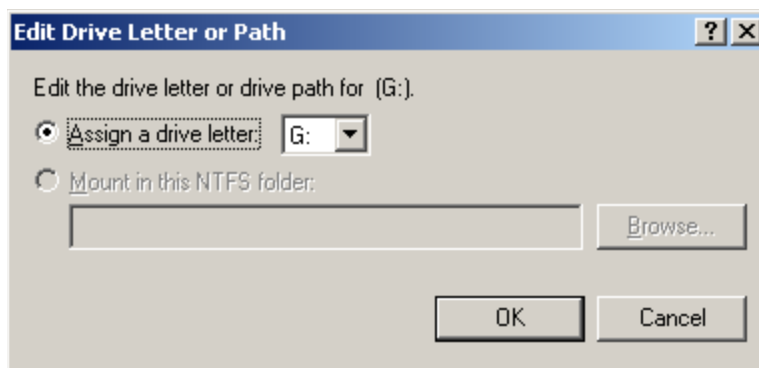
Left-click on the “Disk 1 Removable” and select “Change Drive Letter and Path...”. You’ll see a screen as shown in [Figure 8-74](#).

### 8-9-11 Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters (cont'd)



**Figure 8-74 Change Drive Letter and Path**

Right-click on "Edit..." and you'll see a screen as shown in Figure 8-75.



**Figure 8-75 Select Drive to Assign**

Now Right-click on the little down arrow and you'll see the list box open with a list of available drive letters. Select the letter "I:"

## 8-9-11 Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters (cont'd)

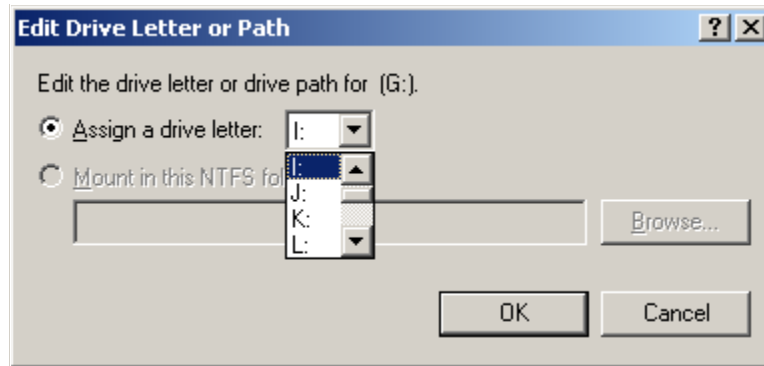


Figure 8-76 Select Drive Letter I

Now Right-click "OK". You'll see the following message as shown in [Figure 8-77](#).

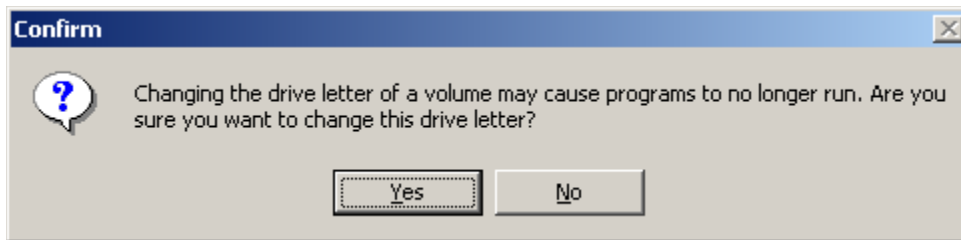


Figure 8-77 Confirm Drive Letter Change

Right-click "OK" to acknowledge the message.

Now follow the previous steps again and change the "CD-ROM 0" to "G:".

Follow the previous steps one more time to change the "Disk 1 Removable" to "H:".

When you're all done the settings should look like those shown in [Figure 8-78](#).

8-9-11 Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters (cont'd)

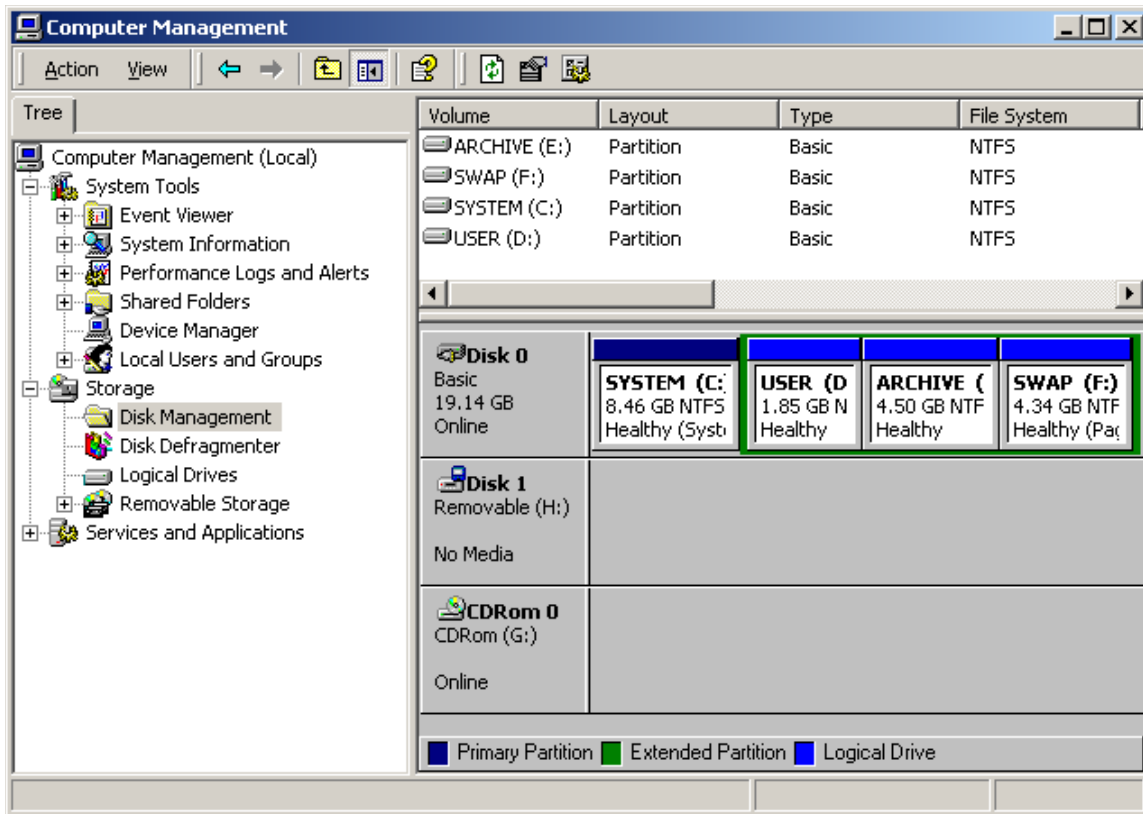


Figure 8-78 Confirm Drive Letter Assignment

Congratulations! You've just successfully re-mapped the drive letters of the CDROM drive and Magneto Optical drive to their proper configuration.

## Section 8-10 Loading Application Software After a Base Image Load

### 8-10-1 Manpower

One person, 0.5 hour + travel

### 8-10-2 Tools

None

### 8-10-3 Preparations

Loading applications software is necessary after a Base Image Software Load.

If this is the first time for loading Applications Software (after a Base Image Load) proceed with the following process.

If this is NOT the first time for loading Applications software (just an applications update) then proceed to [Section 8-12 "Upgrading Application Software" on page 8-111](#).

### 8-10-4 Image Management Guide

**Save As to View on any PC** - Use this to save images (Dicom or Raw Dicom) in a computer-friendly format (.avi or .jpeg) so you can view it on any PC.

**Move Images to Archive** - Use this to take images off your Ultrasound system on to removable media for long-term archive. This is the way to free up hard disk space, rather than deleting images.

**Export/Import Data/Images Between Systems** - Use this to copy both patient data and images for specified patient(s) from one system to another.

#### 8-10-4-1 Save As (Saving Images to CD-ROM to View on Any PC)

To save images to the CD-ROM:

- 1.) Insert the CD.
- 2.) Go to Utility --> Connectivity --> Tools. Select the Media as CD Rewritable.
- 3.) Press Format to format the CD-ROM.
- 4.) Select the image(s) to be saved to CD-ROM, press Menu, and select Save As.
- 5.) The SAVE AS menu appears.

8-10-4-1 Save As (Saving Images to CD-ROM to View on Any PC) (cont'd)

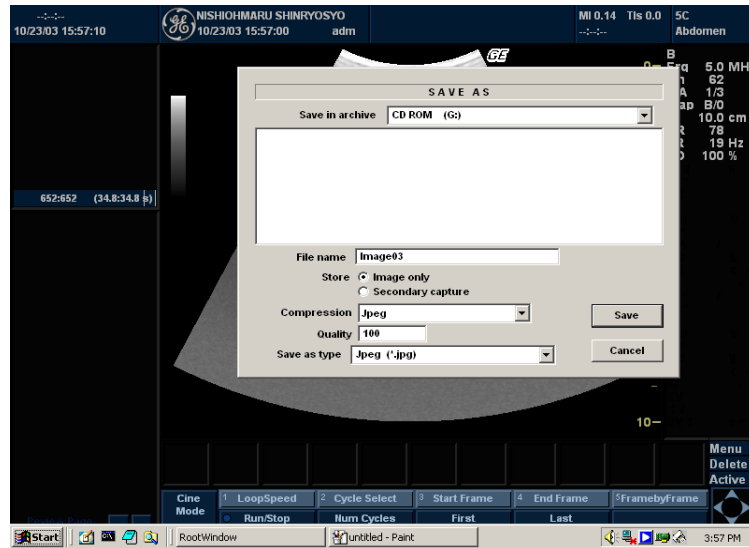


Figure 8-79 Save As Menu

- 6.) Specify Compression and Save As Type and press Save. The image is saved to the CD-ROM.
- 7.) When you have put all the images you want on the CD, press F3 to eject the CD-ROM. Select CD Rewritable.

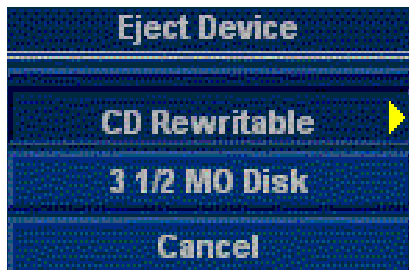


Figure 8-80 Eject Media Menu

- 8.) Finalize the CD-ROM by selecting Yes. The CD-ROM is ejected from the system.

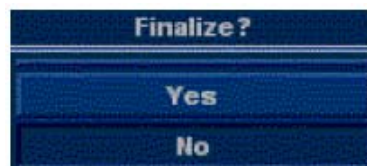


Figure 8-81 Finalize CD-ROM Menu

**Storing Images with More Resolution**

To store images with more resolution than is available with the JPEG selection, select Save As and select AVI as the Save As Type. You can save single images as .avi files.

8-10-4-1 Save As (Saving Images to CD-ROM to View on Any PC) (cont'd)

Table 8-4 Higher Resolution Store Options

Image Type	Store as Image Only	Store as Secondary Capture
CINE Loop	Gives you a loop of just the image (no title bar and scan information).	Gives you a single image of the video area. DO NOT DO THIS BECAUSE YOU DO NOT KNOW WHICH IMAGE FROM THE LOOP THAT YOU ARE GETTING.
Still Image	Gives you a single image (no title bar and scan information).	Gives you a single image of the video area.

8-10-4-2 Moving Images (Image Archive)

To archive images:

- 1.) Insert the backup media. Format the backup media, CD-ROM or MOD. Select the Utility tab on the Touch Panel. Select Connectivity, then Tools. You MUST set up a protocol for locating images on the media by labeling it consistently. The best way is to label images by date.

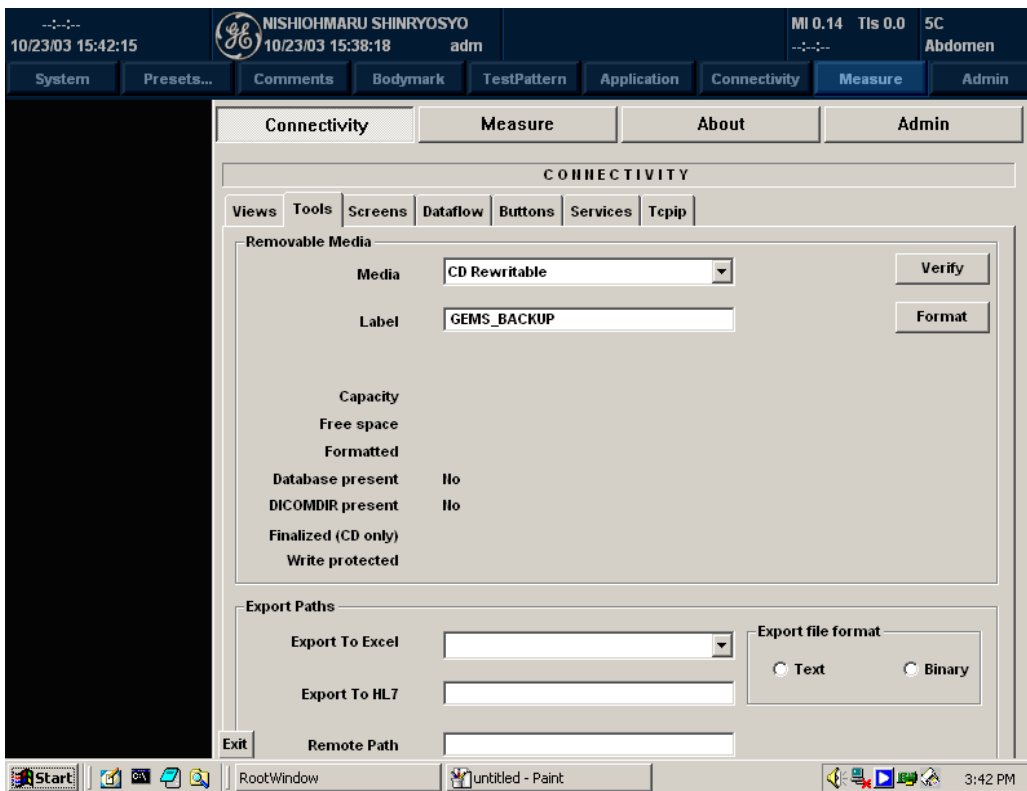


Figure 8-82 Format MOD/CD-ROM Screen

- 2.) Format the MOD/CD-ROM.
- 3.) Press Patient. Set the Dataflow to store images directly to MOD or CD-ROM - or select the Dataflow tab and select the Removable MOD or Removable CD-ROM dataflow.



8-10-4-2 Moving Images (Image Archive) (cont'd)

4.) Press More, then select Move Images. The Move Images pop-up appears.

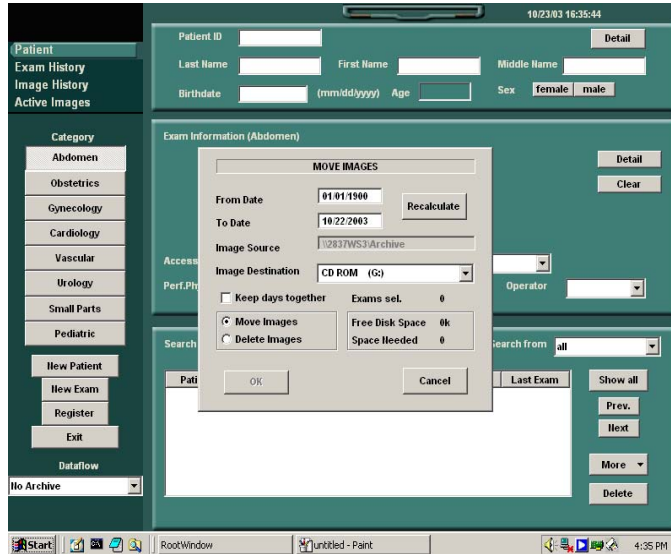


Figure 8-83 Image Archive Move Pop-up Menu

5.) Fill in the From Date, then press Recalculate. Specify to Keep days together. Check that you have enough disk space for the images you want to move. Select Move Images, then press OK. An in-progress message appears. The archive operation is complete when you receive this message.

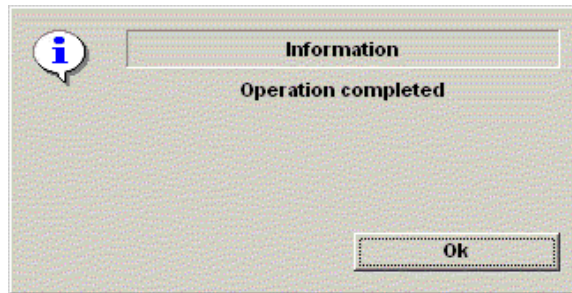


Figure 8-84 Archive Operation Complete Message

### 8-10-4-3 Export/Import (Moving Data Between Ultrasound Systems)

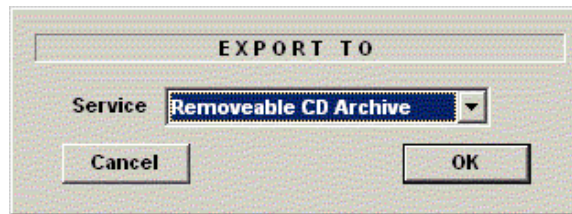
To move exams from one Ultrasound system to another, you need to export/import exam information.

*NOTE: Both database information and images are exported. No data is deleted from the local archive when exporting data.*

#### Exporting Data

To export an exam(s) to a compatible Ultrasound system:

- 1.) Format the removable media (MOD or CD-ROM). Label the removable media. Answer Yes/OK to the messages.
- 2.) Press Patient. Deselect any selected patient(s) in the search portion of the Patient screen. Press More (located at the lower, right-hand corner of the Patient menu).
- 3.) Select Export. Specify the type of removable media (MOD or CD-ROM) on the Export pop-up. Press OK. Then, please wait until the Patient menu is visible.



**Figure 8-85 Export Pop-up Message**

4.) In the patient list at the bottom of the Patient menu, select the patient(s) you want to export. You can use Windows commands to select more than one patient.

To select a consecutive list of patients, click the cursor on the first name, move the cursor to the last name, then press and hold down the Shift+right Set key to select all the names.

To select a non-consecutive list of patients, click the cursor at the first name, move the cursor to the next name, then press and hold down the Ctrl+right Set key, move the cursor to the next name, then press and hold down the Ctrl+right Set key again, etc.

You can also search for patients via the Search key and string.

Or, Select All from the Select All/Copy Patient Menu:

8-10-4-3 Export/Import (Moving Data Between Ultrasound Systems) (cont'd)

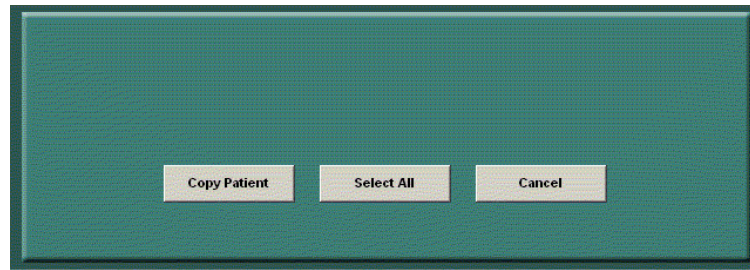


Figure 8-86 Select All/Copy Patient Menu

*NOTE:* You need to use your best judgment when moving patients' images. If there are lots of images or loops, then only move a few patients at a time.

- 5.) Once you have selected all of the patients to export, press Copy Patient from the Select All/Copy Patient Menu.
- 6.) Informational status messages appear as the copy is taking place. A final status report pop-up message appears. Press OK.

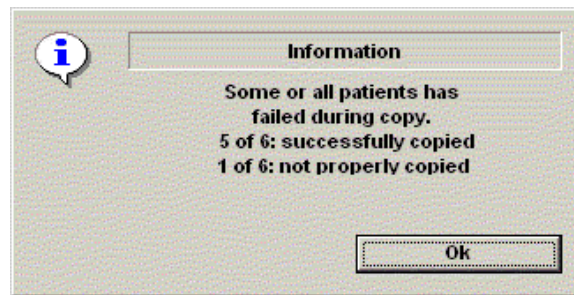


Figure 8-87 Export Completion Status Message

- 7.) Press F3 to eject the media. Specify that you want to finalize the CD-ROM.

#### 8-10-4-4 Importing Data

To import an exam(s) to another Ultrasound system:

- 1.) At the other Ultrasound system, insert the MOD or CD-ROM.
- 2.) Press Patient, press More, then Import. The Import from pop-up message appears. Press OK.



**Figure 8-88 Import Pop-up Message**

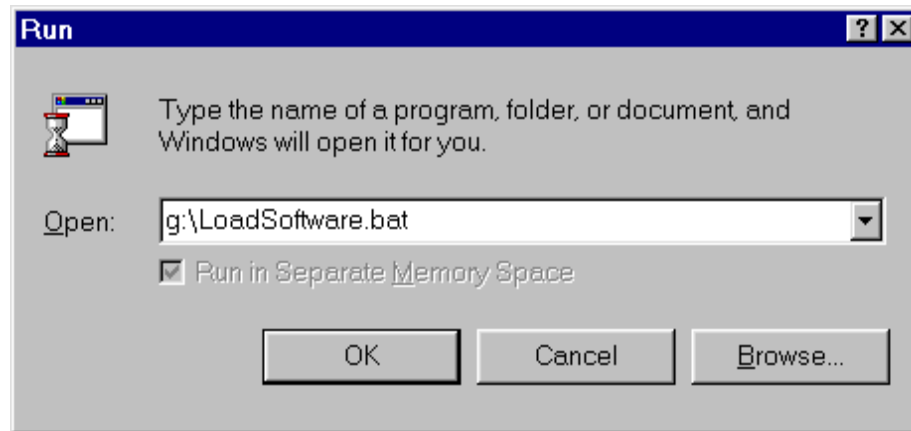
- 3.) The Patient menu just shows the patients available for import from the removable media you just loaded onto the system.
- 4.) Select the patients to be imported.
- 5.) Press Copy Patient from the Select All/Copy Patient menu.
- 6.) Please wait for the patient information to be copied to this Ultrasound system. Informational messages appear while the import is taking place.
- 7.) Press F3 to eject the media.

## 8-10-5

### Loading Applications Software

- 1.) Place the “**Application Software**” CDROM into the CDROM drive.
- 2.) Move the cursor using Trackball to find the “**Start**” command button on the Monitor screen
- 3.) Press the **Start** button on the tool bar at the bottom of the Screen and select “**Run...**”.

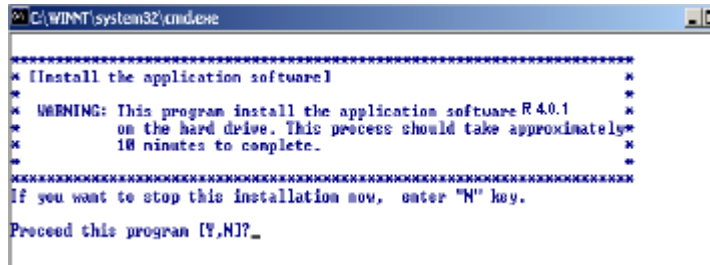
Enter “**g:\LoadSoftware.bat**” into the dialog box as shown in [Figure 8-89 on page 8-107](#) .



**Figure 8-89 Run Load Software**

- 4.) You will see a Command (CMD) window open as shown in [Figure 8-115 on page 8-126](#) .

## 8-9-11 Optional Procedure for Changing (Re-mapping) Drive Letters (cont'd)



```
C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe
*****
* [Install the application software] *
* WARNING: This program install the application software R 4.0.1 *
* on the hard drive. This process should take approximately *
* 10 minutes to complete. *
* *****
If you want to stop this installation now, enter "N" key.
Proceed this program [Y,N]?_
```

Figure 8-90 Application CD Installation Popup

- 5.) Press Y key twice to start the process.
- 6.) During Application Software loading process, the System will auto Shutdown. Manually switch on the System using the 'standby- ON/OFF' switch.
- 7.) After the software loading is completed, the system will pop-up a message, asking to make the selection for Presets according to location of site as seen in the Figure 8-116 below. Make the appropriate selection.

Please make your selection from the below choices for Preset.....

1. USA
2. Europe
3. Asia \* Only Available in Production Release Software

Figure 8-91 Preset Selection

- 8.) Wait until the system shuts down automatically (Approx 5 Minutes to shut down).
- 9.) Wait for Approx. 15 seconds.
- 10.) Power on the System and Remove the CD while it boots
- 11.) The System pops up the Screen asking for Option Key. Enter the Basic Option Key obtained on ordering of the BT'05 Upgrade.
- 12.) If you didn't remove the CD, don't worry you will get a dialog box as in Figure 8-92.

### 8-10-5-1 Functional Checks for Service Platform (Diagnostic Program)

- 1.) Make sure that the wrench icon is shown at the bottom of the scan screen. Click on the wrench icon to activate. It will take about ten (10) seconds for activating.

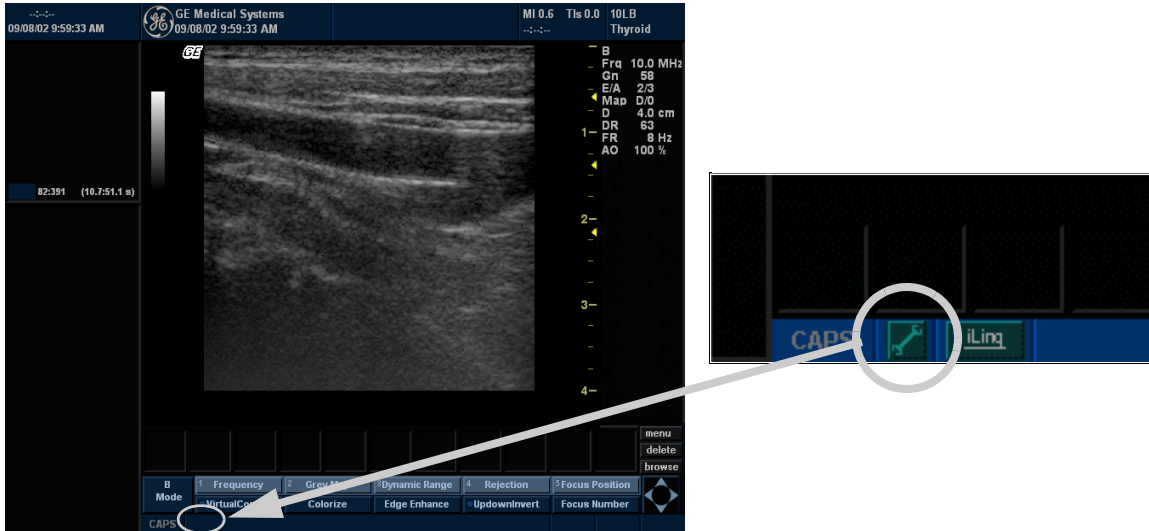


Figure 8-92 Wrench Icon



**CAUTION** If the wrench icon is not displayed on the scan screen, the installation of Service Platform had been failed.

**NOTE:** If the following dialog box is shown on the monitor, select *Do not perform this check in the future* and click on the *Yes* button. This dialog box will not be displayed for next time.

**NOTE:** If the another dialog box appears on the monitor, follow the instructions of the dialog box to continue the Functional Check procedures.

**NOTE:** If Caps Lock Active the display will be highlighted in the screen.

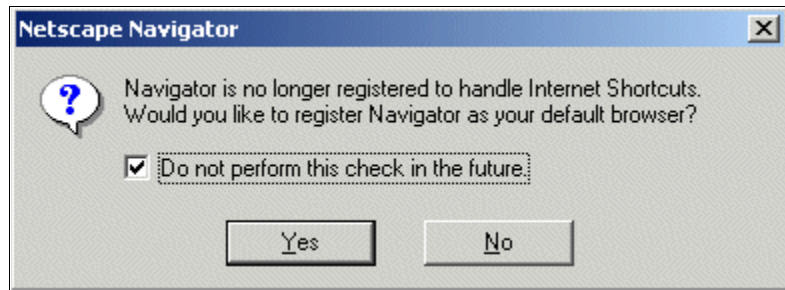


Figure 8-93 Netscape Navigator Window

- 2.) The Service Login window for Service Platform will be shown on the monitor display.

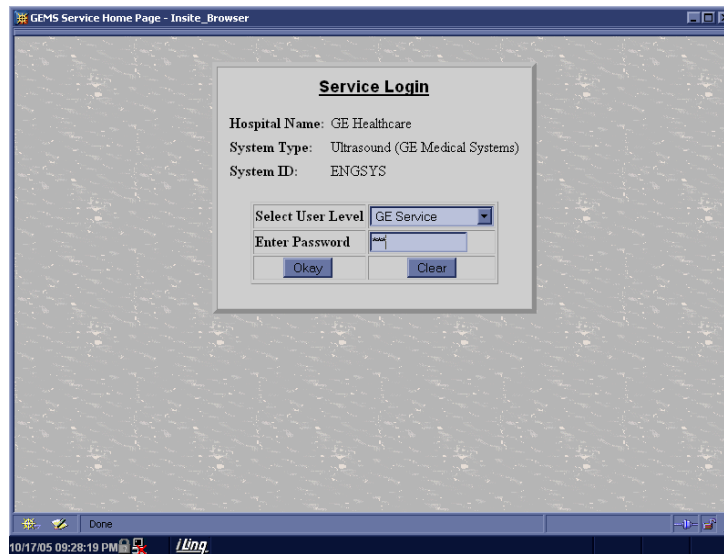


Figure 8-94 Service Login Window

 **CAUTION** If the Login window for Service Platform is not displayed on the monitor, the installation of the Service Platform has failed.

- 3.) Select **GE Service** at the “Select User Level” field.
- 4.) Enter the password for the Service Platform.
- 5.) Click on **Okay**.



Figure 8-95 Selecting User Level



- 6.) Verify that the following screen (Service Platform) is displayed on the monitor.
- 7.) Click on **x** located at the upper right corner of the service platform screen to close the Service Platform and return to the scan panel.

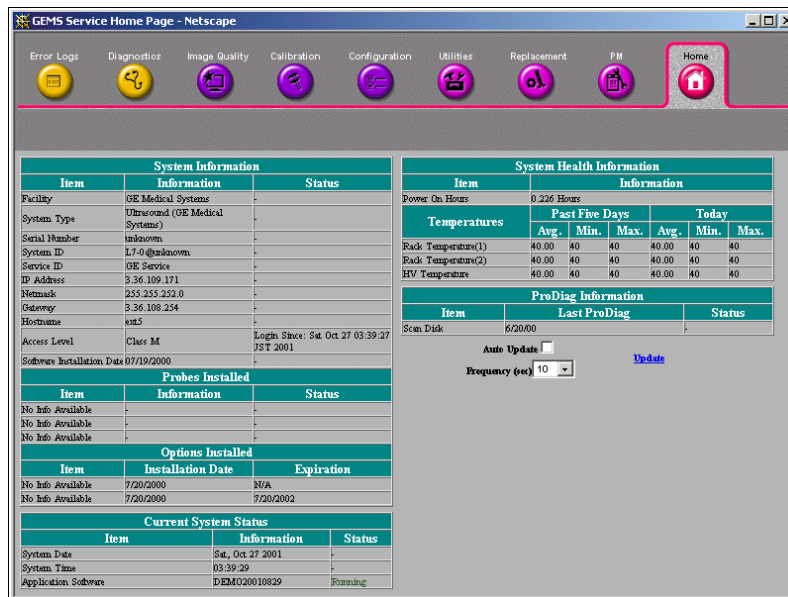


Figure 8-96 Service Platform Screen

### 8-10-5-2 Restoring the Data

- 1.) On the scan screen, touch **Utility**. The OPERATOR LOGIN window appears.
- 2.) Change the User level to **Admin**, then enter **Password**. Then click on **Log on**.



Figure 8-1 Operator LOGIN window

- 3.) Select **Admin > Restore**.
- 4.) Insert the CD-R into which the user parameters have been saved.
- 5.) Check the mark at the followings:

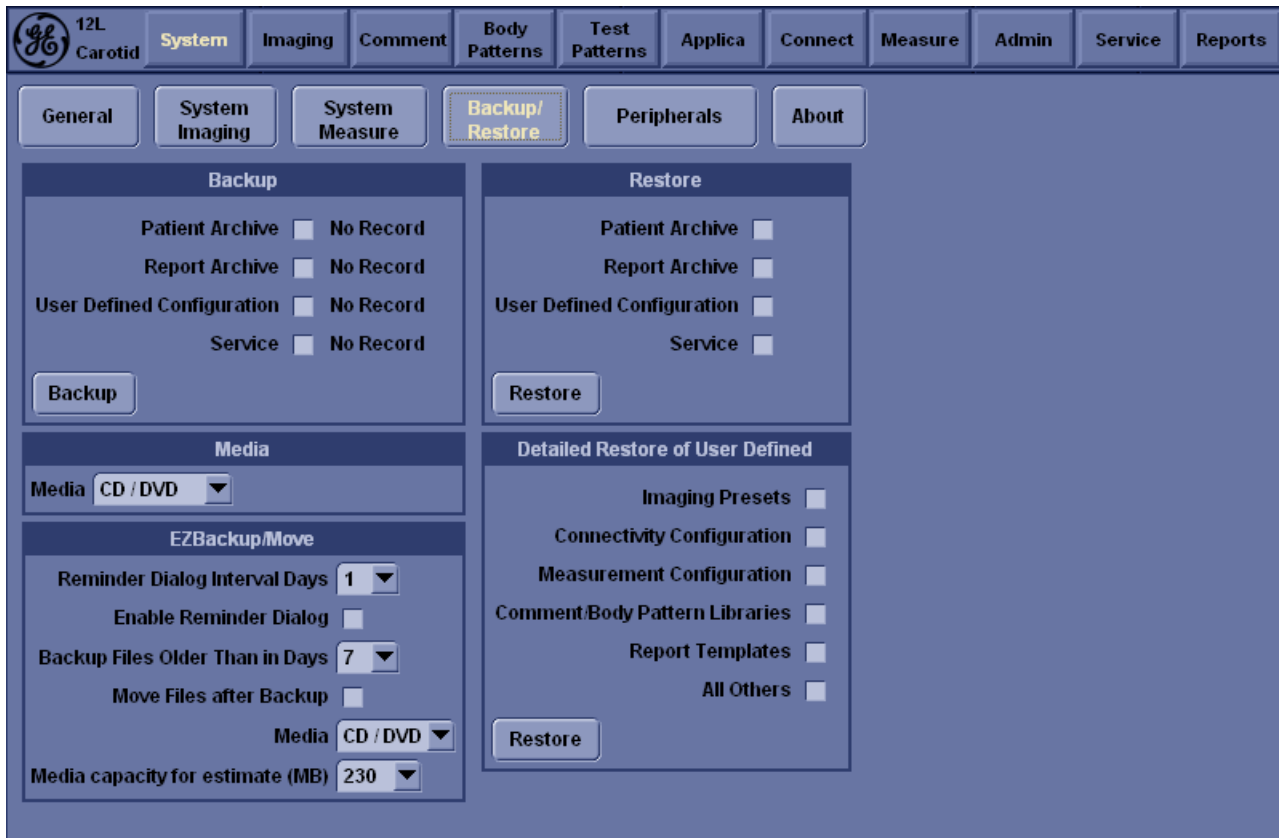


Figure 8-97 Restore

- 6.) Select the source, then click on **Restore Now**.
- 7.) The warning message appears. Click on **OK**. The restore procedure starts.
- 8.) Verify that "Finished, OK" appears in the Result column.
- 9.) Press the eject button of the CD-R drive to eject the CD-R.

10.) Select **Admin > Connectivity > tcpip.**

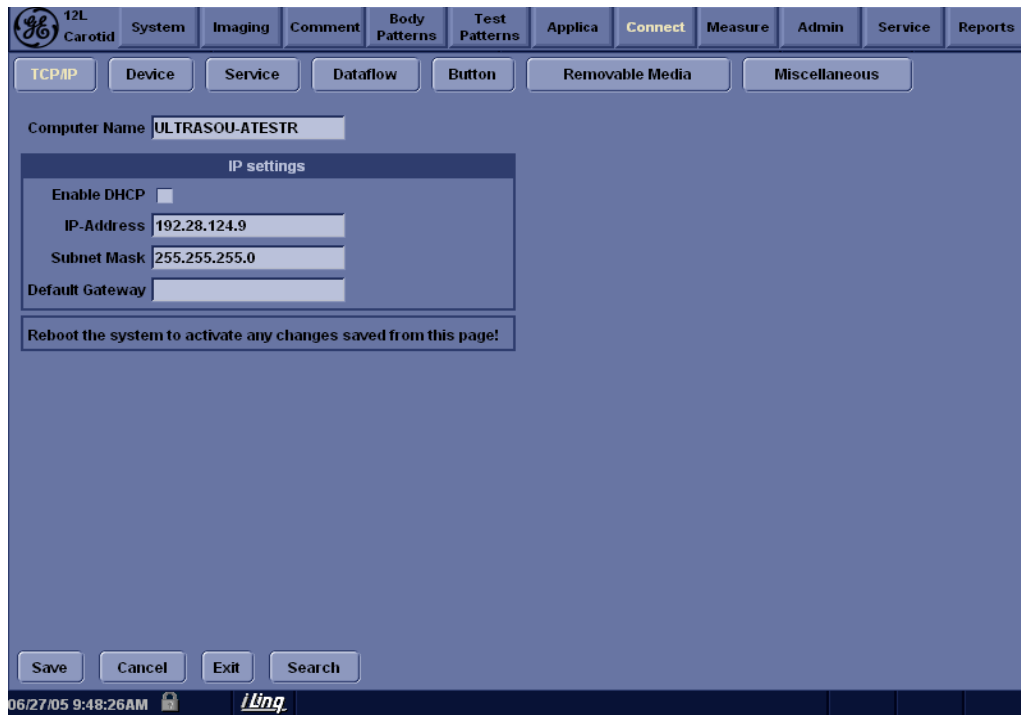


Figure 8-98 TCPIP Screen

- 11.) Enter **Computer Name, IP Address, Subnet mask, and Default Gateway** which have been written in Chapter 8 - Saving the Data (Using Utility Function).
- 12.) Click on **Save settings.**
- 13.) Click on **OK** for confirmation dialog box.



Figure 8-99 Confirmation Dialog Box

- 14.) Touch **Scan** on the NTPUI to return to the scan screen.
- 15.) Reboot the system.
- 16.) On the scan screen, press **Patient** button and verify that the patient registration screen appears

17.)with no error.

GE Healthcare

Patient ID: 12345      Last Name: UMA      DOB:

Patient Phone #:       First Name:       Age:

Address:       Middle Name:       Sex:  female  male

Comments:

ABD   OB   GYN   **CARD**   VAS   UR   SM P   PED

Height: 0.0 cm      Accession #:

Weight: 0.00 kg      Exam Description:

BSA:  m<sup>2</sup>      Perf.Physician:

Perf.Phone #:

Admission #:       Ref.Physician:

Ref.Phone #:

Operator: ADM      Operator Phone #:

Indications:

Comments:

Images   Clear

21/12/05 09:27:38 PM   iLinq

Figure 8-100 Patient Registration Screen

### 8-10-5-3 Functional Checks for Probe Recognition

- 1.) Touch **Scan** button on the NTPUI to return to the scan screen.
- 2.) Connect each probe to ensure that they are recognized.
- 3.) Check every probe in the following modes and ensure that no artifacts or no problems are found in:
  - B-mode
  - Color FLOW
  - Pulsed Doppler
  - M-mode

## Section 8-11 Installing Option Software

### 8-11-1 Preparations

- Option strings (This is a option key with a sequence of letters and numbers. Consult your local OLC how to get it.)

### 8-11-2 Procedures

- 1.) Power OFF the scanner to change user login level.
- 2.) The SYSTEM EXIT window appears. Click on **Logoff**.



Figure 8-101 System EXIT window

- 3.) The message window appears. Click on **OK**.
- 4.) The OPERATOR LOGIN window appears. Change the User level to **Admin**, then enter **Password**. Then click on **Log on**.



Figure 8-102 Operator LOGIN window

## 8-11-2 Procedures (cont'd)

- 5.) Select **Utility > Admin>System Admin**.

The screenshot shows the 'System Admin' utility window. The top navigation bar includes tabs for System, Imaging, Comment, Body Patterns, Test Patterns, Applica, Connect, Measure, Admin (selected), Service, and Reports. Below the navigation bar are buttons for System Admin, Users, and Logon. The main content area is divided into three sections:

- Product**: Fields for Product (Radiology.Dhruva.NTP), HW Number (0x005EAD8C), and System Serial Number (ENGSYS03).
- SW Option Key**: A section for managing software option keys. It includes an 'Enter New Option Key' field with an 'Add' button, and an 'Installed Option Keys' list with a 'Remove' button. The installed key list contains the string 'BS3S9-CZU6C-BJYY2-LAFUP-BETXX'.
- Option Status Table**: A table listing various options and their status.

Option	Status
Basic	Permanent
Dicom	Permanent
Harmonics	Permanent
Easy3D	Permanent
Advanced3D	Permanent
AnatomicalIM	Permanent
StCWD	Permanent
LOGIQView	Permanent
RepDesigner	Permanent

Figure 8-103 Utility window

- 6.) Select **System Admin** tab, then click on **NewEnter** Option string into **New Key** dialogue box. Then verify that:
  - The option string to be entered appears in the **SW Option Key** list.
  - The option appears in the **Options** list as "**Permanent**".
- If an option fails to install, delete it as follows:
  - a.) Click on the option key string to be deleted from the **SW Option Key** list.
  - b.) Click on **Delete**.
  - c.) The warning message appears. Click on **OK**.



**NOTICE** Do NOT delete all SW Option Key. If it does, the system can NOT start up!!

## Section 8-12 Loading Base and Application Software

A Software Loading procedure is outlined below:

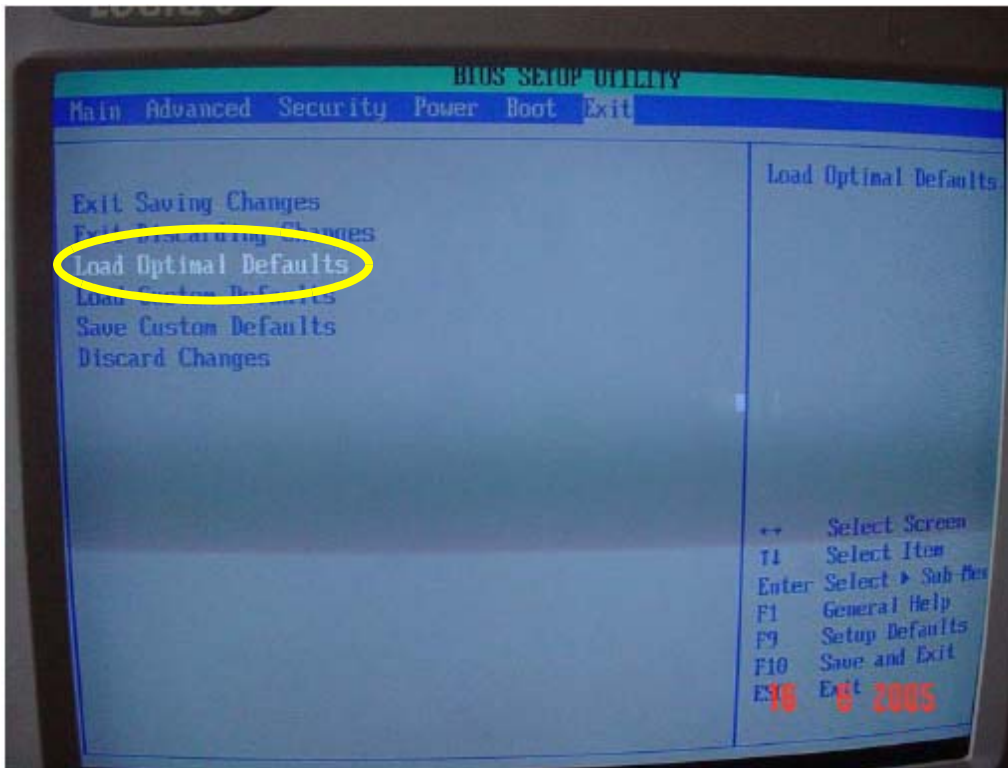
S.No	Procedures	Prerequisites	Man Power	Refer
1	Changing BIOS	BEP2,BEP 3	5 minutes	Section 8-12-1
2	Installing Base System Software	LOGIQ™ 3 Base System Load Image CD-ROM	10 minutes	Section 8-12-2
3	Installing Application Software	LOGIQ3 Application Software CD-ROM	10 minutes	Section 8-9-11

**Table 8-5 Soft ware Loading Procedure**

## 8-12-1 Making BIOS changes

- 1.) During Boot Up, Press F2 to enter SetUp Screen.
- 2.) Enter the Password as “dhruva”
- 3.) Under “Exit”,go to the “Load Optimal Default Parameters” and press “Enter” Ref. [Figure 8-104 on page 8-118](#)
- 4.) pop up screen appears on the screen ,Click on OK.

Figure 8-104 Load Optimal Default Settings

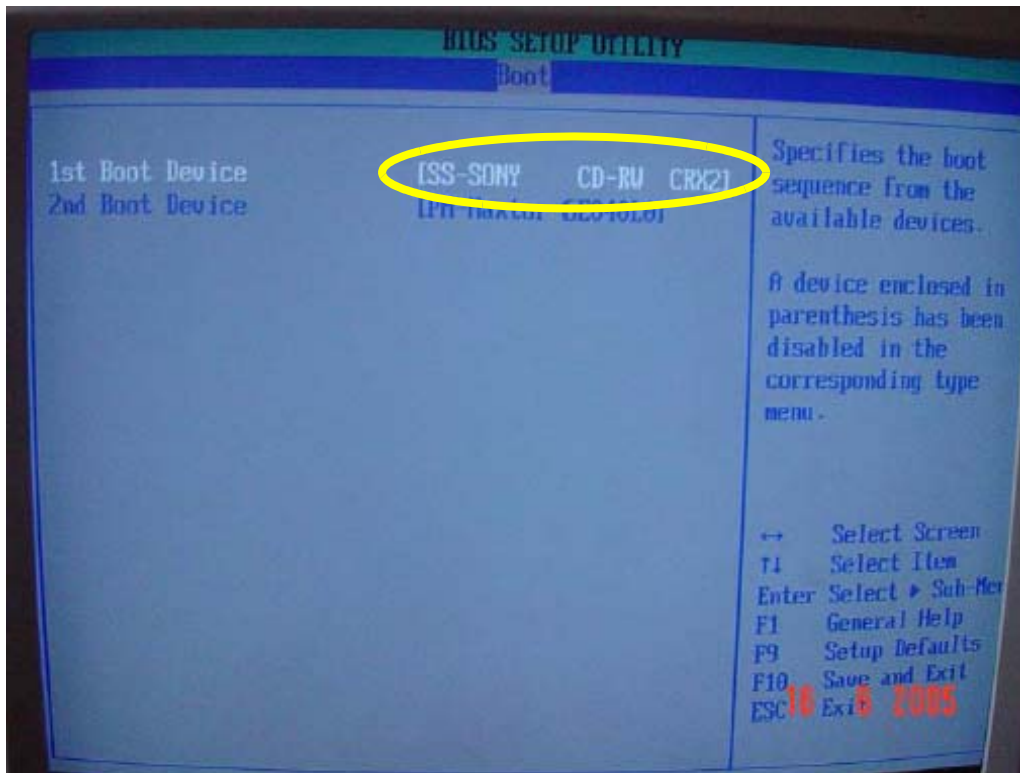


- 5.) Press ESC



- 6.) Enter “**Boot**” tab, Under “**Boot Disk Priority**”,select **CD RW** as the First Boot device as in [Figure 8-105](#) on page 8-119 and the **Hard disk** as the Second Boot Device

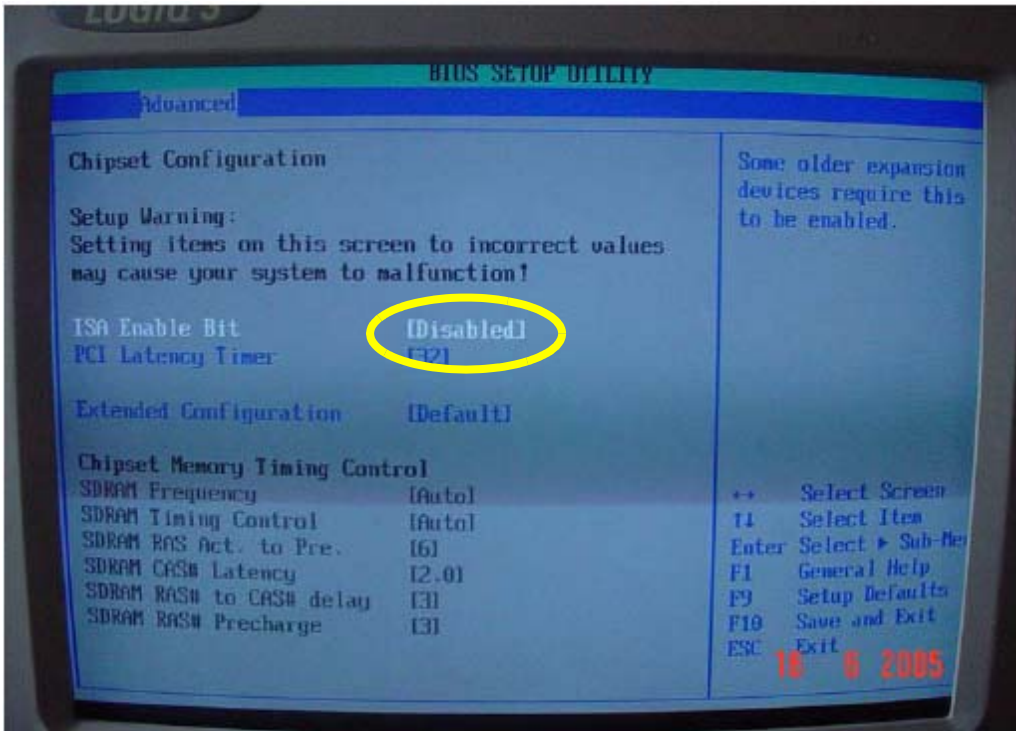
**Figure 8-105 1 st Boot Device CD R/W**



- 7.) Press ESC

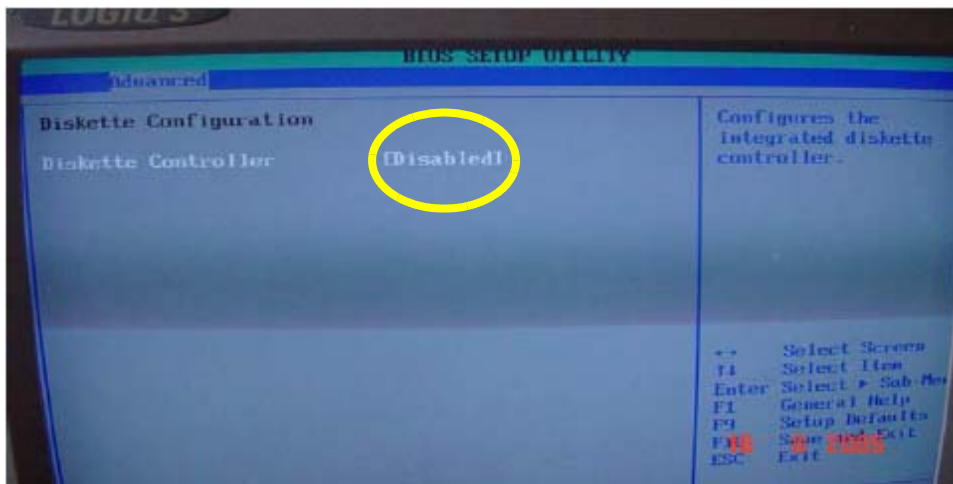
- 8.) Under **“Advanced”** --> **“Chipset Configuration”** tab, Go To **ISA Enable bit** . Press Enter and Select **“Disabled”**, as in [Figure 8-106 on page 8-120](#)

Figure 8-106 Disable ISA bit

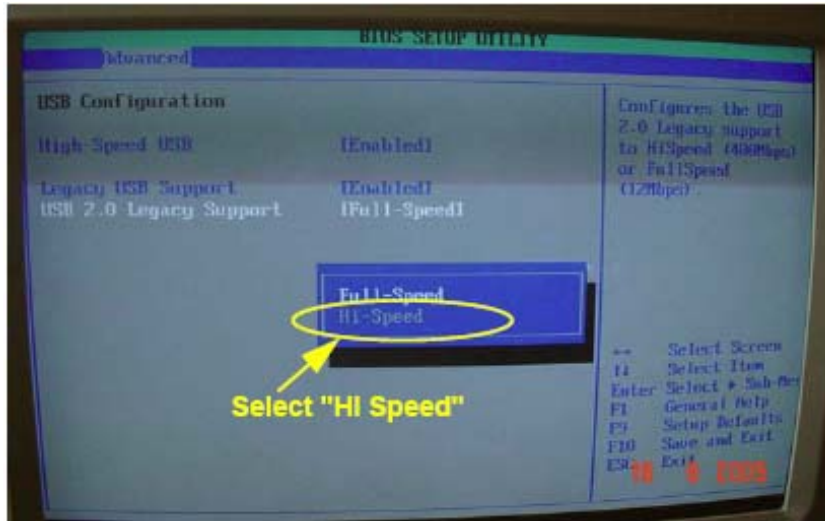


- 9.) Press ‘ESC’  
10.) Under **“Advanced”** --> **“Diskette Configuration”** tab, Go To **Diskette Controller**. Press Enter and Select **“Disabled”**, as in [Figure 8-107 on page 8-120](#)

Figure 8-107 Disable Diskette Controller

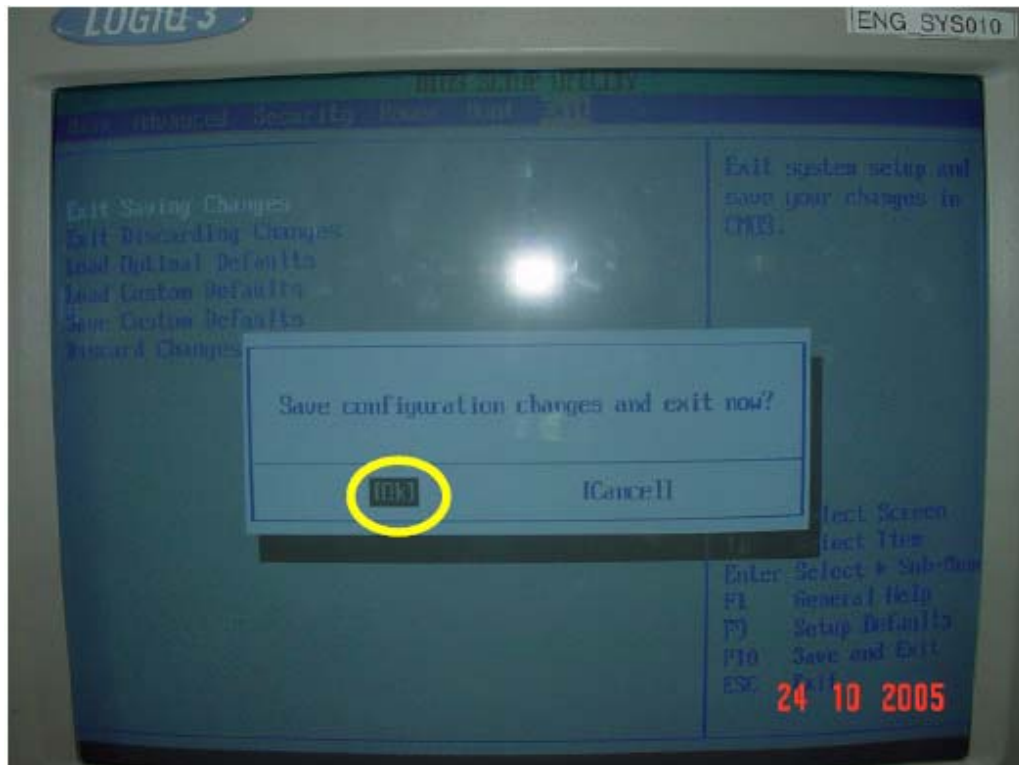


- 11.) Press ‘ESC’  
12.) Under **“Advanced”** --> **“USB Configuration”** tab, Under **“2.0 Legacy Support”** ,Set the USB speed to **“HiSpeed”**



- 13.) Press **ESC**
- 14.) Press **"F10"**.
- 15.) Popup screen appears on the screen.
- 16.) Click on "OK" to Save all the changes and exit as per [Figure 8-108 on page 8-121](#)

**Figure 8-108 Save changes before Exiting BIOS**



- 17.) Reboot the System..

**8-12-2 Base Software Load Procedure For BEP Ver 2 , 3, and 4**

**NOTE:** *Disconnect the system from the network and remove all transducers, all External Drives (USB MOD, Flash Sticks, USB Memory etc.), Switch Off peripherals like printers, VCR, VGP before installing Base Load. If not, this can affect the keyboard functionality after loading the base.*

SL#	BEP Part No.	Ghost Part Number Reference	Software to be used for Base / Application Loading
1	2361975-2 or 2361975-4 BEP Ver2	NA	Base(5120163-2) + Application (5140654-3) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO software or Application(5133116-2) for LOGIQ™ 3 Expert software or Application(5140661-2) for LOGIQ™ 3 B/W software for BEP Ver 2
2	2361975-7 or 2361975-8 BEP Ver3	NA	Base(5120166-3) + Application (5140654-3) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO software or Application(5133116-2) for LOGIQ™ 3 Expert software or Application(5140661-2) for LOGIQ™ 3 B/W software for BEP Ver 2
3	5191287 BEP Ver4	NA	Base(5193870) + Application (5140654-3) for LOGIQ™ 3 PRO software or Application(5133116-2) for LOGIQ™ 3 Expert software or Application(5140661-2) for LOGIQ™ 3 B/W software for BEP Ver 2

**Table 8-6 S/W CD Selection to Begin Load Procedure**

- 1.) Insert the disk labeled “Base System Software Load Image as per BEP Type” into the CDROM drive and switch on the system. The following screen appears, Press any key to Continue.

```

***** WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING * WARNING *****
THIS PROCEDURE MAY RESULT IN COMPLETE PATIENT DATA LOSS IF NOT USED
CORRECTLY! PLEASE READ THE OPTION BELOW CAREFULLY BEFORE PROCEEDING.

This process is NOT REVERSIBLE and should NOT be stopped once started!
DO NOT power off the system until the process has completed. It will
take less than 15 minutes to load the drive. If this process is stopped
for some reason, you WILL have to run it again to completion or else the
system will not work.

If you want to proceed with this process press the "Enter" key to
continue with option selection

... OR ...

Remove the CDROM from the CDROM drive and Press "CTRL-C" now to exit and
power cycle your system to restart it without overwriting your disk drive's
current contents

Press any key to continue . . . _
    
```

**Figure 8-109 Base Load Warning Message**

**CAUTION: DO NOT SELECT OPTION 1 as it will delete the patient images on the Hard disk.**

- 2.) SELECT OPTION 2 for C Partition Only.

```
. Please select ONE of the following options for loading the LOGIQ3
"Base System Software Load Image" onto your system:

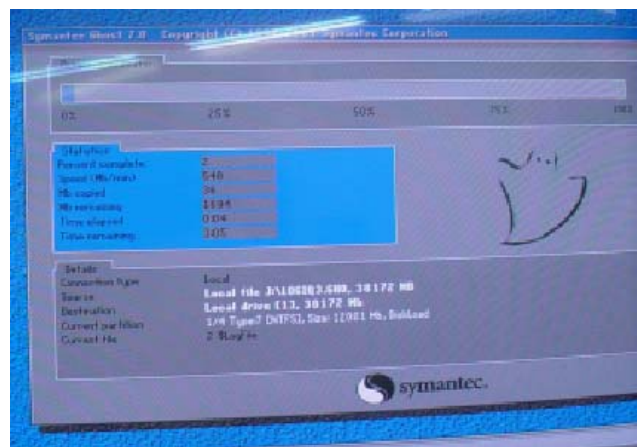
[1] Load the complete disk - All existing data will be lost
    NOTE: APPLICATION SOFTWARE WILL NEED TO BE INSTALLED WHEN THIS
PROCEDURE
    HAS COMPLETED. ALL PATIENT DATA (IF ANY) WILL BE DESTROYED!

[2] Load the bootable C: partition only - patient data is NOT lost
    NOTE: DO NOT USE THIS OPTION ON A BRAND NEW SYSTEM. IT IS
    INTENDED FOR RECOVERY OF A SYSTEM THAT WILL NOT BOOT UP.
    APPLICATION SOFTWARE WILL NEED TO BE INSTALLED WHEN THIS
    PROCEDURE HAS COMPLETED. ALL PATIENT DATA IS PRESERVED.

[3] Exit to the a:\PROMPT
```

**Figure 8-110 Base Load Option Message**

- 3.) You will see a screen showing Ghost. This automatically loads the base software onto the hard disk. Let it run to completion (Approximately 10 mins).



**Figure 8-111 Ghost Screen**

- 4.) A message will be displayed when the process is completed.

```
The "Base System Software Load Image" process has successfully completed.
You will need to load the "Application Software" onto your system.

Please remove the CDROM from the drive, Power off the system and then
Power it on again so you can continue with the "Application Software" load
procedure
Thank you!

A:\>-
```

**Figure 8-112 Base Load Completion Message**

5.) Remove the CD-ROM

**NOTE:** *Remove the CD-ROM from the drive; otherwise you will be repeating the Base System Software Load process.*

**NOTE:** *This Base software loading has changed the system platform from Windows 2000 Professional to Windows XP.*

6.) After removing the CDROM from the drive, properly turn off the scanner by pressing and holding power on button on keyboard for more than 20 seconds.

7.) Turn the scanner back on. It will now boot up and automatically log on to start checking hardware and Device Manager. This is a normal and should be allowed to run to completion.

**NOTE:** *When booting up the first time it could take 30-90 seconds after the login box appears before the trackball and key board are active. Watch for the arrow cursor to appear.*

**NOTE:** *While the script is running, several windows or dialog boxes will appear on the screen. Wait for the "System Settings Change" dialog box "Restart computer now" (approximately 3 minutes after the desktop).*

**Do NOT touch the system during this process. Activating the keyboard, mouse or front panel could corrupt the installation.**

**NOTE:** *At times it may look like the system is unresponsive. PATIENCE! The process takes 3-4 minutes. Wait for the "Restart computer now" message to appear before activating the keyboard, mouse or front panel controls.*

8.) Wait till you get a windows reboot message. This may take upto 3 minutes. On this message, Click on **NO** as shown in the Figure 8-113 below.

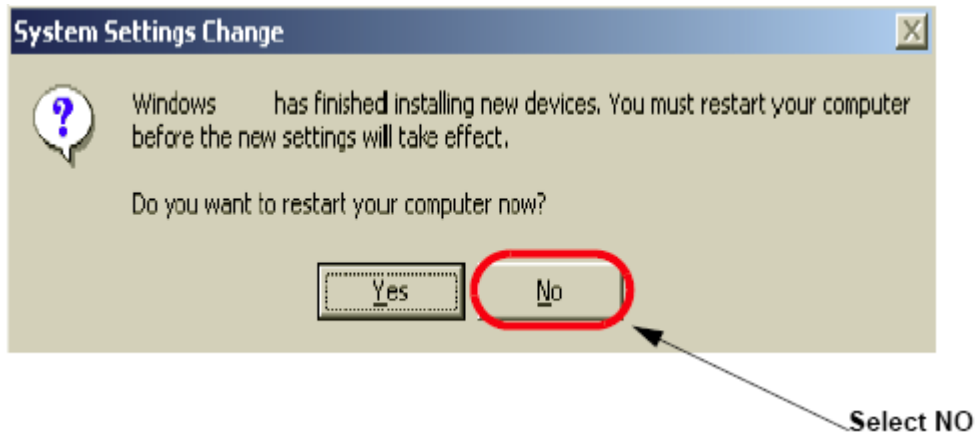
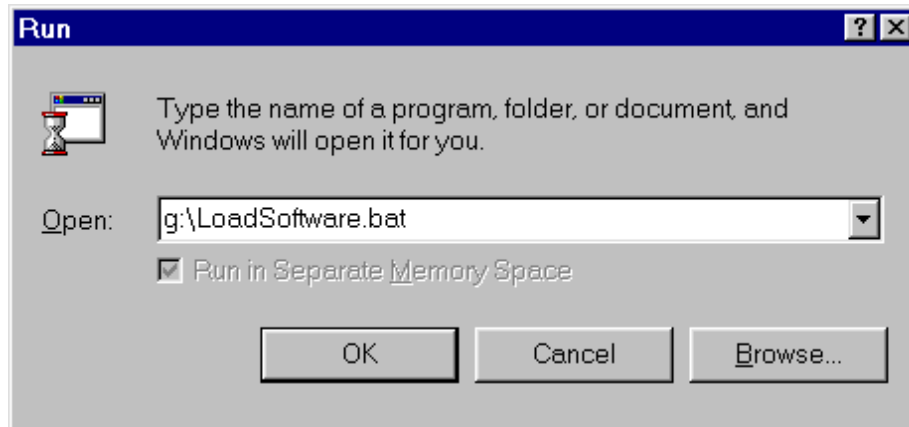


Figure 8-113 Windows Restart Screen

### 8-12-3 Loading Applications Software

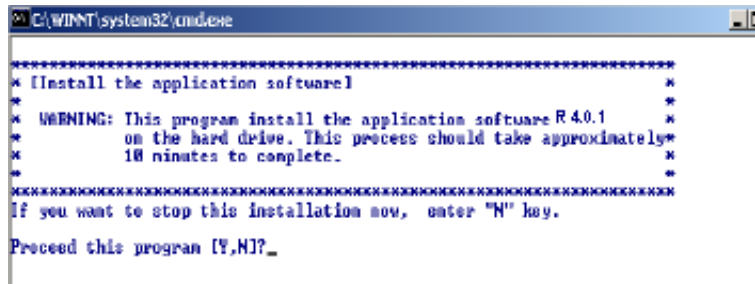
- 1.) Place the “**Application Software**” CDROM into the CDROM drive.
- 2.) Move the cursor using Trackball to find the “**Start**” command button on the Monitor screen
- 3.) Press the **Start** button on the tool bar at the bottom of the Screen and select “**Run...**”.
- 4.) Enter “**g:\LoadSoftware.bat**” into the dialog box as shown in [Figure 8-89 on page 8-107](#) .



**Figure 8-114 Run Load Software**

- 5.) You will see a Command (CMD) window open as shown in [Figure 8-115 on page 8-126](#) .

## Loading Applications Software(cont'd)



```
C:\WINNT\system32\cmd.exe
*****
* [Install the application software] *
* *
* WARNING: This program install the application software R4.0.1 *
* on the hard drive. This process should take approximately *
* 10 minutes to complete. *
* *
*****
If you want to stop this installation now, enter "N" key.
Proceed this program [Y,N]?_
```

Figure 8-115 Application CD Installation Popup

- 6.) Press Y key twice to start the process.
- 7.) During Application Software loading process, the System will auto Shutdown. Manually switch on the System using the 'standby- ON/OFF' switch.
- 8.) After the software loading is completed, the system will pop-up a message, asking to make the selection for Presets according to location of site as seen in the Figure 8-116 below. Make the appropriate selection.

```
Please make your selection from the below choices for Preset.....
1. USA
2. Europe
3. Asia
```

Figure 8-116 Preset Selection

- 9.) Wait until the system shuts down automatically (Approx 5 Minutes to shut down).
- 10.) Wait for Approx. 15 seconds.
- 11.) Power on the System and Remove the CD while it boots.
- 12.) The System pops up the Screen asking for **Option Key**. **Enter the Basic Option Key noted earlier.**
- 13.) Manually Enter connectivity settings, hospital name, print key settings, TCP/IP settings etc.
- 14.) After Loading S/ W the Service engineer has to change the date and time in **Utilities->System->General->Date/Time** to customize the system with regional settings.

**NOTE:** *Do Not restore the application/ imaging presets from 2.x.x to the system after the Upgrade. Restoring the imaging presets could result in poor image quality.*



# Chapter 9

## Renewal Parts

### Section 9-1 Overview

#### 9-1-1 Purpose of Chapter 9

This chapter gives you an overview of Spare Parts available for the LOGIQ™ 3.

**Table 9-1 Contents in Chapter 9**

Section	Description	Page Number
9-1	Overview	9-1
9-2	List of Abbreviations	9-2
9-3	Operator Console Assy	9-3
9-4	MONITOR	9-5
9-5	Keyboard	9-6
9-6	External Covers	9-8
9-7	Mechanical Assembly's	9-10
9-8	I/O Interfaces	9-11
9-9	PCB Boards	9-12
9-10	BEP	9-14
9-11	Power Block	9-16
9-12	Power Cord	9-17
9-13	Probes	9-17
9-14	Peripherals	9-18
9-15	Cables Set	9-18
9-16	Option Parts	9-19
9-17	New FRUs for LOGIQ™3 Expert	9-20

## Section 9-2 List of Abbreviations

- Assy - Assembly
- BEP - Back End Processor
- Ctrl - Control
- FEP - Front End Processor
- F.O.B - Flock of Birds or 3-D Option
- FRU 1 - Replacement part available in parts hub
- FRU 2 - Replacement part available from the manufacturer (lead time involved)
- Int -Internal
- I/O - Input/Output
- PWA - Printed Wire Assembly
- Recv - Receive
- XFRMR - Transformer

## Section 9-3 Operator Console Assy

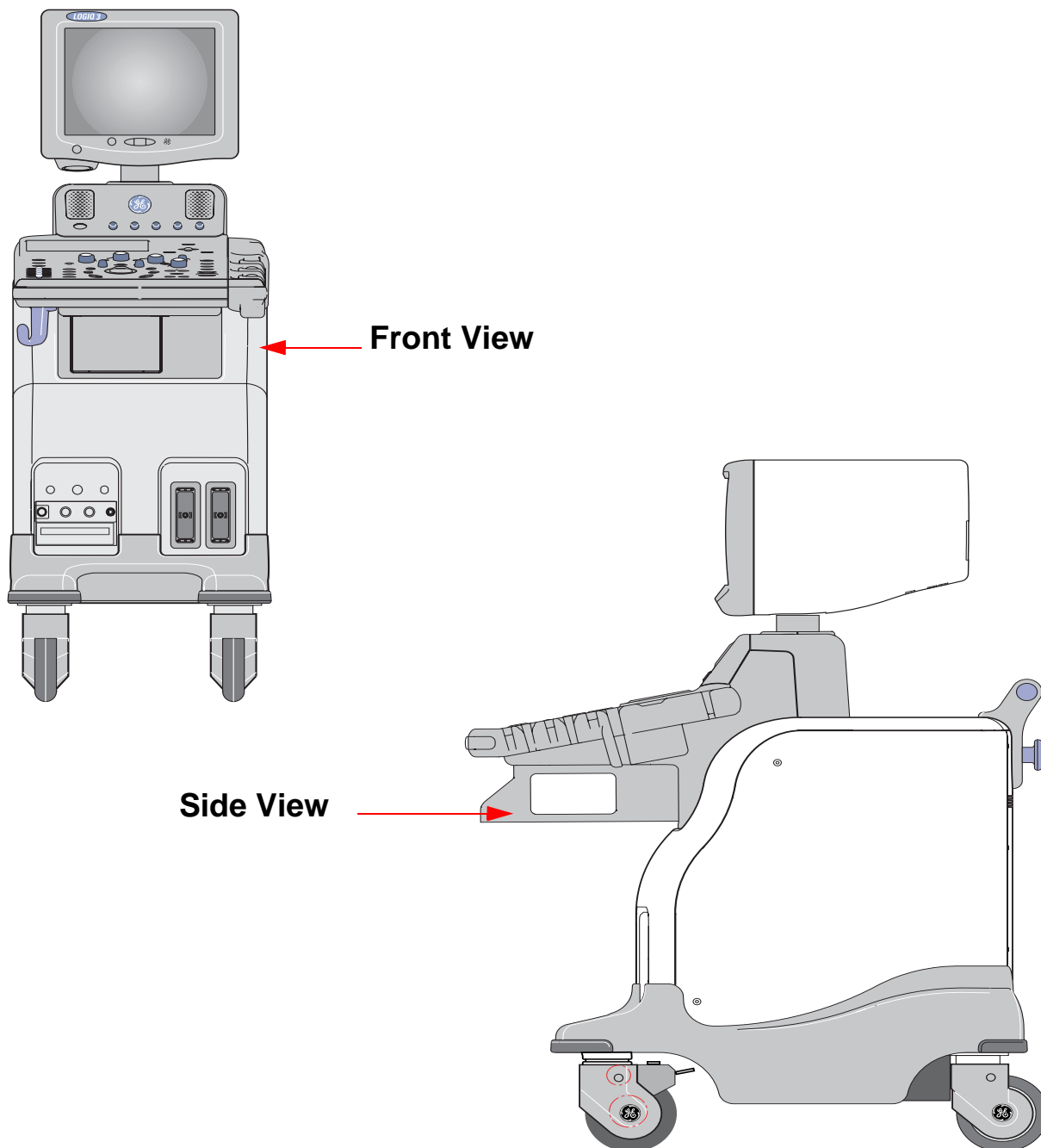
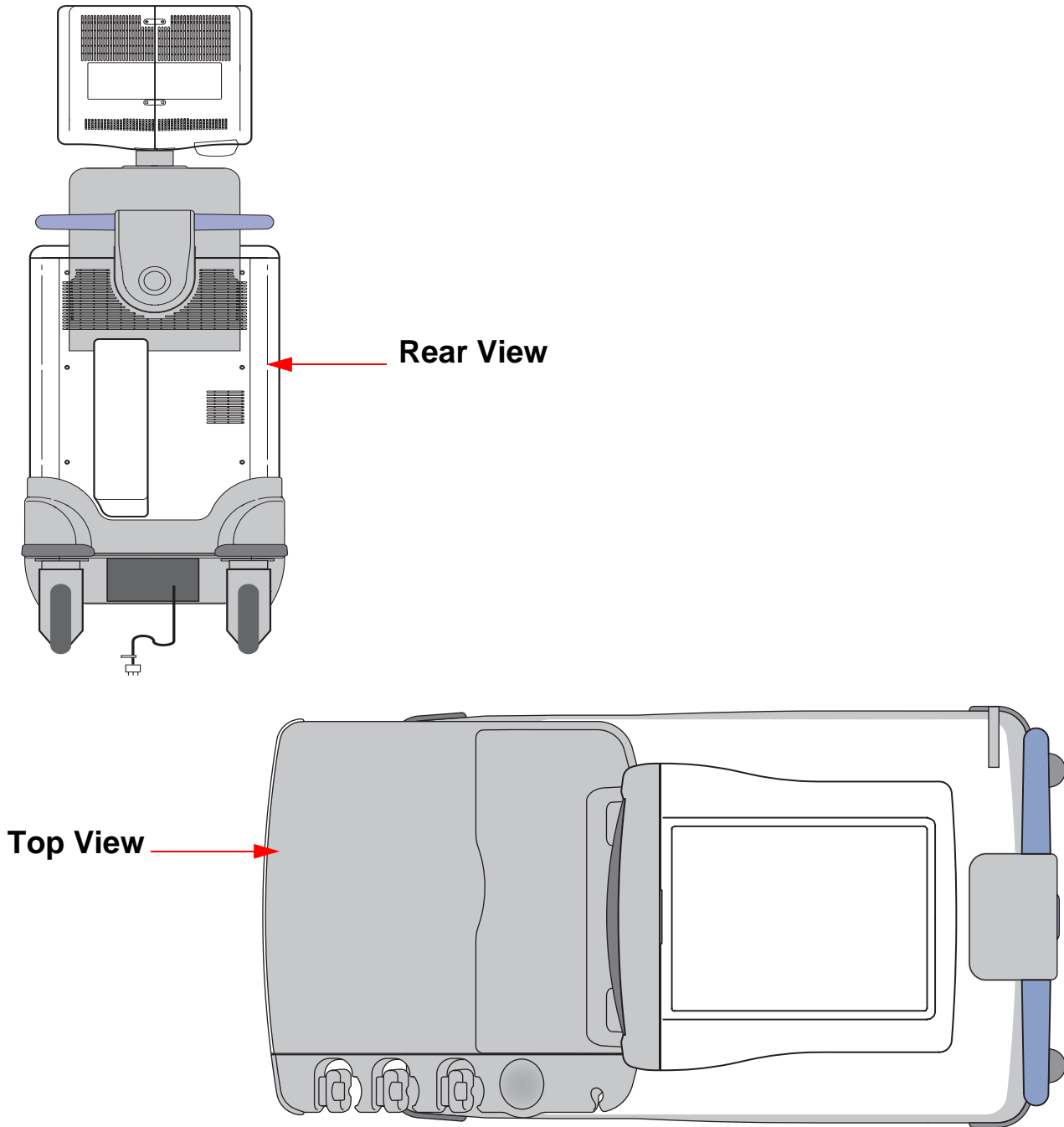


Figure 9-1 Operator Console Assembly

**Section 9-3 Operator Console Assy (cont'd)**



**Figure 9-2 Operator Console Assembly**

**Section 9-4  
 MONITOR**

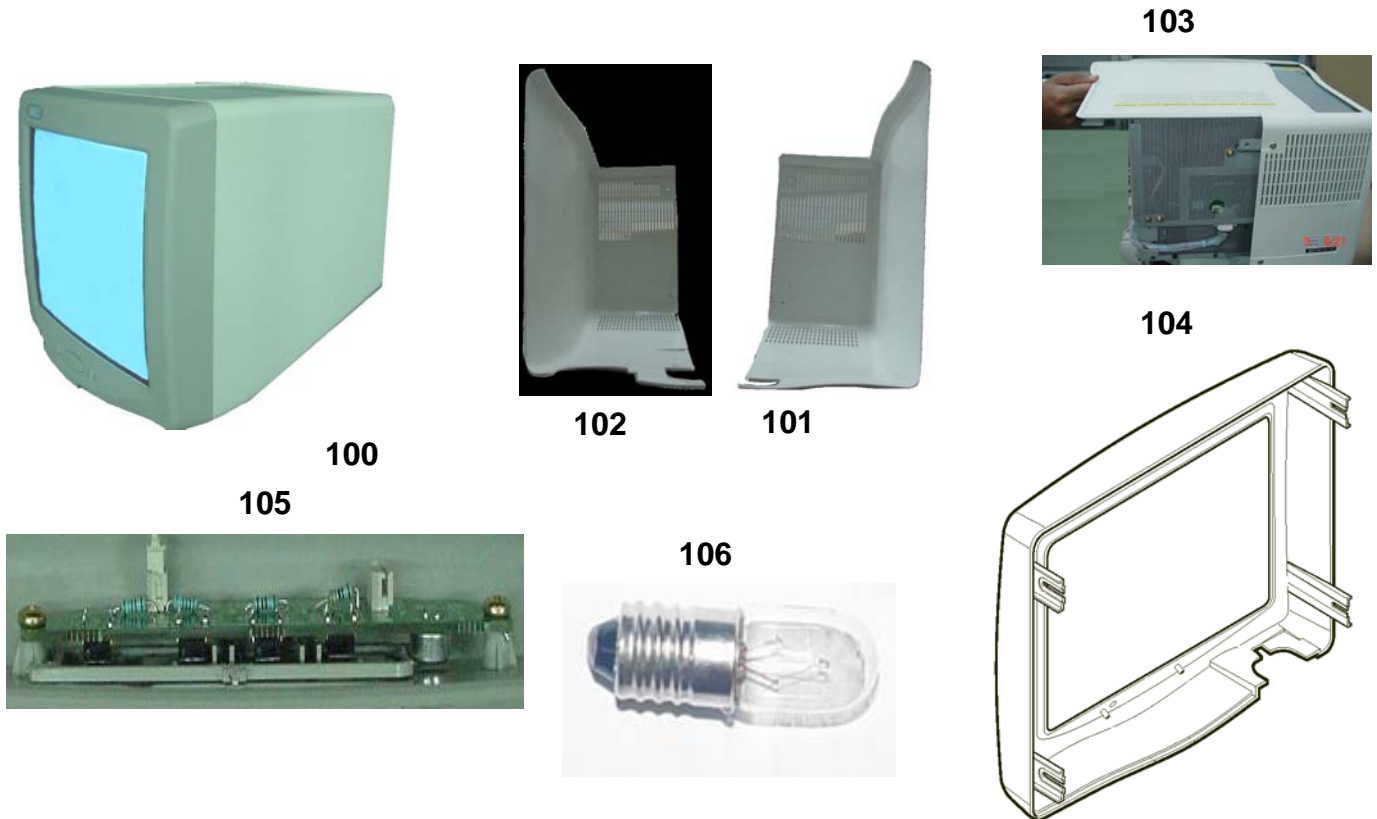


Figure 9-3 Monitor FRU's

Table 9-2 Monitor FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Comments	Qty	FRU
100	Monitor Assembly	2319551-6		1	1
101	Monitor Cover Left	2320764		1	1
102	Monitor Cover Right	2320766		1	1
103	Monitor Cover Top	2320762		1	1
104	Monitor Cover Front	2320768	Bezel Assy	1	1
105	Monitor Switch Assembly	2300008	Common part with L5	1	1
106	Task Lamp	2317347	Common part with L5		

## Section 9-5 Keyboard

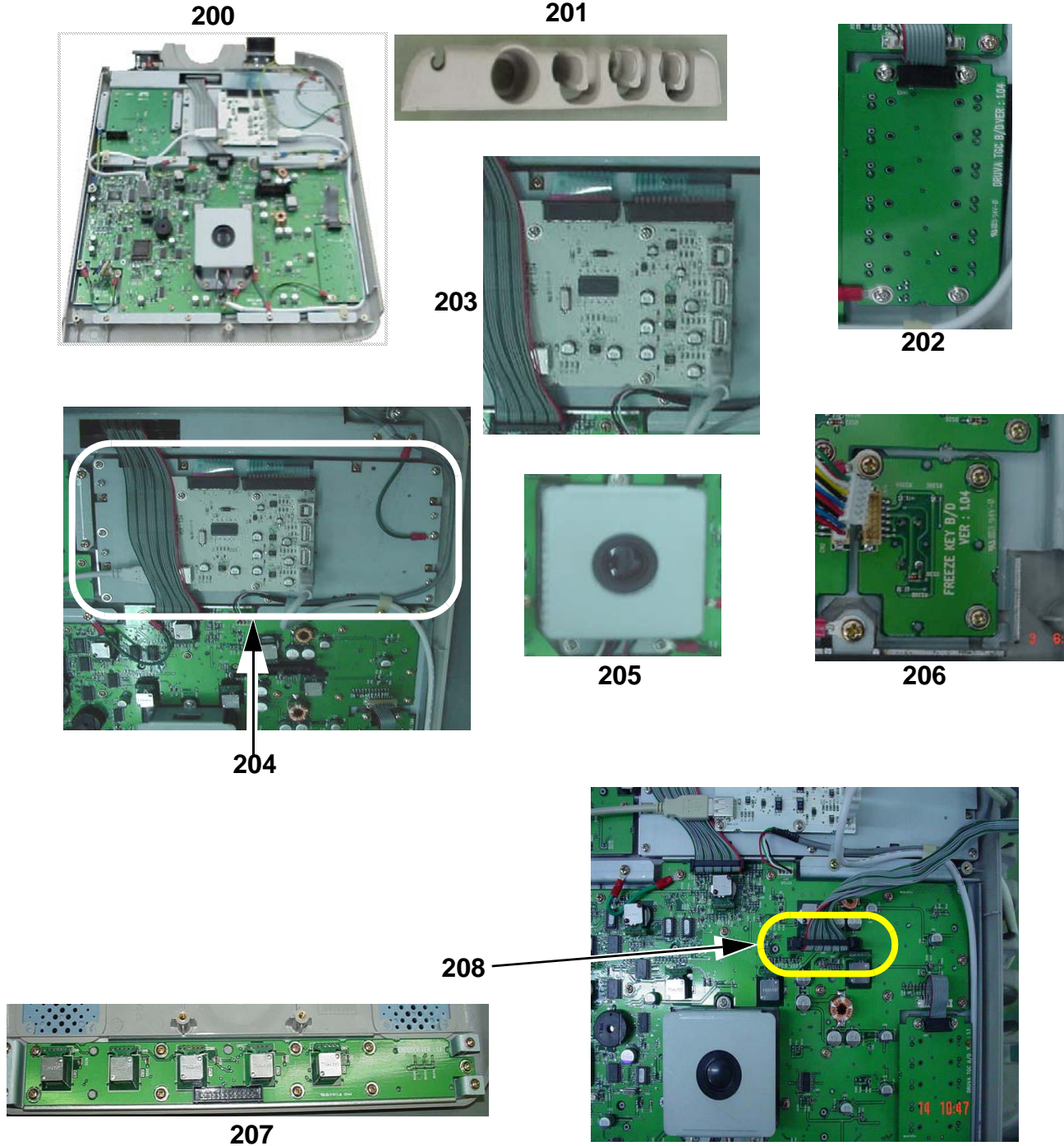


Figure 9-4 Keyboard FRU's

Table 9-3 Keyboard FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Comments	Qty	FRU
200	Keyboard Assembly	2319549-3	English Keyboard Assy	1	1
201	Probe Holder	2319638		1	1
202	Keyboard TGC Assy	2320741		1	1
203	Hub PCB Assy	2350376		1	1
204	A/N Keyboard Assy	2320751		1	1
205	Trackball Assy	2317344	Common part with L5	1	1
206	Freeze Key Assy	2320742		1	1
207	Power Switch & Encoder PCB Assy	2364732		1	1
208	Keyboard Power Cable	2364742		1	1

## Section 9-6 External Covers

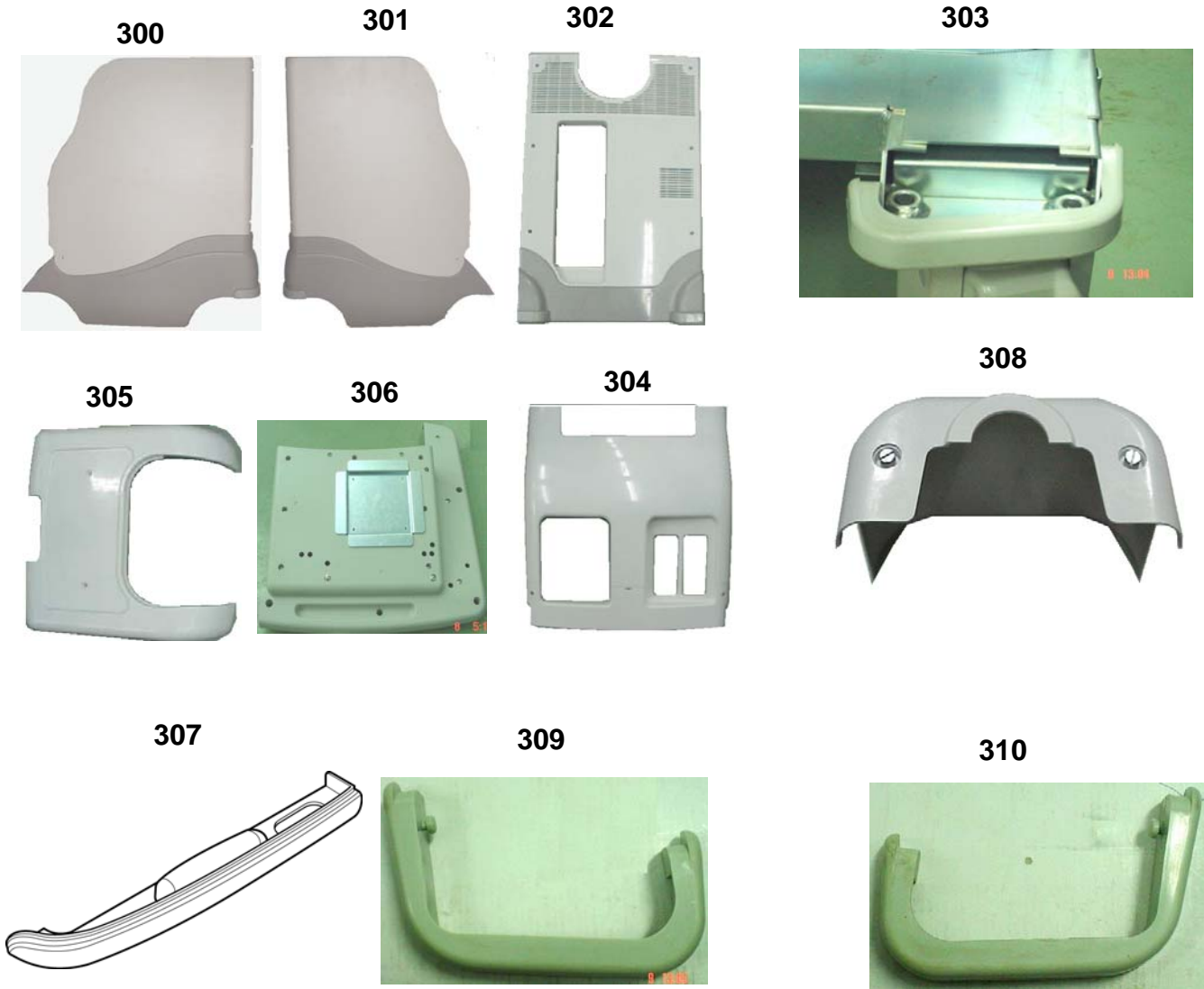


Figure 9-5 External Covers FRU's



Table 9-4 External Covers FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Comments	Qty	FRU
300	Right Cover Assy	2323369	Right Cover + Bumper	1	1
301	Left Cover Assy	2323368	Left Cover + Bumper	1	1
302	Rear Cover Assy	2367629	Rear Cover + Bumper for Asia	1	1
		2367630	Rear Cover + Bumper for rest of world		
303	Front Bumper Assy	2319621		1	1
304	Front Cover Assy	2367628		1	1
305	Top Cover Assy	2362285		1	1
306	Keyboard Bottom Cover	2319628		1	1
307	Keyboard Bumper	2319637		1	1
308	Keyboard Rear Cover Assy	2334618	Back Cover	1	1
309	Front Rubber Bumper Left	2319631		1	1
310	Front Rubber Bumper Right	2319632		1	1

## Section 9-7 Mechanical Assembly's

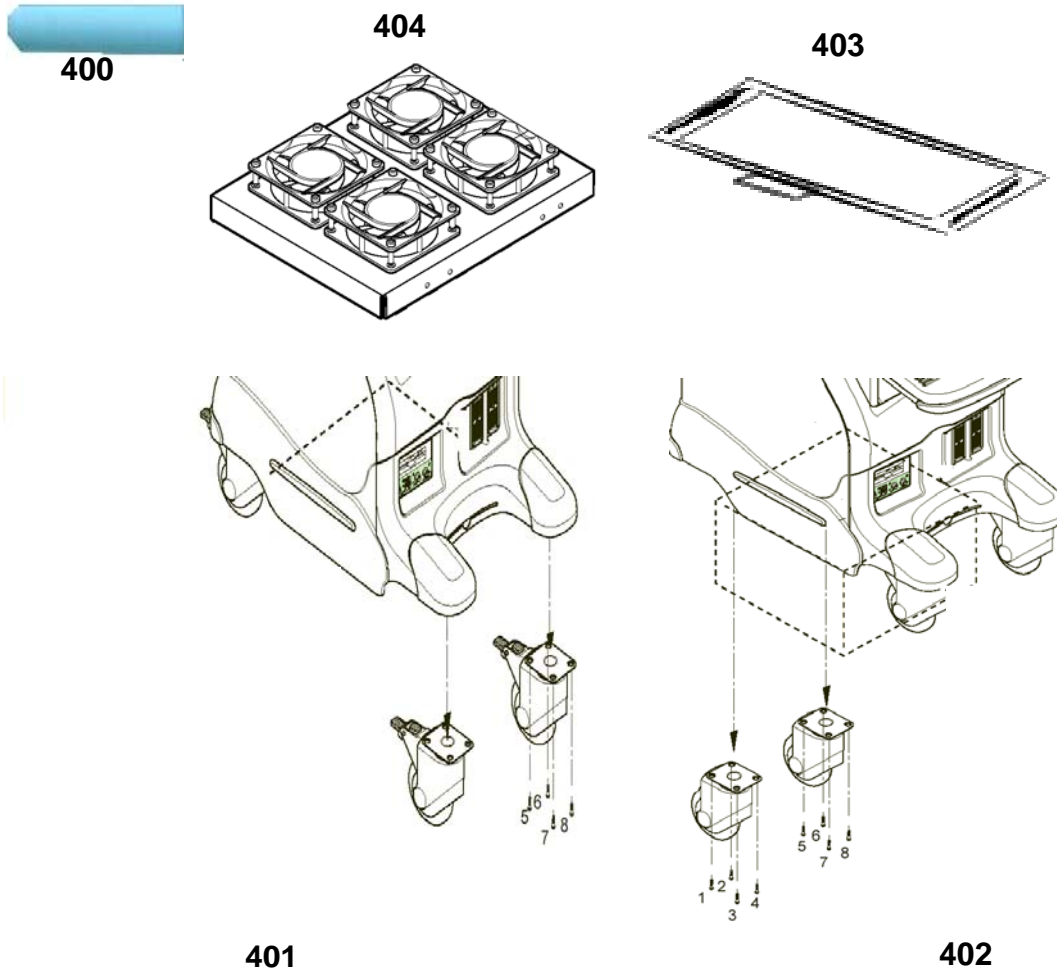


Figure 9-6 Mechanical Assembly FRU's

Table 9-5 Mechanical Assembly FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Comments	Qty	FRU
400	Handle Rod	2334639		1	1
401	Front Castor	2300021	Common with L5	2	1
402	Rear Castor	2300022	Common with L5	2	1
403	Air Filter	2326158		1	1
404	Card Cage Fan Assy	2350375	DC Fan Assembly	1	1
405	Speaker Set	2319526		1	1

## Section 9-8 I/O Interfaces

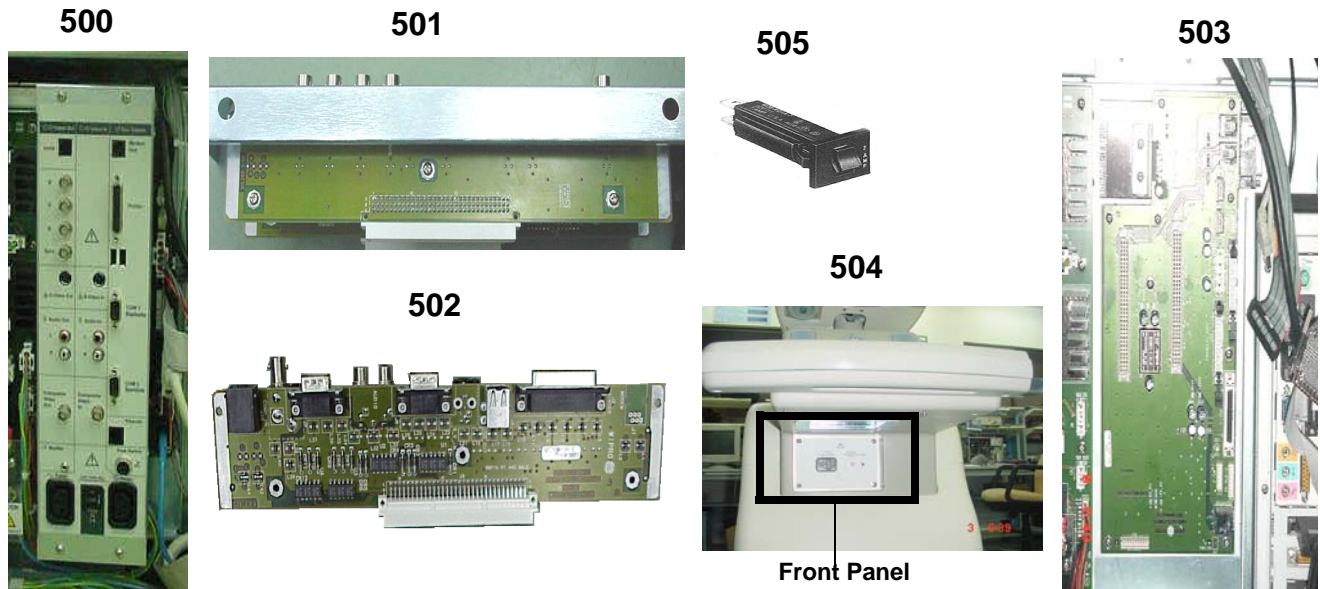


Figure 9-7 I/O Interfaces FRU's

Table 9-6 I/O Interfaces FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Comments	Qty	FRU
500	Rear Panel Assembly	2319547	Rear Panel Assy - 230VAC	1	1
		2383299	Rear Panel Assy - 100/115VAC	1	1
501	RP1 Assembly	2319486		1	1
502	RP2 Assembly	2319488		1	1
503	Rear Panel Interface Assembly	2319484-2	RPI	1	1
504	Front Panel Assembly	2383298	Front Panel Assy - 115VAC	1	1
505	Rear Panel Fuse - 3A	2332968	3A Fuse		
505	Rear Panel Fuse - 5A	2361948	5A Fuse	1	1

## Section 9-9 PCB Boards

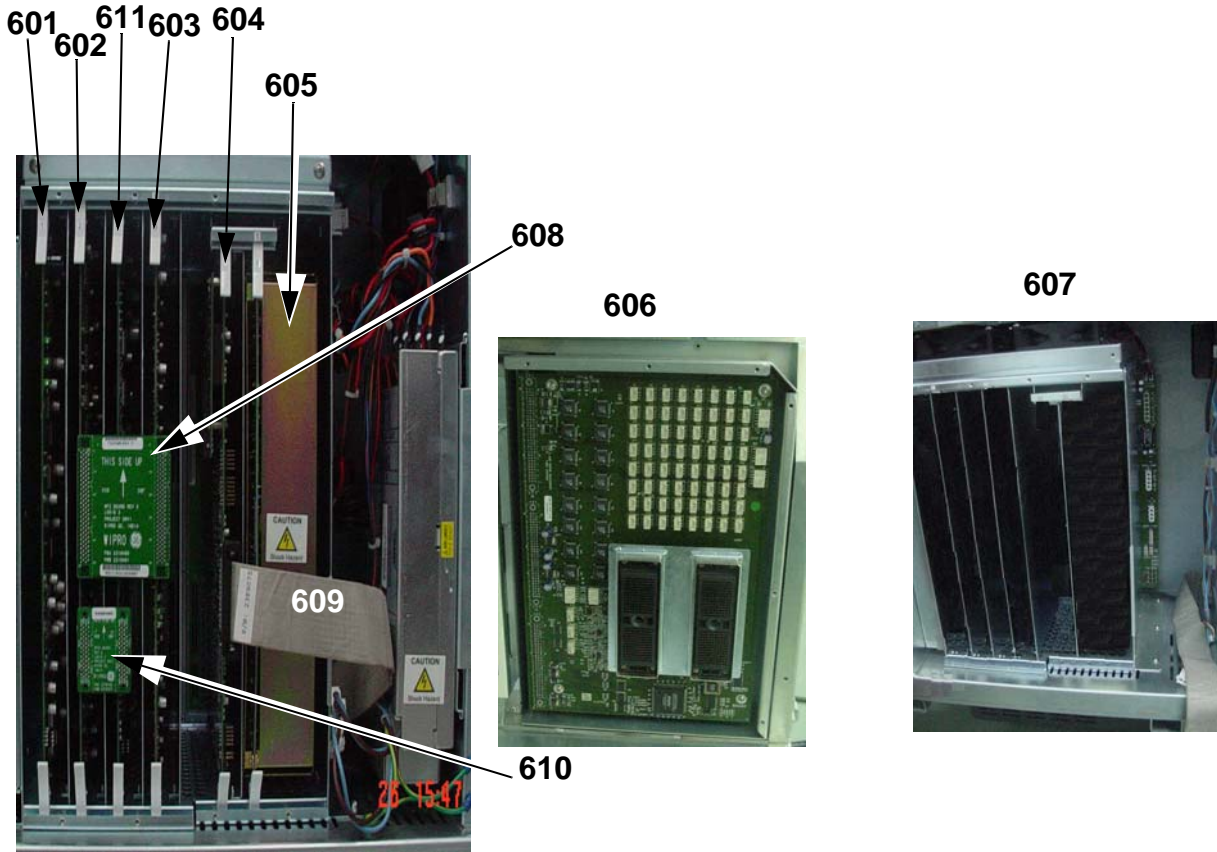


Figure 9-8 PCB Boards FRU'S

Table 9-7 PCB Boards FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Comments	Qty	FRU
601	Transmit Board Assy	2318124-3	TXB	1	1
602	Receive Board	2318122-3	RXB	1	1
603	Digital Beam Former Board	5129331-2	DBF	1	1
604	Front End Control Board	5137896		1	1
605	High Voltage Power Supply	2390954-3	HVPS	1	1
606	Connector Board	5123265	3 Probe Port Connector Bord	1	1
606	Connector Board	2318128-2	2 Probe Port Connector Board	1	1
607	Card cage with Backplane	2328381-3	Cardcage + Backplane Board	1	1
608	RFC Assy	2319480	RFC	1	1
609	PCI Cable	2363523	Common Part with L5	1	1
610	RFC2 Assy	2379706		1	1
611	CWD Assy	2401834		1	1
612	CWD+BPB+Cardcage Assy	2405514	This is a combination of FRU 607 and 611		

## Section 9-10 BEP

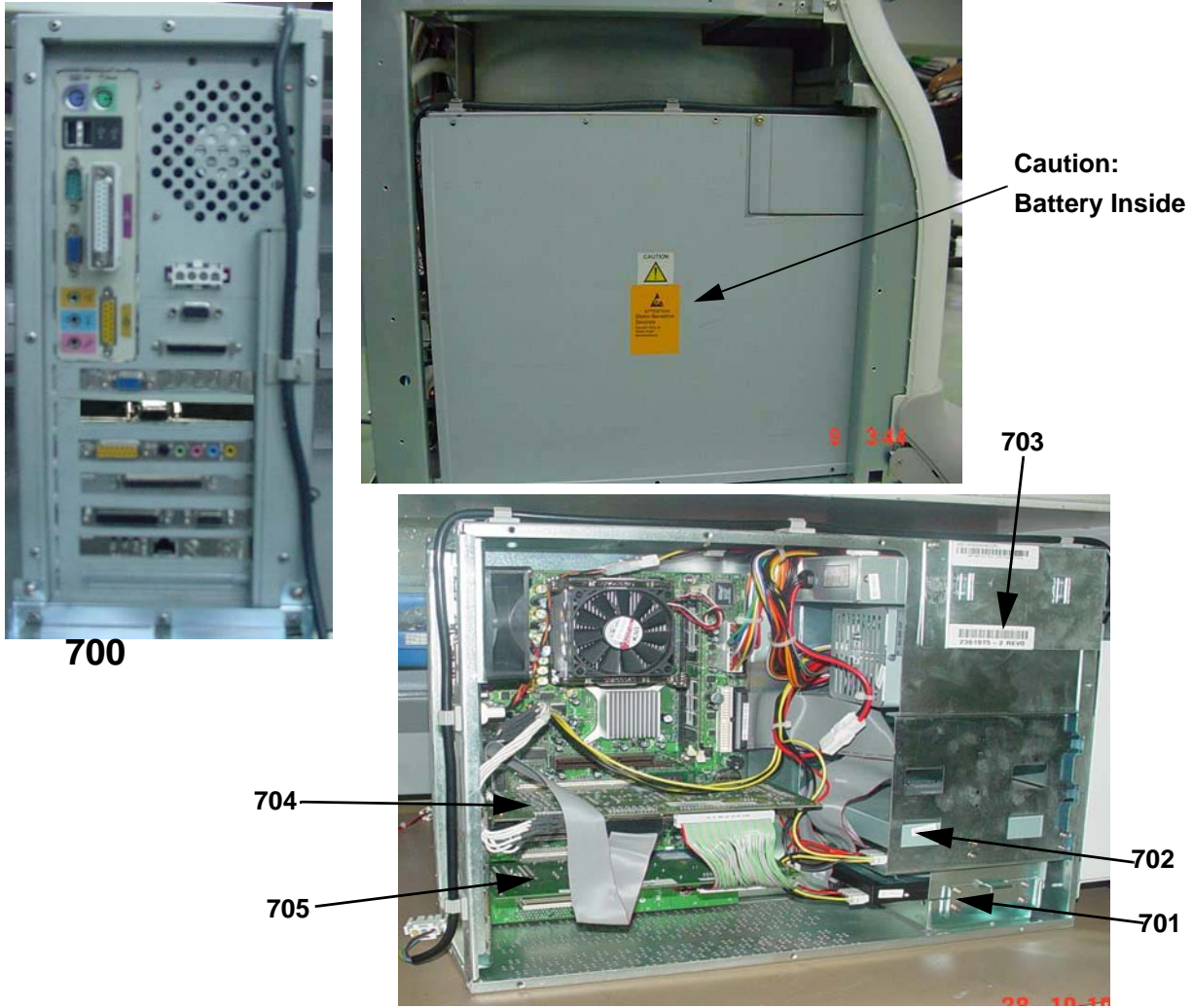


Figure 9-9 PC Block FRU's

Table 9-8 PC Block FRU's

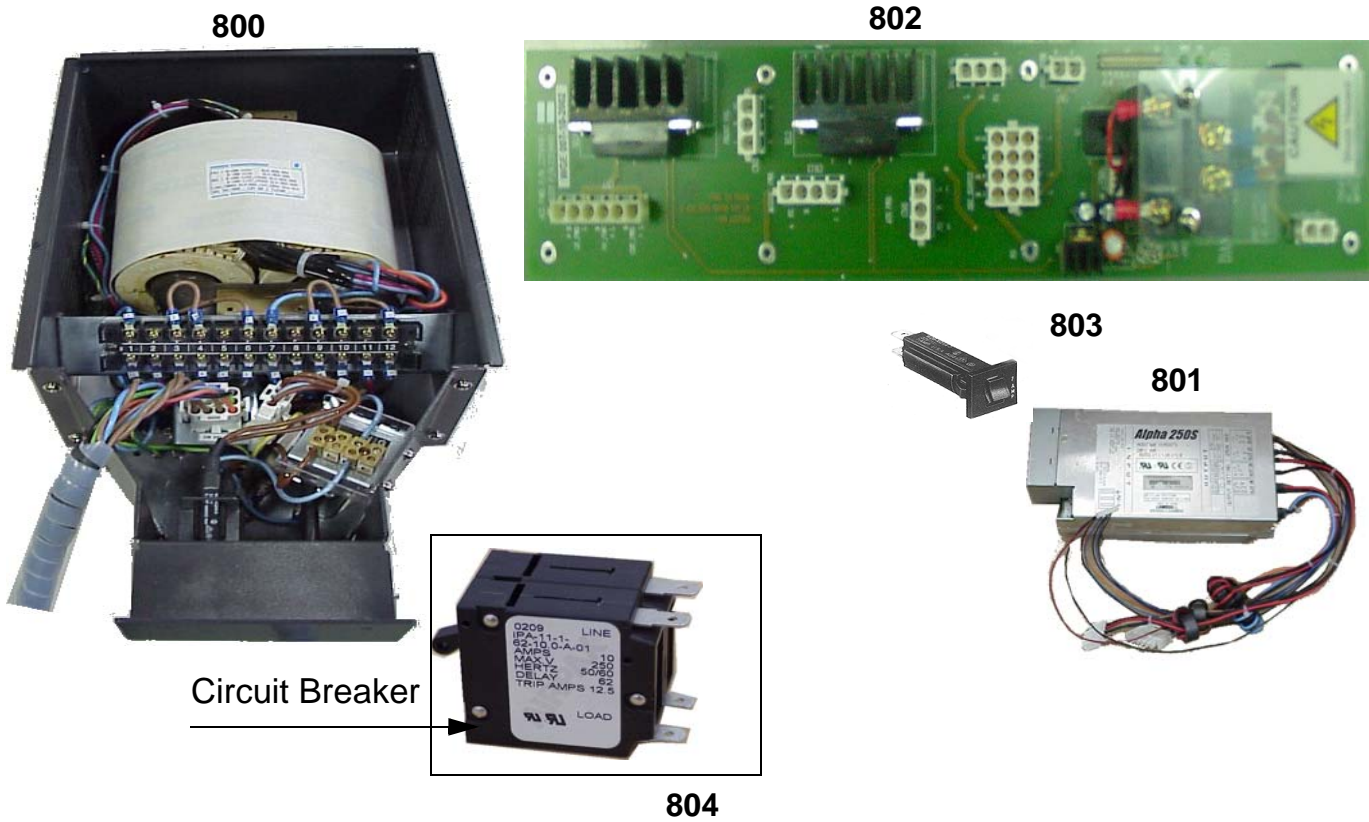
Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
700	BEP3 Assy for S/W 2.X.X	5126610-2	Back End Processor Assy	1	1
	BEP3 Assy for S/W 4.0.X	2361975-8	Back End Processor Assy	1	1
	BEP4 FRU Assy for S/W 4.1.X	5220185	Back End Processor Assembly 5191287 with USB extender cable 5196002	1	1
701	HDD for S/W 4.X.X	5138280		1	1
702	CDRW For BEP 2 - 48x24x48	2381159		1	1
	LG Drive: CDRW	2399547-2		1	1
703	Nipron Power Supply for BEP2,BEP3, and BEP4	2399007		1	1
704	PCVIC PCB	2393280		1	1
705	PC2IP PCB for R2.X.X or R4.X.X	FB200973, and FC200617		1	1
	PC2IP2 PCB for R2.X.X or R4.X.X	FB200312, and FC200656		1	1
	PC2IP3 PCB For R4.X.X	5220187	PC2IP3(FC200755) with R4.1.X base and application software	1	1



**CAUTION** BEP contains battery above the ATX Power supply. Handle With care during Service & Replacements.

Disposal of Battery should follow local Environment Guidelines.

**Section 9-11  
Power Block**



**804**  
**Figure 9-10 Power Block FRU's**

**Table 9-9 Power Block FRU's**

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
800	Transformer Assy	2406958	Transformer Assy	1	1
801	LVPS	2319545-2	Low Voltage Power Supply	1	1
802	ACI Assembly	2319490-2	AC Interface Board	1	1
803	Transformer Fuse	2361948		1	1
804	Circuit Breake and Guardr	2405517		1	1
805	Noise Filter	2319501		1	1



**NOTICE** Replace Circuit Breaker and Noise Filter in case of transformer failure  
Refer Disassy procedure of Circuit Breaker and noise filter.



## Section 9-12 Power Cord

Table 9-10 Power Cord

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
900	Power Cord Assy	2365878	Power Cord - Japan	1	1
901	Power Cord Assy	2343034	Power Cord - India	1	1
902	Power Cord Assy	2342033	Power Cord - Europe	1	1
903	Power Cord Assy	2334499	Power Cord - USA	1	1
904	Power Cord Assy	5137225	POWER CORD - CHINESE 230V WITH CCC MARK	1	1

## Section 9-13 Probes

Table 9-11 Probes

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1000	3C	2286354	Convex Probe	1	2
1001	5C	2294516	Convex Probe	1	2
1002	E8C	2294641	Micro Convex Probe	1	2
1003	10LB	2253846	Linear Probe	1	2
1004	3S	2323337	Sector Probe	1	2
1005	3.5C	2296158	Convex Probe	1	2
1006	7S	2263669	Sector Probe	1	2
1007	10L*	2294523	Linear Probe	1	2
1008	12L Probe*	2295377	Linear Probe	1	2
1009	8C Probe*	2348094	Convex Probe	1	2
1010	BE9C*	2389382	Convex Probe	1	2
1011	8L**	5140738	Linear	1	2

NOTE: \* Indicates Probe Exclusive to LOGIQ 3 EXPERT

## Section 9-14 Peripherals

Table 9-12 Peripherals

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1100	SVO-9500MD	Local	Sony VCR	1	2
1101	SVO-9500MDP	Local	Sony VCR	1	2
1102	AG-MD835P	Local	Panasonic VCR	1	2
1103	AG-MD835E	Local	Panasonic VCR	1	2
1104	UP-895MDW	Local	Sony B/W Printer	1	2
1105	UP- UPD895 USB	Local	Sony B/W Printer	1	2
1106	Model P91W	Local	Mitsubishi B&W Printer	1	2
1107	UP-21MD	Local	Sony Color Printer	1	2
1108	UP-21MD USB	Local	Sony Color Printer	1	2
1109	UP-23MD USB	Local	Sony Color Printer	1	1
1110	CP-900UM	Local	Mitsubishi Color Printer	1	2
1111	UP-51MD	Local	Sony Color Printer	1	2
1112	HP 990CXi	Local	HP PC Printer	1	2
1113	HP 6122	Local	HP PC Printer		
1114	HP 5652	Local	HP PC Printer		
1115	CP-900E	Local	Mitsubishi Color Printer	1	2
1116	CP-CP-900DW	Local	Mitsubishi Color Printer	1	2
1117	256MB USB 2.0 Flash memory	Local	Transcend-JetFlashT5256M	1	2
1118	512MB USB 2.0 Flash memory	Local	Kingston-Data traveller 2.0	1	2
1119	UP-897MDW	Local	Sony B/W Printer	1	2
1120	UP-D897MD	Local	Sony B/W Printer	1	2
1121	P93DW	Local	Mitsubishi B&W Printer	1	2
1122	HP K550	Local	HP Office PRO	1	2

## Section 9-15 Cables Set

Table 9-13 Cables Set - 2367627

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1200	Cable Set	2367627		1	1

## Section 9-16 Option Parts

Table 9-14 Option Parts

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1300	ECG Cable Hook	2283028		1	1
1301	ECG Cable Assembly 37	2319535		1	1
1302	Cable Set for B/W Printer	2369943		1	1
1303	Cable Set for B/W Digital Printer	2367622		1	1
1304	Cable Set for Analog Color Printer	2369944		1	1
1305	Cable Set for Digital Color Printer	2367621		1	1
1306	Cable Set for Sony VCR	2367618		1	1
1307	Cable Set for Panasonic VCR	2367620		1	1
1308	VGP Tray for Logiq 3	2334260		1	1
1309	VGP Tray Cover for Logiq 3	2352823		1	1
1310	Color Printer Mounting Plate - A	2377612		1	1
1311	Color Printer Mounting Plate - B	2377613		1	1
1312	VCR Mounting Tray for Logiq 3	2380864		1	1
1313	VCR Mounting Tray Bracket for Logiq 3	2380866		1	1
1314	Global Modem Kit	2245794		1	1
1315	ECG Patient I/O Module	FA200801		1	1
1316	THI Board	2288838-2		1	1
1317	Additional Probe port Adapter	2334993		1	1
1318	Foot Switch for Logiq 3	FB200952		1	1
1319	MOD Top Mounting Plate	2380861		1	1
1320	MOD Bottom Mounting Plate	2380862		1	1
1321	MOD for Logiq 3	2384284		1	1
1322	MOD Power Supply	2384285		1	1
1323	Russian Language Kit	2331768		1	1
1324	Greek Language Kit	2331769		1	1
1325	PGC Microphone for Logiq 3	2326844		1	1
1326	Cable ECG Marquette IEC	164L0026		1	1
1327	Leadwires ECG Marquette IEC	164L0028		1	1

## Section 9-17 New FRUs for LOGIQ™3 Expert



Figure 9-3 LOGIQ3 Expert Fru's

## 9-17-1 Hardware FRU's for LOGIQ3 BT'05

Table 9-2 LOGIQ3 BT'05 Hardware FRU's

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1400	Standard 3 Port connector board Assembly - Main PCB and Piggy PCB	5123265	1401 and 1402 forms 1400 FRU	1	2
1401	Main board Assembly for Standard 3 port connector board	5119271		1	2
1402	Piggy PCB for Standard 3 port Connector Board Assembly	5117473		1	2
1403	Logiq 3 BEP3 with 80 GB Hard Disk , Additional USB support, PC2IPII Rev 4 and 2.8 GHZ Processor for Software 4.0.X	2361975-8		1	2
	BEP4 Back End Processor for L3 S/W 4.1.0 with D865GSA	5191287		1	2
1404	ST380011A SEAGATE 80 GB 7400 RPM HARDDISK FOR LOGIQ 3	5138280		1	2
1405	Dual Power Dual USB Front Panel - for Logiq 3	5121498		1	2
1406	Front-cover-3PP for L3	5116278		1	2
1407	Front-bumper-3PP for L3	5116279		1	2
1408	VCR FIXTURE FOR MITSUBISHI-MD3000	5136090		1	2
1409	VCR FIXTURE BRACKET FOR MITSUBISHI-MD3000	5136091		1	2
1410	Logiq3 BT05 USB cable Asm FRU	5141575		1	2

## 9-17-2 Software FRU's for LOGIQ3 Expert

Table 9-1 Software FRU's For LOGIQ 3 Expert

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1411	Logiq 3 Expert BT05 Application Software for software R4.0.0	5133116		1	2
1412	Base Image Software -BEP3-Intel Motherboard D845GVSRL for LOGIQ3 Expert BT05 S/W Release 4.0.X	5120166		1	2
1413	Base Image Software -BEP2-Intel Motherboard D845GEBV2 for LOGIQ3 Expert BT05 S/W Release 4.0.X.	5120163		1	2
1414	Logiq3 Expert Application software for R4.1.0	5133116-2		1	2
1415	Base Image software for BEP2 with Intel865 Motherboard for Logiq 3 BT05 S/W Release 4.1.X	5120163-2		1	2
1416	Base Image software for BEP3 with Intel865 Motherboard for Logiq 3 BT05 S/W Release 4.1.X	5120166-3		1	2
1417	Base Image CD for BEP4 Intel865 for Logiq 3 BT05 Expert S/W Release 4.1.X	5193870		1	2

## Section 9-18 Software FRUs for LOGIQ™3 PRO

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1418	Logiq3 Pro Application software for 4.0.0	5140654		1	2
1419	Logiq3 Pro Application software for 4.0.1	5140654-2		1	2
1420	Logiq3 Pro BT05 Base Image Software for BEP3 for R4.0.X	5140657		1	2
1421	Logiq 3 Pro Base Image Software BT05 BEP2 for R4.0.X	5140647		1	2
1422	Logiq3 Pro Application software for R4.1.0	5140654-3		1	2
1423	Logiq3 Pro BT05 Base Image Software for BEP4 S/W Release 4.1.X	5193870		1	2
1424	Logiq3 Pro BT05 Base Image Software for BEP3 S/W Release 4.1.X	5120166-3		1	2
1425	Logiq 3 Pro Base Image Software BT05 BEP2 S/W Release 4.1.X	5120163-2		1	2

## Section 9-19 Software FRUs for LOGIQ™3 Black And White

Item	Part Name	Part Number	Description	Qty	FRU
1426	Logiq 3 Black and White Base Image Software - BEP3 for R4.0.0	5140660		1	2
1427	Logiq 3 Black and Software BT05 Application Software for R4.0.0	5140661		1	2
1428	Logiq3 Black and White BT05 Base Image Software - BEP2 for R4.0.0	5140659		1	2
1429	Logiq3 Application software for R4.1.0	5140661-2		1	2
1430	Logiq 3 Black and White Base Image Software - BEP4 for R4.1.X	5193870		1	2
1431	Logiq 3 Black and White Base Image Software - BEP3 for R4.1.X	5120166-3		1	2
1432	Logiq3 Black and White BT05 Base Image Software - BEP2 for R4.1.X	5120163-2		1	2

# Chapter 10

## Care & Maintenance

### Section 10-1 Overview

#### 10-1-1 Periodic Maintenance Inspection

It has been determined by engineering that your LOGIQ™ 3 system does not have any high wear components that fail with use, therefore no Periodic Maintenance Inspections are mandatory. Some Customers Quality Assurance Programs may require additional tasks and or inspections at a different frequency than listed in this manual.

#### 10-1-2 Purpose of Chapter 10

This chapter describes **Care & Maintenance** (PM) on the scanner and its peripherals. These PM procedures are intended to maintain the quality of the ultrasound systems performance. Read this chapter completely and familiarize yourself with the procedures before starting a PM.

### CONTENTS IN CHAPTER 10

Table 10-1 Contents in Chapter 10

Section	Description	Page Number
10-1	Overview	10-1
10-2	Why do Maintenance	10-2
10-3	Periodic Maintenance Schedule	10-2
10-4	Tools Required	10-4
10-5	System Maintenance	10-7
10-6	Using a Phantom	10-12
10-7	Electrical Safety Tests	10-12
10-8	When There's Too Much Leakage Current...	10-28
	PM Inspection Certificate	10-29



**CAUTION** Practice good ESD prevention. Wear an anti-static strap when handling electronic parts and even when disconnecting/connecting cables.



**DANGER** THERE ARE SEVERAL PLACES ON THE BACKPLANE, THE AC DISTRIBUTION, AND DC DISTRIBUTION THAT ARE DANGEROUS. BE SURE TO DISCONNECT THE SYSTEM POWER PLUG AND OPEN THE MAIN CIRCUIT BREAKER BEFORE YOU REMOVE ANY PARTS. BE CAUTIOUS WHENEVER POWER IS STILL ON AND COVERS ARE REMOVED.



**CAUTION** Do not pull out or insert circuit boards while power is ON.

## Section 10-2 Why do Maintenance

### 10-2-1 Keeping Records

It is good business practice that ultrasound facilities maintain records of quality checks and corrective maintenance. The Ultrasound Inspection Certificate(Provided on Page 10-29) provides the customer with documentation that the ultrasound scanner is maintained on a periodic basis.

A copy of the Ultrasound Periodic Maintenance Inspection Certificate should be kept in the same room or near the scanner.

### 10-2-2 Quality Assurance

In order to gain accreditation from organizations such as the American College of Radiology (USA), it is the customer's responsibility to have a quality assurance program in place for each scanner. The program must be directed by a medical physicist, the supervising radiologist/physician or appropriate designee.

Routine quality control testing must occur regularly. The same tests are performed during each period so that changes can be monitored over time and effective corrective action can be taken.

Testing results, corrective action and the effects of corrective action must be documented and maintained on the site.

Your GE service representative can help you with establishing, performing and maintaining records for a quality assurance program. Please contact us for coverage information and/or price for service.

## Section 10-3 Periodic Maintenance Schedule

### 10-3-1 How often should care & maintenance tasks be performed?

The Care & Maintenance Task Schedule (provided on page 10-3) specifies how often your LOGIQ™ 3 should be serviced and outlines items requiring special attention.

*NOTE: It is the customer's responsibility to ensure the LOGIQ™ 3 care & maintenance is performed as scheduled in order to retain its high level of safety, dependability and performance.*

Your GE Service Representative has an indepth knowledge of your LOGIQ™ 3 ultrasound scanning system and can best provide competent, efficient service. Please contact us for coverage information and/or price for service.

The service procedures and recommended intervals shown in the Care and Maintenance Task schedule assumes that you use your LOGIQ™ 3 for an average patient load (10-12 per day) and not used as a primary "mobile unit" which is transported between diagnostic facilities.

If conditions exist which exceed typical usage and patient load, then it is recommended to increase the periodic maintenance frequencies

*NOTE: If conditions exist which exceed typical usage and patient load, then it is recommended to increase the maintenance frequencies.*



**Table 10-2 Customer Care Schedule**

Service at Indicated Time	Daily	Weekly	Monthly	Annually	Notes
Clean Probes	●*				* or before each use
Clean Probe Holders	●				
Clean Air Filter		●			more frequently depending on your environment
Inspect AC Mains Cable			●		Mobile Unit Check Weekly
Inspect Cables and Connectors			●		
Clean Console			●		
Clean Monitor			●		
Inspect Wheels, Casters, brakes and Swivel Locks			●		Mobile Unit Check Daily
Console Leakage Current Checks				●	also after corrective maintenance
Peripheral Leakage Current Checks				●	also after corrective maintenance
Surface Probe Leakage Current Checks				●	also after corrective maintenance
Endocavity Probe Leakage Current Checks					<b>Twice Annually</b>
Surgical Probe Leakage Current Checks					As Prescribed in probe manual
Measurement Accuracy Checks				●	also after corrective maintenance
Probe/Phantom Checks				●	also after corrective maintenance

## Section 10-4 Tools Required

### 10-4-1 Standard GE Tool Kit

The following is a description of the “Standard” GE tool kit in the USA. Not all tools are required for PMs.

**Table 10-3 Overview of GE-1 Tool Kit Contents**

Tool ID	Description	Tool ID	Description
9-45358	Pliers Retaining Ring	9-XL9971MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 1.27mm
9-4078	Scribe	9-XL9972MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 1.5mm
9-44572	Wrench Open End 3/8 - 7/16	9-XL9973MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 2 mm
9-44579	Wrench Open End 1/2 - 9/16	9-XL9974MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 2.5mm
9-44579	Wrench Open End 1/2 - 9/16	9-XL9975MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 3mm
9-45385	Pliers, Arc Joint 7 inch	9-XL9976MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 4mm
9-45378	Pliers, Slip Joint	9-XL9977MM	Xcelite-hex Blade 5mm
9-4518	Pliers, Long Nose, Miniature	9-XL991CM	Handle
9-4518	Pliers, Long Nose, Miniature	C2356E	Screw starter - Kedman Quick Wedge
9-44776	Ignition Wrench Set, 10 pc.	BLBO	Box - 18 Compartment
9-44601	Wrench, Adj., 4 inch	DWL4283T	Box - 5 Compartment
9-4151	Screwdriver, Blade, Stubby	9-41322	Pickup Tool, Claw type
9-41421	Screwdriver, Blade, Pocket clip	9-6757	6 pc Needle File Set
9-41594	Screwdriver, Blade 1/8 in. x 4 in.	9-9487	Utility Knife
9-41581	Screwdriver, Blade 3/16 in. x 4 in.	9-45341	Pliers Vice Grip 10 inch
9-39451	20' Steel Tape, locking Spring load	9-3001	Xacto Pen Knife
9-GH807	Ratchet, Offset, Slotted	9-HT62002	Solder Aid, Fork and Hook
68-412	Ratchet, Offset, Phillips	9-4099	Mirror, Round, Telescoping
9-GH130	Tapered Reamer	9-GH3001	Steel Rule Decimal 6 inch
9-41584	Screwdriver, slotted 1/4 in.X 6 in.	9-GH300ME	Steel Rule Metric 6 inch
9-4118	Screwdriver, Phillips #2, Stubby	9-XL9920	Xcelite-hex Blade.050 inch
9-41293	Screwdriver, Phillips #0	9-XL9921	Xcelite-hex Blade 1/16 inch
9-41294	Screwdriver, Phillips #1	9-XL9922	Xcelite-hex Blade 5/16 inch
9-41295	Screwdriver, Phillips #2	9-XL9923	Xcelite-hex Blade 3/32 inch
9-46677	Hex Keys, 20 pc., Metric	9-XL9924	Xcelite-hex Blade 1/8 inch
9-34701	1/4 in. Standard.Socket set (19 pc)	9-XL9925	Xcelite-hex Blade 5/32 inch
9-43499	1/2 inch Socket 1/4 inch drive	9-XL9926	Xcelite-hex Blade 3/16 inch
9-4355	Flex Spinner	9-XL99764	Xcelite-hex Blade 7/64
9-43523	Breaker	9-XL99964	Xcelite-hex Blade 9/64
9-43531	6 inch Ext.	9-XLM60	Mini-screwdriver kit

**Table 10-3 Overview of GE-1 Tool Kit Contents (Continued)**

Tool ID	Description	Tool ID	Description
9-65283	Case 8.5 in. x 4.5 in. x 2 in. Deep	9-45072	Pliers 6 inch Diagonal
9-46696	Hex Keys	9-XL100X	Wire Stripper/Cutter 5 inch - 100X
9-39829	Torpedo Level, Magnetic	9-XL87CG	Pliers - very fine needle nose-87CG
9-38461	Hammer, Ball Peen, 4 oz	9-WEWDT-07	Weller-Soldering-Replacement Tip(1)
9-4280	Universal Joint 1/4 inch	9-WS175-E	Wiss - Surgical Scissors
9-WEW60P3	Weller - Soldering Iron, 3 wire	KH174	Hemostat 5 inch Straight
9-WECT5B6	Weller - Soldering Iron Tip	KH175	Hemostat 5 inch curved
9-WEWDP12	Weller - Desoldering Pump	9-Z9480121	Alignment tool (red)
93383	Flashlight Mini-Mag Lite (AAA Bat.)		
9-GH408	Tweezers		
21576	Brush - Bristle		
9-4516	Pliers 4 1/4 inch Diagonal		

**Table 10-4 Overview of GE-2 Tool Kit Contents**

GE-2 Sears Kit (#99034)			
Tool ID	Description	Tool ID	Description
9-45381	Pliers, Arc Joint 9 1/2 inch	9-44067	Socket 1 1/16 in. for 1/2 in. drive
9-45092	Pliers, Linesman 8 1/2 inch	9-42679	Socket 10MM Hex for 1/2 in. drive (2273333)
9-42882	Punch, Pin 3/32 inch	9-44262	Extension 10 inch for 1/2 in. drive (2273405)
9-42884	Punch, Pin 5/32 inch	9-4258	3/8 inch to 1/2 inch Adapter
9-42886	Punch, Pin 1/4 inch	9-34374	3/8 inch Metric Socket Set - 12 PT
9-42973	Cold Chisel 1/2 inch	9-44311	16mm Socket 12 pt.
9-GH77	Center Punch Automatic	9-33485	Metal Socket Tray
9-GH890	File Handle, Adj.	9-33484	Metal Socket Tray
9-31276	File, Round, Bastard 8 inch	9-33484	Metal Socket Tray
9-31277	File, Half Round, Bastard 8 inch	9-52068	Tap and Drill Set
9-31263	File, Flat Mill 8 inch	9-52722	#6 Tap
21045C	Close Quarter Saw	9-52723	#8 Tap
9-44604	Wrench, Adj 10 inch		High Speed Drill Set
9-41587	Screwdriver 5/16 inch x 8 inch		#36 Drill
9-41586	Screwdriver, Stubby 5/16 inch		#29 Drill
9-GH19512	Countersink 1/2 inch	9-44046	3/8 inch Socket Set
9-44741	12 PC Combination Wrench Set		

## 10-4-2 Special Tools, Supplies and Equipment

### 10-4-2-1 Specific Requirements for Care & Maintenance

**Table 10-5 Overview of Requirements for Periodic Maintenance**

Tool	Part Number	Comments
Digital Volt Meter (DVM)		
Leakage Current Ultrasound Kit	2113015	For 120V and 220V Units
Anti Static Kit	46-194427P231 46-194427P279 46-194427P369 46-194427P373 46-194427P370	Kit includes anti-static mat, wrist strap and cables for 200 to 240 V system 3M #2204 Large adjustable wrist strap 3M #2214 Small adjustable wrist strap 3M #3051 conductive ground cord
Anti Static Vacuum Cleaner	46-194427P278 46-194427P279	120V 230V
Air Filter	See Chapter 9	air intake
Safety Analyzer	46-285652G1	DALE 600 KIT (or equivalent) for electrical tests
SVHS VCR Cassette	E7010GG E7010GF	60 minute 120 minute
SVHS VCR Head Cleaner		See VCR user manual for requirements
QIQ Phantom	E8370RB	RMI Grayscale Target Model 403GS
CD-RW Media		For LOGIQ™ 3
B/W Printer Cleaning Sheet		See printer user manual for requirements
Color Printer Cleaning Sheet		See printer user manual for requirements
Disposable Gloves		

## Section 10-5 System Maintenance

### 10-5-1 Preliminary Checks

The preliminary checks take about 15 minutes to perform. Refer to the system user documentation whenever necessary.

**Table 10-6 System Checks**

Step	Item	Description
1	Ask & Listen	Ask the customer if they have any problems or questions about the equipment.
2	Paperwork	Fill in the top of the Ultrasound Inspection Certificate(see page 10-29). Note all probes and system options.
3	Power up	Turn the system power on and verify that all fans and peripherals turn on. Watch the displays during power up to verify that no warning or error messages are displayed.
4	Probes	Verify that the system properly recognizes all probes.
5	Displays	Verify proper display on the monitor
6	Presets	Backup all customer presets on an CD-R.

## 10-5-2 Functional Checks (See Also Chapter 4)

The functional checks take about 60 minutes to perform. Refer to the system user documentation whenever necessary.

### 10-5-2-1 System Checks

**Table 10-7 System Functional Checks**

÷	Step	Description
	B-Mode	Verify basic B-Mode (2D) operation. Check the basic system controls that affect this mode of operation.
	CF-Mode	Verify basic CF-Mode (Color Flow Mode) operation. Check the basic system controls that affect this mode of operation.
	Doppler Modes	Verify basic Doppler operation (PW). Check the basic system controls that affect this mode of operation.
	M-Mode	Verify basic M-Mode operation. Check the basic system controls that affect this mode of operation.
	*Applicable Software Options	Verify the basic operation of all optional modes such as Multi-Image, 3D (Option), Harmonics (Option), Cine, etc. Check the basic system controls that affect each options operation.
	Probe Elements	Perform an Element Test, on each probe to verify that all probe elements (and system channels) are functional.
	System Diagnostic	Perform the Automatic Tests, to verify that all boards function according to specifications.
	Control Panel Test	Perform the Control Panel Test Procedure, to verify that all keyboard controls are OK. This is performed by the internal PC (backend processor) which does a normal keyboard run through.
	Monitor	Verify basic Monitor display functions. Refer to Chapter 3 of the User Manual.
	Measurements	Scan a gray scale phantom and use the measurement controls to verify distance and area calculation accuracy. Refer to the User Manual, Chapter 18, for measurement accuracy specifications.

**NOTE:** *\* Some software may be considered standard depending upon system model configuration.*

### 10-5-2-2 Peripheral/Option Checks

If any peripherals or options are not part of the system configuration, the check can be omitted. Refer to the User Manual for a list of approved peripherals/options.

**Table 10-8 GE Approved Peripheral/Hardware Option Functional Checks**

Step	Item	Description
1	VCR	Verify record/playback capabilities of the VCR. Clean heads and covers if necessary.
2	B/W Printer	Verify hardcopy output of the B/W video page printer. Clean heads and covers if necessary.
3	Color Printer	Verify hardcopy output of the Color video page printer. Clean heads and covers if necessary.
4	DICOM	Verify that DICOM is functioning properly. Send an image to a DICOM device.
5	InSite/iLinq	Verify that InSite is functioning properly. Ensure two-way remote communications. (Warranty & Contract Customers only)
6	Camera	Verify hardcopy output of the film camera. Clean as necessary.
7	Footswitch	Verify that the footswitch is functioning as programmed. Clean as necessary.
8	ECG	Verify basic operation with customer

### 10-5-3 Input Power

#### 10-5-3-1 Mains Cable Inspection

**Table 10-9 Mains Cable Inspection**

Step	Item	Description
1	Unplug Cord	Disconnect the mains cable from the wall and system.
2	Inspect	Inspect it and its connectors for damage of any kind.
3	Verify	Verify that the LINE, NEUTRAL and GROUND wires are properly attached to the terminals, and that no strands may cause a short circuit.
4	Verify	Inlet connector retainer is functional.

### 10-5-4 Cleaning

#### 10-5-4-1 General Cleaning

**Table 10-10 General Cleaning**

Step	Item	Description
1	Console	Use a fluid detergent in warm water on a soft, damp cloth to carefully wipe the entire system. Be careful not to get the cloth too wet so that moisture does not enter the console.
2	Probe Holder	Clean probe holders (they may need to be soaked to remove excess gel).
3	Monitor	TBDFor monitor, use a non-ammonia (just isopropyl and water) lens cleaner. These are available at most computer outlet stores. DO NOT use Windex, Screen-Clean, etc., because these contain ammonia, which will remove the anti-glare coating on the monitor.

10-5-4-2 Air Filter Cleaning

Table 10-11 Air Filter Cleaning - frequency varies with your environment

Step	Item	Description
1	Remove Filter Cover	Refer to Chapter 8 for air filter location and removal instructions.
2	Clean Filter	The filters can be cleaned in sprinkling water, or they can be dusted with a vacuum cleaner. If the filter is metal wash and/or vacuum. If the filter is fiber or plastic vacuum or replace.
3	Install Filter	Install the clean filter.

**NOTE:** For your convenience or if the air filter is too dirty, replacement filters are available. Refer to Chapter 9 for the air filter replacement part number.

10-5-5 Physical Inspection

Table 10-12 Physical Checks

Step	Item	Description
1	Labeling	Verify that all system labeling is present and in readable condition. Refer to the User Manual 2300750 for details.
2	Scratches & Dents	Inspect the console for dents, scratches or cracks.
3	Control Panel	Inspect keyboard and control panel. Note any damaged or missing items.
4	Control Panel Movement	Verify ease of control panel (Operator I/O Panel) movement in all acceptable directions. Ensure that it latches in position as required.
5	Wheels & Brakes	Check all wheels and casters for wear and verify operation of foot brake, to stop the unit from moving, and release mechanism. Check all wheel locks and wheel swivel locks for proper operation.
6	Cables & Connectors	Check all internal cable harnesses and connectors for wear and secure connector seating. Pay special attention to footswitch assembly and probe strain or bend reliefs.
7	Shielding & Covers	Check to ensure that all EMI shielding, internal covers, air flow panels and screws are in place. Missing covers and hardware could cause EMI/RFI problems while scanning.
8	External I/O	Check all connectors for damage and verify that the labeling is good.
9	Op Panel Lights	Check for proper operation of all operator panel and TCG lights.
10	Monitor Light	Check for proper operation of any monitor lights if available.



## 10-5-6 Optional Diagnostic Checks

Optionally you can access the diagnostic software as described in Chapters 5 or 7. View the error logs and run desired diagnostics.

### 10-5-6-1 View the Logs

- 1.) Review the system error log for any problems.
- 2.) Check the temperature log to see if there are any trends that could cause problems in the future.
- 3.) Check the Configuration Log; update if needed.

## 10-5-7 Probe Maintenance

### 10-5-7-1 Probe Related Checks

**Table 10-13 Probe Related Checks**

Step	Item	Description
1	Probe Holder	Clean probe holders (they may need to be soaked to remove excess gel).
2	Probes	Thoroughly check the system probe connectors and remove dust from inside the connector sockets if necessary. Visually check for bent, damaged or missing pins

### 10-5-7-2 Basic Probe Care

The system user manuals and various probe handling cards provide a complete description of probe care, maintenance, cleaning and disinfection. Ensure that you are completely familiar with the proper care of GE probes.

Ultrasound probes can be easily damaged by improper handling. See the User Manual and probe care cards for more details. Failure to follow these precautions can result in serious injury and equipment damage. Failure to properly handle or maintain a probe may also void its warranty.

Any evidence of wear indicates the probe cannot be used.

Do a visual check of the probe pins and system sockets before plugging in a probe.

TEE and Interoperative probes often have special considerations and individual probe user manuals. For TEE and Interoperative probes also refer to their separate user manuals.

### 10-5-7-3 Basic Probe Cleaning

Refer to the User's Manual for details on probe cleaning.

**NOTE:** *To help protect yourself from blood borne diseases, wear approved disposable gloves. These are made of nitrile derived from vegetable starch to prevent allergic latex reactions.*

**NOTE:** *Failure to follow the prescribed cleaning or disinfection procedures will void the probe's warranty. DO NOT soak or wipe the lens with any product not listed in the User Manual. Doing so could result in irreparable damage to the probe. Follow care instructions that came with the probe.*

**NOTE:** *Disinfect a defective probe before you return it. Be sure to tag the probe as being disinfected.*


## Section 10-6 Using a Phantom


See the Basic User Manual “*Customer Maintenance*” for information on using a phantom and quality assurance tests.


## Section 10-7 Electrical Safety Tests

### 10-7-1 Safety Test Overview

The electrical safety tests in this section are based on and conform to NFPA 99 (For USA) and IEC/EN 60601-1 Medical Equipment Safety Standards. They are intended for the electrical safety evaluation of cord-connected, electrically operated, patient care equipment. If additional information is needed, refer to the NFPA 99 (For USA) and IEC/EN 60601-1 documents.

 **WARNING** ***THE USER MUST ENSURE THAT THE SAFETY INSPECTIONS ARE PERFORMED AT LEAST EVERY 12 MONTHS ACCORDING TO THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE PATIENT SAFETY STANDARD IEC-EN 60601-1. ONLY TRAINED PERSONS ARE ALLOWED TO PERFORM THE SAFETY INSPECTIONS MENTIONED ABOVE.***

 **CAUTION** To avoid electrical shock, the unit under test must not be connected to other electrical equipment. Remove all interconnecting cables and wires. The unit under test must not be contacted by users or patients while performing these tests.

 **CAUTION** Possible risk of infection. Do not handle soiled or contaminated probes and other components that have been in patient contact. Follow appropriate cleaning and disinfecting procedures before handling the equipment.

Test the system, peripherals and probes for leakage current. Excessive leakage current can cause injury or death in sensitive patients. High leakage current can also indicate degradation of insulation and a potential for electrical failure. Do not use probes or equipment having excessive leakage current.

To minimize the risk that a probe may shock someone the customer should:

- Not use a probe that is cracked or damaged in any way
- Check probe leakage current:
  - \* once a year on surface probes
  - \* twice a year on endocavitary probes
  - \* whenever probe damage is suspected

## 10-7-2 GEMS Leakage Current Limits

The following limits are summarized for NFPA 99 (For USA) and IEC 60601-1 Medical Equipment Safety Standards. These limits are GEMS standards and in some cases are lower than the above standards listed.

**Table 10-14 Chassis Leakage Current Limits—Accessible Metal Surfaces**

Country	Normal Condition	Open Ground	Reverse Polarity	Open Neutral
USA	N/A	0.3 mA	0.3 mA	N/A
Other	0.1 mA	0.5 mA	0.5 mA	0.5 mA

**Table 10-15 Type BF Applied Part Leakage Current Limits - Non-Conductive (Floating) Surface and Cavity Probes**

Country	Normal Condition	Open Ground	Reverse Polarity	Open Neutral	*Mains Applied
USA	0.05 mA	0.05 mA	0.05 mA	0.05 mA	N/A
Other	0.1 mA	0.5 mA	0.5 mA	0.5 mA	5.0 mA

**Table 10-16 Type CF Applied Part Leakage Current Limits - Surgical Probes and ECG Connections**

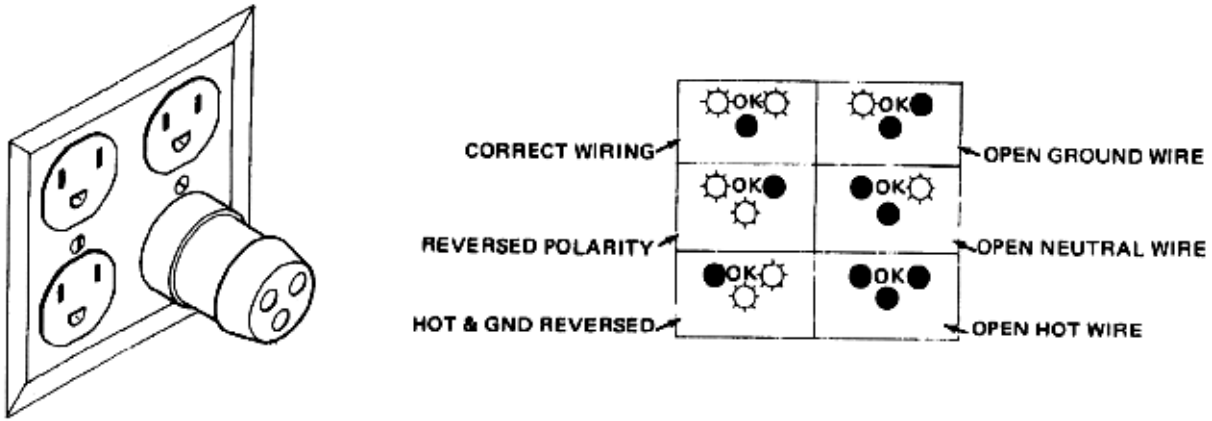
Country	Normal Condition	Open Ground	Reverse Polarity	Open Neutral	*Mains Applied
USA	0.01 mA	0.05mA	0.05 mA	N/A	0.025 mA
Other	0.01 mA	0.05 mA	0.05 mA	0.05 mA	0.05 mA

**NOTE:** *\*Mains Applied refers to the sink leakage test where mains (supply) voltage is applied to the part to determine the amount of current that will pass (or sink) to ground if a patient contacted mains voltage.*

The following tests are performed at the factory and should be performed at the site. These tests are: grounding continuity, chassis leakage current, probe leakage current, and ECG leakage current. All measurements are made with an electrical safety analyzer Model 600/600E built by Dale Technology Corporation or equivalent device.

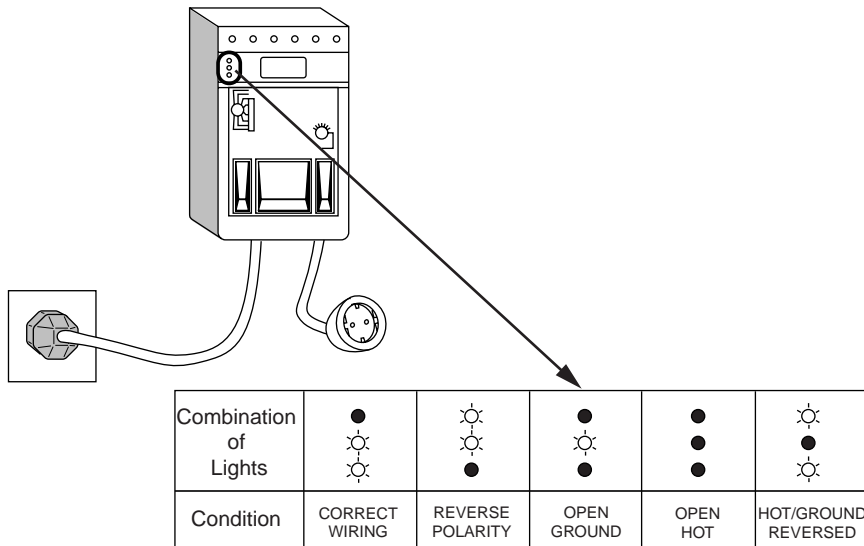
### 10-7-3 Outlet Test - Wiring Arrangement - USA & Canada

Test all outlets in the area for proper grounding and wiring arrangement by plugging in the neon outlet tester and noting the combination of lights that are illuminated. Any problems found should be reported to the hospital immediately and the receptacle should not be used.



**Figure 10-1 Typical Alternate Outlet Tester**

The Dale 600 has self-contained lamps designed for testing the outlet wiring arrangement. Plug the Dale 600 into each outlet to be tested comparing the lamp status.



**Figure 10-2 Dale 600 Outlet Test**

**NOTE:** No outlet tester can detect the condition where the Neutral (grounded supply) conductor and the Grounding (protective earth) conductor are reversed. If later tests indicate high leakage currents, this should be suspected as a possible cause and the outlet wiring should be visually inspected.

## 10-7-4 Grounding Continuity



**CAUTION Electric Shock Hazard. The patient must not be contacted to the equipment during this test**

Measure the resistance from the third pin of the attachment plug to the exposed metal parts of the case. The ground wire resistance should be less than **0.2 ohms**. Reference the procedure in the IEC 601-1.1.

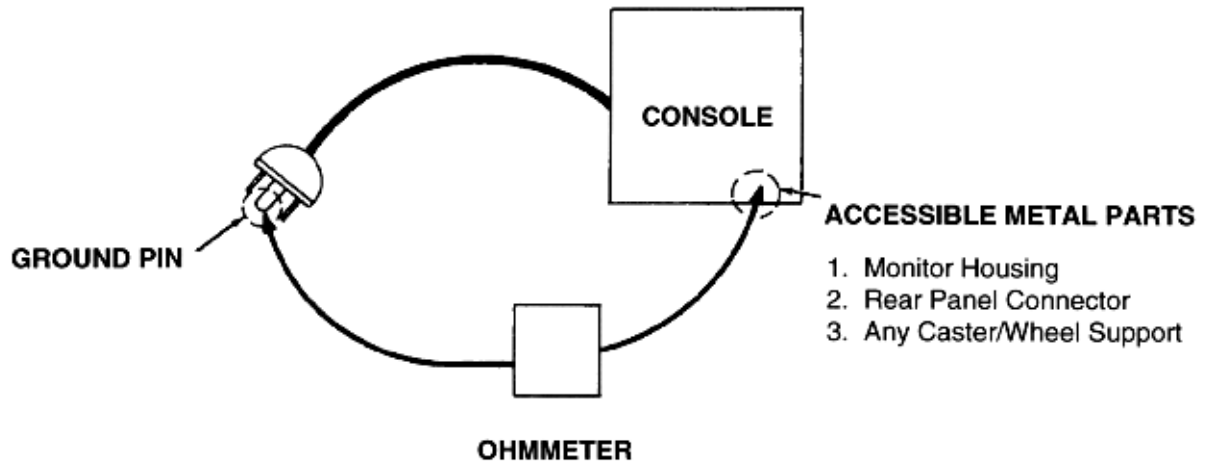


Figure 10-3 Ground Continuity Test

### 10-7-4-1 Meter Procedure

Follow these steps to test the ground wire resistance.

- 1.) Turn the LOGIQ™ 3 unit OFF.
- 2.) Plug the unit into the meter, and the meter into the tested AC wall outlet.
- 3.) Plug the black chassis cable into the meter's "CHASSIS" connector and attach the black chassis cable clamp to an exposed metal part of the LOGIQ™ 3 unit.
- 4.) Set the meter's "FUNCTION" switch to the RESISTANCE position.
- 5.) Set the meter's "POLARITY" switch to the OFF (center) position.
- 6.) Measure and record the ground wire resistance.

10-7-4-2 Dale 600 - Ground Continuity

The Dale 600 measures line cord resistance from the third pin of the attachment plug to the meter's Chassis Cable clamp. Test the grounding continuity of the system to all exposed metal parts in accordance with the IEC 601-1.1 procedure as above. Refer to the Dale 600 Instruction Manual for meter self tests and operation. Record measured resistance of the grounding continuity. The ground wire resistance should be less than 0.2 (Use any safety analyzer.)

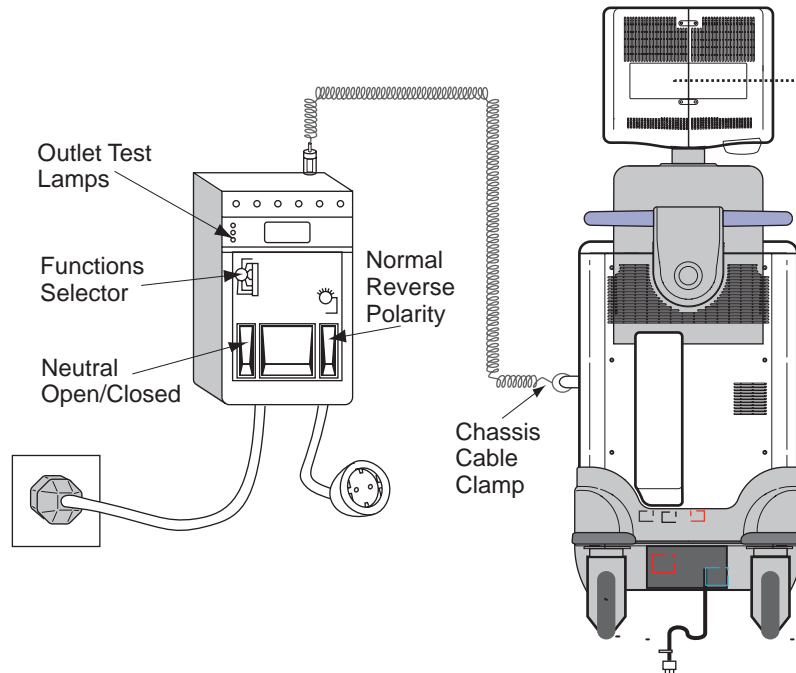



Figure 10-4 Dale 600 Ground Continuity Test

## 10-7-5 Chassis Leakage Current Test

### 10-7-5-1 Definition

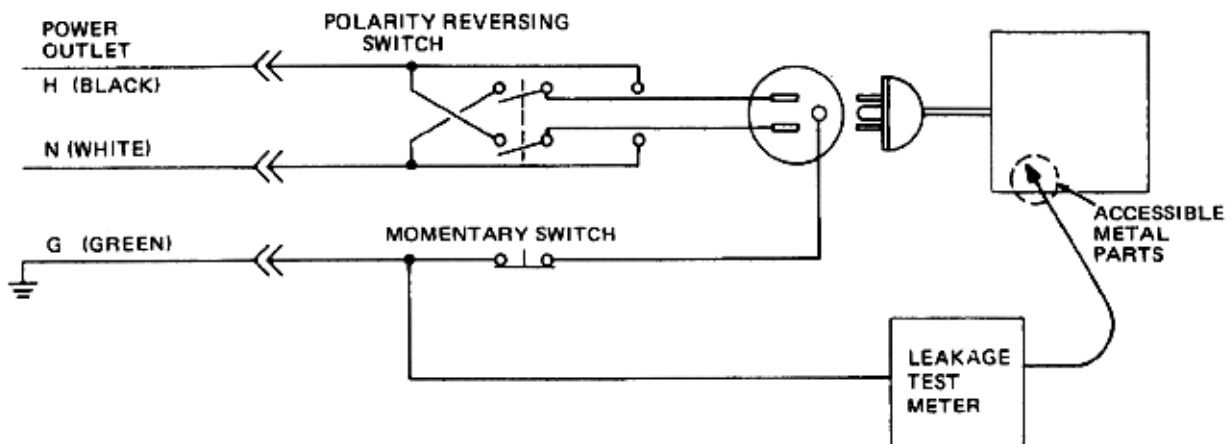
This test measures the current that would flow in a grounded person who touched accessible metal parts of the bedside station if the ground wire should break. The test verifies the isolation of the power line from the chassis. The meter is connected from accessible metal parts of the case to ground. Measurements should be made with the unit On and Off, with the power line polarity Normal and Reversed. Record the highest reading.

 **CAUTION Electric Shock Hazard. When the meter's ground switch is OPEN, don't touch the unit!**

 **CAUTION Equipment damage possibility. Never switch the Polarity and the status of Neutral when the unit is powered ON. Be sure to turn the unit power OFF before switching them using the POLARITY switch and/or the NEUTRAL switch. Otherwise, the unit may be damaged.**

### 10-7-5-2 Generic Procedure

The test verifies the isolation of the power line from the chassis. The testing meter is connected from accessible metal parts of the case to ground. Measurements should be made with the unit ON and OFF, with the power line polarity Normal and Reversed. Record the highest reading of current.



**Figure 10-5 Set Up for Chassis Source Leakage Current, IEC 601-1 Clause 19 - Continuous Leakage Currents and Patient, Auxiliary Currents**

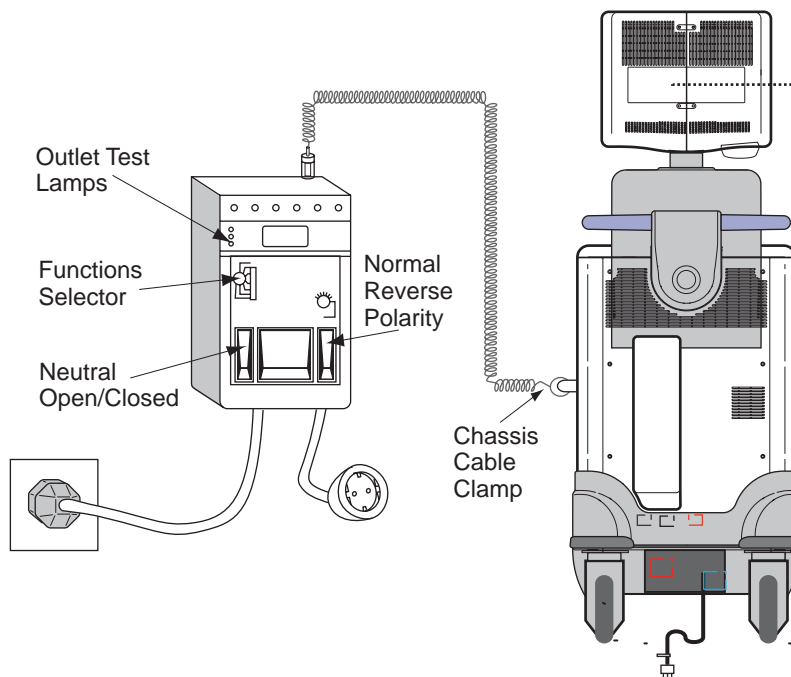
When using the Microguard or a similar test instrument, its power plug may be inserted into the wall outlet and the equipment under test is plugged into the receptacle on the panel of the meter. This places the meter in the grounding conductor and the current flowing from the case to ground will be indicated in any of the current ranges. The maximum allowable limit for chassis source leakage is shown in [Table 10-14](#).

**10-7-5-3 Dale 600 Meter Procedure**

When measuring system chassis currents with the Dale 600, always use the CHASSIS selection of the external/chassis function switch. This requires the ground clip lead and changing the meters switches in accordance with the IEC 601-1.1. Refer to the Dale 600 Instruction Manual for meter self-test and operation. Record the highest leakage current measured.

Follow these steps to test the unit for leakage current.

- 1.) Turn the LOGIQ™ 3 unit OFF.
- 2.) Plug the unit into the meter, and the meter into the tested AC wall outlet
- 3.) Plug the black chassis cable into the meter's "CHASSIS" connector and attach the black chassis cable clamp to an exposed metal part of the LOGIQ™ 3.
- 4.) Set the tester's "FUNCTION" switch to CHASSIS position.



**Figure 10-6 Ground and Chassis Leakage Current Test**

- 5.) Follow the test conditions described for respective test points shown in [Table 10-17](#).

**Table 10-17 Chassis Leakage Current Test Condition**

TEST	CONDITION
1	Mounting screw for probe receptacle
2	Wheel support
3	Mounting screw for CRT housing
4	Mounting screw for peripheral plugged into unit
5	Mounting screw for other peripheral powered by unit

- 6.) Keep a record of the results with other hard copies of PM data kept on site.



**10-7-5-4 Data Sheet for Chassis Source Leakage Current**

The test passes when all readings measure less than the value shown in [Table 10-14](#). Record all data on the PM Inspection Certificate.

**Table 10-18 Typical Data Sheet for Chassis Source Leakage Current**

Unit Power	Tester Polarity Switch	Tester Neutral or Ground Switch	Test 1 Probe Connector Screw	Test 2 Metal on Wheel	Test 3 Screws on CRT Housing	Optional Test 4 Rear Panel Connectors	Optional Test 5
Enter Name of tested peripheral here:							
ON	NORM	OPEN					
ON	NORM	CLOSED					
ON	REV	OPEN					
ON	REV	CLOSED					
OFF	NORM	OPEN					
OFF	NORM	CLOSED					
OFF	REV	OPEN					
OFF	REV	CLOSED					

**10-7-6 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage–Lead to Ground**

**10-7-6-1 Definition**

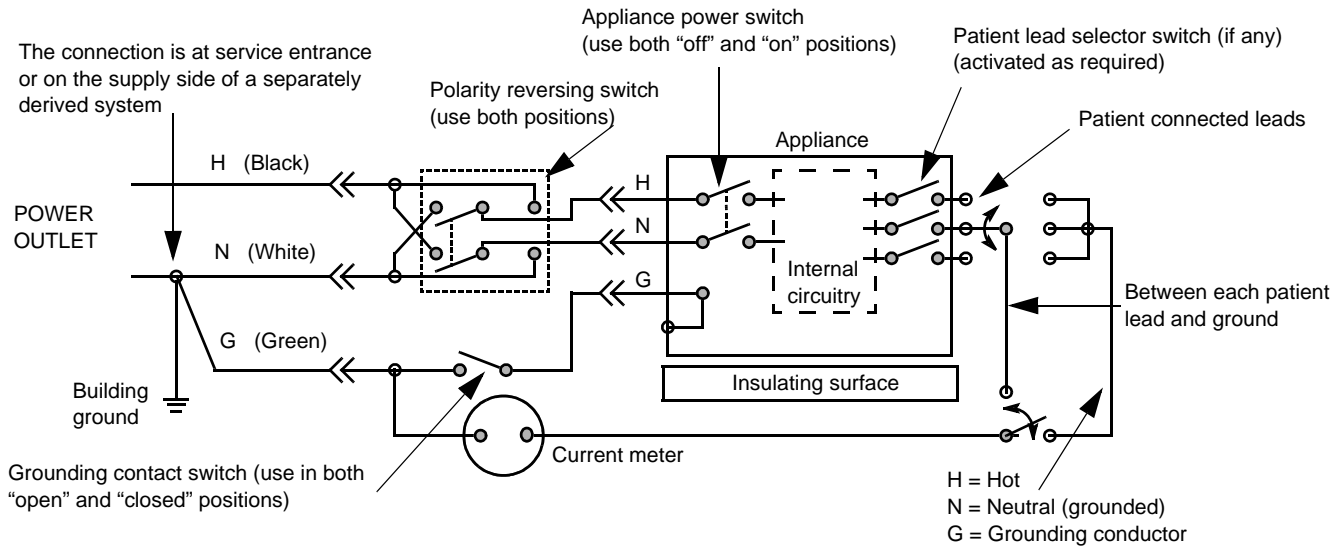
This test measures the current which would flow to ground from any of the isolated ECG leads. The meter simulates a patient who is connected to the monitoring equipment and is grounded by touching some other grounded surface. Measurements should be made with the ground open and closed, with power line polarity normal and reversed, and with the ultrasound console Off and On. For each combination the operating controls, such as the lead switch, should be operated to find the worst case condition.



**CAUTION** Equipment damage possibility. Never switch the Polarity when the unit is powered ON. Be sure to turn the unit power OFF before switching the polarity using the POLARITY switch. Otherwise, the unit may be damaged.

**10-7-6-2 Generic Procedure**

Measurements should be made with the ground open and closed, with power line polarity normal and reversed, and with the unit Off and On. For each combination, the operating controls such as the lead switch should be operated to find the worst case condition.



**Figure 10-7 Test Circuit for Measuring Non-Isolated Patient Leads**

**10-7-6-3 Dale 600 Meter Procedure**

The Dale 600 provides five snap type ECG buttons for testing patient leads. Snap on all patient leads to the meter and assure that the ground clip is connected to the system's ground terminal. Select the meter's LEAD-GND function. Select and test each ECG lead positions (except "ALL") of the LEAD selector, testing each to the power condition combinations found in "PATIENT LEAD LEAKAGE" table in the "PM CHECKLIST". Record the highest leakage current measured for each Power selection.

**CAUTION** Line voltage is applied to the ECG leads during this test. To avoid possible electric shock hazard, the system being tested must not be touched by patients, users or anyone while the ISO TEST switch is depressed. When the meter's ground switch is OPEN, don't touch the unit!

Follow these steps to test the ECG module for leakage current.

- 1.) Turn the LOGIQ™ 3 unit OFF.
- 2.) Plug the unit into the meter, and the meter into the tested AC wall outlet.
- 3.) Plug the black chassis cable into the meter's "CHASSIS" connector and attach the black chassis cable clamp to an exposed metal part of the LOGIQ™ 3 unit.
- 4.) Connect the patient leads to the corresponding snaps located at the upper front of the Dale 600/600E. Lead nomenclature for this test is not important.

10-7-6-3 Dale 600 Meter Procedure (cont'd)

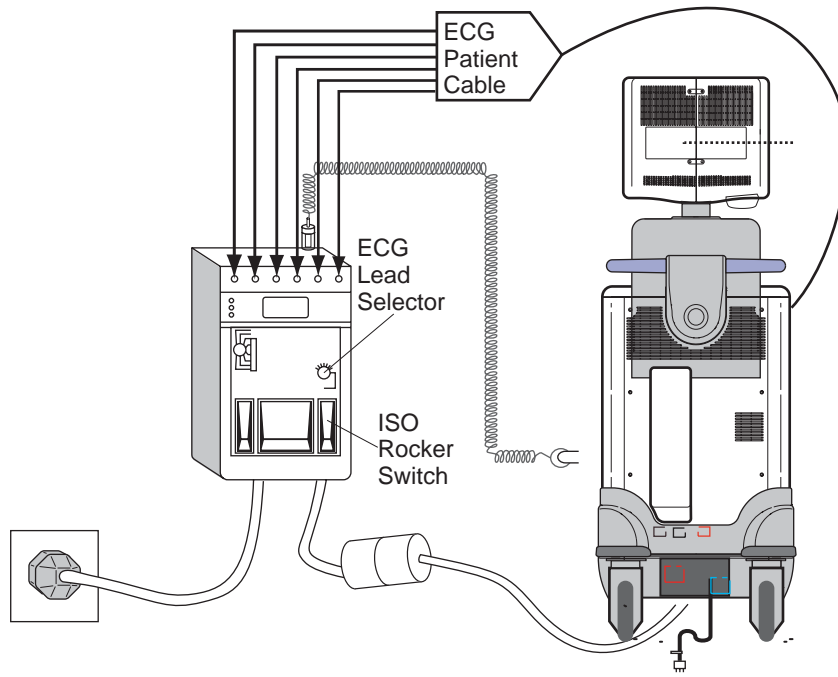


Figure 10-8 ECG Leakage Current Test

- 5.) Set the meter's "FUNCTION" switch to LEAD TO GROUND position to measure the patient lead to ground leakage current.
- 6.) Select and test each ECG lead positions (except ALL) of the LEAD selector, testing each to the power condition combinations.

Table 10-19 Testing Power Conditions

ECG Power	Meter's Polarity Switch	Meter's Neutral Switch
ON	NORM	CLOSED
ON	NORM	OPEN
ON	REVERSE	CLOSED
ON	REVERSE	OPEN
OFF	NORM	CLOSED
OFF	NORM	OPEN
OFF	REVERSE	CLOSED
OFF	REVERSE	OPEN

**10-7-6-3 Dale 600 Meter Procedure (cont'd)**

- 7.) Record the patient lead to ground leakage current measured on the data sheet.
- 8.) Set the meter's "FUNCTION" switch to LEAD TO LEAD position to measure the lead to lead leakage current.
- 9.) Select and test each ECG lead positions (except ALL) of the LEAD selector, testing each to the power condition combinations.
- 10.) Record the lead to lead leakage current measured on the data sheet.
- 11.) Set the meter's "FUNCTION" switch to LEAD ISO position to measure the patient lead isolation current.
- 12.) Select and test each ECG lead positions (except ALL) of the LEAD selector, testing each to the power condition combinations.
- 13.) Depress the rocker switch to ISO TEST and read the isolation current. To apply the voltage to the lead safely, the voltage is only applied when the rocker switch is depressed to ISO TEST.
- 14.) Record the patient lead isolation current measured on the data sheet.

**10-7-7 Isolated Patient Lead (Source) Leakage—Lead to Lead**

Reference the procedure in the IEC 60601-1. When using the Dale 600, switch the meter's function selector to the LEAD-LEAD position. Select and test each of the five ECG lead positions (except ALL) on the LEAD selector, testing each to the power condition combinations found in the table. Record the highest leakage current measured.


**10-7-7-1 Dale 600 Patient Lead Tests**

NEUTRAL POLARITY

- 1.) Closed Normal
- 2.) Open Normal
- 3.) Closed Reversed
- 4.) Open Reversed

**10-7-8 Isolated Patient Lead (Sink) Leakage-Isolation Test**

Reference the procedure in the IEC 60601-1. When using the Dale 600, switch the meter's function selector to the LEAD-ISO. Select the ALL position on the lead selector. Depress the rocker switch to ISO TEST to test lead isolation.

 **CAUTION** Line voltage is applied to the ECG leads during this test. To avoid possible electric shock hazard, the system being tested must not be touched by patients, users or anyone while the ISO TEST switch is depressed.

*NOTE: It is not necessary to test each lead individually or power condition combinations as required in previous tests.*

**10-7-8-1 Data Sheet for ECG Leakage Current**

The test passes when all readings measure less than the value shown in the table below. Record all data on the PM Inspection Certificate.

**Table 10-20 Maximum Allowance Limit for ECG Leakage Current**

	AC Power Source	Maximum Allowance Limit	
		GROUND OPEN	GROUND CLOSED
Patient Lead to Ground Leakage Current Test and Patient Lead to Lead Leakage Current Test	115V	10uA	10uA
	230V	500uA	10uA

**Table 10-21 Maximum Allowance Limit for ECG Leakage Current**

	AC Power Source	Maximum Allowance Limit
Patient Lead Isolation Current Test	115V	20uA
	230V	5mA

**Table 10-22 Typical Data Sheet for ECG Leakage Current**

ECG Power	Tester Polarity Switch	Tester Ground Switch	Tester Lead Selector				
			RL	RA	LA	LL	C
ON	NORM	CLOSED					
ON	REVERSE	CLOSED					
ON	NORM	OPEN					
ON	REVERSE	OPEN					
OFF	NORM	CLOSED					
OFF	REVERSE	CLOSED					
OFF	NORM	OPEN					
OFF	REVERSE	OPEN					

## 10-7-9 Probe Leakage Current Test

### 10-7-9-1 Definition

This test measures the current that would flow to ground from any of the probes through a patient who is being scanned and becomes grounded by touching some other grounded surface.

### 10-7-9-2 Generic Procedure

Measurements should be made with the ground open and closed, with power line polarity normal and reversed, and with the unit Off and On. For each combination, the probe must be active to find the worst case condition.

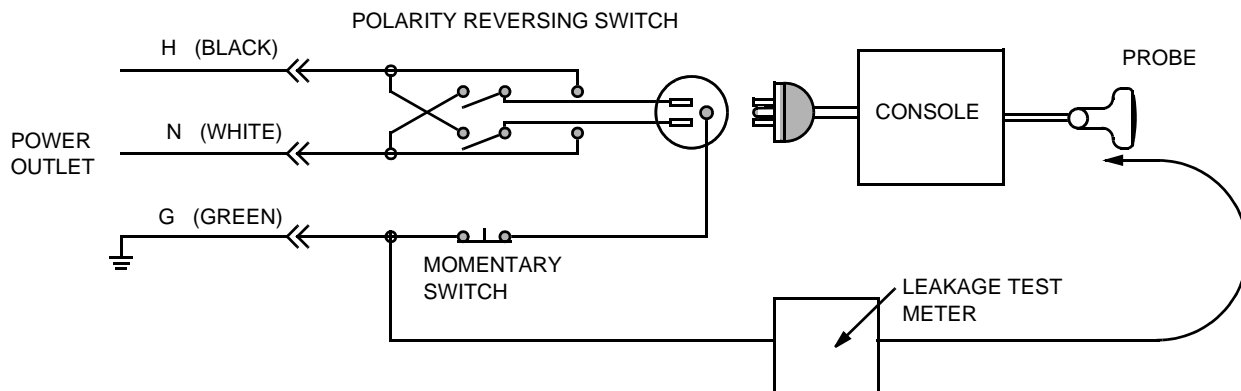


Figure 10-9 Set Up for Probe Leakage Current

**NOTE:** Each probe will have some amount of leakage current, dependent on its design. Small variations in probe leakage currents are normal from probe to probe. Other variations will result from differences in line voltage and test lead placement.

### 10-7-9-3 Meter Procedure Using Probe Adapter

The Dale 600/600E provides a method for testing probes independently from the system. The meter utilizes a probe adapter to apply a test potential commonly to all connector pins.

**The probe's imaging area is immersed in a saline solution along with a grounding probe from the meter to complete the current path.** Saline solution is a mixture of water and salt. The salt adds a free ion to the water, making it conductive. Normal saline solution is 0.9% salt or 1/2 gram salt per 1 liter of water. If saline is not available, a mixture of 1 quart water with one or more grams of table salt, mixed thoroughly, will substitute.

**CAUTION** To avoid probe damage and possible electric shock, do not immerse probes into any liquid beyond the level indicated in the probe users manual. **Do not touch the probe, conductive liquid or any part of the unit under test while the ISO TEST switch is depressed.**

Follow these steps to test each transducer for leakage current.

- 1.) Turn the LOGIQ™ 3 unit OFF.
- 2.) Plug the unit into the test meter, and the meter into the tested AC wall outlet.
- 3.) Connect the probe for test with the meter's appropriate adapter.
- 4.) Plug the saline probe into the meter's "CHASSIS" connector.
- 5.) Plug the probe adapter into the meter's connector marked "EXTERNAL".

10-7-9-3 Meter Procedure Using Probe Adapter (cont'd)

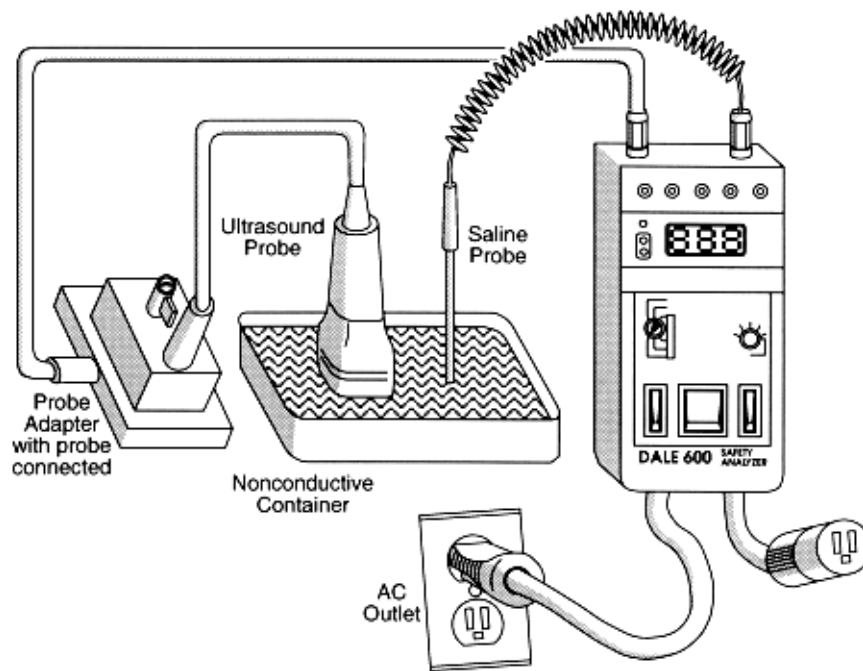


Figure 10-10 Transducer Source Leakage Current Test

- 6.) Set the meter's "FUNCTION" switch to EXTERNAL position.
- 7.) Add the saline probe and the imaging area of the probe into the saline bath.
- 8.) Have unit power ON for the first part; turn it OFF for the second half.
- 9.) Depress the ISO TEST rocker switch and record the highest current reading.
- 10.) Follow the test conditions described in [Table 10-23](#) for every transducer.
- 11.) Keep a record of the results with other hand copies of PM data.

10-7-9-4 No Meter Probe Adapter Procedure

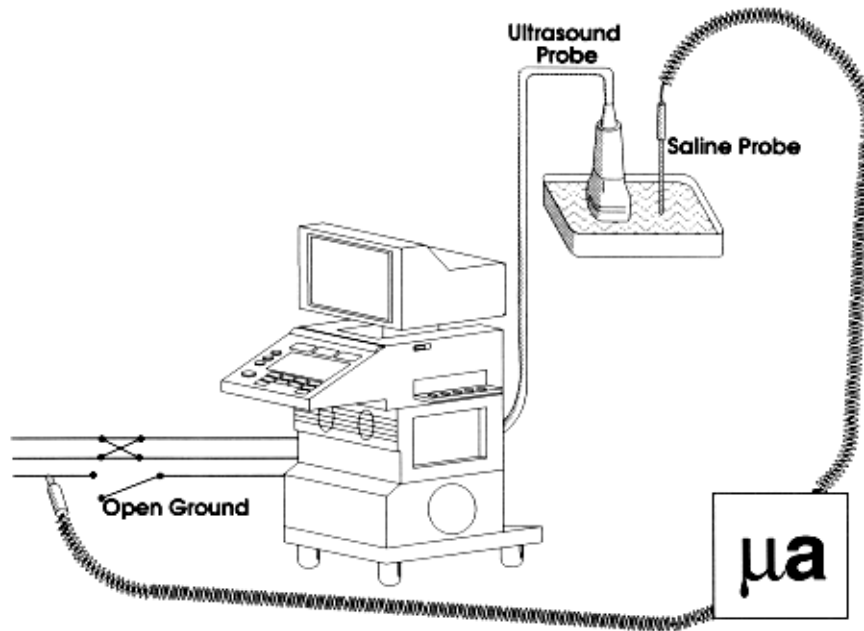


Figure 10-11

Follow these steps to test each transducer for leakage current.

- 1.) Turn the LOGIQ™ 3 unit OFF.
- 2.) Plug the unit into the test meter, and the meter into the tested AC wall outlet.
- 3.) Plug the external probe into the meter's (Dale 600) "EXTERNAL" connector.
- 4.) Set the meter's "FUNCTION" switch to EXTERNAL position.
- 5.) Connect the probe for test with the connector of the console.
- 6.) Add the saline probe and the imaging area of the probe into the saline bath.
- 7.) Have unit power ON for the first part; turn it OFF for the second half.
- 8.) Depress the ISO TEST rocker switch and record the highest current reading.
- 9.) Follow the test conditions described in [Table 10-23](#) for every transducer.
- 10.) Keep a record of the results with other hand copies of PM data.



**10-7-9-5 Data Sheet for Transducer Source Leakage Current**

The test passes when all readings measure less than the values shown in [Table 10-15](#) and [Table 10-16](#). Record all data on the PM Inspection Certificate.



**CAUTION** Equipment damage possibility. Never switch the Polarity and the status of Neutral when the unit is powered ON. Be sure to turn the unit power OFF before switching them using the POLARITY switch and/or the NEUTRAL switch. Otherwise, the unit may be damaged

**Table 10-23 Typical Data Sheet For Transducer Source Leakage Current**

Transducer Tested:			
Unit Power	Tester Power Polarity Switch	Tester GROUND or NUETRAL Switch	Measurement
ON	NORM	OPEN	
ON	NORM	CLOSED	
ON	REV	OPEN	
ON	REV	CLOSED	
OFF	NORM	OPEN	
OFF	NORM	CLOSED	
OFF	REV	OPEN	
OFF	REV	CLOSED	

## Section 10-8 When There's Too Much Leakage Current...

### CHASSIS FAILS

Check the ground on the power cord and plug for continuity. Ensure the ground is not broken, frayed, or intermittent. Replace any defective part.

Tighten all grounds. Ensure star washers are under all ground studs.

Inspect wiring for bad crimps, poor connections, or damage.

Test the wall outlet; verify it is grounded and is free of other wiring abnormalities. Notify the user or owner to correct any deviations. As a work around, check the other outlets to see if they could be used instead.

**NOTE:** *No outlet tester can detect the condition where the white neutral wire and the green grounding wire are reversed. If later tests indicate high leakage currents, this should be suspected as a possible cause and the outlet wiring should be visually inspected.*

### PROBE FAILS

Test the probe in another connector to isolate if the fault lies with the probe or the scanner.

**NOTE:** *Each probe will have some amount of leakage, dependent on its design. Small variations in probe leakage currents are normal from probe to probe. Other variations will result from differences in line voltage and test lead placement. The maximum allowable leakage current for body surface contact probe differs from inter-cavity probe. Be sure to enter the correct probe type in the appropriate space on the check list.*

If excessive leakage current is slot dependent, inspect the system connector for bent pins, poor connections, and ground continuity.

If the problem remains with the probe, replace the probe.

### PERIPHERAL FAILS

Tighten all grounds. Ensure star washers are under all ground studs.

Inspect wiring for bad crimps, poor connections, or damage.

### STILL FAILS

If all else fails, begin isolation by removing the probes, external peripherals, then the on board ones, one at a time while monitoring the leakage current measurement.

### NEW UNIT

If the leakage current measurement tests fail on a new unit and if situation can not be corrected, submit a Safety Failure Report to document the system problem. Remove unit from operation.

### ECG FAILS

Inspect cables for damage or poor connections.

**ULTRASOUND INSPECTION CERTIFICATE**

Customer Name:		System ID:	Dispatch Number / Date Performed:	Warranty/Contract/HBS
<b>System Type</b>		Model Number:	Serial Number:	Manufacture Date:
Probe 1:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 2:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 3:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 4:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 5:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 6:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 7:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 8:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:
Probe 9:	Frequency:	Scan Format*:	Model Number:	Serial Number:

\* Scan Format: Phased Array, Linear Array, Curved Array, Mechanical Array or Other

**FUNCTIONAL CHECKS**

Functional Check (if applicable)	OK? or N/A
B-Mode Function	
Doppler Modes Function	
CF-Mode Function	
M-Mode Function	
Applicable Software Options	
Applicable Hardware Options	
Control Panel	
Monitor	
Measurement Accuracy	
GE Approved Peripherals	

**PHYSICAL INSPECTION AND CLEANING**

Physical Inspection and Cleaning (if applicable)	Inspect	Clean
Console		
Monitor		
Air Filter		
Probe Holders		
External I/O		
Wheels, Brakes & Swivel Locks		
Cables and Connectors		
GE Approved Peripherals (VCR, CD-RW, Printers)		

**COMMENTS:**

---



---



---

**ELECTRICAL SAFETY**

Electrical Test Performed	Max Value Allowed	Value Measured	OK?	Comments
Outlet (correct ground & wiring config.)				
System Ground Continuity				
Chassis Source Leakage Current - Probe				
Chassis Source Leakage Current - Wheel				
Chassis Source Leakage Current - CRT				
Patient Lead Source Leakage (Lead to Ground)				
Patient Lead Source Leakage (Lead to Lead)				
Patient Lead Source Leakage (Isolation)				
Peripheral 1 Leakage Current				
Peripheral 1 Ground Continuity				
Peripheral 2 Leakage Current				
Peripheral 2 Ground Continuity				
Peripheral 3 Leakage Current				
Peripheral 3 Ground Continuity				

**PROBES**

Probe Number (from previous page)	Max Value Allowed	Max Value Measured	OK?	Comments
Probe 1:				
Probe 2:				
Probe 3:				
Probe 4:				
Probe 5:				
Probe 6:				
Probe 7:				
Probe 8:				
Probe 9:				

Final Check. All system covers are in place. System scans with all probes as expected.

Accepted by: \_\_\_\_\_

# Index

- A
- Applications Software Loading 37
- B
- Backup
  - Patient Database 33
  - Preset Configurations 33
- Base Load Software
  - Check Devices 93
  - Remapping Drive Letters 95
  - Update 89
  - Video Adapter Configuration 94
- Basic Measurements
  - Functional Checks 22
- Boot Up 12
- C
- Cine
  - Functional Checks 24
- Color Mode
  - Overview 19
- Connectivity
  - Worksheet 32
- Cooling 2
- Customer Assistance 16
- E
- Electrical Safety 9
- EMI Limitations 5
- EMI Protection 9
- Environmental Conditions
  - Probes 6
- F
- Functional Checks
  - Basic Measurements 22
  - Image Management 25
  - Probes/Connector Usage 23
  - Using Cine 24
- G
- Gathering Trouble Data 2
- General Cleaning 9
- H
- Hazard Icons 5
- Human Safety 8
- I
- Image Management
  - Functional Checks 25

Installation 1  
Installation of Option Software 115  
Installation of Software 85  
L  
Lighting 2  
M  
Manpower Requirements 6  
Mechanical Safety 8  
Minimal Floor Plan Suggestion 9  
Models Covered 2  
P  
P4 Key Function 4  
Power Off 14  
Power On 12  
Power-up Procedures  
    Voltage Settings 9  
Preparing the Unit for Installation 9  
Probe Connector Cleaning 11  
Probes/Connector Usage  
    Functional Checks 23  
Purchaser Responsibilities 7  
R  
Receiving and Unpacking the Equipment 3  
Regulatory 1  
S  
Safety Considerations 8  
Screen Captures 4  
Service Adjustments 1  
Shutdown 14  
Software  
    Base Load Update 89  
    Loading Application 37  
System Maintenance 7  
T  
Time and Manpower Requirements 6  
Trouble Image with Logs 3  
Troubleshooting  
    Gathering Trouble Data 2  
    Screen Captures 4  
    Trouble Image with Logs 3  
    Vital System Information 2  
U  
Unpacking the Equipment 3, 4  
V  
Voltage Settings 9  
W  
Warnings and Cautions 8



---

## **GE Healthcare**

*GE Medical Systems: Telex 3797371  
P.O. Box 414; Milwaukee, Wisconsin 53201, U.S.A.  
(Asia, Pacific, Latin America, North America)*

*GE Ultraschall: Tel: +49 (0) 212 28 02 208  
Deutschland GmbH & Co KG  
Beethovenstrabe 239, Postfach 11 05 60  
D-42655 Solingen, Germany*